



ICAO

Doc 9924

Aeronautical Surveillance Manual

Third Edition, 2020



Approved by and published under the authority of the Secretary General

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION



| ICAO

Doc 9924

Aeronautical Surveillance Manual

Third Edition, 2020

Approved by and published under the authority of the Secretary General

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION

Published in separate English, Arabic, Chinese, French, Russian
and Spanish editions by the
INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION
999 Robert-Bourassa Boulevard, Montréal, Québec, Canada H3C 5H7

For ordering information and for a complete listing of sales agents
and booksellers, please go to the ICAO website at www.icao.int

First edition 2011
Second edition 2017
Third edition 2020

Doc 9924, *Aeronautical Surveillance Manual*

Order Number: 9924

ISBN 978-92-9265-115-2 (hard print copy)

ISBN 978-92-9265-367-5 (digital copy)

© ICAO 2020

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a
retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, without prior
permission in writing from the International Civil Aviation Organization.

AMENDMENTS

Amendments are announced in the supplements to the *Products and Services Catalogue*; the Catalogue and its supplements are available on the ICAO website at www.icao.int. The space below is provided to keep a record of such amendments.

RECORD OF AMENDMENTS AND CORRIGENDA

[illegible][illegible]

FOREWORD

Air traffic is growing at a significant rate and at the same time, there are increasing demands for more operating flexibility to improve aircraft efficiency and to reduce the impact of air travel on the environment. Aeronautical surveillance systems are major elements of modern air navigation infrastructure required to safely manage increasing levels and complexity of air traffic.

This manual has been produced by the Aeronautical Surveillance Panel (ASP) as a reference document consolidating the updated guidance material previously published in other manuals with new material covering more recent or emerging techniques. The chapters provide the reader with a basic understanding of various systems and how they are used for air traffic surveillance while the appendices contain detailed information on some specific systems and related topics.

Comments on this manual from States and other parties outside ICAO concerned with surveillance system development and provision of services would be appreciated and should be addressed to:

The Secretary General
International Civil Aviation Organization
999 Robert-Bourassa Boulevard
Montréal, Québec H3C 5H7
Canada

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
Explanation of terms	(ix)
Acronyms and abbreviations	(xvii)
References	(xxi)
Chapter 1. Introduction	1-1
1.1 Overview	1-1
1.2 The need for aeronautical surveillance.....	1-1
Chapter 2. Surveillance system definition	2-1
2.1 Surveillance system purpose and scope	2-1
2.2 Surveillance categories	2-1
Chapter 3. Applications of air traffic surveillance	3-1
3.1 Introduction.....	3-1
3.2 Aircraft identity.....	3-5
3.3 Operational use of surveillance data	3-6
Chapter 4. Technical performance requirements for surveillance systems	4-1
4.1 Purpose	4-1
4.2 Definition of parameters contributing to quality of services.....	4-1
4.3 Other performance-related issues	4-2
Chapter 5. Air-ground surveillance systems	5-1
5.1 Components of an aeronautical surveillance system	5-1
5.2 Non-cooperative sensor	5-1
5.3 Independent cooperative sensor systems	5-4
5.4 Dependent cooperative systems	5-10
5.5 SDP systems.....	5-15
5.6 Surveillance data distribution by ASTERIX.....	5-15
Chapter 6. Airborne surveillance	6-1
6.1 Introduction.....	6-1
6.2 ADS-B IN.....	6-1
6.3 TIS-B	6-1
6.4 ADS-R	6-2
6.5 ACAS.....	6-2
6.6 Displays for airborne surveillance.....	6-3
Chapter 7. Surveillance system deployment considerations	7-1
7.1 Best practices checklist	7-1
7.2 Transition to dependent surveillance systems.....	7-2
7.3 Other issues	7-3

	<i>Page</i>
APPENDICES	
Appendix A. Technical performance requirements	A-1
Appendix B. PSR	B-1
Appendix C. SSR performance capabilities	C-1
Appendix D. SSR system techniques	D-1
Appendix E. MSSR	E-1
Appendix F. Mode S and Mode A/C compatibility	F-1
Appendix G. Mode S error detection and correction.....	G-1
Appendix H. Mode S protocol considerations	H-1
Appendix I. Mode S specific services.....	I-1
Appendix J. Mode S implementation	J-1
Appendix K. 1 090 MHz ES	K-1
Appendix L. MLAT	L-1
Appendix M. Interference considerations	M-1
Appendix N. ASTERIX interface specifications	N-1
Appendix O. Airborne surveillance equipment installation and test considerations.....	O-1
Appendix P. Guidance for automatic dependent surveillance — broadcast (ADS-B) flight testing.....	P-1
Appendix Q. Guidance for multilateration (MLAT) flight testing	Q-1
Appendix R. Guidance on ground-based safety nets implementation.....	R-1
Appendix S. Guidance on 1 090 MHz spectrum issues and proper management of 24-bit aircraft addresses associated with unmanned aircraft (UA)	S-1

EXPLANATION OF TERMS

Acquisition squitter. The spontaneous periodic transmission by a Mode S transponder (nominally once per second) of a specified format, including the aircraft address, to permit passive acquisition.

Aircraft. Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air other than the reactions of the air against the earth's surface.

Note.— In the context of aeronautical surveillance, the term “aircraft” should be understood as “aircraft or vehicle (A/V)”.

Aircraft address. A unique combination of twenty-four bits available for assignment to an aircraft for the purpose of air-ground communications, navigation and surveillance.

Note.— SSR Mode S transponders transmit extended squitters to support the broadcast of aircraft-derived position for surveillance purposes. The broadcast of this type of information is a form of automatic dependent surveillance (ADS) known as ADS-broadcast (ADS-B).

Aircraft identification. A group of letters, figures or a combination thereof which is either identical to, or the coded equivalent of, the aircraft call sign to be used in air-ground communications, and which is used to identify the aircraft in ground-ground or air traffic services communications.

*Note.— The aircraft identification is also referred to as **flight identification**.*

All-call. An intermode or Mode S interrogation that elicits replies from more than one transponder.

All-call (Mode A/C-only). An intermode interrogation that elicits replies from Mode A/C transponders only. Mode S transponders do not accept this interrogation.

All-call (Mode S-only). A Mode S interrogation that elicits all-call replies from Mode S transponders that are currently not in the lockout state.

All-call (stochastic). A Mode S-only all-call that elicits all-call replies from only a random subset of the Mode S transponders that are currently not in the lockout state.

Antenna diversity. An installation that consists of top and bottom mounted antennas that is used in SSR, ACAS and ADS-B systems to improve the transmission and reception capabilities.

Altitude. The vertical distance of a level, a point or an object considered as a point, measured from mean sea level (MSL).

Antenna (electronically scanned, E-Scan). An SSR antenna consisting of a number of planar arrays or a circular array of radiating elements. A beam former unit allows it to electronically steer the beam to the desired azimuth angle by applying phase shifting. The antenna elements may either be active or passive, depending on the order in which the beam former and transmitters are set up.

Antenna (hog-trough). An SSR antenna comprising a horizontal linear array of radiating elements installed in an extended corner reflector assembly (resembling in shape a hog-trough). The linear array is usually of sufficient length to give an azimuth beamwidth of between 2 and 3 degrees, and the hog-trough reflector achieves typically between

± 40 and 45 degrees vertical beamwidth. For special purposes, shorter arrays can be used. These have increased azimuth beamwidth.

Antenna (large vertical aperture LVA). An SSR antenna comprising two-dimensional array radiating elements. A typical LVA consists of a number of columns (each consisting of a vertical linear array designed to produce beam shaping in the vertical plane) arranged in a horizontal linear array to produce an azimuth beamwidth of between 2 and 3 degrees. LVA antennas are widely used for monopulse SSR systems.

Antenna (linear array). An antenna consisting of an array of radiating elements in a straight line. The desired radiation characteristic of the antenna is obtained by the varied distribution of radio frequency energy in amplitude or phase so as to produce the shaped “beam” or wave front.

Antenna (monopulse). See antenna (sum and difference).

Antenna (omnidirectional). An antenna with the same gain in all directions.

Antenna (sum and difference). A hog-trough or LVA antenna which is electrically split into two halves. The two half-antenna outputs are added in phase at one output port (sum, Σ) and added in anti-phase at a second output port (difference, Δ) to produce output signals which are sensitive to the azimuth angle of arrival of received signals, enabling an off-boresight angle for the signal source to be obtained. This kind of antenna is required for monopulse and Mode S operation.

Antenna (reflector). An antenna producing the beam by a method analogous to optics. In most cases the “reflector” surface of the antenna is illuminated by a radio frequency source (e.g. a radio-frequency “horn” assembly). The dimensions of the reflector antenna both in the horizontal and vertical plane, together with the characteristics of the illuminating source, determine the shape and magnitude of the radar beam produced.

BDS1 code. The BDS1 code is defined in the RR field of a surveillance or Comm-A interrogation.

BDS2 code. The BDS2 code is defined in the RRS of the SD field of a surveillance or Comm-A interrogation when $DI = 7$. If no BDS2 code is specified (i.e. $DI \neq 7$), it signifies that $BDS2 = 0$.

Beamwidth. An angle subtended (either in azimuth or elevation) at the half-power points (3 dB below maximum) of the main beam of an antenna.

Boresight. A main lobe electrical (radio) axis of an antenna.

Capability report. An indication provided by the capability (CA) field of an all-call reply and a squitter transmission of the communications capability of the Mode S transponder (see also “data link capability report”), and some information on the aircraft status.

Chip. A 0.2 -microsecond carrier interval following possible data phase reversals in the P_6 pulse of Mode S interrogations (see “data phase reversal”).

Closeout. A command from a Mode S interrogator that terminates a Mode S link layer communication transaction.

Cluster. A set of Mode S interrogators with overlapping coverage that use the same interrogator code. The interrogators communicate with each other to provide acquisition or reacquisition to neighbouring interrogators. The cluster operation requires fewer interrogator codes, and Mode S aircraft within the cluster airspace normally remain in a state of lockout, which reduces Mode S all-call transmissions.

Comm-A. A 112 -bit interrogation containing the 56 -bit MA message field. This field is used by the uplink standard length

message (SLM) and broadcast protocols.

Comm-B. A 112-bit reply containing the 56-bit MB message field. This field is used by the downlink SLM, ground-initiated and broadcast protocols.

Comm-B data selector (BDS). The 8-bit BDS code in a surveillance or Comm-A interrogation determines the register whose contents are to be transferred in the MB field of the elicited Comm-B reply. The BDS code is expressed in two groups of 4 bits each, BDS1 (most significant 4 bits) and BDS2 (least significant 4 bits).

Comm-C. A 112-bit interrogation containing the 80-bit MC message field. This field is used by the extended length message (ELM) uplink protocol for uplink data transfer and by the downlink ELM protocol for the transfer of segment readout commands.

Comm-D. A 112-bit reply containing the 80-bit MD message field. This field is used by the extended length message (ELM) downlink protocol for downlink data transfer and by the uplink ELM protocol for the transfer of technical acknowledgements.

Control antenna. An SSR antenna having a polar diagram which is designed to “cover” the side lobes of the main interrogating antenna. It is used to radiate a control pulse which, if it exceeds in amplitude the associated interrogation signal at the input to the transponder, will cause the transponder to inhibit responses to the interrogation pulses. Modern SSR antennas have the control elements built into the main array. The control antenna is also known as the SLS (side-lobe suppression) antenna. In earlier SLS systems, an omnidirectional antenna was often used for transmitting the P_2 pulse and sometimes also for transmission of the P_1 pulse (I^2SLS). Modern antennas for ground SSR use include a “notch” coinciding with the peak of the main beam.

Control pattern. A polar diagram of the control antenna. Modern integrated SSR antennas have a “modified cardioid” beamshape.

Control pulse. A pulse (P_2 for Modes A and C, P_5 for Mode S) transmitted by the ground equipment (SSR interrogator) in order to ensure side-lobe suppression.

Correlation criteria. A number of pulse repetition intervals over which range correlation of replies must be achieved in a sliding or moving window extractor before the presence (or tentative presence, subject to further tests) of a plot can be declared.

Data link capability report. Information in a Comm-B reply identifying the complete Comm-A, Comm-B, ELM and ACAS capabilities of the aircraft installation.

Data phase reversal. A 180-degree phase shift which precedes a chip in a Mode S interrogation (see “chip”) and is used to encode a binary ONE. The absence of the phase reversal encodes a binary ZERO.

Dead time. A period of time during which an SSR transponder is inhibited from receiving signals after a valid interrogation is received and a reply transmitted. The term is also used to describe the time after the normal range for returns and before the next transmission from an interrogator or from a primary radar system.

Defruiter. Equipment used to eliminate unsynchronized replies (FRUIT) in an SSR ground system.

Defruiting. A process by which aircraft replies accepted by the interrogator receiver are tested by means of storage and a comparator for synchronism with the interrogation-repetition frequency. Only replies which are in synchronism (correlate on a repeated basis in range) will be output from the defruiter. Other replies are rejected as “FRUIT”.

Difference pattern. A receive (1 090 MHz) characteristic of a monopulse SSR antenna, obtained by connecting in

anti-phase the signals (replies) received by two partial antennas. The difference pattern has a minimum in the main radiation direction of the antenna and an amplitude and phase characteristic which varies as a function of angle of arrival of the received signal. Used in conjunction with the sum output of the antenna, it enables the off-boresight angle to be found.

Differential phase-shift keying (DPSK). Modulation which uses phase reversals preceding chips to denote binary ONES and the absence of a phase reversal to denote binary ZEROS.

Downlink. A term referring to the transmission of data from an aircraft to the ground. Mode S air-to-ground signals are transmitted on the 1 090 MHz reply frequency channel.

Effective radiated power (ERP). The transmitted power enhanced by the gain of the antenna less the losses in cables, rotary joints, etc.

Extended length message (ELM) protocol. A series of Comm-C interrogations (uplink ELM) transmitted without the requirement for intervening replies, or a series of Comm-D replies (downlink ELM) transmitted without intervening interrogations.

Extended squitter. Spontaneous periodic transmission of a 1 090 MHz 112-bit Mode S signal format containing 56 bits of additional information (e.g. used for ADS-B, TIS-B and ADS-R).

False plot. A radar plot report which does not correspond to the actual position of a real aircraft (target), within certain limits.

Field. A defined number of contiguous bits in an interrogation, reply or squitter.

Flight identification. See aircraft identification.

Flight status (FS) field. A field of a Mode S reply indicating if the aircraft is airborne or on-ground, is transmitting the Mode A/C SPI code or has recently changed its Mode A identity code.

Framing pulses. Pulses which “frame” the information pulses (code) of SSR Modes A and C replies (described as F₁ and F₂, respectively), also known as “bracket pulses.”

FRUIT. A term applied to unwanted SSR replies received by an interrogator which have been triggered by other SSR interrogators. Fruit is the acronym for false replies unsynchronized in time.

Gain (of antenna). A measure for the antenna of the increased (effective) transmitted power density radiated in a particular direction as compared to the power density that would have been radiated from an isotropic antenna (expressed in dB).

Galileo. Europe's own global navigation satellite system, providing a highly accurate, guaranteed global positioning service under civilian control.

Garbling. A term applied to the overlapping in range and/or azimuth of two or more SSR replies so that the pulse positions of one reply fall close to or overlap the pulse positions of another reply, thereby making the decoding of reply data prone to error.

Ground-initiated Comm-B (GICB) protocol. A procedure initiated by a Mode S ground station for eliciting a Comm-B message containing aircraft derived data from a Mode S aircraft installation.

Improved interrogator side-lobe suppression (I²SLS). A technique whereby interrogation pulse P₁ is transmitted via

both the main beam and the control beam of the SSR antenna, so that a transponder in a side-lobe direction more reliably receives a P₁-P₂ pulse pair.

Intermode interrogations. Interrogations that consist of 3 pulses (P₁, P₃ and P₄) and are capable of eliciting replies a) from both Mode A/C and Mode S transponders or b) from Mode A/C transponders but not from Mode S transponders (see “All-call”).

Interrogator. A surveillance system transmitting on 1 030 MHz. The surveillance system may be fixed or mobile.

Interrogator code (IC). A code used to identify an interrogator in Mode S protocols. It may be either an interrogator identifier (II) or surveillance identifier (SI) code.

Interrogator identifier (II). One of the codes (1 to 15) used to identify a Mode S ground station using the multisite protocols.

Interrogator (mobile). An airborne, ship-borne or ground transportable interrogator. The term “mobile interrogator” is usually used for military installations.

Interrogator repetition frequency (IRF). An average number of interrogations per second transmitted by the radar. Sometimes referred to as “Pulse repetition frequency” (PRF).

Interrogator side-lobe suppression (ISLS). A method of preventing transponder replies to interrogations transmitted through the ground antenna side lobes.

Lobing (antenna pattern). A process whereby, due to interference of two waves, one direct and one reflected, differences in phases cause larger or smaller amplitudes than expected for free space, causing differences in signal amplitudes.

Lockout state. A state in which a Mode S transponder has been instructed not to accept certain all-call interrogations. Lockout is deliberately induced by command from the Mode S ground station.

Mode. SSR interrogation mode as specified in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 2.

Mode A/C transponder. Airborne equipment that generates specified responses to Mode A, Mode C and intermode interrogations but does not reply to Mode S interrogations.

Mode S. An enhanced mode of SSR that permits selective interrogation and reply capability.

Mode S ground station. Ground equipment that interrogates Mode A/C and Mode S transponders using intermode and Mode S interrogations. A monopulse capable antenna and a rotary joint providing at least two channels for sum and difference processing are a pre-requisite for Mode S operation.

Mode S interrogations. Interrogations consisting of three pulses (P₁, P₂ and P₆) that convey information to and/or elicit replies from Mode S transponders. Mode A/C transponders do not respond to Mode S interrogations because they are suppressed by the (P₁-P₂) pulse pair.

Mode S surveillance interrogation. A 56-bit Mode S interrogation containing surveillance and communications control information.

Mode S surveillance reply. A 56-bit Mode S reply containing surveillance and communications control information, plus the aircraft's 4 096 identity code or altitude code.

Mode S transponder. Airborne equipment that generates specified responses to Mode A, Mode C, intermode and Mode S interrogations.

Monopulse. A technique wherein the amplitudes and/or phases of the signals received in overlapping antenna lobes are compared to estimate the angle of arrival of the signal. The technique determines the angle of arrival of a single pulse, or reply, within an antenna beamwidth. The angle of arrival is determined by means of a processor using the replies received through the sum and difference patterns of the antenna. The monopulse technique is generally termed “monopulse direction finding.”

Monopulse plot extractor. A plot extractor using monopulse direction-finding techniques. See also plot extractor.

Multisite Comm-B protocol. A procedure to control air-initiated Comm-B message delivery to Mode S ground stations that have overlapping coverage and that are operating independently (see “multisite protocol”).

Multisite-directed Comm-B protocol. A procedure to ensure that a multisite Comm-B message closeout is effected only by the particular Mode S ground station selected by the Mode S airborne installation.

Multisite protocol. Procedures to control message interchange between a Mode S transponder and Mode S ground stations with overlapping coverage operating independently. Multisite protocols allow only a single Mode S ground station to closeout a message interchange, thereby assuring that independent operation of Mode S ground stations does not cause messages to be lost.

Non-selective protocol. Procedures to control message interchange between a Mode S transponder and Mode S ground stations operating alone or in overlapping coverage with operations coordinated via ground communications.

Parrot. A fixed transponder referred to as the Position Adjustable Range Reference Orientation Transponder and used as a field monitor (see “remote field monitor”).

Plot extractor. Signal processing equipment which converts PSR and/or SSR video into an output data message suitable for transmission through a data transmission medium or possibly to further data processing equipment.

Pulse repetition frequency (PRF). An average number of pulses/interrogations per second transmitted by the radar (see “stagger”). Also known as pulse recurrence frequency.

Pulse train. A sequence of framing and information pulses in the coded SSR reply.

Receiver side-lobe suppression (RSLS). A method that uses two (or more) receivers to suppress aircraft replies which have been received via side lobes of the main beam of the antenna.

Remote field monitor. A system which monitors the uplink and/or downlink performance of an SSR or Mode S system from a site located at the specified distance from the radar (far field). The monitor (see “parrot”) is interrogated by the radar, and its replies can be evaluated on the radar site. In addition, the replies may contain data about certain interrogation parameters as seen by the monitor.

Reply. A pulse train received at an SSR ground station as a result of successful SSR interrogation.

Reply preamble. A sequence of four pulses, each with a duration of 0.5 microsecond, indicating the beginning of a Mode S reply.

Resolution. Ability of a system to distinguish between two or more targets in close proximity to each other both in range and bearing (azimuth).

Ring-around. Continuous reception of replies to interrogations by the side lobes of the ground antenna. This normally occurs only at short ranges, usually due to the non-existence of a side-lobe suppression mechanism or the improper functioning of this mechanism, at either the interrogator or the transponder side.

Round trip reliability. A probability of receipt of a correct reply, resulting from either an SSR interrogation or a PSR transmission.

Secondary surveillance radar (SSR). A surveillance radar system which uses transmitters/receivers (interrogators) and transponders.

Note.— The requirements for interrogators and transponders are specified in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3.

Secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder. A unit which transmits a response signal on receiving an SSR interrogation. The term is a derivative of the words transmitter and responder.

Side lobes (antenna). Lobes of the radiation pattern of an antenna, which are not part of the main or principal beam. Radar systems can have sufficient sensitivity via side lobes for successful detection of aircraft (particularly for SSR, but also for PSR). Special precautions are necessary to protect against these false plots.

Side-lobe suppression (SLS). A mechanism in an SSR transponder activated by the transmission (radiation) of a control pulse (P_2 or P_5) which will enable the transponder to prevent itself from replying to the side-lobe interrogation signals.

Stagger. Deliberate, controlled variation of the pulse repetition frequency of the SSR to prevent aircraft plots due to second-time-around replies.

Standard length message (SLM) protocol. A procedure to exchange digital data using Comm-A interrogations and/or Comm-B replies.

Sum pattern. Normal radiation pattern for the main directional beam of an antenna. It contrasts with the “difference-pattern,” where parts of the radiating elements of the antenna are switched in anti-phase to produce signals proportional to the amount by which the source is off the boresight of the sum pattern.

Suppression. A deliberate inhibition of a transponder’s ability to accept or reply to interrogations.

Surveillance identifier (SI). One of the codes (1 to 63) used to identify a Mode S ground station using only surveillance or limited communications protocols. These codes were added to provide additional codes for surveillance purposes.

Surveillance processing. A general term covering any processing applied to the target reports after the extraction functions and prior to the data transmission functions. Such processes include filtering, clutter reduction, data rate control and dynamic angle control.

Sync phase reversal. A first phase reversal in the Mode S P_6 interrogation pulse. It is used to synchronize the circuitry in the transponder that decodes the P_6 pulse by detecting data phase reversals, i.e. as a timing reference for subsequent transponder operations related to the interrogation.

Track. The projection on the earth’s surface of the path of an aircraft, the direction of which path at any point is usually expressed in degrees from North (true, magnetic or grid).

Transponder transaction cycle. The sequence of transponder operations required by the reception of an interrogation. The process begins with the recognition of an interrogation and ends either with the non-acceptance of the interrogation or the transmission of a reply or the completion of processing associated with that interrogation.

Uplink. A term referring to the transmission of data from the ground to an aircraft. Mode S ground-to-air signals are transmitted on the 1 030 MHz interrogation frequency channel.

Validation (code). Process of correlation of the code information used in SSR Mode A/C systems. Generally two identical

codes in two successive replies suffice to validate the code. In Mode S, code validation occurs inherently when the reply is decoded (and, if appropriate, the error is corrected).

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

ACAS	Airborne collision avoidance system
ADLP	Airborne data link processor
ADS-B	Automatic dependent surveillance — broadcast
ADS-C	Automatic dependent surveillance — contract
ADS-R	ADS-B rebroadcast
AICB	Air-initiated Comm-B
AIS	Aircraft identification subfield
ANSP	Air navigation services provider
AOA	Angle of arrival
AP	Address parity
APM	Approach path monitor
APW	Area proximity warning
A-SMGCS	Advanced — surface movement guidance and control system
ASA	Airborne surveillance application
ASBU	Aviation system block upgrade
ASDE	Airport surface detection equipment
ASP	Aeronautical surveillance panel
ASTERIX	All Purpose STructured Eurocontrol SuRveillance Information EXchange
ATC	Air traffic control
ATCO	Air traffic controller
ATCRBS	Air traffic control radar beacon system
ATM	Air traffic management
ATN	Aeronautical telecommunication network
ATS	Air traffic service
ATSAW	Airborne traffic situational awareness
A/V	Aircraft/vehicle
BDN	Broadcast downlink
BDS	Comm-B data selector
BDS1	Most significant 4 bits of BDS
BDS2	Least significant 4 bits of BDS
BUP	Broadcast uplink
CA	Capability (as in capability field)
CC	Cross-link capability
CDTI	Cockpit display of traffic information
CFIT	Controlled flight into terrain
CL	Code label
cm	Centimetre
CNS	Communications, navigation and surveillance
CPDLC	Controller-pilot data link communications
CPR	Compact position reporting
CRC	Cyclic redundancy check
CW	Continuous wave
DAP	Downlink aircraft parameters
DCE	Data circuit-terminating equipment
DELM	Downlink extended length message
DF	Downlink format

DI	Designator identification
DME	Distance measuring equipment
DOR	Designated operational range
DPSK	Differential phase-shift keying
DR	Downlink request
DS	Data selector
DTE	Data terminal equipment
EHS	Enhanced surveillance
ELM	Extended length message
ELS	Elementary surveillance
ERP	Effective radiated power
ES	Extended squitter
E-SCAN	Electronically scanned
EUROCAE	European Organization for Civil Aviation Equipment
FDPS	Flight data processing system
FIS	Flight information service
FMS	Flight management system
FOD	Foreign object debris
FOM	Figure of merit
FPPS	Flight plan processing system
FRN	Field reference number
FRUIT	False replies from unsynchronized interrogator transmissions in time
FSPEC	Field specification
FS	Flight status
ft	Foot
FUA	Flexible use of airspace
FX	Field extension
GANP	Global Air Navigation Plan
GBSNs	Ground-based safety nets
GDLP	Ground data link processor
GDOP	Geometric dilution of precision
GICB	Ground-initiated Comm-B
GNSS	Global navigation satellite system
HDOP	Horizontal dilution of precision
HF	High frequency
HME	Height monitoring equipment
HMI	Human-machine interface
hPa	Hectopascal
HRP	Horizontal radiation pattern
IC	Interrogator code
ID	Identification (as in aircraft identification)
IDS	Identifier designator subfield
IF	Intermediate frequency
IFF	Identification friend or foe
IFR	Instrument flight rules
II	Interrogator identifier
IIS	Interrogator identifier subfield
IMC	Instrument meteorological conditions
IRF	Interrogator repetition frequency
ISLS	Interrogator side-lobe suppression
I ² SLS	Improved interrogator side-lobe suppression
ISO	International Organization for Standardization

km	Kilometre
kt	Knot
LOS	Lockout subfield
LVA	Large vertical aperture
m	Metre
MA	Message Comm-A
MB	Message Comm-B
MBS	Multisite Comm-B subfield
MC	Message Comm-C
MD	Message Comm-D
MDN	MSP downlink
MES	Multisite ELM subfield
MHz	Megahertz
MIP	Mode Interface pattern
MLAT	Multilateration
ms	Millisecond
MSAW	Minimum safe altitude warning
MSL	Mean sea level
MSO	Message start opportunity
MSP	Mode S specific protocol
MSPSR	Multistatic primary surveillance radar
MSSR	Monopulse secondary surveillance radar
MTL	Minimum triggering level
MUP	MSP uplink
NC	Number of C-segment
NIC	Navigation integrity category
NM	Nautical mile
ns	nanosecond
NUC	Navigation uncertainty category
OBA	Off-boresight angle
OSI	Open system interconnection
PANS	Procedures for Air Navigation Services
PAR	Precision approach radar
PARROT	Position adjustable range reference orientation transponder
PBN	Performance-based navigation
PC	Protocol (as in protocol field)
PD	Probability of detection
PI	Parity/interrogator identifier
PPI	Plan position indicator
PR	Probability of reply
PRF	Pulse repetition frequency
PRM	Precision runway monitor
PSR	Primary surveillance radar
RA	Resolution advisory
RDPS	Radar data processing system
RF	Radio frequency
RFI	Radio frequency interference
RL	Reply length
RMS	Root mean square
RNP	Required Navigation Performance
RoF	Radio-over-fiber
RPAS	Remotely piloted aircraft system

RR	Reply request
RRS	Reply request subfield
RSLS	Receiver side-lobe suppression
RSS	Reservation status subfield
RVSM	Reduced vertical separation minimum
s	Second
SAC	System area code
SD	Special designator
SDP	Surveillance data processing
SI	Surveillance identifier
SIC	System identification code
SIL	Surveillance integrity level
SLM	Standard length message
SLS	Side-lobe suppression
SMR	Surface movement radar
SNPA	Subnetwork point of attachment
SNR	Signal-to-noise ratio
SPI	Special position identification
SR	Service request
SRS	Segment request subfield
SSE	Specific services entity
SSR	Secondary surveillance radar
STC	Sensitivity time control
STCA	Short-term conflict alert
SARPs	Standards and Recommended Practices
SVC	Switched vertical circuit
TA	Traffic advisory
TACAN	Tactical air navigation
TAS	Transmission acknowledgement subfield
TCAS	Traffic alert and collision avoidance system
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TCS	Type control subfield
TDMA	Time division multiple access
TDOA	Time difference of arrival
TDOP	Time dilution of precision
TIS	Traffic information service
TIS-B	Traffic information service — broadcast
TOA	Time of arrival
TRS	Transmission rate subfield
UA	Unmanned aircraft
UAP	User application profile
UAS	Unmanned aircraft system
UAT	Universal access transceiver
UDP	User datagram protocol
UF	Uplink format
UM	Utility message
UTC	Coordinated Universal Time
VDLM4	VHF digital link Mode 4
VDOP	Vertical dilution of precision
VFR	Visual flight rules
VHF	Very high frequency
VRP	Vertical radiation pattern

VS	Vertical status
VSWR	Voltage standing wave ratio
WAM	Wide area multilateration
WGS-84	World Geodetic System - 1984

REFERENCES

ICAO

Annex 10 — *Aeronautical Telecommunications*, Volume III — *Communication Systems*, Part I — *Digital Data Communication Systems* and Part II — *Voice Communication Systems*; and Volume IV — *Surveillance and Collision Avoidance Systems*

Annex 11 — *Air Traffic Services*

Annex 13 — *Aircraft Accident and Incident Investigation*

Annex 19 — *Safety Management*

Doc 4444 — *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management (PANS-ATM)*

Doc 8071 — *Manual on Testing of Radio Navigation Aids*, Volume III — *Testing of Surveillance Radar Systems*

Doc 8168 — *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Aircraft Operations (PANS-OPS)*

Doc 8585 — *Designators for Aircraft Operating Agencies, Aeronautical Authorities and Services*

Doc 9476 — *Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS)*

Doc 9816 — *Manual on VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 4*

Doc 9830 — *Advanced Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (A-SMGCS) Manual*

Doc 9859 — *Safety Management Manual (SMM)*

Doc 9861 — *Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT)*

Doc 9863 — *Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS) Manual*

Doc 9871 — *Technical Provisions for Mode S Services and Extended Squitter*

European Organization for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE)

EUROCAE ED-73C, *MOPS for Secondary Surveillance Radar Mode S Transponders*

EUROCAE ED-117, *MOPS for Mode S Multilateration Systems for Use in A-SMGCS*

EUROCAE ED-142, *Technical Specifications for Wide Area Multilateration System (WAM)*

RTCA

RTCA/DO-181D, *Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System/Mode Select (ATCRBS/Mode S) Airborne Equipment*

RTCA/DO-260, *Minimum Operational Performance Standards for 1 090 MHz Automatic Dependent Surveillance — Broadcast (ADS-B)*

RTCA/DO-260A, *Minimum Operational Performance Standards for 1 090 MHz Extended Squitter Automatic Dependent Surveillance — Broadcast (ADS-B) and Traffic Information Services — Broadcast (TIS-B)*

Others

EUROCONTROL Study P726D005, "Use of Squitter to Mitigate IC Conflicts", A. Burrage et al, 27 July 2007.

MIT LL Project Report ATC-248, "Six-Sector Antenna for the GPS-Squitter En-Route Ground Station" M.L. Burrows, 31 May 1996.

Chapter 1

INTRODUCTION

1.1 OVERVIEW

1.1.1 Air traffic is growing at a significant rate. There is also an increasing demand for more operating flexibility to improve aircraft efficiency and to reduce the impact of air travel on the environment. Improved tools are required to safely manage increasing levels and complexity of air traffic. Aeronautical surveillance is one such important tool in the air traffic management (ATM) process.

1.1.2 This manual has been produced as a reference document on aeronautical surveillance for ATM purposes. The chapters introduce the topic and should leave the reader with a good understanding of how aeronautical surveillance is applied in the ATM process. The chapters contain:

- a) an explanation of aeronautical surveillance;
- b) the identification of operational services supported by surveillance;
- c) guidance on performance of a surveillance system;
- d) a description of the different components of an air-ground surveillance system;
- e) a description of the different components of an air-air surveillance system; and
- f) a discussion on issues related to deployment of surveillance systems.

1.1.3 The appendices contain detailed information on the main topics covered in the chapters. Other useful documents are referenced in the document and also listed in the References section.

1.2 THE NEED FOR AERONAUTICAL SURVEILLANCE

1.2.1 Surveillance plays an important role in ATM. The ability to accurately determine, track and update the position of aircraft has a direct influence on the minimum distances by which aircraft must be separated (i.e. separation standards), and therefore on how efficiently a given airspace may be utilized.

1.2.2 In areas without electronic surveillance, where ATM is reliant on pilots reporting their position verbally, aircraft have to be separated by relatively large distances to account for the uncertainty in the reported position because of the delivery delay and the low rate at which the information is updated.

1.2.3 Conversely, in areas where electronic surveillance systems are used, and aircraft positions are updated frequently, the airspace can be used more efficiently by safely accommodating a higher density of aircraft through reduced separation minima. In this way the surveillance function provides an indication of any unexpected aircraft movements and is an important safety function.

1.2.4 Accurate surveillance can be used as the basis for automated alerting systems. The ability to accurately track aircraft enables air traffic control (ATC) to be alerted when an aircraft is detected to deviate from its assigned altitude or route or when the future positions of two or more aircraft are predicted to fall below minimum acceptable separation standards. Alerts may also be provided when the aircraft strays below the minimum safe altitude or enters a restricted area.

1.2.5 The existing fixed route structure provides increased certainty of aircraft movements making it easier for controllers to manage air traffic. With improved navigation performance on board aircraft, airspace users are demanding greater flexibility to determine the most efficient routes to satisfy their operating conditions. There is a push for restrictions associated with flying along fixed routes to be lifted. In such an environment, accurate surveillance is required to assist controllers in the detection and resolution of any potential conflicts associated with the flexible use of airspace, which will result in a more dynamic environment.

Chapter 2

SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM DEFINITION

2.1 SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM PURPOSE AND SCOPE

2.1.1 An aeronautical surveillance system provides the aircraft position and other related information to ATM and/or airborne users. In most cases, an aeronautical surveillance system provides its user with knowledge of “who” is “where” and “when.” Other information provided may include horizontal and vertical speed data, identifying characteristics or intent. The required data and its technical performance parameters are specific to the application that is being used. As a minimum, the aeronautical surveillance system provides position information on aircraft or vehicles at a known time.

2.1.2 Requirements for ATS surveillance systems are contained in the *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management* (PANS-ATM, Doc 4444), Chapters 6 and 8. Those requirements should be used in conjunction with the technical guidance material contained in this document for proper planning and implementation of surveillance systems.

2.1.3 The aeronautical surveillance system is comprised of several elements which will be operated based on the requirements of a specific application. Neither the applications nor the end-users are part of the aeronautical surveillance system.

2.1.4 Figure 2-1 illustrates a generic functional surveillance system. The boundary of the surveillance system is at the application interface, i.e. the point where the surveillance system makes the surveillance information available for use and where its performance is evaluated.

2.2 SURVEILLANCE CATEGORIES

2.2.1 Independent non-cooperative surveillance

The aircraft position is derived from measurement not using the cooperation of the remote aircraft. An example is a system using primary surveillance radar (PSR), which provides aircraft position but not identity, or any other aircraft data.

2.2.2 Independent cooperative surveillance

The position is derived from measurements performed by a local surveillance subsystem using aircraft transmissions (see Figure 2-1). Aircraft-derived information (e.g. barometric altitude, aircraft identity) can be provided from those transmissions.

2.2.3 Dependent cooperative surveillance

The position is derived on board the aircraft and is provided to the local surveillance subsystem along with possible additional data (e.g. aircraft identity, barometric altitude).

2.2.4 Specific surveillance schemes

Mode S ELS

2.2.4.1 Mode S ELS incorporates the capability to downlink aircraft ID (commonly referred to as flight ID) from aircraft by using the Mode S protocol. The selective addressing of aircraft used by Mode S overcomes garbling, false replies from unsynchronized interrogator transmissions in time (FRUIT) and over-interrogation (all causing radio frequency (RF) congestion) while the automatic acquisition of aircraft ID relieves the shortage of Mode A codes.

2.2.4.2 To support such operation, aircraft must be equipped with a Mode S transponder and configured in a way to permit the flight crew to set the aircraft ID for transmission by the transponder. The aircraft ID must correspond with what is specified in Item 7 of the ICAO flight plan; or when no flight plan has been filed, to the aircraft registration.

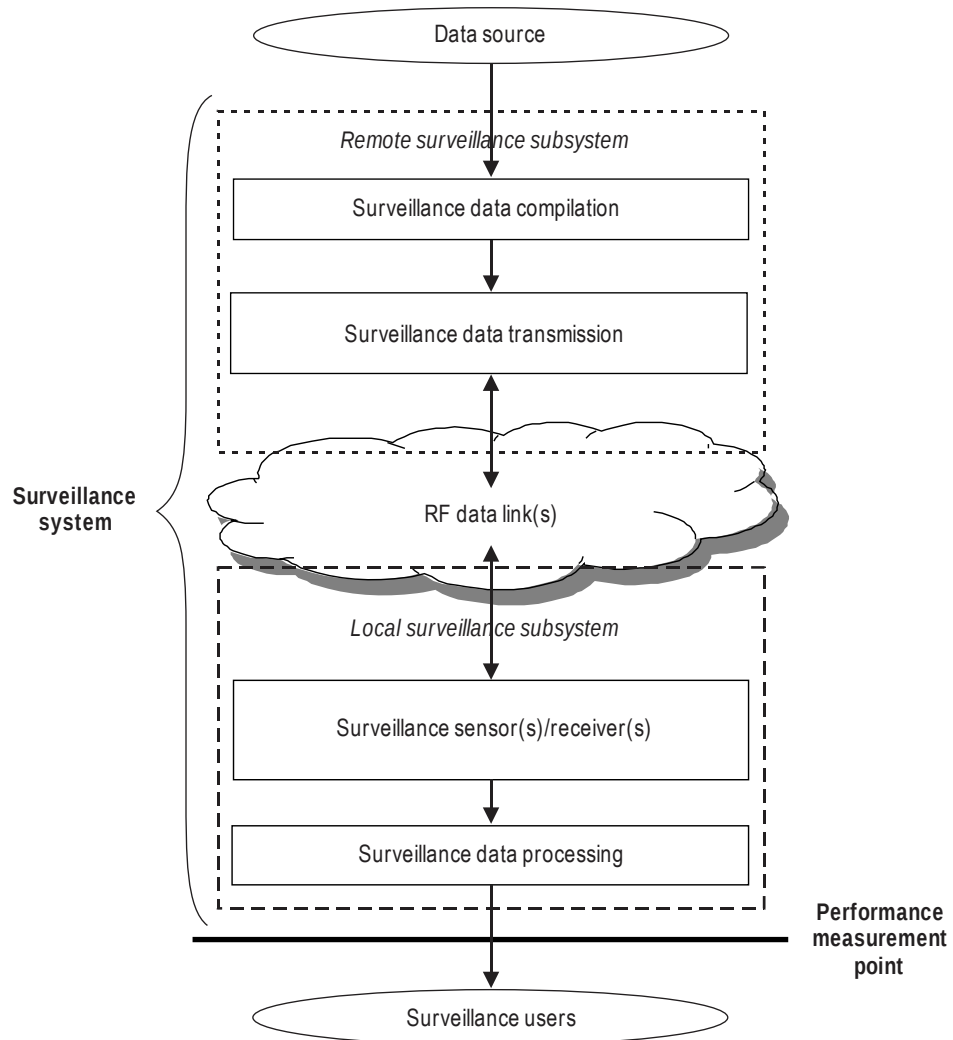
2.2.4.3 In parts of Europe, there have been mandates issued requiring that all aircraft which fly into a designated airspace will be equipped to support Mode S ELS.

Mode S EHS

2.2.4.4 Mode S EHS consists of Mode S ELS supplemented by the extraction of additional specified DAPs for use in ground ATM systems.

2.2.4.5 The provision of actual aircraft derived data, such as magnetic heading, air speed, selected altitude and vertical rate, enables controllers to better assess the separation situations, thus enhancing safety and capacity. It also helps reduce the increasing number of cases where aircraft overshoot their assigned altitudes (referred to as level busts) and improve the performance of other safety net tools.

2.2.4.6 Mode S EHS is used in designated high-density airspace in Europe where most instrument flight rules (IFR) flights are mandated to provide certain aircraft parameters.

**Figure 2-1. Surveillance system boundaries**

Chapter 3

APPLICATIONS OF AIR TRAFFIC SURVEILLANCE

3.1 INTRODUCTION

3.1.1 Aeronautical surveillance systems

3.1.1.1 Aeronautical surveillance systems are designed to be used by ATS to improve capacity and to enhance safety. A discussion of the type of surveillance required to support each of these applications is presented in 3.1.2 to 3.1.7. Details of these surveillance systems are presented in Chapter 5.

3.1.1.2 In support of applications, the ATS surveillance system should provide for a continuously updated presentation of surveillance information, including position indications. It shall be noted that the following discussion presents general ideas, rather than prescribing firm surveillance requirements for any service. Care must be exercised to match the surveillance system to the environment and operational needs. Aircraft equipage also needs to be considered.

3.1.2 Area control service

3.1.2.1 Control areas may encompass large volumes of airspace including oceanic areas where aircraft are well established on their flight paths and are typically in cruise mode. Aircraft generally fly at high speeds in this phase. Changes in altitude and en-route are infrequent but may be required because of conflicting traffic, weather or for aircraft operating efficiency. Communication between controllers and flight crew is not as frequent as in other flight phases.

3.1.2.2 A surveillance system for area control typically needs to provide surveillance over large volumes of airspace including remote areas where ground infrastructure may be limited or non-existent. The surveillance system should support controller safety net alerts such as cleared level monitoring, route adherence monitoring and restricted area monitoring. The provision of medium-term conflict detection tools is desirable. Position updates may not need to be as frequent as in other environments.

3.1.2.3 Surveillance systems suitable for area control include automatic dependent surveillance — contract (ADS-C), particularly in oceanic and remote areas, secondary surveillance radar (SSR), wide area multilateration (WAM) and automatic dependent surveillance — broadcast (ADS-B). In some installations long-range primary radars are collocated with the SSR. The architecture of area control surveillance is illustrated in Figure 3-1.

3.1.3 Approach control service

3.1.3.1 Approach control service is provided to controlled flights arriving or departing from one or more aerodromes. Vectoring may be performed at higher traffic density levels and changes in altitude and heading are frequent. Arriving traffic may be placed in holding patterns when demand for services exceeds the aerodrome or airspace capacity.

3.1.3.2 In this environment, the role of ATM is to manage the flow of traffic to and from the aerodrome and to separate arriving traffic from departing traffic. Aircraft are typically separated by lesser minima than in the case of area control. Aircraft speeds are lower than in the en-route phase of flight.

3.1.3.3 Surveillance systems suitable for approach control include primary radar, SSR, multilateration (WAM) and

ADS-B. Electronically scanned antennas are sometimes used for surveillance of aircraft on approach to closely spaced parallel runways.

3.1.4 Aerodrome control service

3.1.4.1 This service is, inter alia, responsible for preventing collisions between aircraft in the vicinity of the aerodrome, between aircraft and vehicles in the manoeuvring area and between aircraft landing and taking off.

3.1.4.2 Visual sighting of aircraft from the control tower is the primary means of determining position. During busy periods and in low visibility conditions, a surveillance system may be used to improve the safety and efficiency of aerodrome operations.

3.1.4.3 A surveillance system supporting an aerodrome control service needs to have a high degree of accuracy to determine the location of targets on relatively narrow runways and taxiways. It also needs a high update rate in order to present a current picture in a rapidly changing environment.

3.1.4.4 The surveillance system should have the ability to detect both aircraft and vehicles and to distinguish between closely spaced targets. A means of detecting non-cooperative targets may be required. Aircraft and vehicles need to be clearly labelled on controller displays to avoid confusion. The surveillance system should support runway incursion monitoring and other alerting tools.

3.1.4.5 Surveillance systems suitable for aerodrome control include primary radar, multilateration and ADS-B. Other surveillance systems such as millimetre wave sensors, video systems, induction loops and microwave barriers can be used for limited-zone coverage or in cluster to provide wider coverage.

Advanced — Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (A-SMGCS)

3.1.4.6 A-SMGCS is the adopted term for the concept of an integrated aerodrome surface movement management system. Such a conceptual system is required to improve ground movement safety and efficiency in line with the projected aviation growth in the near future.

3.1.4.7 The most fundamental function for any A-SMGCS is the surveillance of the aerodrome surface, together with the initial and final stages of flight. The objective is that both identity and position of all traffic should be provided, with an adequate update rate to give a continuous flow of traffic information and to derive speed and direction, if required. To achieve this objective a system providing cooperative surveillance is likely to be required.

3.1.4.8 For cooperative surveillance, targets need to be equipped with a means of communicating position and usually identity information to the A-SMGCS. It is also essential that some means of surveillance be available to enable the system to detect non-cooperative targets including obstacles and foreign object debris (FOD).

3.1.4.9 The surveillance element for an A-SMGCS usually comprises several sensor systems which combine the information by a data fusion process to provide a comprehensive surveillance package. After providing a suitable surveillance system, the A-SMGCS must use the derived information to monitor the situation on the aerodrome surface and provide alerts when particular situations are detected. In its simplest form, an air traffic controller carries out the monitoring and alerting function using surveillance information presented on a situation display.

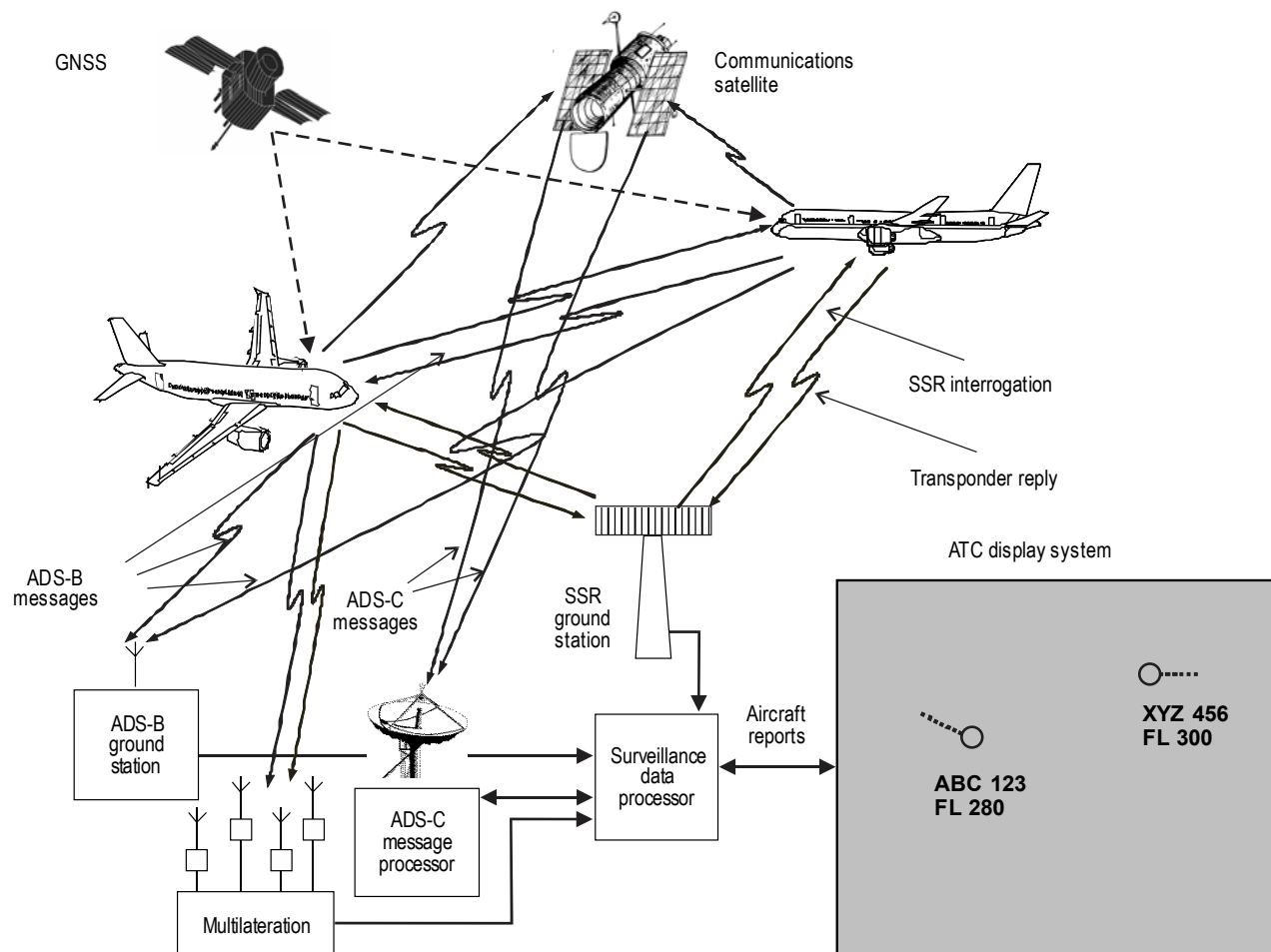


Figure 3-1. Area control surveillance architecture

3.1.4.10 For more complex A-SMGCS, automated situation monitoring and alerting are provided by the system that detects runway incursions, taxiway alert situations and other hazardous scenarios, and generates alerts to the controller and possibly directly to the involved pilots and/or vehicle drivers. Where the system includes automated route planning, the monitoring/alerting function needs to compare the actual route of an aircraft or vehicle with its planned route and to give an alert in the case of non-conformance.

3.1.4.11 In more elementary systems, guidance of movements on the aerodrome surface is manually performed by controllers using the surveillance and monitoring/alerting elements of A-SMGCS and by giving instructions or manually operating stop bars and taxiway lights. In more complex systems, fully or partially automated guidance is provided, with the A-SMGCS having the ability to automatically control taxiway lights, stop bars and other guidance aids.

3.1.4.12 An A-SMGCS differs from an SMGCS in that it provides full service over a much wider range of weather conditions, traffic density and aerodrome layouts. More information can be found in the *Manual of Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (SMGCS)* (Doc 9476) and the *Advanced Surface Movement Guidance and Control Systems (A-SMGCS) Manual* (Doc 9830).

Detection of FOD

3.1.4.13 FOD is a day-to-day concern for airport operators. Parts fall off aircraft; tools fall off service vehicles; litter blows onto runways; and scavengers can be attracted to bird carcasses. All these things can put an aircraft at risk.

3.1.4.14 Airport operators perform regular runway inspections, typically from a vehicle moving at a relatively high speed, e.g. up to 80 km/h. It is recognized that at this speed small items will not be seen but inspecting the runway more slowly, or more frequently, is not practical at many aerodromes.

3.1.4.15 The detection of obstructions is part of the A-SMGCS concept and will bring significant safety benefits, particularly to runway operations. Systems suitable for FOD detection include millimetre wave radars, possibly supplemented by cameras for identification.

Precision Runway Monitor (PRM)

3.1.4.16 During IMC, airports with parallel runways spaced less than 1 310 m (4 300 ft) apart cannot conduct independent simultaneous operations based only on approach control quality surveillance. This results in decreased capacity during inclement weather.

3.1.4.17 The major limitation of aerodrome surveillance is update rate, although accuracy may also be an issue. Update rates of once per 4 or 5 seconds are typical for aerodrome use. Radars with monopulse capability provide an accuracy of one milliradian, but older radars provide less accuracy.

3.1.4.18 In order to detect the onset of an acceleration that may lead to a conflict with aircraft on an approach to an adjacent runway, surveillance in support of PRM requires higher accuracy, typically one milliradian (or 0.06 degrees (one sigma)); and an update period of 2.5 seconds or less, together with a high resolution display providing position prediction and deviation alert. Requirements for PRM are contained in PANS-ATM, Chapter 6.

3.1.4.19 Current implementations of surveillance systems for PRM are based on electronically scanned (e-scan) antennas. Multilateration (MLAT) systems are being implemented as an alternative for PRM systems.

Precision approach

3.1.4.20 A surveillance system can be used to guide aircraft in final approach to runway under degraded weather conditions. The surveillance system must provide very high performance and information on aircraft altitude in order to guide the aircraft along a glide path to the runway. This is generally supported by the use of specific radar known as precision approach radar (PAR). This application remains in use at some military air bases. There are current investigations regarding the possible use of multilateration to support this application.

Flight Information Service (FIS)

3.1.4.21 FIS is a service provided for the purpose of giving advice and information useful for the safe and efficient conduct of flights (e.g. information on nearby or crossing traffic). Surveillance data can support the FIS. Service support includes the support of a traffic data display.

3.1.5 Alerting service

3.1.5.1 Alerting service is a service that provides an indication of unsafe events, as well as notification to appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid, and assists such organizations as required.

3.1.5.2 Surveillance data should be presented in a manner to support alerting service and, if necessary, search and rescue. This could include a display of position data and data recording. Replay of recorded data should be possible on maps or other means to extract absolute position information.

3.1.5.3 In addition to the general alerting service support, surveillance systems, as part of an A-SMGCS, should be able to track and support guidance to emergency vehicles.

3.1.6 Air TA service

Air traffic advisory (TA) service is provided to make information on collision hazards more effective in the provision of FIS and may be provided to aircraft conducting IFR flights in advisory airspace. There are no special surveillance requirements for air TA service since it can operate with the same quality of surveillance data that supports operations.

3.1.7 Other applications

Surveillance systems are also used in support of other applications such as:

- a) airborne safety nets;
- b) height monitoring; or
- c) noise monitoring.

3.2 AIRCRAFT IDENTITY

3.2.1 Need for identification

The labelling of targets on a display allows each aircraft to be individually identified. The desired scheme is the use of aircraft ID or radio call sign. The call sign is used in very high frequency (VHF) or high frequency (HF) radio voice communications and in controller-pilot data link communications (CPDLC).

3.2.2 Mode A identity code

3.2.2.1 Traditionally, an SSR Mode A code is assigned to a flight prior to departure or on initial entry into a certain defined airspace. The code is entered into the transponder by the pilot. The surveillance sensor (e.g. SSR or MLAT) tracks the aircraft on the basis of this code. The Mode A code is also recorded in the corresponding flight plan for the aircraft. The ATM system obtains the Mode A code and aircraft track from the surveillance system and searches for the flight plan with a matching code. Once the flight plan is found, the processing system reads the aircraft ID in the flight plan and uses this information to label the aircraft track on the controller's screen. The correlation of the surveillance track with the flight plan also allows the controller to access flight data associated with the aircraft depicted on the controller's display system. The Mode A code is released once the aircraft reaches its destination or leaves the respective airspace.

3.2.2.2 There are a total of 4 096 Mode A codes, although there are fewer than this number available for use since some are assigned for special purposes. For example, flights for which no flight plans are logged are normally assigned fixed codes such as 1 200, 2 000 or 7 000, depending on regional agreement. The available number of codes imposes constraints in many parts of the world. Agreements at national or regional levels have therefore been established for the efficient utilization of codes.

3.2.3 Aircraft ID

With the advent of Mode S radar and ADS-B, there are means to do away with the use of Mode A codes. Mode S radar, MLAT and ADS-B allow the aircraft ID to be obtained directly from the aircraft. This overcomes the aforementioned shortage and constraints of Mode A codes. It also means that flights for which no flight plan is logged may also be displayed with aircraft ID, allowing for easier identification.

3.3 OPERATIONAL USE OF SURVEILLANCE DATA

3.3.1 In addition to the technical considerations, operational requirements need to be fulfilled in order for air traffic controllers to provide services based on the information from the surveillance system. Aircraft need to be appropriately equipped, air traffic controllers and flight crews need to be adequately trained and suitable standards and procedures need to be employed. Provisions and procedures for the safe management of air traffic are detailed in the PANS-ATM. Complementary procedures for pilots and flight crew are the subject of *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Aircraft Operations* (PANS-OPS, Doc 8168).

3.3.2 Since many surveillance systems rely on electronic means for critical parts of their operation, depending on the outcome of a security analysis, protection of the surveillance data from **malicious electronic attack** or **unlawful interference must be made**. Recommended measures to be taken against those malicious threats include:

a) **Anti-spoofing**

Some surveillance systems such as SSR and ADS-B are vulnerable to spoofing. ATM automation systems can reduce this vulnerability by correlating targets with **other data** such as **flight data**, **flight profiles** within the **flight data processing** system and **overlapping** surveillance coverage from **other surveillance sources**, such as radar and multilateration, where available.

ATC further reduces the vulnerability by correlating the surveillance picture with voice communication, inter-centre coordination, etc. to evaluate the situation.

One of the measures to deal with excessive spoofing is to disconnect the affected ADS-B ground station or radar and treat the event as identical to ground equipment failure.

Note. — This measure can also be used in the event of alteration or deletion of ADS-B messages.

b) Anti-jamming

Most surveillance systems are vulnerable to jamming. However, since the effect is identical to ground station failure, utilization of the ground station failure procedures is recommended to manage this event.

Chapter 4

TECHNICAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS

4.1 PURPOSE

4.1.1 The **most fundamental** function of an aeronautical surveillance system is to provide an aircraft ID and an **accurate estimate of its position and altitude at a given time.** The estimated position needs to be updated at a rate commensurate with the intended application.

4.1.2 **Depending on the application** and the operational environment, there may be other requirements such as the need for aircraft velocity or short-term intention. The essential elements of performance are the type of surveillance data and their quality. Normally, the way data are presented to the user is not part of the performance specification of the surveillance system.

4.1.3 It shall be noted that technical performance requirements for surveillance systems are insufficient to authorize a given operational separation. There are other factors that must be duly considered and analysed as part of the **safety assessment** (e.g. Human Factors, procedures, airspace structure and traffic density).

4.2 DEFINITION OF PARAMETERS CONTRIBUTING TO QUALITY OF SERVICES

- a) **Data item:** the surveillance information (e.g. position, identity or intent) that the surveillance system is required to deliver;
- b) **Accuracy:** applicable to a data item that is elaborated on by the system (e.g. measured and/or calculated). It is the degree of conformity of the elaborated value of a data item with its actual value at the time the data item is used;
- c) **Data integrity:** applicable to a data item that is transferred by the system (provided externally by another system and forwarded without modification to another system, e.g. Mode A code, Mode C code). It is the degree of undetected (at system level) non-conformity of the input value of the data item with its output value. In that case the system is only a communication medium so it must not modify the value of the data item;
- d) **Availability:** the probability that the required surveillance information will be provided to the end-users;
- e) **Continuity:** the probability of the surveillance service to perform its intended function without unscheduled interruptions during intended operation;
- f) **Reliability:** a function of the frequency with which failures occur within the system. The probability that the system will perform its function within defined performance limits for a specified period under given operating conditions;

- g) **Update rate**: the time difference between two information reports related to the same A/V and to the same type of information;
- h) **Integrity (system)**: the probability, for a specified period, of an undetected failure of a functional element that results in erroneous surveillance information to the end-user;
- i) **Integrity (data)**: defined relative to the probability that an error larger than a certain threshold in the information is undetected (i.e. not alerted) for longer than a time to alert threshold; and
- j) **Coverage**: the volume of airspace that will be covered by the surveillance system and within which the surveillance system performance parameters meet the requirements.

4.3 OTHER PERFORMANCE-RELATED ISSUES

4.3.1 **Definition of surveillance system performance must be independent of technology as much as possible.** Such an approach allows more efficient system design based on the operational environment and with available surveillance techniques.

4.3.2 For traceability, the **surveillance system performance must be defined for a given supported application.** When a surveillance system is used to support a number of different applications, the **most stringent requirements** must be used. Examples of surveillance system performance required for supporting some common applications are shown in Appendix A.

4.3.3 It must be verified that a surveillance system meets the requirements prior to being put into operational service. **The environment in which the system operates can change over time.** For example, the coverage may be impacted by new obstructions, or traffic density may increase. Also, some components may degrade over time. It is therefore important to put measures in place to ensure continued compliance to performance requirements. Examples of such measures are:

- a) periodically verifying the performance of the system. The initial verification testing can be used as a baseline to compare against; or
- b) ensuring that the surveillance system has sufficient built-in tests and external monitoring features to continuously demonstrate that the performance requirements are being met.

It is recommended that periodic testing be conducted to safeguard against undetected changes to the environment.

Chapter 5

AIR-GROUND SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS

5.1 COMPONENTS OF AN AERONAUTICAL SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM

5.1.1 The aeronautical surveillance system may be broadly divided into four parts:

- a) a “remote surveillance subsystem” installed within the target under surveillance, which has two main functions: to collect the data from different on-board sensors/interfaces and to transmit the data to other parts of the system or to other users;
- b) a sensor system that receives and collects surveillance information about targets under surveillance;
- c) a communication system which connects the sensor systems to a surveillance data processing (SDP) system and allows transfer of the surveillance data. Ground communication may also support control and monitoring of the sensor; and
- d) An SDP system that:
 - 1) combines the data received from the different sensors in one data stream;
 - 2) optionally integrates the surveillance data with other information (e.g. flight information); and
 - 3) provides/distributes the data to the users in a specified manner removing the possible different specificities of the different types of sensors.

5.1.2 The sensor is a significant part of the aeronautical surveillance system. It provides surveillance information which is then presented to air traffic controllers. An overview of sensors currently used in the implementation of aeronautical surveillance applications is presented below.

5.2 NON-COOPERATIVE SENSOR

5.2.1 PSR

PSR overview

5.2.1.1 PSR works by detecting reflections to transmitted pulses of RF energy. The PSR ground station typically consists of a transmitter, receiver and rotating antenna. The system transmits the pulses and then detects and processes the received reflections. The slant range of the target is determined by measuring the time from transmission of the signal to reception of the reflected pulses. The bearing of the target is determined by noting the position of the rotating antenna when the reflected pulses are received. Reflections are obtained from targets of interest and fixed objects (e.g. buildings) which tend to create clutter. Special processing techniques are used to remove the clutter. A basic diagram of PSR is shown in Figure 5-1.

5.2.1.2 PSR has not been standardized by ICAO.

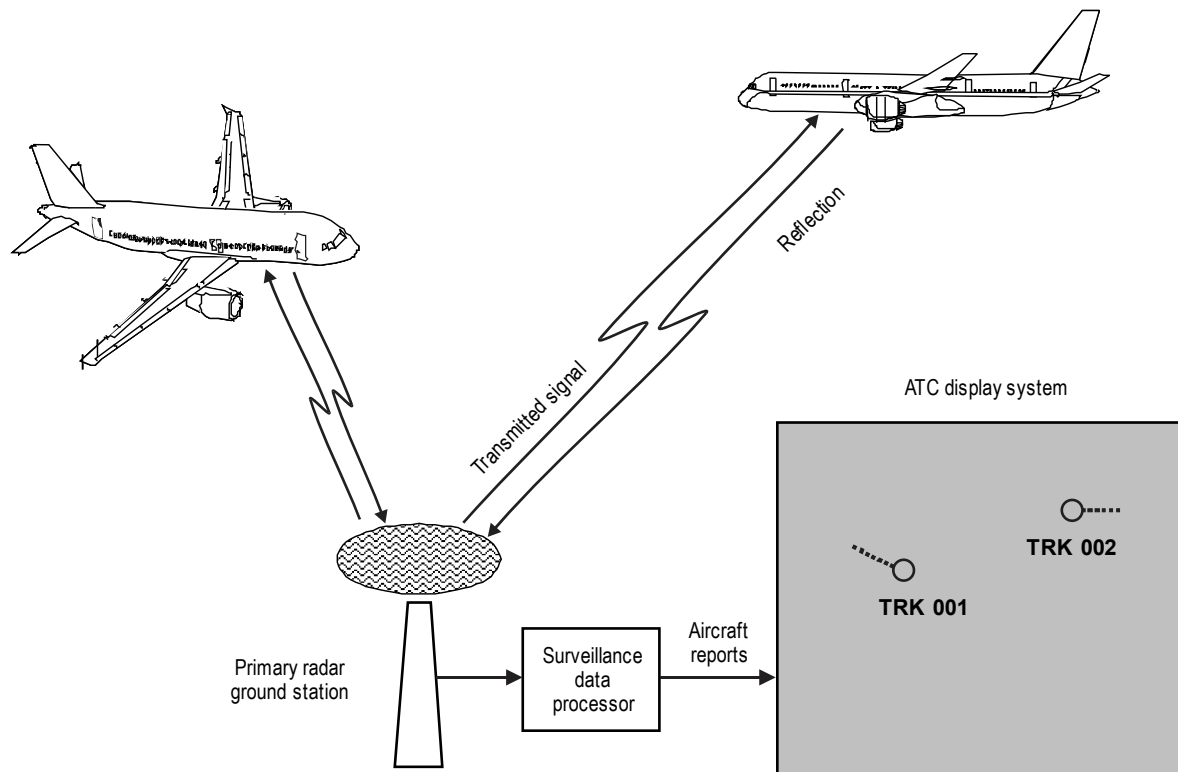


Figure 5-1. PSR

PSR applications

5.2.1.3 In the 1960s and 1970s, PSR was widely used for en-route surveillance. From the late 1970s many air navigation service providers decided to discontinue use of PSR for that application mainly because of its high cost and inability to provide identification, which became more important with increasing traffic densities. Also, mandatory requirements for aircraft to carry transponders in airspace with high traffic meant that surveillance could be provided using SSR. In many countries the use of PSR is retained for defence or for weather-monitoring purposes rather than for the provision of civil ATC services.

5.2.1.4 PSR remains a useful tool in busy terminal areas where it provides surveillance of aircraft not equipped with a transponder (intruder detection). The future use of traditional PSR is expected to decrease mainly due to widespread transponder carriage and the introduction of other surveillance technologies.

5.2.1.5 PSR is also used in airport surface surveillance applications to detect objects that stray onto the active areas of the airport and those aircraft with transponders that are configured to ignore SSR interrogations when on the ground.

5.2.1.6 Presently, PSR is generally not the main means of providing surveillance because of its inability to provide target identification. However, this can be mitigated to some extent (e.g. by voice communication and specific procedures).

PSR characteristics

5.2.1.7 The capabilities of PSR are:

- a) determination of the target's position without requiring any on-board equipment (e.g. a transponder); however, the aircraft must be constructed of a material that reflects the radio wave; and
- b) detection of non-aircraft objects such as objects that interfere with protected areas of an airport; or
- c) detection of meteorological conditions; for example, it can be configured to provide meteorological information by processing reflections from precipitation.

5.2.1.8 The limitations of PSR are:

- a) it has problems resolving closely spaced targets; track swaps sometimes occur when targets pass close to each other;
- b) it cannot uniquely identify targets in a manner required by ATC (i.e. by the radio call sign);
- c) it does not determine the altitude of targets¹;
- d) it requires the transmission of high-power pulses to overcome the two-way path loss (from transmitter to target and back);
- e) it can suffer from the high rate of false detections; and
- f) its performance is dependent on the radar cross section of the target (a function of size and material).

Appendix B contains more detailed information on PSRs.

1. Some primary radars (height finding or 3-D radars) are able to determine the aircraft's height, although these systems tend to be expensive and the accuracy in determining height does not meet the requirements necessary for ATC use.

5.3 INDEPENDENT COOPERATIVE SENSOR SYSTEMS

5.3.1 SSR

SSR overview

5.3.1.1 The SSR system consists of two main elements:

- a) a ground-based interrogator/receiver (also called the radar); and
- b) an aircraft transponder.

5.3.1.2 The ground station typically consists of a rotating antenna. The rotation rate determines how often the information is updated. The aircraft's transponder responds to interrogations from the ground station enabling the aircraft's range and bearing from the ground station to be determined. The transponder is allowed a fixed delay within which to decode the interrogation and prepare the reply for transmission. This fixed delay is taken into account by the ground sensor when processing the reply.

5.3.1.3 The components of SSR are illustrated in Figure 5-2. SSR measures aircraft range and bearing independently. Like PSR, the range is determined by measuring the time it takes to receive a reply to the corresponding interrogation signal. The bearing of the aircraft from the radar is determined by measuring the position of the rotating antenna when the reply is received. The range accuracy is generally constant within the coverage volume. However the bearing, being an angular measurement, is less accurate for aircraft that are further away from the radar.

5.3.1.4 SSR evolved from military applications that required an aircraft to be identified as friendly or hostile (known as identification friend or foe (IFF)). The Mode A/C service was subsequently developed for civil aviation. Since then, SSR has been significantly enhanced to include the Mode S service. SSR shares the frequencies 1 030 MHz for interrogations and 1 090 MHz for replies with other systems. Appendices C, D and E contain a detailed description of SSR techniques and performance. Appendix M contains more information on relevant radio interference issues.

5.3.1.5 Transponders installed at known locations on the ground are often used to confirm that the radar is operating correctly. These transponders are called site monitors or position adjustable range reference orientation transponders (PARROT's). The system is usually configured to generate an alert if the radar fails to receive a reply from the site monitor or reports its position outside a predefined area centred on its true position.

5.3.2 SSR Mode A/C

5.3.2.1 Mode A/C transponders provide an identity (Mode A) code and pressure altitude (Mode C) code in response to radar interrogations. The spacing of the interrogation pulses determines the mode and hence controls the transponder response. The Mode A identity code, in the form of a four-digit octal number, is assigned by ATC and entered into the transponder by the flight crew. The transponder receives altitude from an on-board pressure altitude encoder or air data computer.

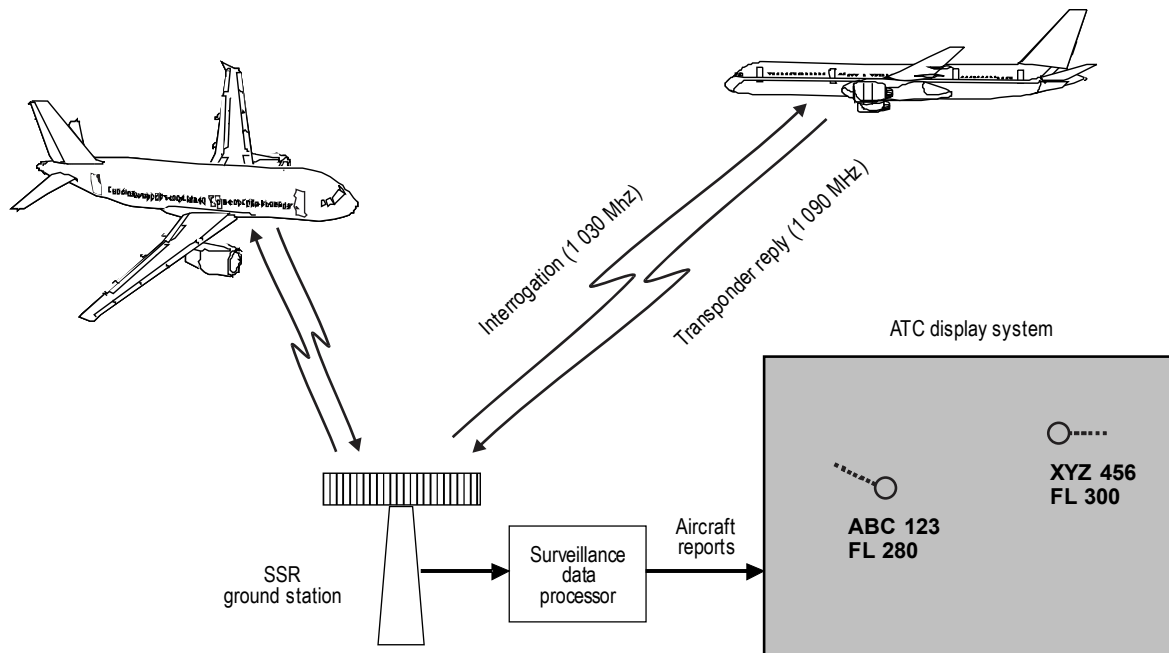


Figure 5-2. SSR

SSR Mode A/C characteristics

5.3.2.2 The capabilities of the SSR Mode A/C system include:

- a) determination of target's identity and pressure altitude, in addition to range and bearing;
- b) signalling emergencies such as loss of radio communications or unlawful interference by the selection of special Mode A codes reserved for these purposes; and
- c) long-range coverage since the interrogation and reply signals only need to overcome the one-way path loss between the transmitter and the receiver.

5.3.2.3 The limitations of SSR Mode A/C systems are:

- a) aircraft have to be equipped with a functioning transponder;
- b) there are problems detecting a number of closely spaced targets because of overlapping replies;
- c) there is no inherent method of detecting data errors in interrogation or reply signals;
- d) limited airborne information (identity and altitude) can be downlinked; and
- e) accuracy is limited by the transponder delay tolerance, thus it is not useable for aerodrome surveillance.

5.3.2.4 On the basis of SSR data provided to the radar processing systems, aircraft ground speed, vertical speed and predicted future can be calculated.

5.3.3 SSR Mode S

SSR Mode S overview

5.3.3.1 Mode S allows selective addressing of aircraft through the use of a 24-bit aircraft address that uniquely identifies each aircraft and has a two-way data link between the ground station and aircraft for the exchange of information. It was designed to be backward compatible with, and supports all functions of, Mode A/C. Appendix F shows details of Mode S and Mode A/C compatibility.

5.3.3.2 The Mode S data link allows additional information such as airspeed, heading, ground speed, track angle, track angle rate vertical rate and roll angle to be obtained from the aircraft. Such aircraft derived data may be used to improve the tracking of the aircraft and to alleviate the need for radio calls for obtaining the information. Other information that may be obtained via the Mode S data link includes the aircraft ID, the altitude selected by the flight crew on the aircraft's mode control panel and an ACAS RA report. Appendix I shows details of Mode S specific services.

5.3.3.3 In parts of Europe, there have been mandates issued requiring all aircraft that fly into designated airspace to be equipped with a Mode S transponder capable of supplying aircraft derived data. These requirements are known as elementary surveillance (ELS) and enhanced surveillance (EHS); mandates have been introduced in Chapter 2.

5.3.3.4 The Mode S data link also allows information to be uplinked or sent from the radar to aircraft. This uplink is used in a function known as traffics information service (TIS) where an aircraft is provided, upon request, information on the aircraft detected by the radar to be in its vicinity. Appendices G, H and J contain detailed descriptions of Mode S protocols and implementation considerations.

SSR Mode S characteristics

5.3.3.5 The capabilities of SSR Mode S system include:

- a) accommodation of Mode A/C capabilities;
- b) reporting of pressure altitude in either 100-ft or 25-ft increments;
- c) selective interrogation of aircraft eliminating interference between closely spaced aircraft resulting in high probability of message decoding in high density traffic;
- d) protection against transmission errors by a cyclic redundancy check (CRC) to ensure data integrity; and
- e) provision of a two-way data link between the aircraft and ground that can be used to obtain aircraft derived data.

5.3.3.6 The implementation of SSR Mode S systems requires:

- a) aircraft to be equipped with a functioning Mode S transponder;
- b) proper configuration of aircraft installation (e.g. allocation and configuration of a 24-bit aircraft address, and interface with other aircraft systems); and
- c) assignment of Interrogator codes (ICs) and adequate management of ground installations in areas with overlapping Mode S interrogator coverage.

5.3.4 Radar antenna configurations

Combined PSR and SSR

5.3.4.1 Typically, the PSR antenna and the SSR antenna are mounted on the same turning gear to ensure simultaneous detection and to reduce cost. The associated processing combines the PSR and SSR data to produce one track for each aircraft.

5.3.4.2 PSR provides detection of aircraft in the absence of a functioning transponder, and SSR detects transponder-equipped aircraft as well as providing altitude and identity information. The availability of PSR and SSR information allows resolution of tracking ambiguities that can exist in each system. In the case of Mode S radar, additional information may be obtained from the aircraft.

5.3.4.3 Some installations have PSR and SSR systems at separate locations. This has the advantage of providing a level of redundancy because if one antenna stops rotating, a reduced level of service can be provided from the other. However, in this case, the advantages of improved tracking performance are compromised. Also, this arrangement comes at a greater cost when compared to the collocated configuration.

5.3.4.4 Combined PSR and SSR radars are usually provided to support approach/departure services in terminal areas. The primary radar provides the protection of detecting aircraft without an operating transponder that stray into controlled airspace in the busy terminal area, while the information from the secondary radar is usually used to provide separation services.

SSR with electronically steered antenna

5.3.4.5 Electronically scanned (e-scan) antenna radars use an array of stationary radiating elements to produce an electronically steered beam. E-scan radars are able to produce a highly focused beam (yielding higher bearing accuracy) and a higher scan rate (e.g. once a second) to support more demanding applications.

5.3.4.6 One such application is the tracking of aircraft on approach to closely spaced parallel runways. The objective is to detect divergence from the defined final approach path. It operates as an SSR interrogating aircraft on the approach path at a high rate while also performing a background scan in a 360-degree azimuth at a lower rate to acquire aircraft that enter the coverage area.

5.3.5 MLAT

MLAT overview

5.3.5.1 An MLAT relies on signals from an aircraft's transponder being detected at a number of receiving stations. MLAT uses a technique known as time difference of arrival (TDOA) to establish surfaces that represent constant differences in distance between the target and pairs of receiving stations. The aircraft position is determined by the intersection of these surfaces.

5.3.5.2 Multilateration can theoretically be performed using any signals transmitted periodically from an aircraft. However, systems used for civil purposes are based only on SSR transponder signals. An MLAT requires a minimum of four receiving stations to calculate an aircraft's position. If the aircraft's pressure altitude is known, then the position may be resolved using three receiving stations. However, in practice, operational MLATs have many more receiving stations to ensure adequate coverage and performance.

5.3.5.3 The accuracy of an MLAT is non-linear within the coverage volume. It is dependent on the geometry of the target in relation to the receiving stations and the accuracy to which the relative time of receipt of the signal at each station

can be determined. A schematic diagram of an MLAT is shown in Figure 5-3.

Time reference requirement

5.3.5.4 An MLAT needs a common time reference to determine the relative TOA of the signal at the receiving stations. This is normally done in one of two ways:

- a) all the received signals are sent to a central processing station where they are time-stamped by a common clock. In this case, the system must determine and make allowance for the message transit time between each receiving station and the central station. The system transmits messages between the central and receiver stations to monitor and adjust the transit time; or
- b) the clocks in all of the receivers are kept in synchronism by a common reference such as a global navigation satellite system (GNSS), or through the use of a transmitter at a known location. The distance between this transmitter and the receiving stations is known, and by monitoring the time of receipt of the signals from this transmitter at each receiving station, adjustments can be made to ensure the receiver clocks remain synchronized.

Interrogation capability

5.3.5.5 MLATs may include transmitting stations capable of interrogating aircraft transponders. This may be necessary if there are no other interrogations in the coverage area of the system to generate SSR reply signals. It may also be necessary to obtain Mode A code, pressure altitude and possibly other (through Mode S replies) aircraft data. Some systems also use the interrogations and subsequent replies to measure the range of the aircraft from the transmitting station in a similar manner to radar. This range measurement supplements the multilateration TDOA information.

Use of ES transmissions

5.3.5.6 MLATs can process ES signals in two ways:

- a) by using TDOA, as with all other transponder signals; and
- b) by decoding the message content to determine the aircraft's position (latitude and longitude), pressure altitude and velocity.

MLAT therefore provides a transition to an environment where the majority of aircraft will be equipped with ADS-B.

Applications

5.3.5.7 Multilateration may be used for airport surface, terminal area and en-route surveillance. Its use for surface surveillance applications relies on aircraft transponders being active while being on the ground. In many aircraft, the transponder's operation is controlled by the weight-on-wheels switch, also known as the squat switch. Mode S transponders continue to transmit squitters and may be selectively interrogated while they are on the ground. However, Mode A/C transponders are often inhibited from replying to interrogations while the aircraft is on the ground to reduce the impact on nearby radar systems.

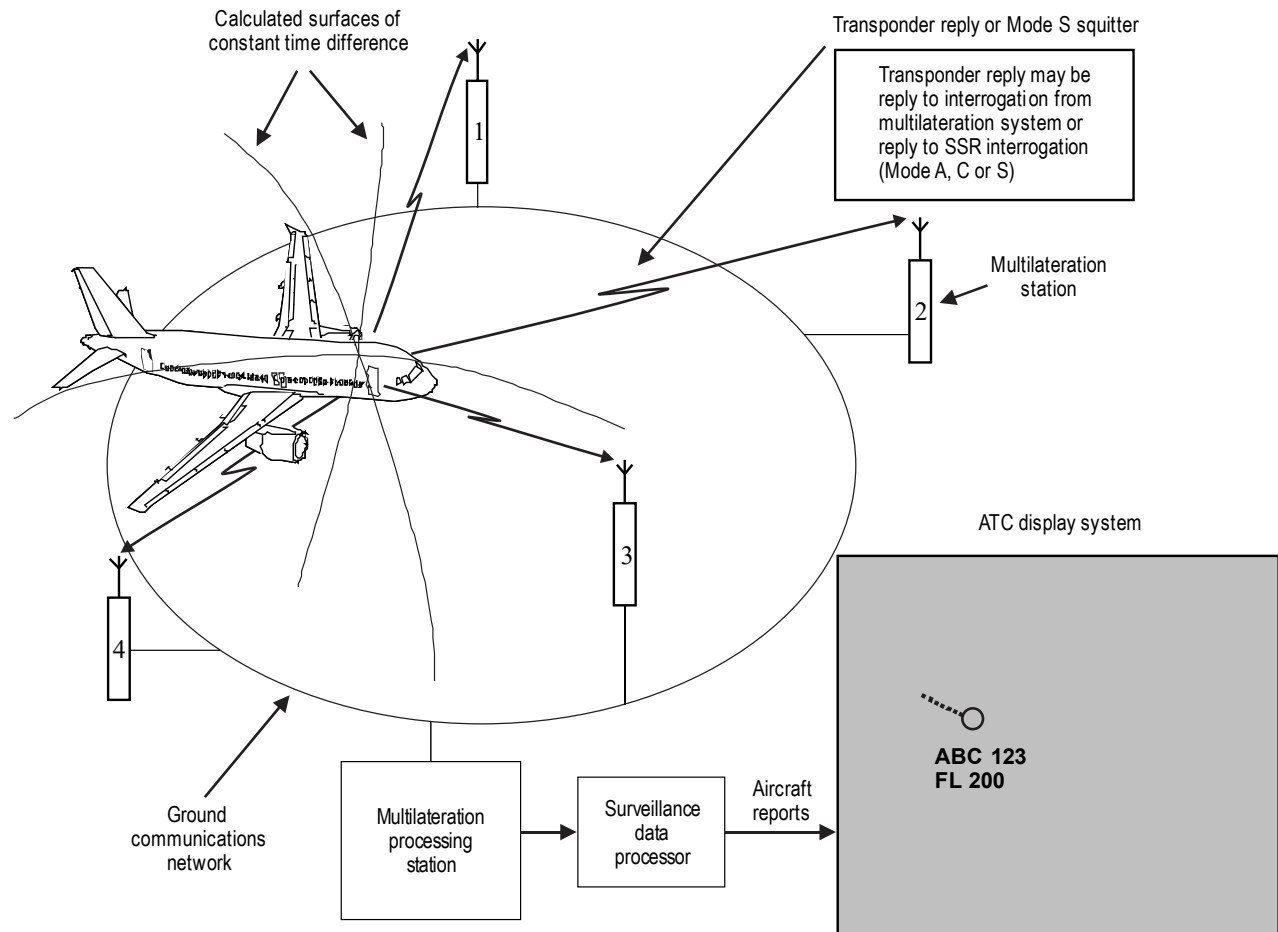


Figure 5-3. MLAT

Characteristics

5.3.5.8 The capabilities of multilateration include:

- the use of any signals (Mode A/C, Mode S replies and squitters) transmitted by existing transponders without requiring additional aircraft equipment to locate aircraft;
- Mode A/C, Mode S and ADS-B capabilities;
- provision of coverage in difficult terrain. It is a modular system in that the coverage area may be extended by the addition of more stations, provided that the total number of stations remains within the processing capability of the system; and
- provisions of high accuracy and high update rates. The system accuracy may also be controlled to some extent by the placement of the receiving stations.

5.3.5.9 The limitations of multilateration are:

- a) aircraft have to be equipped with a functioning transponder;
- b) the transmitted signal has to be correctly detected at multiple receiving stations. This may present problems finding suitable sites for receivers, especially in en-route applications; and
- c) communication links are needed between remote receiver/transmitter sites and the master processing station.

Appendix L contains guidance material on MLATs.

5.4 DEPENDENT COOPERATIVE SYSTEMS

5.4.1 ADS-C

ADS-C overview

5.4.1.1 In ADS-C the aircraft uses on-board navigation systems to determine its position, velocity and other data. A ground ATM system establishes a "contract" with the aircraft to report this information at regular intervals or when defined events occur. This information is transmitted on point-to-point data links. This means the information cannot be accessed by other parties (i.e. other aircraft or other ATM systems). The aircraft operator and ATM provider each establish agreements with a data link service provider for delivery of the ADS-C messages.

5.4.1.2 Information that may be transmitted in ADS-C reports includes:

- a) present position (latitude, longitude and altitude) plus time stamp and figure of merit (FOM);
- b) predicted route in terms of next and (next +1) waypoints;
- c) velocity (ground or air referenced); and
- d) meteorological data (wind speed, wind direction and temperature).

5.4.1.3 The airborne and ground systems negotiate the conditions under which the aircraft submits reports (i.e. periodic reports, event reports demand reports and emergency reports). Reports received by the ATM system are processed to track the aircraft on displays in a way similar to surveillance data obtained from SSR. The reporting rate for current oceanic operations is normally about 15 to 25 minutes. It is however possible for controllers to manually increase the reporting rate to support specific operations. A schematic diagram of ADS-C is shown in Figure 5-4.

Applications

5.4.1.4 ADS-C is typically used in oceanic and remote areas where there is no radar. As a result, it is mainly fitted to long-range air transport aircraft and could support more efficient separation standards than in a case where ATC is reliant only on pilot reports. ADS-C is usually used in conjunction with CPDLC, which allows electronic data communication between ATC and flight crew as an alternative to voice communications.

Note.— ADS-C is currently used entirely to provide procedural separation.

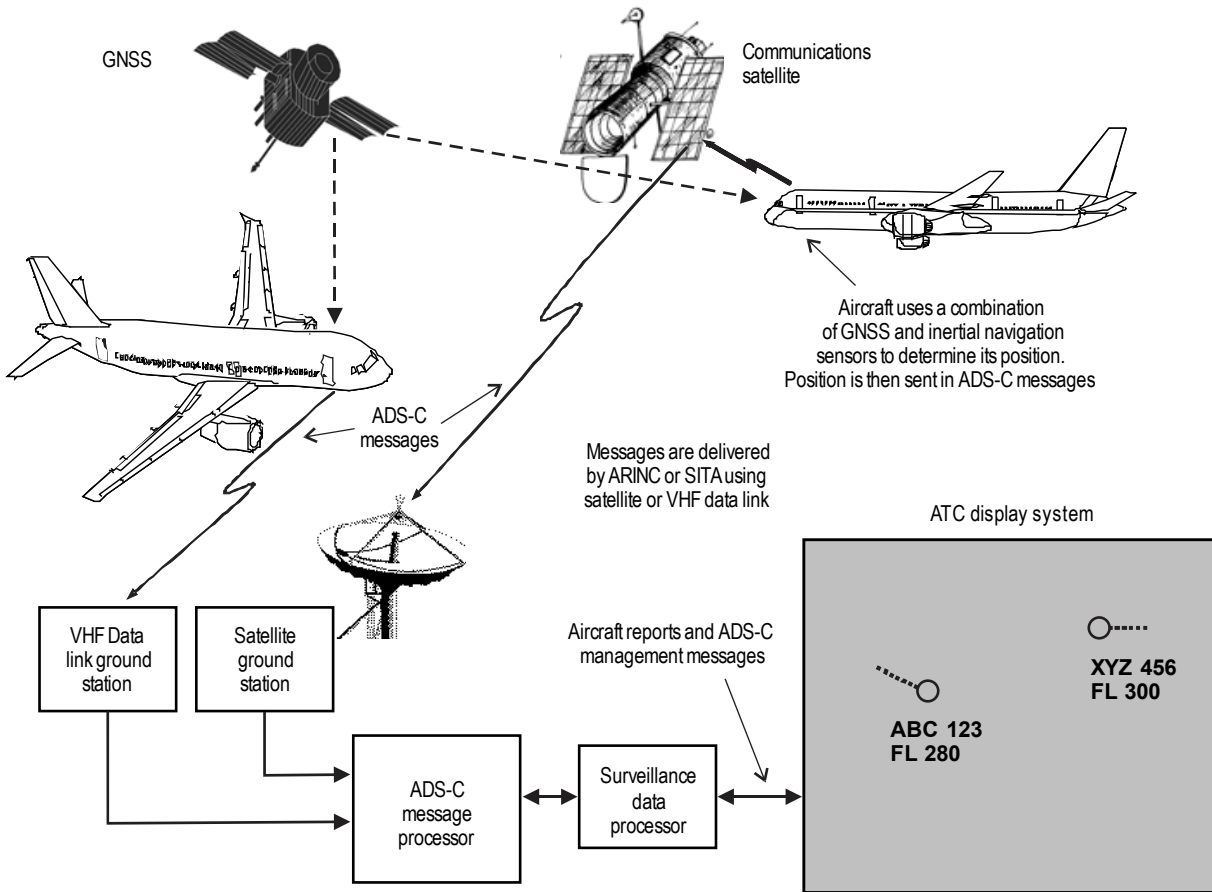


Figure 5-4. ADS-C

Characteristics

5.4.1.5 The capabilities of ADS-C are:

- a) provision of surveillance in areas where the installation of radar or MLATs is not practical;
- b) allows practical reporting of aircraft intent data (e.g. future waypoints), which is useful in determining potential conflicts; and
- c) provision of a data link between the aircraft and ground, allowing relevant aircraft data to be sent to controllers.

5.4.1.6 The limitations of ADS-C are:

- a) it is a dependent surveillance system, i.e. it relies on the aircraft being suitably equipped to correctly transmit the data;
- b) it requires the installation of additional avionics (for data communications);

- c) performance may be determined by the limitations of the communications media;
- d) a cost may be associated with the transmission of each report since the data is carried by a data link service provider. As a result, the update rate is usually kept low to reduce costs; and
- e) it does not support airborne surveillance application (ASA) because the messages are not directly available to other aircraft.

5.4.2 ADS-B

ADS-B overview

5.4.2.1 ADS-B is the broadcast by an aircraft of its position (latitude and longitude), altitude, velocity, aircraft ID and other information obtained from on-board systems. Every ADS-B position message includes an indication of the quality of the data which allows users to determine whether the data is good enough to support the intended function.

5.4.2.2 The aircraft position, velocity and associated data quality indicators are usually obtained from an on-board GNSS. Current inertial sensors by themselves do not provide the required accuracy or integrity data, although future systems are likely to address this shortcoming. ADS-B position messages from an inertial system are therefore usually transmitted with a declaration of unknown accuracy or integrity. Some new aircraft installations use an integrated GNSS and inertial navigation system to provide position, velocity and data quality indicators for the ADS-B transmission. These systems are expected to have better performance than a system based solely on GNSS, since inertial and GNSS sensors have complementary characteristics that mitigate the weaknesses of each system. Altitude is usually obtained from the pressure altitude encoder (also used as the data source for Mode C replies).

5.4.2.3 Since ADS-B messages are broadcast, they can be received and processed by any suitable receiver. As a result, ADS-B supports both ground-based and airborne surveillance applications. For aeronautical surveillance, ground stations are deployed to receive and process the ADS-B messages. In airborne applications, aircraft equipped with ADS-B receivers can process the messages from other aircraft to determine the location of surrounding traffic in support of applications such as the cockpit display of traffic information (CDTI). Other, more advanced, ASAs are under development and are expected to have a significant impact on the way in which air traffic is managed. A schematic diagram of ADS-B is shown in Figure 5-5.

5.4.2.4 Three ADS-B data links (or signal transmission systems) have been developed and standardized, and are described in the following sections.

Mode S 1 090 MHz ES (1 090 ES)

5.4.2.5 As the name suggests, 1 090 ES was developed as part of the Mode S system. The standard Mode S acquisition squitter is 56 bits long. The 1 090 MHz ES contains an additional 56-bit data block containing ADS-B information. Each ES message is 120 microseconds long (8 microseconds of preamble and 12 microseconds of data). The signals are transmitted at a frequency of 1 090 MHz and have a data transmission rate of 1 Mbps. The ADS-B information is broadcast in separate messages, each of which contains a related set of information (e.g. airborne position and pressure altitude, surface position, velocity, aircraft ID and type, emergency information). Position and velocity are transmitted twice per second. Aircraft ID is transmitted every 5 seconds. The transmission of ES ADS-B is an integral part of many Mode S transponders, although it may also be implemented in a non-Mode S transponder device as well.

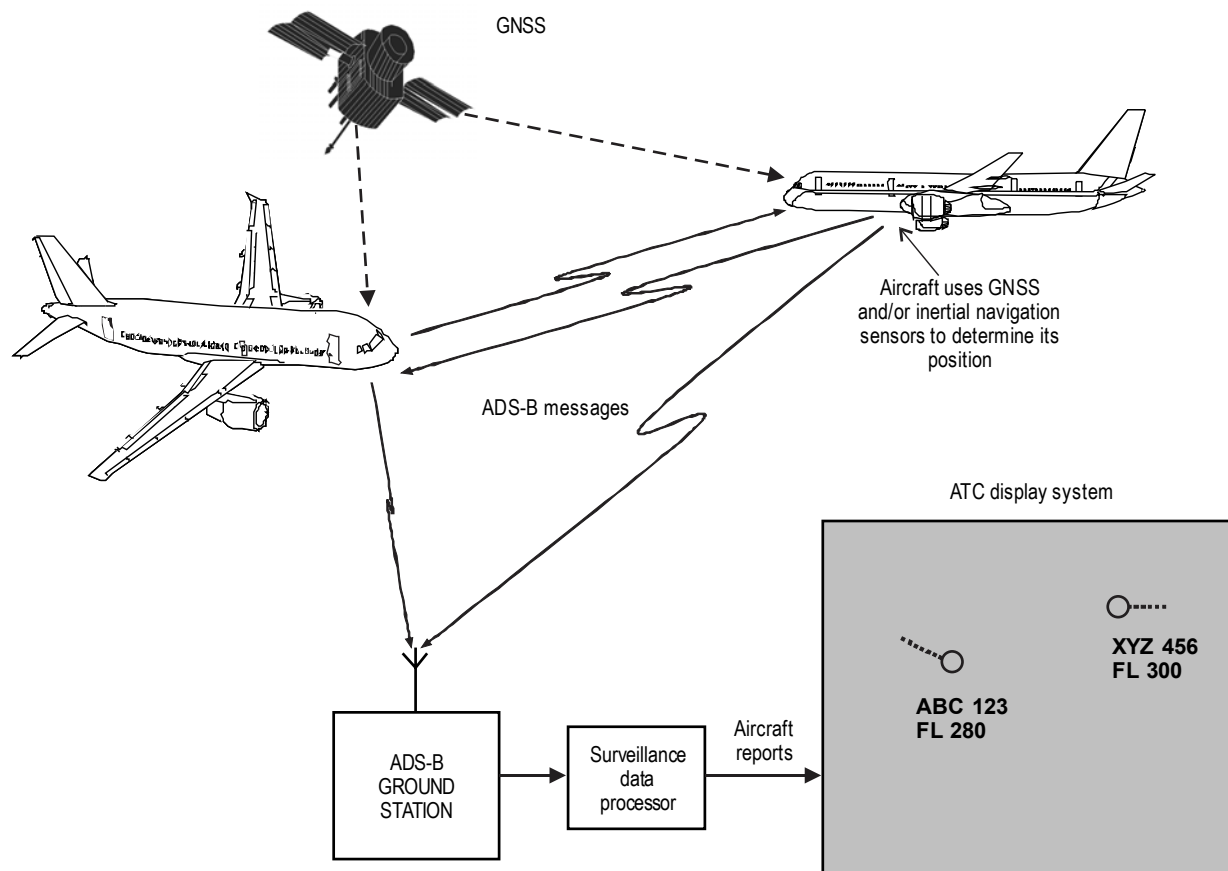


Figure 5-5. ADS-B

5.4.2.6 There is international agreement that Mode S ES will be used for air transport aircraft worldwide to support interoperability, at least for initial implementation. The manual on *Technical Provisions for Mode S Services and Extended Squitter* (Doc 9871) contains details on Mode S ES.

UAT

5.4.2.7 Universal access transceiver (UAT) has been designed as a general-purpose aviation data link to allow uplink of information in addition to the transmission of ADS-B data. It operates at a frequency of 978 MHz and has a signalling rate of 1 Mbps, like the Mode S ES. Each UAT transceiver is allocated a time slot or channel called a message start opportunity (MSO) within which it can transmit information. Channels may be allocated in one of two segments: the ADS-B segment and the ground segment. Channels in the ADS-B segment are 250 microseconds long and are allocated to aircraft for transmission of ADS-B data. Channels in the ground segment are reserved for the broadcast of weather and flight information by the ground system, a service known as FIS. These channels are each 5.5 milliseconds (22 MSOs) long.

5.4.2.8 Since each UAT transceiver is allocated a time slot, the receiver is able to perform a range check, based on the time of receipt of the message, to provide a rudimentary validation of the broadcast position. This feature also allows aircraft receiving traffic information service — broadcast (TIS-B) messages to determine their range from the ground station. The *Manual on the Universal Access Transceiver (UAT)* (Doc 9861) contains details of UAT.

VHF digital link Mode 4 (VDL Mode 4)

5.4.2.9 VDL Mode 4 was developed as a generic data link supporting CNS functions. The applicability was initially restricted to surveillance applications like ADS-C and ADS-B, but the regulatory restrictions were later removed so that VDL Mode 4 is now available as a CNS data link. The system supports broadcast and point-to-point communications for air-ground and air-air applications. VDL Mode 4 is a narrow-band system operating on multiple 25 kHz channels in the VHF band (108–137 MHz). Access to the channels is synchronized to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) and based on a self-organizing time division multiple access (TDMA) scheme that allows all communicating units to select free slots for transmissions. A number of protocols are available in support of the various modes of communication. The *Manual on VHF Digital Link (VDL) Mode 4* (Doc 9816) contains details of the VDL Mode 4.

5.4.3 Characteristics

5.4.3.1 The capabilities of ADS-B are:

- a) the ground station is simpler than the stations of primary radar, secondary radar and multilateration. For a single ADS-B site, acquisition and installation costs are significantly lower. In many instances, the installation can be accommodated at navigation aid sites or sites such as VHF radios with existing infrastructure;
- b) each position report is transmitted with an indication of the integrity associated with the data, allowing users to determine which applications the data can support; and
- c) supports both ground-based and airborne surveillance applications.

5.4.3.2 The limitations of ADS-B are:

- a) it depends on proper equipage of all aircraft. This could be a significant issue because a navigation source capable of supplying position/velocity information along with the necessary indication of accuracy/integrity of that information needs to be installed and certified;
- b) current implementations rely solely on GNSS for position and velocity. As a result, outages may be experienced when the performance or geometry of the satellite constellation is inadequate to support a given application. Future systems that integrate GNSS information with data from other navigation sensors should overcome this limitation. Also, the advent of GALILEO should improve GNSS performance; and
- c) provisions must be in place to validate the reported position.

5.5 SDP SYSTEMS

5.5.1 Aircraft tracking techniques

5.5.1.1 Aeronautical surveillance systems often include a number of sources (e.g. PSR, SSR and ADS-B), each of which provides data to a processing system. Once aircraft information is received from the various sensors, it needs to be processed by SDP systems and passed onto the display systems used by air traffic controllers.

5.5.1.2 A number of aircraft tracking schemes are used in SDP systems, including mosaic tracking, track fusion and position report fusion systems which are described in 5.5.2 to 5.5.4 below.

5.5.2 Mosaic tracking systems

In a basic mosaic system, the airspace is divided into cells, and a single source will typically provide surveillance data for each cell. The surveillance processing system receives data from all sources and applies the relevant data depending on which cell the aircraft is detected in.

5.5.3 Track fusion systems

In track fusion systems, the SDP system accepts tracks and applies a weighting to each track to produce a track position for the target at each update. The weighting considers the accuracy of each source at the target location and the age of each position report from the various sources.

5.5.4 Position report fusion systems

5.5.4.1 In position report fusion systems, the processing system accepts position updates from each source and combines the data to establish the best estimate of the target's position. It then generates a track of the target based on successive fused position reports.

5.5.4.2 Fusion systems generally provide the best performance but are more complicated. They have to take into account the different characteristics of the surveillance sources and the fact that position reports are likely to arrive asynchronously.

5.6 SURVEILLANCE DATA DISTRIBUTION BY ASTERIX

5.6.1 Overview

5.6.1.1 The All Purpose STructured Eurocontrol SuRveillance Information Exchange (ASTERIX) specifications were developed in Europe in order to harmonize the transmission of surveillance information. ASTERIX specifications describe formats for the exchange of data between the surveillance sensors and data processing systems, and also for the generalized exchange of surveillance data between systems.

5.6.1.2 ASTERIX has provision for sending different categories of information. The categories are roughly aligned to the different types of sensors, although some categories allow data from several types of sensors to be merged. For each category, the specification defines all the possible data fields that may be transmitted. ASTERIX is efficient in that only the fields that contain current data need to be transmitted. The specification defines the message field content and formats. The messages may be transmitted using any suitable data transport mechanisms such as user datagram protocol (UDP) or Transmission Control Protocol (TCP). The current set of ASTERIX documents includes categories for the transmission of radar, multilateration, ADS-B and integrated surveillance data.

5.6.2 Addressing scheme

ASTERIX contains an addressing scheme to identify the source providing the data. It comprises the system area code (SAC) and the system identification code (SIC). Appendix N contains more details on ASTERIX.

Chapter 6

AIRBORNE SURVEILLANCE

6.1 INTRODUCTION

6.1.1 Surveillance systems have initially been deployed in such a way that the display of traffic has been on the ground for ATM purposes. The evolution of the technology now allows the provision of surveillance capability and display of traffic on board aircraft, known as airborne surveillance.

6.1.2 The capability to establish a complete air situation picture on board aircraft allows the development of new applications that are presently under development, for example:

- a) merging and sequencing, which enables controllers to instruct flight crew to use their flight deck surveillance systems to follow another specified aircraft; and
- b) the in-trail procedure, which enables an aircraft on oceanic routes to climb (or descend) through a flight level that would otherwise be blocked by the procedural separation minima and the proximity of other aircraft.

6.2 ADS-B IN

ADS-B IN is an airborne function that receives surveillance data transmitted by ADS-B OUT functions installed on other aircraft. In addition, it could also receive, from the ground, additional data from other aircraft not transmitting ADS-B OUT (see 6.3, TIS-B) or because their ADS-B OUT is transmitted using a different ADS-B technology (see 6.4, ADS-B rebroadcast).

6.3 TIS-B

6.3.1 TIS-B is the broadcast of aircraft surveillance data by ground stations using an ADS-B data link. The information is used by flight crews to obtain a picture of air traffic in their vicinity, including those aircraft that are not ADS-B equipped. This provides improved situational awareness and support for ASA.

6.3.2 TIS-B ground stations obtain aircraft surveillance data from a number of sources including SSR and MLATs. The TIS-B ground station does not generate messages for aircraft broadcasting ADS-B on the same data link, since this may be obtained directly from the aircraft.

6.3.3 TIS-B provides service in an environment where not all aircraft are equipped with ADS-B. It provides visibility of non-ADS-B equipped aircraft to any aircraft capable of receiving the TIS-B message. TIS-B messages are similar in format to ADS-B messages transmitted directly by aircraft. A schematic diagram of TIS-B is shown in Figure 6-1.

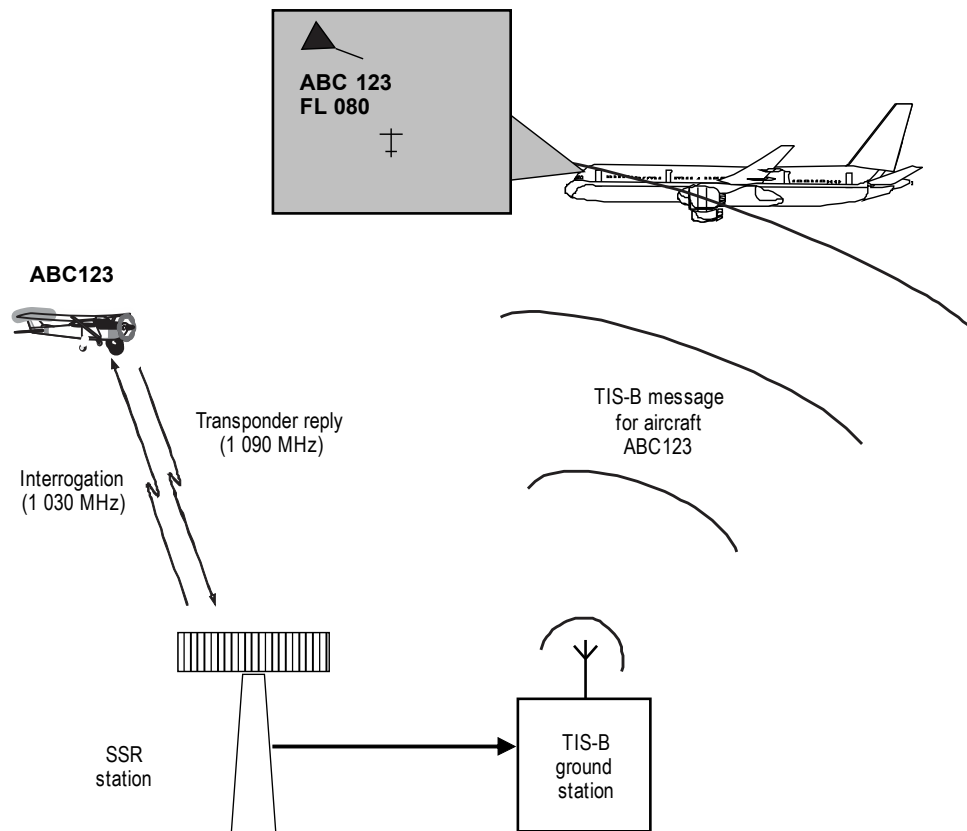


Figure 6-1. TIS-B

6.4 ADS-R

ADS-B rebroadcast (ADS-R) allows interoperability between ADS-B equipped aircraft operating on different data links. The ADS-R ground station receives ADS-B messages from one link (e.g. UAT), processes the messages and rebroadcasts them on a different data link (e.g. 1 090 MHz ES). Docs 9861 and 9871 contain details of TIS-B and ADS-R.

6.5 ACAS

6.5.1 Overview

ACAS interrogates Mode A/C and Mode S transponders on aircraft in its vicinity and listens for their replies. By processing these replies, ACAS determines which aircraft represent potential collision threats and provides appropriate indications (or advisories) to the flight crew to avoid collisions.

6.5.2 Operation

ACAS interrogates Mode A/C aircraft by transmitting a special Mode S signal that elicits Mode C replies from Mode A/C aircraft but no replies from a Mode S aircraft. ACAS detects the presence of Mode S-equipped aircraft by receiving their acquisition squitters and by monitoring surveillance replies to ground interrogations. It then interrogates those aircraft using the acquired 24-bit address.

6.5.3 Hybrid surveillance

This technique allows ACAS to take advantage of information passively available from ADS-B OUT transmissions of suitably equipped extended aircraft. At acquisition and periodically thereafter, ACAS validates the position and altitude contained in the ES with information received from its own active surveillance. Aircraft whose position and altitude are validated can be maintained on passive surveillance, resulting in reduced ACAS interrogations. Passive surveillance is only used on aircraft that are not considered to be a threat. When an intruder approaches the conditions for a threat, ACAS switches to full active surveillance.

6.5.4 Future ACAS

Research is under way to investigate the role of and requirements for collision avoidance in the future as aircraft densities increase and new aircraft types and capacity-enhancing operations are introduced. Collision avoidance will likely utilize additional data from new surveillance sources. The data may include velocity and intent information as well as improved position accuracy. Enhanced algorithms will be needed to take advantage of the improved surveillance. A primary concern will be to maintain compatibility with operations and minimize disruptive effects such as nuisance alerts. The *Airborne Collision Avoidance System (ACAS) Manual* (Doc 9863) contains a complete set of guidance material on ACAS.

6.6 DISPLAYS FOR AIRBORNE SURVEILLANCE

6.6.1 The most basic ASA enabled by ADS-B is the enhanced ATSAW using CDTI. This application consists of displaying surrounding traffic with appropriate symbols.

6.6.2 At present, the ACAS display provides similar but limited information. As shown in Figure 6-2, in a traffic situation generated with ACAS surveillance, the range is limited to less than 30 NM and there is neither identification nor heading information. Typical examples of the traffic situation using simulated data are shown in Figures 6-2 to 6-4. However, using the information contained in the received ADS-B messages, it is possible to elaborate a traffic situation on an integrated display using new symbols supporting heading information, identification and speed.

6.6.3 Figure 6-3 shows the same traffic as in Figure 6-2 with additional information as well as traffic outside the ACAS surveillance range. It is clear that own aircraft is being merged into the sequence of descending aircraft. This information could certainly increase the traffic situational awareness of the flight crew.

6.6.4 Another example is shown in Figure 6-4. The figure that involves merging and sequencing shows how a specified aircraft (AFR3141) designated by the controller could be followed accurately 90 seconds behind, thanks to a tracking process based on ADS-B information provided to own aircraft. In the example, the magenta dot represents the position of the specified aircraft 90 seconds before. Any other traffic may be removed from the display to avoid clutter or misunderstandings for the flight crew following the procedure. The box on the left shows the relative distance in NM between own aircraft and the reference aircraft as well as the air speed.

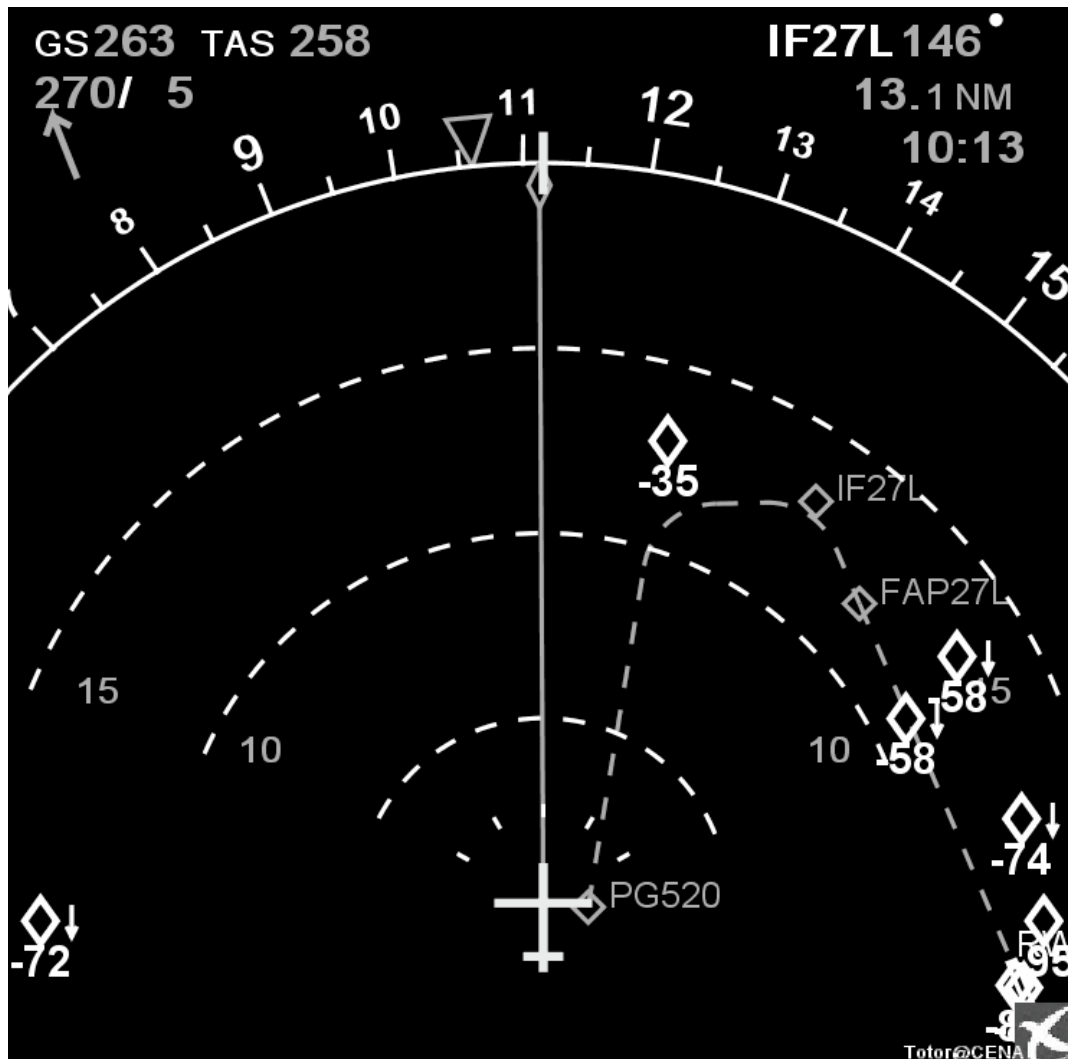


Figure 6-2. Example with ACAS symbols integrated into the navigation display

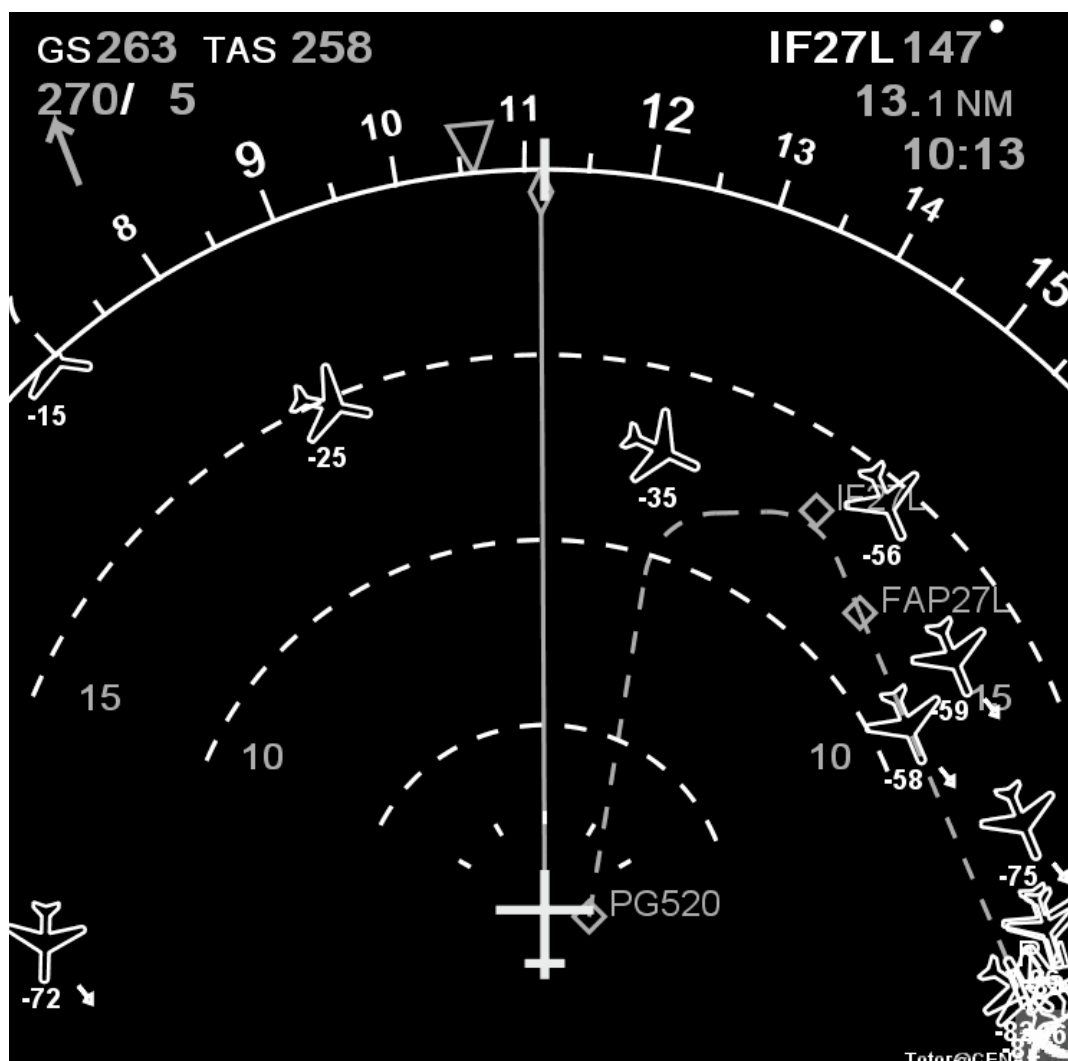


Figure 6-3. Example of same traffic as in Figure 6-2 with new symbols supported by ADS-B without operational ACAS



Figure 6-4. Example of a possible future ASA application on an integrated display

Chapter 7

SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM DEPLOYMENT CONSIDERATIONS

7.1 BEST PRACTICES CHECKLIST

The following list shows steps recommended for planning and implementation of surveillance systems (including replacement or upgrade of existing facilities):

a) *Define the operational requirements:*

- Select applications to be supported: This will allow the determination of the necessary performance.
- Define area of coverage: The determination of the volume in which the operational service will be supported is very important because it will drive the cost of the system. In particular, the correct determination of the lower altitude limits is very important as it will have a significant impact on the number of sensors to be deployed;
- Define the type of traffic: for example, FR flights, VFR flights, local or international flights, civil or military flights.

b) *Define local environment (current and future):*

- Current and expected future traffic densities including the description of possible peak times;
- Route structure;
- Type of airborne equipage currently mandated for the different types of flights (carriage mandate and real rate of equipage);
- Type of aircraft: commercial, general aviation, helicopters, gliders, ultra-light aircraft, very light jet (VLJ), military and their dynamic characteristics (maximum speed, climbing rate, turn rate, etc.);
- Segregation between the different types of traffic, the possible mix of traffic and the probability of intrusion of aircraft not equipped with cooperative surveillance means;
- Specific local RF environment.

c) *Analyse design options and determine which techniques can be used:*

- Check which existing surveillance sensors may be re-used;
- Check which new surveillance sensors and techniques may be deployed at lowest cost.
- Determine the number of sites and investigate their availability. Verify airborne equipage;
- Determine the level of redundancy required and fallback mode of operation;

- Determine whether new airborne equipment carriage will be necessary;
- Determine impact on operational procedure;
- Conduct cost-benefit studies and feasibility analyses for the different options if necessary.

d) *Make a safety and security analysis of the new proposed system:*

- To demonstrate that the system will provide the necessary performance in its nominal mode of operation;
- To demonstrate that the different failures have been analysed;
- To demonstrate that they have been found to be either acceptable or can be mitigated.

Note.— Security measures against malicious threats are discussed in Chapter 3, 3.3.2.

e) *Implement:*

- If new airborne equipment is required, then prepare airborne carriage mandate;
- Procure and install the new system;
- Evaluate the performance of the new system.

f) *Establish operational service:*

- Transition from existing system to the new system.

g) *Deliver operational service:*

- Periodically verify the performance of the new system;
- Conduct regular and preventive maintenance.

7.2 TRANSITION TO DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS

7.2.1 Any new surveillance technique being considered as a replacement for an existing surveillance system must provide at least the same level of performance required by the existing applications. Technical surveillance system performance requirements are under development to help with the specification of the needs of an application.

7.2.2 In addition to accuracy, availability, reliability, integrity and update rate, the following points should be considered:

- a) an adequate level of protection against common mode failures should be provided;
- b) a fallback surveillance system and/or some operational procedures to accommodate the loss of the GNSS function in an individual aircraft (e.g. due to an equipment malfunction) would be required;
- c) the possibility of the loss of the GNSS function over an extended area (e.g. due to interference effects)

on GNSS operation) must be taken into account;

- d) validation (or at least a reasonableness test) of the reported ADS-B position is needed to reduce the probability of an operationally significant undetected failure on board the navigation data source;
- e) in operational environments, where the threat to safety is of significant concern, it must be possible to detect and suppress the creation of tracks on ADS-B reports that contain incorrect position information;
- f) measures must be in place to cope with the expected growth in traffic over the planned life of the system; and
- g) in operational environments, where the threat to security is of significant concern, in accordance with the risk assessment carried out by its relevant national authorities, measures must be implemented to address the security threat.

7.2.3 The operational use of dependent surveillance systems without the appropriate precautions, safeguards and measures to address cyber security would not be advisable. In general, the performance of a surveillance system for a given area and an operational scenario must be specified by the responsible authority. Depending upon the particular airspace and the application, this may imply the need to continue to provide a certain level of other surveillance system capabilities.

7.3 OTHER ISSUES

Other issues to be considered when designing a surveillance system are:

- a) the need to identify the source of surveillance when information is displayed. This may be necessary if the type or condition of the source affects procedures;
 - b) the ability to uniquely identify targets;
 - c) the impact of the loss of surveillance of individual aircraft, both in the short and long term;
 - d) the impact of the loss of surveillance over an extended area;
 - e) backup or emergency procedures to be applied in the event of aircraft or ground system failure;
 - f) the ability to operate to specification with the expected traffic density;
 - g) the ability to operate in harmony with other systems such as ACAS and ASA; and
 - h) the interaction between CNS functions.
-

Appendix A

TECHNICAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. SCOPE

1.1 Objectives

1.1.1 In general, technical performance requirements must be independent of technology and architecture used in a surveillance system that supports a particular ATS service or function (referred to as an application in this document).

1.1.2 Performance requirements are useful for:

- a) system design and derivation of requirements for various different components of the surveillance system;
- b) safety assessment;
- c) procurement;
- d) commissioning; and
- e) monitoring of performance.

As such, the performance requirements must be measurable and verifiable, and also defined for specific applications.

1.2 Need for performance requirements

1.2.1 Traditionally, surveillance systems have been specified by a set of performance criteria such as probability of detection, accuracy, refresh rate, latency, integrity and availability. These specifications have the following limitations:

- a) such criteria are generally sensor-oriented. For example, an accuracy expressed in a polar system of coordinates (range and azimuth) is logical for radar but is not necessary for other surveillance techniques;
- b) some requirements seem to have been only driven by the state-of-the-art technology used (e.g. an accuracy of 15 m being specified for current Mode S radars); and
- c) some basic requirements may be missed as they are relevant only to one specific technology.

There is therefore a need to define objective performance requirements applicable to surveillance systems using different, or combinations of, techniques supporting various applications. It should also be noted that new applications are being defined for which specific performance may be required. Moreover, some of these new applications may impose additional requirements on the airborne part of the surveillance system, and therefore, a common way of defining surveillance performances would be desirable.

1.2.2 Any changes in technical systems supporting ATM shall be subject to safety analysis. Performance

requirements included in this appendix mainly state what the system shall provide when it works in its nominal mode of operation. The requirements can be used as a starting point for the safety analysis.

1.3 Limitations and constraints

1.3.1 The material contained in this appendix must be considered as a minimum set of performance requirements recognized and agreed to as achievable by a surveillance system in order to support a particular application. However, it must be understood that meeting these requirements is not sufficient to prove that an application can be used safely because, in general, there are people, procedures and other systems or equipment involved. The technical performance requirements for surveillance systems are not sufficient to authorize a given operational separation. There are other factors that must be analysed during the safety assessment (e.g. Human Factors, procedures, airspace structure and traffic density).

1.3.2 The material will, however, help aviation authorities in technically specifying, testing, accepting and monitoring the performance of their surveillance system.

1.3.3 One of the challenges in establishing performance requirements is having the means of **deriving quantitative and measurable requirements from qualitative ones envisaged**, derived or expressed by people. In order to do so, a number of hypotheses are used to simplify the complex interrelationship between the different performance parameters. These limitations must be understood and accepted.

1.4 Scope of surveillance systems

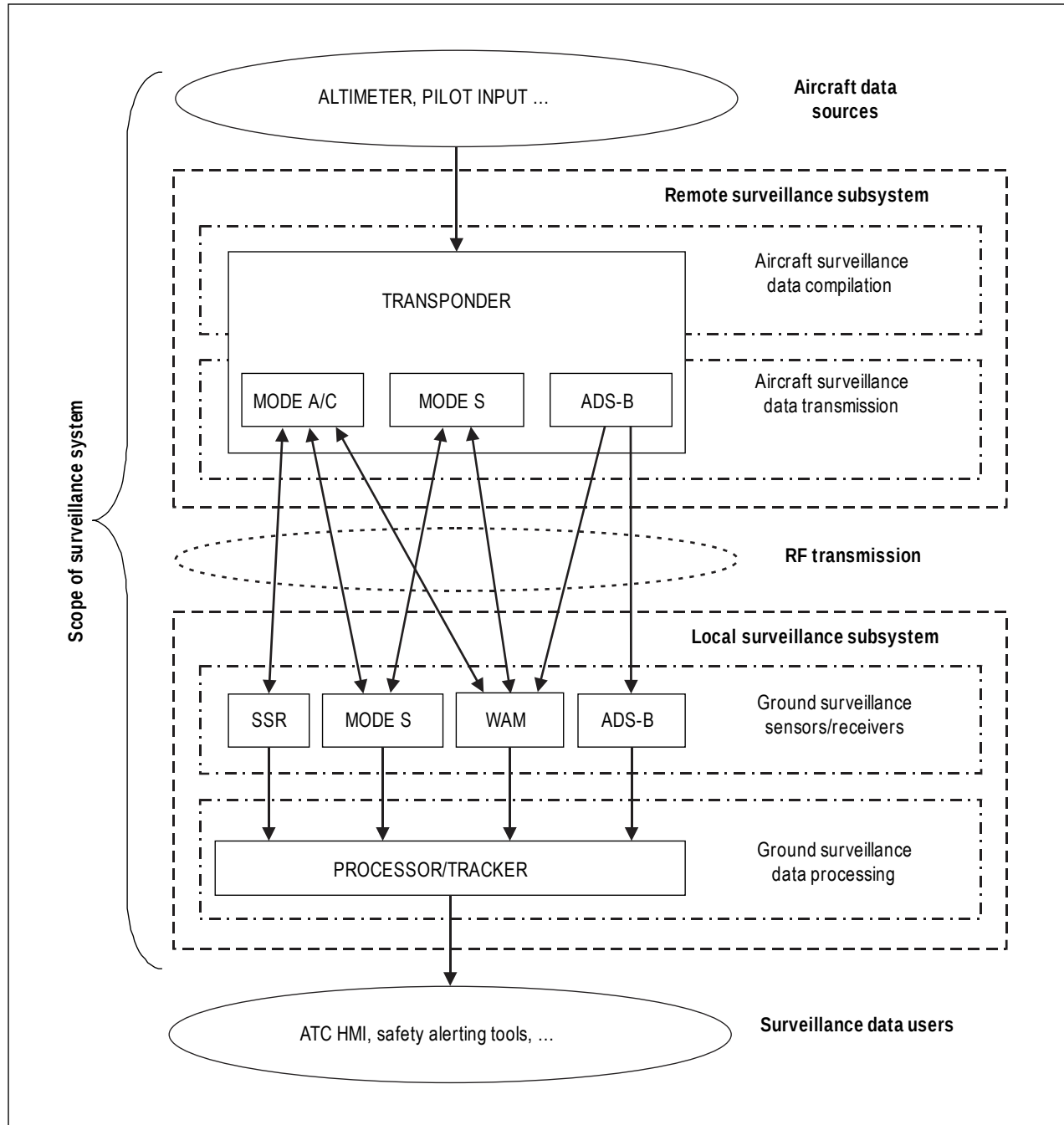
1.4.1 When considering performance requirements, the term “surveillance system” refers to all items in the surveillance chain from the point of delivery of surveillance data up to the applications that use it. Therefore, no requirements are defined here for the user applications themselves, various human-machine interface (HMI) subsystems and other tools that may use surveillance data.

1.4.2 With regard to performance requirements, it can be considered that the surveillance system consists of two subsystems separated by an RF link:

- a) a local surveillance subsystem on the user application side of the RF link; and
- b) a remote surveillance subsystem on the aircraft side of the RF link.

1.4.3 Three examples of surveillance systems are provided in Figures A-1, A-2 and A-3. Figure A-1 shows a multi-sensor air-ground surveillance system, while Figure A-2 shows a single-radar air-ground surveillance system. Figure A-3 shows an example of ground and airborne use of ADS-B.

1.4.4 Flight plan correlation and other functions like short-term conflict alert (STCA) are not included in the scope of the surveillance system.

**Figure A-1. Multi-sensor air-ground surveillance system**

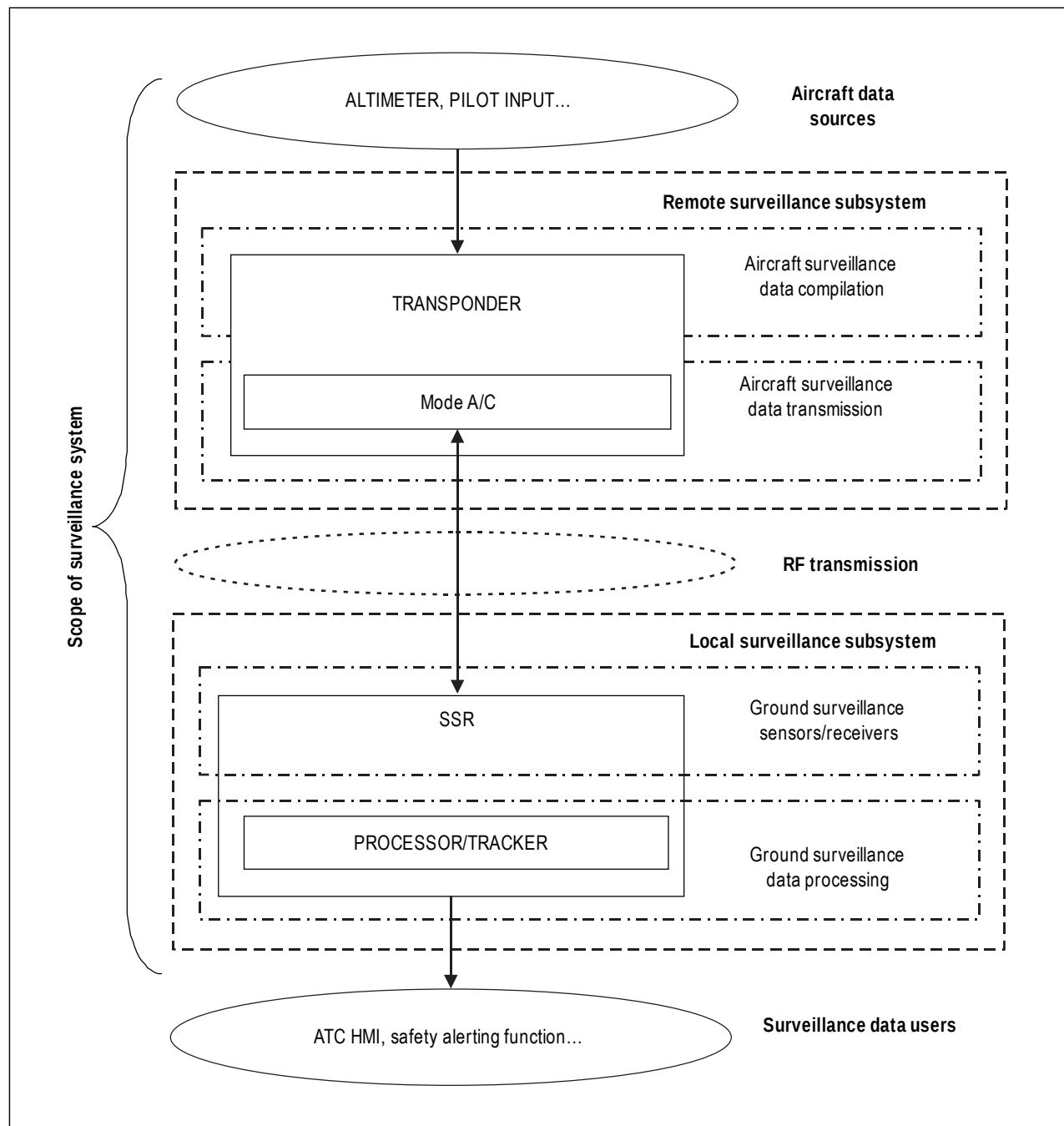


Figure A-2. Single-radar air-ground surveillance system

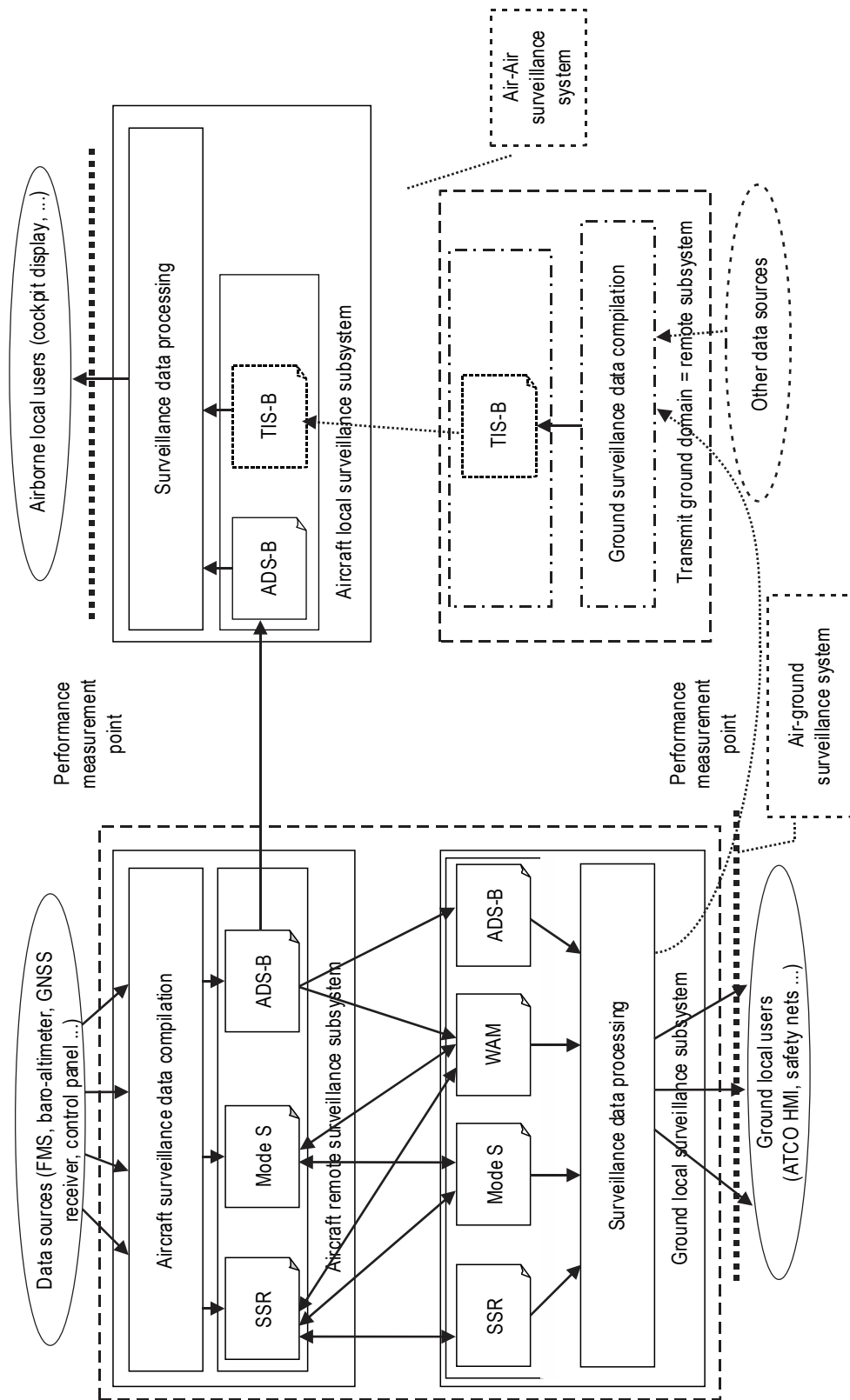


Figure A-3. Example of ADS-B surveillance system

1.5 Quality of service

1.5.1 The set of parameters and associated definitions used to specify performance includes:

- a) *Data item*: the information (e.g. position, identity and intent) that the surveillance system is required to deliver;
- b) *Accuracy*: the degree of conformance between the estimated or measured value and the true value of a data item. The accuracy is defined at the time the value is used. "Error" is used to represent the difference between the measured value and the actual value, while accuracy is used to represent the statistic distribution of the error;
- c) *Availability*: the probability that the system will perform its required function at the initiation of the intended operation;
- d) *Integrity*: the probability that an error of a given amount for a given data item will be undetected by the system;
- e) *Integrity (system)*: the probability, for a specified period, of an undetected failure of a functional element that results in erroneous surveillance information to the end-user;
- f) *Latency*: the difference between the time for which the information is valid and the time it is delivered to the end-user;
- g) *Update period*: the average time difference between two information reports related to the same A/V and to the same type of information;
- h) *Continuity*: the probability that a surveillance system will perform its intended function without unscheduled interruptions during intended operation; and
- i) *Coverage*: the volume of airspace that will be covered by the surveillance system and within which its performance meets the requirements.
- j) *Reliability*: a function of the frequency with which failures occur within the system. The probability that the system will perform its function within defined performance limits for a specified period under given operating conditions;

1.5.2 Lower-level performance parameters may need to be derived from aforementioned ones. For example, "outage times because of scheduled actions" may be defined as a lower-level parameter that will contribute to the availability of the system. Measures must be put in place to continuously (or periodically on a continuing basis) monitor the performance of the surveillance system in order to ensure that it meets the originally specified requirements.

2. SEPARATION APPLICATION

2.1 General considerations

2.1.1 Content of this part of the document is applicable to cases wherein a surveillance system is used in support of a separation application. In this respect, the following hypotheses have been used to simplify the derivation of quantified performance requirements from operational requirements:

- a) when two aircraft are flying at a given separation, they are not in a collision situation. Similarly, when two aircraft are seen at the given minimum separation, they will not be closer than a minimum specified buffer at any time during the period of display;
- b) the application considered corresponds to a buffer size equivalent to the maximum aircraft size. It does not cover wake turbulence separation minima for which there may be a need to specify different buffers;
- c) the system shall be able to support the display of aircraft trajectories and to distinguish between aircraft; and
- d) separation is only provided between identified aircraft.

The data items that are generally needed for the provision of separation applications are identified in 2.1.2 to 2.1.5 below.

2.1.2 *Horizontal position.* This item is the basic information used by most applications. It indicates the location of the aircraft in the horizontal plane. Depending on the type of surveillance system used, the horizontal position information may be supplied as a data item sourced from the remote surveillance subsystem (as in the case of ADS-B) or calculated by the local surveillance subsystem (as in the case of radar and MLATs). The horizontal position information is used by the separation application to ensure a minimum distance between aircraft pairs is not compromised at any time. The horizontal position data supplied to applications can take various forms including:

- a) range and azimuth (typically provided by radars);
- b) latitude and longitude (typically provided by an ADS-B system); or
- c) a specific system of X and Y coordinates (as may be provided by a multi-sensor tracker).

2.1.3 *Pressure altitude* (also known as barometric altitude). This data item is derived from the altimeter of the aircraft and is used to display the vertical position of aircraft. The local barometric correction has been considered as being outside the surveillance system because it is performed by a user application.

2.1.4 *Identity.* This data item is obtained by either using the aircraft ID extracted from the aircraft or from its SSR Mode A reply. The identity is used to ensure that ATC instructions are passed to the correct aircraft. The identity extracted from the aircraft by the surveillance system is typically correlated with the flight plan data by the user application. However, this correlation function is considered to be outside the scope of the surveillance system definition.

2.1.5 The data items above are essential for the separation application; however, there are additional data items that offer further benefits where provided:

- a) Special position identification (SPI) — this data item is transmitted at the request of ATC and can be used in the separation application to provide greater confidence that correct operational identification has been achieved and to quickly locate an aircraft on a surveillance display;
- b) ground speed and track — these two data items can be employed by user applications to predict the future position of aircraft; and
- c) other surveillance data items such as:
 - 1) sensor type;

- 2) aircraft derived data, including:
 - magnetic heading
 - selected altitude
 - vertical speed
 - barometric pressure setting
- 3) time of applicability of the data-items provided for conformity assessment.

2.2 Horizontal error at the end of the update period

2.2.1 In early primary radars, raw video was directly displayed at the controller working position on a plan position indicator (PPI) display. That system had the following characteristics:

- a) a very small time delay from detection of a target to its display;
- b) a clear indication of when the new data was displayed (the rotating radar scan line); and
- c) an indication of the age of the data through the diminishing intensity of the radar video (blips) on the PPI.

When those systems were used, aircraft separation was considered to be established where blips for two aircraft in close proximity were seen to be separated on the display.

2.2.2 Modern surveillance systems are more complex with many subsystems often combining data from different sources to provide a synthetic representation of the air situation picture on the display. Characteristics in modern systems are:

- a) there is a time delay from the position measurement to the display (or update thereof); and
- b) the displayed aircraft positions only change at the time of each synthetic display update.

Therefore, the displayed image of the aircraft can be used at any moment without knowing exactly when it had been established.

2.2.3 In most cases, the uncertainty of a displayed position is at its highest just before an update, due mainly to the fact that the subject aircraft has been moving during the update period. As such, the speed of aircraft and the display update rate are significant factors in horizontal position error analysis.

2.3 Errors contributing to the final position uncertainty

2.3.1 The factors that contribute to the total horizontal position error at the surveillance system output can be grouped as follows:

- a) measurement, quantization and other processing errors directly affecting the positional data; and
- b) age of the data that leads to an apparent positional error due to the aircraft moving away from the measured position by the time the data are supplied or used.

2.3.2 Figure A-4 shows how these generic sources of error may combine to increase the total horizontal position error.

2.3.3 Generally, measurement, quantization and other processing errors are assumed to be randomly distributed around the real position of the aircraft; Figure A-5 shows how these error distributions could impact aircraft separation. In the figure, the apparent separation is larger than the actual one, but it is possible, due to random distribution of errors as well as the movements of aircraft during the update interval, that under worst-case conditions, the two displayed aircraft may be much closer to each other or even overlap.

2.3.4 The horizontal position error at the end of the refresh period is very dependent on the flight characteristics of the displayed aircraft, hence it is difficult to measure and validate. It is more common to measure the error when the data are output from the surveillance system because the performance of the system itself is verified without being impacted by flight characteristics of the subject aircraft.

2.4 Update rate/update period

2.4.1 The term “update rate” is usually used both for the output of the sensor and for the update of the display. In the context of performance, the latter is used with the assumption that the output of the surveillance system is fed directly into the display. Update period depends on local constraints such as type of traffic, maximum climbing rate of aircraft, type of airspace structure, legacy systems and Human Factor considerations.

2.4.2 The update periods chosen for en-route application were initially long (e.g. more than 10 seconds), but with the introduction of newer systems, there is a tendency to use shorter periods. For example, more and more new en-route systems are using an update period of 5 to 6 seconds.

2.4.3 An aircraft is considered to be maintaining its assigned level as long as the pressure-altitude-derived level information that is displayed to the controller indicates that it is within appropriate tolerances of the assigned level (60 m (± 200 ft) in reduced vertical separation minimum (RVSM) airspace or ± 90 m (± 300 ft) in other airspace). Similarly, an aircraft is considered to have reached the level to which it has been cleared when the elapsed time of three surveillance update periods, or 15 seconds, whichever is the greater, have passed since the pressure-altitude-derived level information has indicated that it is within the appropriate tolerances of the assigned level. Intervention by a controller shall only be required if the difference between assigned and displayed levels are in excess of the values stated above. If we use the hypothesis that the system must be able to see a 300 ft/200 ft altitude change in one update period, for aircraft climbing or descending at 3 000 ft/min, it means that an update period of 6 seconds (for non-RVSM) and 4 seconds (for RVSM) would be required.

2.4.4 It has not been possible to globally agree on a specific update period. Figure A-6 shows an example of the relationship between horizontal position error and the update period. Section 2.5 provides a method to derive the horizontal position error. Given that an aircraft may cease its climb/descent at any moment, the error of extrapolation of altitude could easily exceed 300 ft/200 ft. For this reason, current surveillance systems output the last measured (extracted) value of the barometric altitude. This could change in the future when newer surveillance systems can access airborne information (such as the barometric pressure) at a high rate.

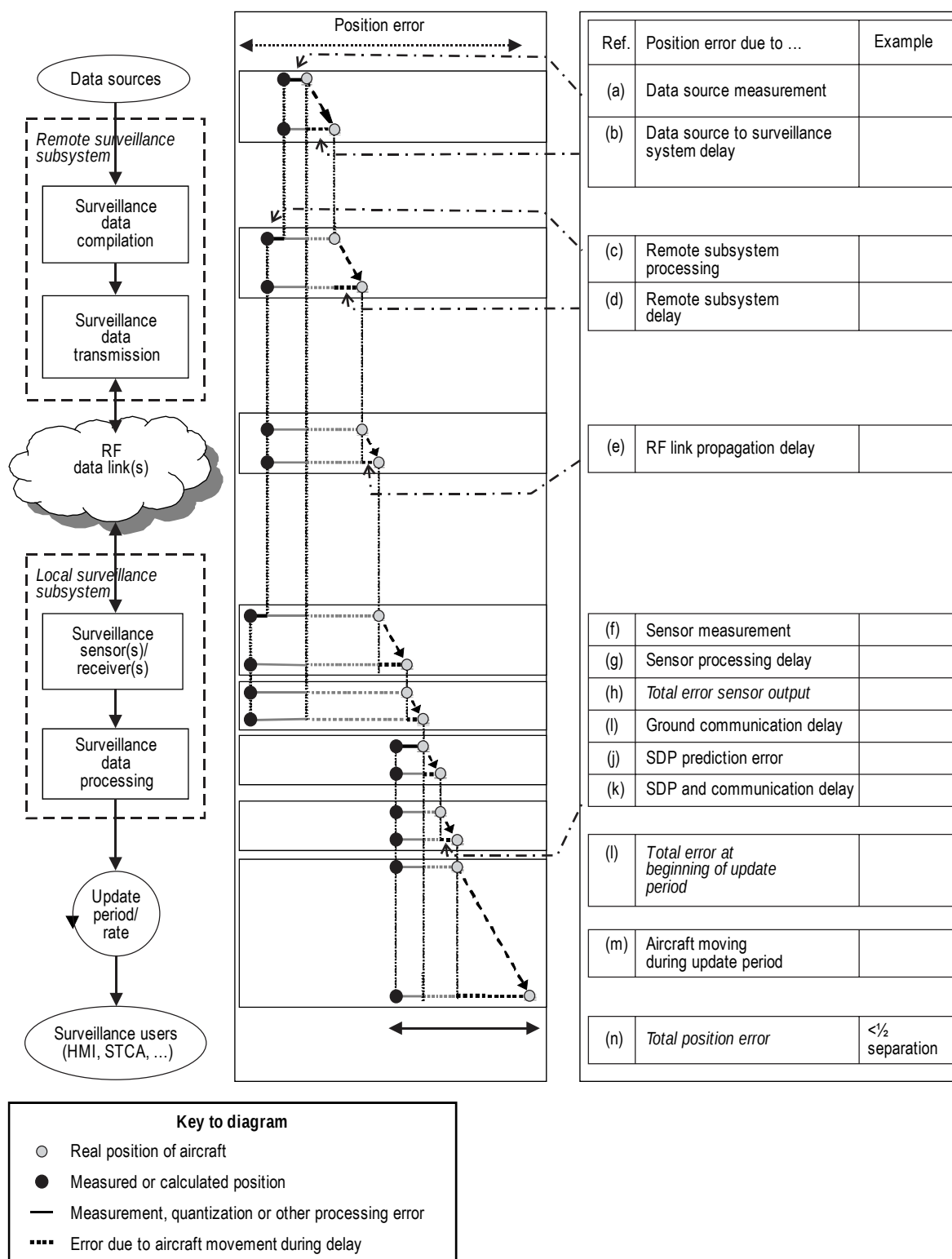


Figure A-4. Example of sources of horizontal position error

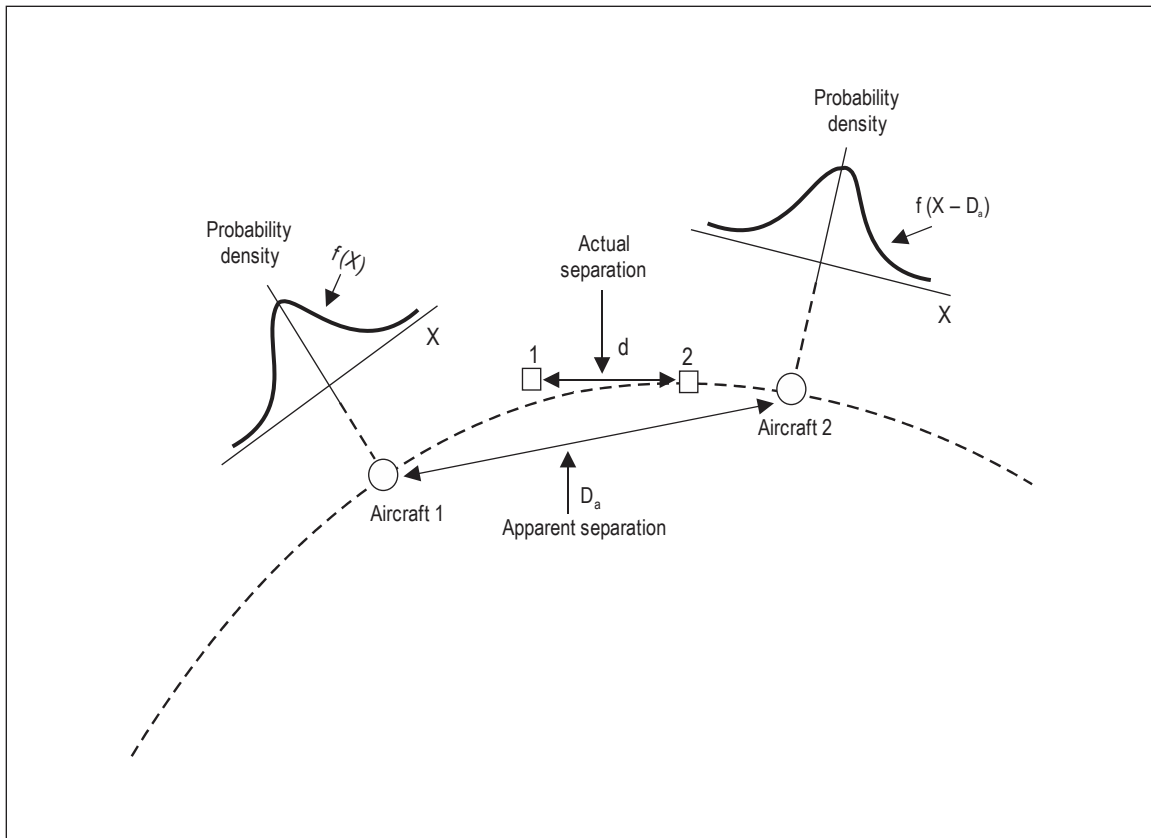


Figure A-5. Actual and apparent separation between two aircraft

2.5 Determination of horizontal position error during the update period

2.5.1 *Choice of operational scenario.* In the following exercise, it is assumed (as the worst-case scenario that is rather unlikely in practice) that two aircraft are on the same altitude and are “heading-on” at the maximum speed.

2.5.2 *Calculation of a buffer to cover displacement during update period.* The parameters used to calculate the remaining horizontal budget at the moment the data are output from the surveillance system are:

- S = maximum speed of controlled aircraft within considered airspace
- Z = maximum aircraft size
- T = update period at the output of the surveillance system
- H = horizontal separation

2.5.3 *Total maximum error budget accepted at the moment the data are output.* The following method can be employed to derive performance requirements for position accuracy at the moment the data are output from the system with a fixed update period. The maximum error budget (B) that must be met at all times at the end of the update period is half horizontal separation minus half aircraft size which is:

$$B = H/2 - Z/2$$

2.5.3.1 During the update period the aircraft can move by a maximum distance of $S \times T$. Therefore, the remaining error budget at the beginning of the update period is:

$$\text{Max error} = B - S \times T$$

This covers all errors including measurement errors by the sensor, calculation errors within the ATM system and any other error (e.g. output latency). It should be noted that errors due to aircraft acceleration are generally negligible. Two examples of remaining error budget calculation versus various update rates (for 5 and 3 NM separation minima) are provided in Table A-1. It can be observed that, as expected, a longer update period would impose a stricter limit on the error budget of the surveillance system.

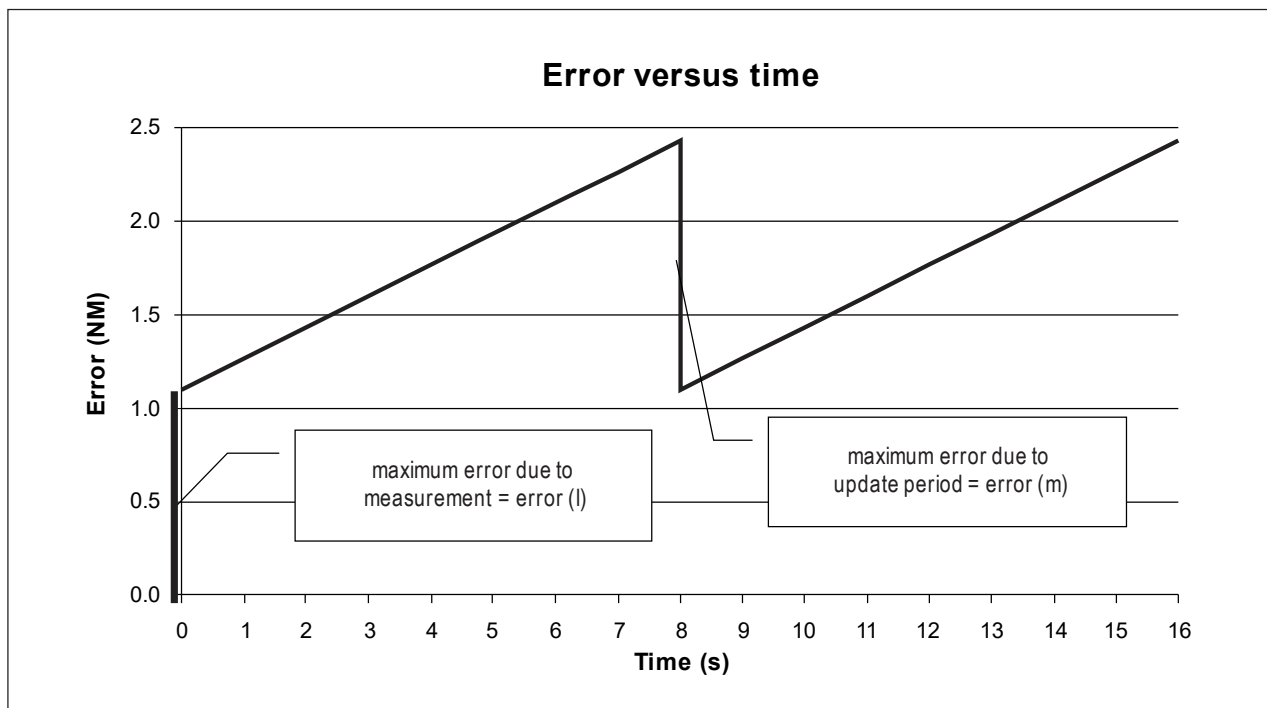


Figure A-6. Example of error due to aircraft moving during the update period

Table A-1. Maximum horizontal position error at the output of the surveillance system for different update periods in a 5-NM en-route environment

Hypothesis:		
• Maximum speed (kt) 600 • Aircraft size (m) 100 • Separation (NM) 5		
Update period (s)	Maximum remaining error budget at surveillance output (i.e. or just after an update)	
	(m)	(NM)
1	4 271	2.3
2	3 963	2.1
3	3 654	2.0
4	3 345	1.8
5	3 037	1.6
6	2 728	1.5
7	2 419	1.3
8	2 111	1.1
10	1 493	0.8
12	876	0.5

2.5.4 *Determination of acceptable probability of error being greater than the maximum value.* A safety analysis must determine what happens when the maximum error requirement is not achieved. Two different approaches can be used:

- the local safety assessment shows that a low probability of occurrence may be accepted. In such a case, the system shall be monitored to ensure that the probability of occurrence is never greater than the acceptable value; or
- any occurrence is considered significant from a safety viewpoint and must be analysed to determine whether it has a safety impact on operation. If it has an impact, the necessary measures will need to be put in place to continue to support the same separation.

2.5.5 *Derivation of requirement on core error once maximum error is determined.* In terms of safety, it is sufficient to limit the error below the maximum acceptable value. The specification of a core error distribution is nevertheless necessary to:

- provide the necessary confidence (and comfort) to the controllers. For example, the trajectories shown in Figure A-7, although completely inside safety limits, will not be useable; and
- provide confidence to the technical team that the probability of violating the maximum is extremely low based on distribution characteristics.

2.5.6 However, the distribution of error varies from one type of system to another and the position error distribution cannot be modelled with a single simple theoretical distribution.

2.5.7 The following graphs show typical horizontal error distributions measured at the radar output (Figure A-8), at the output of a multi-sensor tracker (Figure A-9) and at the output of an ADS-B receiver (Figure A-10) obtained from actual recordings.

2.5.8 It must be noted that the evaluation has been performed on the overall volume of the radar data while only a part thereof would be used to support the 5 NM application.

2.5.9 The examples in Figures A-8, A-9 and A-10 show that:

- a) the error distribution is not necessarily “centred” around 0; and
- b) the tails of distribution are usually completely different from one system to another.

The criteria used to constrain the core error distribution must cover both bias and random errors. It is recommended to characterize the core error distribution either by using a maximum error for a per cent of measurements (e.g. error at 95 per cent) or to use a root mean square (RMS) value in which the error budget takes into account possible bias in the distribution. Two approaches for determining the core error in a commonly accepted form are discussed in 2.5.10 and 2.5.11 below.

2.5.10 *First approach.* Use a theoretical distribution to obtain assurance of low probability for maximum tolerable error.

2.5.10.1 The first step is to choose a distribution. The real distributions of error are dependent on the design and technologies used by the surveillance system (see examples in Figures A-8, A-9 and A-10). A simple Gaussian distribution is the most commonly assumed model.

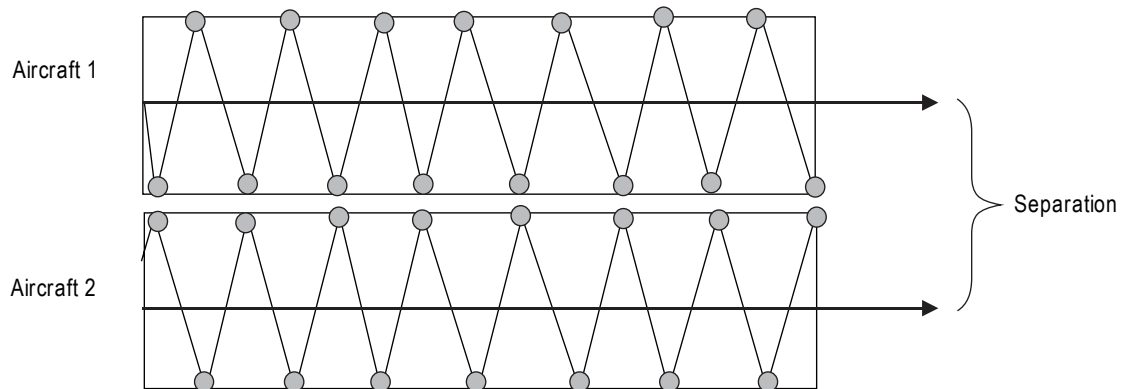


Figure A-7. Example of two trajectories compliant with maximum error

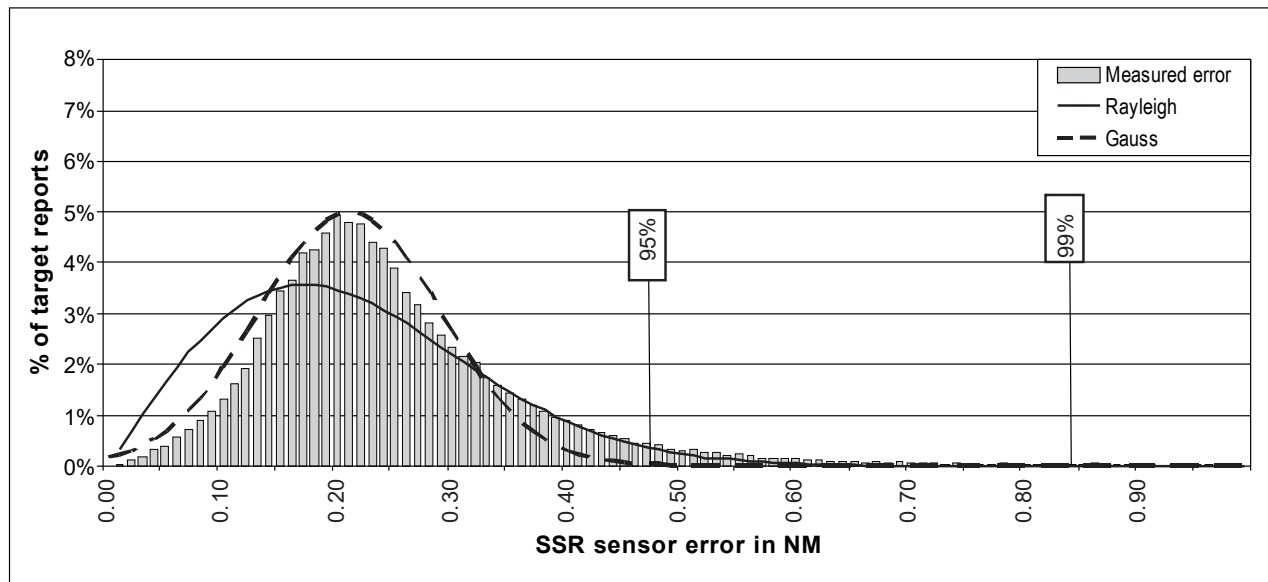


Figure A-8. Example of horizontal position error distribution measured at the output of an SSR radar

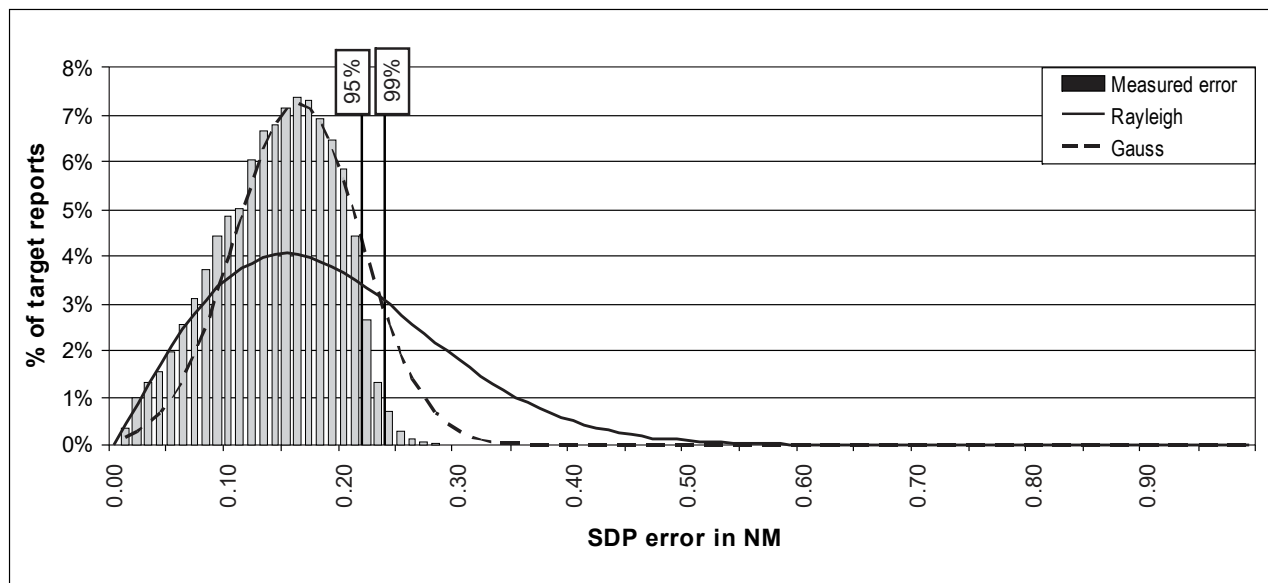


Figure A-9. Example of horizontal position error distribution measured at the output of a multi-sensor tracker

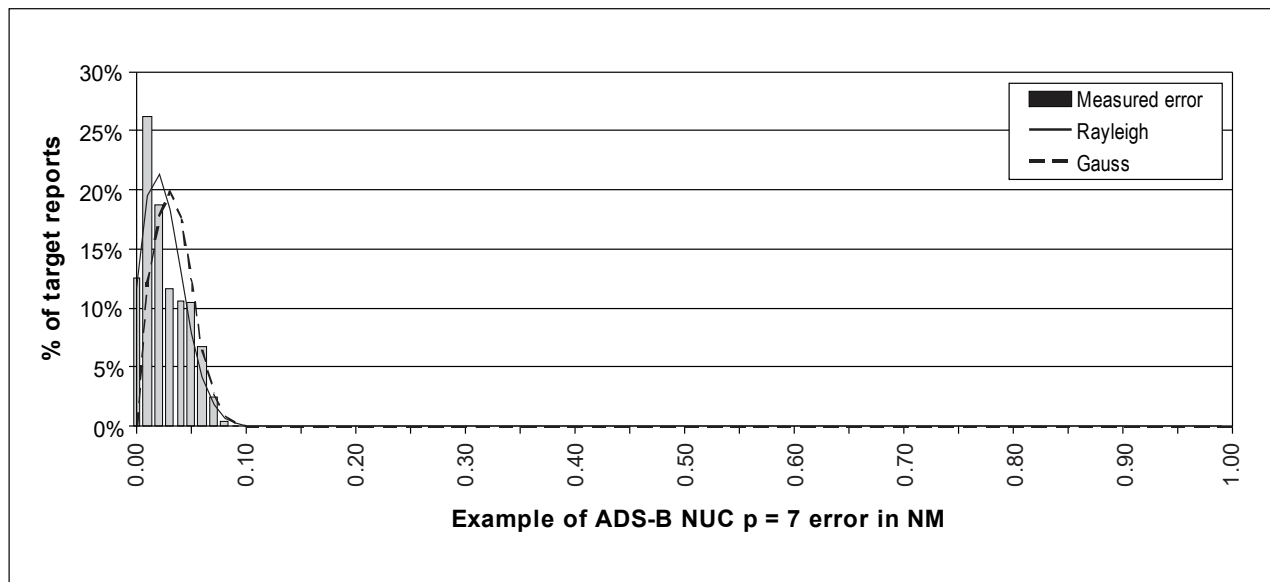


Figure A-10. Example of horizontal position error distribution for ADS-B with $NUC_P = 7$

2.5.10.2 The second step is to choose the probability of having errors greater than the maximum error specified in Tables A-2, A-3 and A-4. For example, the value of 1×10^{-5} can be chosen for this purpose; for a Gaussian distribution, it corresponds to 5 sigma. For the same Gaussian distribution, the 95 per cent corresponds to 1.96 sigma and gives the constraint on 95 per cent of errors as listed in Table A-5.

2.5.11 *Second approach.* The core distribution error is defined as a direct proportion of the supported separation.

2.5.11.1 The objective is to limit the probability to infringe the separation when having two aircraft already at the minimum separation.

2.5.11.2 For example, it is possible to choose a model where 95 per cent of cases are inside an error of 10 per cent of the separation. Based on a Gaussian distribution function, this approach results in a maximum remaining error budget of 926 m (3038ft) for 5 NM and 556 m (1824ft) for 3 NM.

2.6 Examples of horizontal error budget for different surveillance system designs

2.6.1 Single radar example

Table A-6 gives an example of errors due to measurement and processing delays for a single radar system.

2.6.2 Multi-radar example

Table A-7 gives an example of errors due to measurement and processing delay in a multi-radar system.

Table A-2. Maximum horizontal position error at the output of the surveillance system for different update periods in a 3-NM approach environment

Hypothesis:		
• Maximum speed (kt) 600 • Aircraft size (m) 100 • Separation (NM) 5		
Update period (s)	Maximum remaining error budget at surveillance output	
	(m)	(NM)
1	2 574	1.4
2	2 419	1.3
3	2 265	1.2
4	2 111	1.1
5	1 956	1.1
6	1 802	1.0
7	1 648	0.9
8	1 493	0.8
10	1 185	0.6
12	876	0.5

Table A-3. SSR radar example of error for different probabilities

Current dataset threshold	
Error <0.4 NM (741 m)	95%
Error <0.83 NM (1537 m)	99%
Error <1.75 NM (3241 m)	99.9%
Error <2.42 NM (4482 m)	100%

2.6.3 Example or error budget for an ADS-B environment

Table A-8 gives an example for measurement and processing errors in an ADS-B environment for an installation with NIC = 5.

**Table A-4. Example of measured errors
at the output of an SDP system**

<i>Current dataset threshold</i>	
Error <0.22 NM (407 m)	95%
Error <0.24 NM (444 m)	99%
Error <0.26 NM (482 m)	99.9%
Error <0.39 NM (722 m)	100%

Table A-5. Core error requirement at 95 per cent for 5 NM

Hypothesis: • Maximum speed (kt) 600 • Aircraft size (m) 100 • Separation (NM) 5		
<i>Update period (s)</i>	<i>Maximum remaining error budget (m)</i>	<i>Error for 95%</i>
1	4 271	1 674
2	3 963	1 585
3	3 654	1 462
4	3 345	1 338
5	3 037	1 215
6	2 728	1 091
7*	2 419	968
8	2 111	844
10	1 493	597
12	876	350
* For the 7-second update period, 95 per cent of errors should be less than $2\,419 \times (2/5)$ or 968.		

Table A-6. Example of error budget for a single Mode S radar system

En-route scenario:			
• 180 NM of coverage • 6-second update period • aircraft speed 600 kt.			
<i>Position error because of:</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Nominal value (m)</i>	<i>Maximum value (m)</i>
a) Data source measurement	n/a	—	—
b) Data source to surveillance system delay	n/a	—	—
c) Remote subsystem processing	n/a	—	—
d) Remote subsystem delay	Transponder reply delay jitter +/- 0.08 μ s	—	included in sensor measurement error
e) RF link propagation delay	3 ms	—	0.9
f) Sensor measurement/ processing error	Azimuth (1σ) = 0.068° Range (1σ) = 15 m Azimuth (5σ) = 1 978	440 m	1 978
g) Sensor processing delay	2 s (including ground communication delay)	—	617
h) Total error sensor output	—	—	2 596
i) Ground communication delay	—	—	As per g)
j) SDP prediction error	—	—	—
k) SDP delay	—	—	—
l) <i>Total error at beginning of update period</i>	—	—	2 596
m) Aircraft moving during update period	6 s	—	1 852
n) <i>Total position error</i>	not to exceed (1/2 separation – buffer = 4 580)	—	4 448 (less than the maximum permissible value)

Table A-7. Example of error budget for multi-radar tracker system

<i>Position error because of:</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Nominal value (m)</i>	<i>Maximum value (m)</i>
a) Data source measurement	n/a	—	—
b) Data source to surveillance system delay	n/a	—	—
c) Remote subsystem processing	n/a	—	—
d) Remote subsystem delay	Transponder reply delay jitter +/- 0.08 μ s	—	included in sensor measurement error
e) RF link propagation delay	3 ms	—	0.9
f) Sensor measurement/ processing error	Azimuth $\sigma = 0.068^\circ$ Range $\sigma = 15$ m (taken from the European Mode S specifications) Azimuth (5 σ)	395 m 15 m	1 978
g) Sensor processing delay	2 s (including communication delay)	—	617
h) Total error sensor output	—	—	2 596
i) Ground communication delay	—	—	—
j) SDP prediction error	95% or error <407 m maximum = 722 m (see example in Table A-5)	—	722
k) SDP delay	A few ms	—	1
l) <i>Total error at beginning of update period</i>	—	—	—
m) Aircraft moving during update period	Display update interval = 5 s	—	1 543
n) <i>Total position error</i>	Not to exceed (1/2 separation – buffer = 4 580)	—	—

Note.— The errors coming from the sensor measurements and the transmission delays will combine in a complex manner in the multi-sensor tracker included in the sensor data processor. The result of this process is represented by the error in line j) which contains the result of the combination of all errors coming from the different sensors. Therefore, the total position error calculation restarts from line j).

Table A-8. Example of error budget for a stand-alone ADS-B system

<i>Position error because of:</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Nominal value (m)</i>	<i>Maximum value (m)</i>
a) Data source measurement	GPS error NIC = 5, Rc = 1 NM = 1 852 m	—	1 852
b) Data source to surveillance system delay	Time between GNSS receiver and transponder maximum 0.6 s	—	185.2
c) Remote subsystem processing	Error due to transponder extrapolation	—	—
d) Remote subsystem delay	—	—	—
e) RF link propagation delay	3 ms	—	0.9
f) Sensor measurement/processing	—	—	—
g) Sensor processing delay	—	—	—
h) Total error sensor output	—	—	2 038.1
i) Ground communication delay	—	—	—
j) SDP prediction error	—	—	—
k) SDP delay	—	—	—
l) Ground communication delay	—	—	—
m) <i>Total error at beginning of update period</i>	—	—	2 038.1
n) Aircraft moving during update period	6 s	—	1 852
o) <i>Total position error</i>	Not to exceed (1/2 separation – buffer = 4 580)	—	3 890 (less than the maximum permissible value)

Appendix B

PSR

1. PRINCIPLES

1.1 The primary surveillance radar principle is based on radiation transmitted from a point being reflected by discontinuities in the atmosphere. Some of this energy is gathered at another point (or other points), amplified, detected and processed in order to locate the discontinuity. Such principle of reflection can be used to detect aircraft, meteorological phenomena and other objects. It is usual for the energy to be radiated and gathered by the same antenna, i.e. sent and received at the same point, known as monostatic radar technique. It is possible to separate the transmitter and receiver (or receivers); the system then becomes bistatic (or multistatic).

1.2 The amount of power, P_r , returning to the receiving antenna is given by the radar equation:

$$P_r = \frac{P_t G_t G_r \sigma \lambda^2 F_t^2 F_r^2}{(4\pi)^3 R_t^2 R_r^2}$$

where:

- P_t = transmitted power
- G_t = gain of the transmitting antenna
- G_r = gain of the receiving antenna
- σ = radar cross section, or scattering coefficient, of the target
- λ = wavelength
- F_t = pattern propagation factor for transmitting-antenna-to-target path
- F_r = pattern propagation factor for target-to-receiving-antenna path
- R_t = distance from the transmitter to the target
- R_r = distance from the target to the receiver.

1.3 When the transmitter and the receiver are at the same location, the power declines as the fourth power of the range. Consequently, the reflected power from distant targets is very small. The radar equation includes a coefficient called radar cross section, which is the ability of the target to reflect the signal. It depends on the object's size, shape, the reflectivity of the object's surface and the directions of the received and reflected signals. A radio wave scatters differently depending on its wavelength, polarization and the shape and type of target. The choice of the frequency and polarization will be made depending on the type of targets to be detected and the range to be achieved. Circular polarization is useful for weather detection.

1.4 PSRs have historically been used for ATC surveillance. They use a collocated transmitter and receiver and operate by radiating electromagnetic energy and detecting the presence and characteristics of echoes returned from reflected objects. The distance is derived by measuring the time elapsed between the radar pulse transmission and its received echo. A narrow beam in the horizontal plane allows high azimuth accuracy. The bearing of the target in azimuth is determined by the position of the rotating antenna when the reflected pulses are received.

1.5 Target detection is totally based on the reception of reflected energy. It does not depend on any signals transmitted from the target itself, i.e. no carriage of airborne equipment is required.

2. TYPES

2.1 PSR is used for medium range en-route surveillance, terminal area surveillance, approach monitoring and ground movement surveillance. The fundamental principles remain the same regardless of the application.

2.2 PSRs operate in the following frequency bands:

“L” band, 1 215–1 350 MHz is usually used for en-route surveillance radars. The turning rate is 6–10 rpm and the detection range is 120–200 N.

“S” band, 2.7–3.5 GHz, is usually used for airport approach and terminal control area (also known as terminal manoeuvring area (TMA)) surveillance. The turning rate is 12–15 rpm, and the instrumented detection range is 60–80 N. Military, air defence and long-range warning radars use a turning rate of 6–10 rpm and may have an instrumented detection range of up to 200 N.

“X” band, 8.0–10.5 GHz, is usually used for PAR and ground movement radar.

“Ku” band, 15.5–15.7 GHz, is predominantly used for ground movement radars.

“Ka” Band, 24–40 GHz, and “W” Band, 75–110 GHz, are used by short-range, high resolution ground movement radars and automated systems for the detection of FOD on runways.

3. TECHNICAL ISSUES

3.1 Clutter

3.1.1 Electromagnetic energy is not only reflected by aircraft but also by any discontinuities in the atmosphere e.g. rain, snow or hail. Significant amounts of energy are also returned from the ground or nearby buildings, trees, road traffic, wind farms and, in the case of coastal radars, waves. Such echoes, which are reflected from objects other than the target of interest, are named clutter. Signal processing techniques are used with varying degrees of success to filter these unwanted returns (clutter).

3.1.2 In particular, deployment of wind turbines in the proximity of primary radars can have detrimental effects on their performance. The technical impact on ATC surveillance system performance has yet to be completely quantified; particularly the cumulative effect of large-scale wind turbine farms (i.e. where over 100 turbines are deployed) need further study. Wind turbines can result in:

- a) clutter;
- b) false targets caused by reflections from turbine blades;
- c) shadowing (targets behind the blades not being detected); and
- d) reduction of range in the direction of the wind turbine.

With the height of a new wind turbine exceeding 200 m (656 ft), the maximum radar cross section of the blade and supporting tower may be very large, as shown in Figure B-1.

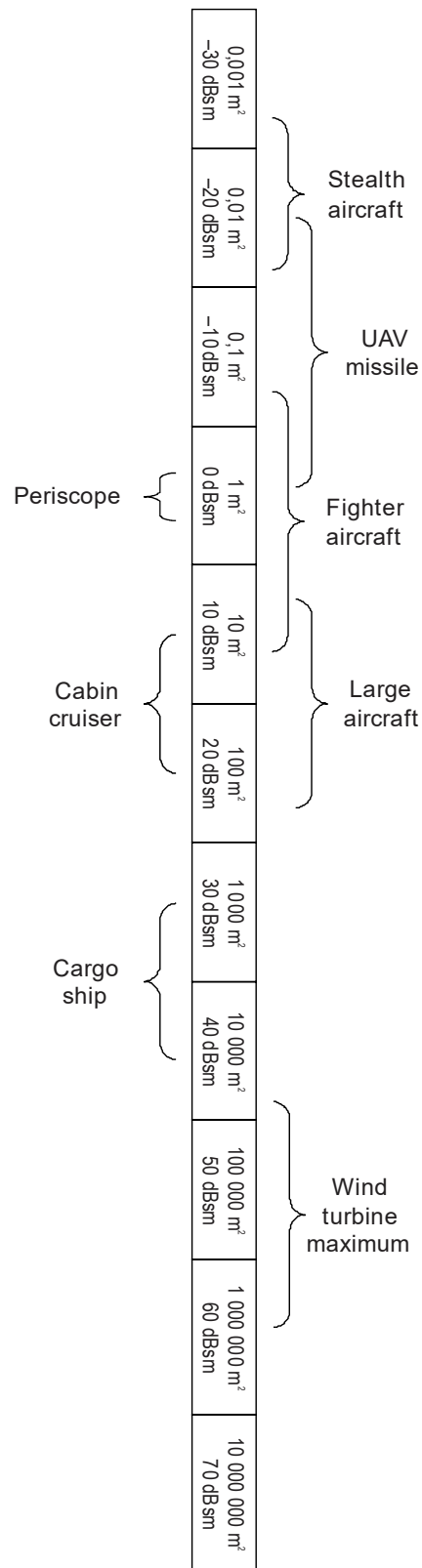


Figure B-1. Radar cross section of a wind turbine compared to other reflecting objects

3.1.3 Due to the broad Doppler return generated by rotating tips, the Doppler filtering systems are not always effective at removing the false plots generated by wind turbines. It is therefore recommended to carefully analyse any installations of wind turbines in close proximity of a PSR. More careful investigation on possible impact on ATC (e.g. approach path, route) must be undertaken when wind turbines are installed within the radar line of sight up to an obstruction height of 200 m (656 ft) or within a specified radius around PSR.

3.2 Use of composite material

The trend today is to use composite material for small general aviation aircraft. This results in a smaller radar cross section which may result in degraded detection by a PSR.

4. CHARACTERISTICS OF L-BAND AND S-BAND PSR

4.1 Performance

Typical overall performance of PSR radar is as follows:

- a) overall probability of target position detection: >90 per cent;
- b) average number of false target reports per antenna scan: <20;
- c) systematic errors:
 - 1) slant range bias: <100 m (328 ft);
 - 2) azimuth bias: <0.1 degree;
 - 3) slant range gain error: <1 m/NM; and
 - 4) time-stamp error: <100 ms;
- d) random errors (standard deviation values):
 - 1) slant range (m) (ft): <120 m (393.7 ft); and
 - 2) azimuth (degree): <0.15 degrees.

4.2 En-route and approach surveillance

PSR has been used as the primary means of air traffic surveillance for decades. SSR and other cooperative means of surveillance have gradually replaced PSR, enabling the determination of horizontal and vertical positions and identity. Nevertheless, PSRs are still used for detection of:

- a) intrusion of non-cooperative targets;
- b) transponder failure; and
- c) significant weather.

4.3 SMR

4.3.1 Surface movement radar (SMR) is the most widely used non-cooperative surveillance system for aerodrome surveillance. SMR is a primary radar that provides surveillance cover for the manoeuvring area, which is defined as that used for the take-off, landing and taxiing of aircraft. In A-SMGCS, the non-cooperative surveillance service is typically provided by one or several SMRs.

4.3.2 SMR systems are also known by the acronym “ASDE”, which stands for “airport surface detection equipment”. Typical characteristics of SMR are:

- a) antenna dimension: 50–70 cm;
- b) rotation rate: 60 rpm;
- c) range: 4 km; and
- d) resolution: 5–20 m.

4.3.3 The aerodrome surveillance application requires high resolution in order to discriminate between closely spaced targets. It also needs accurate and timely position information at an appropriate update rate to determine target speed and direction. For a simple sensor system, the expected range for operational use under all specified weather conditions will not normally exceed 4 km. SMR provides surveillance of all aircraft and vehicles in this area with a high update rate (e.g. once per second).

4.3.4 An SMR is required to provide the best possible coverage of the airport surface. Usually it is required to give equivalent coverage to that achieved by visual observation from the control tower. However, in certain specific cases, the SMR may be required to augment the control tower view. In these circumstances, multiple SMR sensors may be required to achieve the required coverage.

4.3.5 Given the requirement to provide a “bird’s eye view”, the SMR antenna must be mounted as high as possible. As such, SMR coverage is defined by negative angle obstruction lines that govern visibility, for example, into aircraft parking areas and stands. Coverage prediction for SMR therefore involves a detailed analysis of local obstructions. Airport development can have a significant effect on SMR coverage and must therefore be kept under constant review.

4.3.6 Given the need to monitor airport surface traffic, elevation coverage is limited to about 100 m (328 ft) to minimize the coverage of airborne traffic. The coverage requirement of an SMR is therefore the inverse of that used in conventional surveillance radar. The fan beam directs the energy towards the ground while minimizing the power directed above the horizon.

5. MILLIMETRE RADAR

5.1 Aerodrome surveillance

5.1.1 Millimetre radar is an emerging technology used for aerodrome surveillance which provides higher resolution than traditional SMR. The use of very short wavelength results in poorer weather performance and limited range. However, the millimetre radar has the advantage of being smaller and lighter as well as typically having lower power requirements than the SMR. Millimetre radar is commonly used as a gap filler solution in areas of poor SMR coverage. Multiple antennas may be used in clusters, together with a central processor, to extend the surveillance coverage.

5.1.2 Typical characteristics of the millimetre radar are:

- a) antenna dimension: 20 cm;
- b) rotation rate: 60 rpm;
- c) range: 1 km; and
- d) resolution: 0.25–5 m.

5.2 FOD detection

5.2.1 The key requirement for FOD detection is the ability to detect very small objects. In order to design a system capable of detecting such small objects, it is necessary to maximize the signal reflected by the target (i.e. the FOD) and to minimize any other signal that could obscure the target. These other signals could be generated by noise within the system itself, or energy reflected from the runway.

5.2.2 It is possible to design a radar which minimizes the reflections from the runway by reducing its detection cell, which can be considered as the individual spot size of the beam on the runway. If this cell is large, a lot of energy is reflected from the runway surface, which can then obscure a small signal from a piece of FOD. In general, the cell size is decreased by increasing the radar frequency and its bandwidth. By adopting a millimetre wave radar operating at over 90 GHz (over ten times higher than most SMRs), and with a bandwidth of 600 MHz, a system will have a detection cell of just 0.6 m² at a distance of 1 km. By comparison, a standard SMR would have a cell size of around 30 m². Objects which are invisible to an SMR can therefore be seen clearly by such radar.

5.2.3 Millimetre wave radars used for FOD detection are used in networks to provide complete runway coverage. FOD detection is performed through digital signal processing of consecutive radar scans. FOD identification is usually supported by optical or thermal cameras.

5.2.4 Typical characteristics of millimetre wave radar are:

- a) scan time: 30 s;
- b) range: 0.1–1 km;
- c) smallest detectable FOD size: 2 cm;
- d) FOD detection time: 60 – 180 s; and
- e) FOD location accuracy: better than 3 m.

6. MSPSR

6.1 Principle

6.1.1 Multistatic primary surveillance radar (MSPSR) refers to a sparse network of transmitters (Tx) and either a single receiver (Rx) or a network of receiver ground stations using static (i.e. non-rotating) antennas (see Figure B-2). These units receive signals reflected from the aircraft and prepare them for onward transmission to the centralized processing unit. The signal received defines an ellipsoid of constant bistatic range on which the target lies. The location of the transmitter and the receiver are the two loci of the ellipsoid. In the CPU an intersection point of a number of ellipsoids (at least three) is calculated, this represents the 3-D position of the reflecting target.

6.1.2 These systems may use transmitters of opportunity like radio and television broadcast stations, mobile telephone base stations or dedicated transmitters specially deployed to avoid relying on third party illuminators.

6.1.3 The signal received via the reflected path is cross correlated with the direct signal from the transmitters in order to locate the position of the target reflecting the signals, as shown in Figure B-3.

6.1.4 Although the principle is well established, the development of such systems for civil applications is still in its early stages since it requires a lot of computation power.

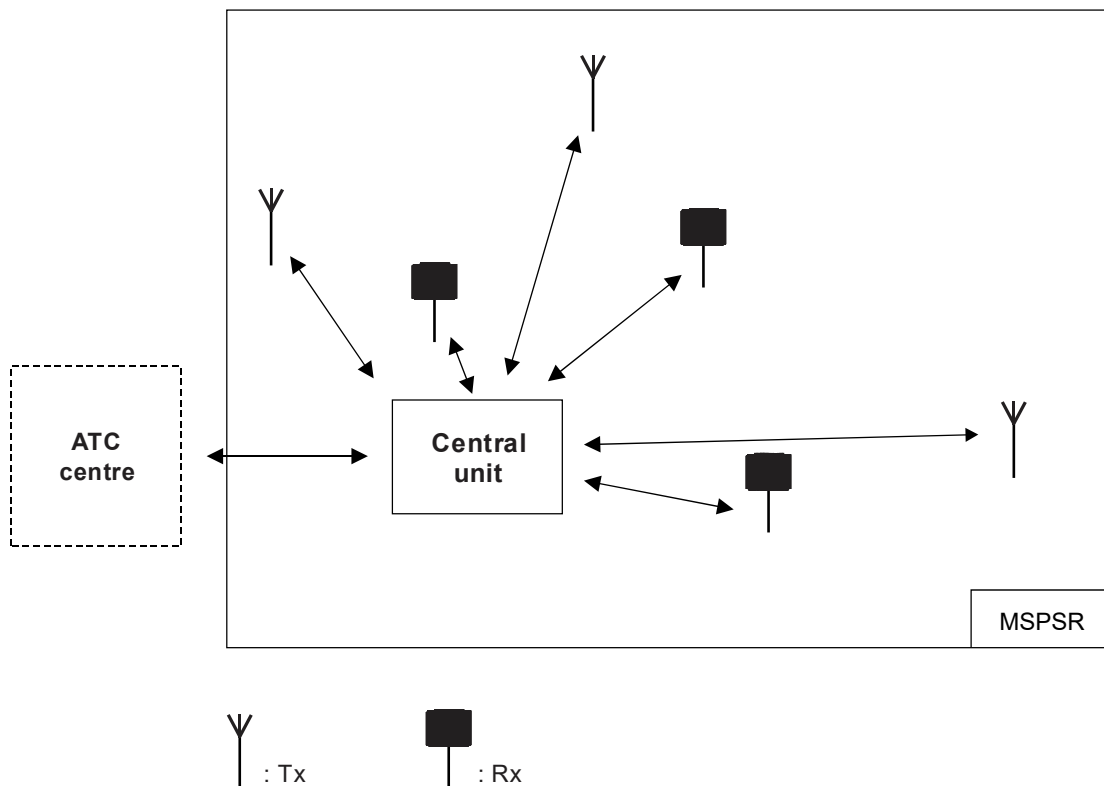


Figure B-2. MSPSR general concept

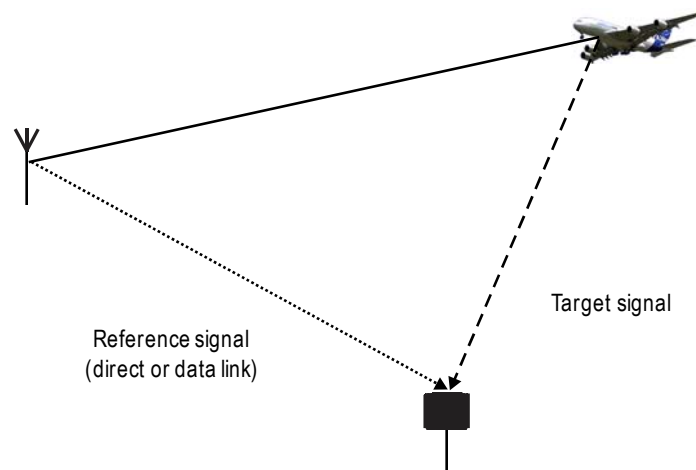


Figure B-3. Principle of the MSPSR

6.2 Passive MSPSR

Passive MSPSR is also known as passive radar, passive coherent location radar or parasitic radar. Rather than having its own transmitter in the same way as conventional PSR, this system exploits opportunity transmissions (e.g. FM radio or digital TV transmitters). The perturbations caused by an aircraft disturbing the transmissions are processed by ground-based receiver stations and a declaration of an aircraft's presence can be made. The performance that can be obtained using FM radios is relatively low while the predicted performance that could be obtained using terrestrial digital video broadcast transmissions is somewhat better.

6.3 Active MSPSR

6.3.1 To be independent of opportunity transmissions, the active MSPSR uses a network of dedicated ground-based transmitters. Such systems are based upon bistatic techniques which were previously employed in a defence role. The system must use either continuous wave (CW) or pulsed waveforms and coherent processing. Initial studies are very encouraging and give a positive indication regarding the feasibility of an active multistatic PSR system to support ATM applications. Assessments show that its potential performance complies with the requirements for approach/TMA even on low radar cross section targets (e.g. unmanned aircraft system (UAS)). The coverage can be extended by adding Tx and Rx as necessary, in order to support various applications and also to enable operations over difficult terrain.

6.3.2 Multistatic radars offer several potential improvements when compared to conventional PSRs. In particular, they provide:

- a) 3-D detection in position and velocity;
 - b) a higher renewal rate (e.g. 1.5 s instead of 4–5 s); and
 - c) resistance to man-made noise and possibly to clutter created by the reflections from wind farms.
-

Appendix C

SSR PERFORMANCE CAPABILITIES

Note.— SSR provides EHS of aircraft compared to primary radar. Mode A/C provides, in addition to position reporting, rudimentary data link capabilities to report identity and pressure-altitude. Mode S provides more comprehensive data link capabilities, which are described in later sections.

1. SURVEILLANCE INFORMATION

1.1 Like primary radar, SSR can provide position (range and bearing) information in conjunction with identification. SSR is able to provide the information described in 1.2 and 1.3 below.

1.2 *Information from Mode A/C.* Mode A replies provide identity codes for aircraft ID purposes. The Mode A code contained in a reply is used to correlate the aircraft identity to the position report. The SPI pulse feature may be used in addition to Mode A codes to validate aircraft ID. Certain emergency conditions can be reported using special Mode A codes, which are exclusively reserved for these purposes. Mode C replies provide pressure-altitude reporting, encoded with a 100-ft resolution.

1.3 *Information from Mode S.* In addition to the information described above, a Mode S ground station can obtain some or all of the following information from a Mode S transponder:

- a) the unique 24-bit address of the aircraft;
- b) aircraft “on-the-ground” status (used to aid processing of SSR replies in conflict alert systems and radar data/FDPS);
- c) aircraft ID (in the form specified in item 7 of the ICAO flight plan);
- d) aircraft pressure-altitude with 25-ft resolution; and
- e) other information through use of the Mode S data link, including Mode S specific services.

The ability to obtain the above information is dependent upon the level of the transponder fitted to the aircraft, except for the first two items which are available from all levels.

2. RELIABILITY AND INTEGRITY

2.1 *Probability of detection.* Because of the use of transponders, received signal levels have a $1/R^2$ relationship to range instead of the $1/R^4$ relationship that exists in a primary radar. Therefore, an SSR system is able to achieve a high probability of detection (e.g. greater than 97 per cent), even at long range using relatively low power transmitters and simple receivers. Long-range performance is determined by interrogator/receiver and transponder characteristics and not by aircraft size or shape.

2.2 *False targets.* Use of separate frequencies by SSR for interrogation and reply eliminates the false targets seen on primary radar systems due to ground clutter, weather returns and “angels.” Side-lobe replies are prevented by side-lobe suppression (SLS) circuitry in transponders. Further protection can be provided by receiver side-lobe suppression (RSLS) in the ground system. Interrogations and replies received via reflecting surfaces can generate false targets with Mode A/C SSR systems. A number of techniques can be used to minimize this problem. In a full SSR Mode S environment there should be no persistent false targets because the selective interrogation will only be transmitted when the aircraft is within the direct antenna beam.

2.3 *Data protection.* Protection against corruption of reply code information for Mode A/C SSR depends on frequent repetition of the reply code information as a means of validation. This process can be enhanced with tracking, confidence determination and other similar processes. Protection against corruption of the data contained in Mode S interrogations and replies is provided by CRC procedures, which are designed to achieve error rates of less than one undetected error in 10^7 112-bit messages. Where tracking and confidence determining processes are employed in the ground system, they may be used to assess the validity of the barometric altitude data.

2.4 *Resolution.* Surveillance resolution is a measure of the ability of the radar to separate replies from two or more aircraft that are in close proximity. Resolution has an influence on the ATC separation standards to be applied within the coverage volume of the radar.

2.5 *Azimuth resolution.* The azimuth resolution of Mode A/C SSR ground stations that use “sliding window” signal processing is generally slightly in excess of the antenna azimuth beamwidth. On the other hand, the azimuth resolution of Mode A/C SSR ground stations that use monopulse signal processing can be improved to a fraction of the antenna azimuth beamwidth. A Mode S ground station should experience no resolution problem for any aircraft pair where at least one carries a Mode S transponder.

2.6 *Range resolution.* Mode A/C reply pulse trains from aircraft at close azimuths may overlap in time if the aircraft are close in range. If the SSR signal processing is unable to resolve the framing pulses, a loss of detection can result. Synchronous garbling can occur if code information pulses from one reply overlap pulse positions from another reply on successive interrogations. Monopulse processing of Mode A/C reply pulse trains offers some improvement over sliding-window processing, as overlapped pulse trains can be separated in most cases on the basis of monopulse off-boresight angle (OBA) estimates. Mode S is not susceptible to detection losses or code garbling from aircraft close in range because only one Mode S transponder replies to a given selective interrogation.

2.7 *Accurate position reports.* SSR ground stations must be able to provide accurate position reports on targets that are correctly detected. The required accuracy is dependent upon the desired separation minima (elements on the establishment of separation minima can be found in the PANS-ATM, Chapter 8). The conventional sliding-window technique for SSR is able to support current radar separation minima of 18.5 km (10 NM), 9.3 km (5 NM) and 5.6 km (3 NM), depending on the range of the aircraft from the radar. Monopulse and Mode S ground stations are significantly more accurate and therefore may support closer separation at longer range.

3. UTILIZATION OF SSR INFORMATION

3.1 *Analog display of SSR reply pulses.* In early systems, analog video pulse trains of Mode A/C replies were displayed on a PPI, either alone or superimposed on primary radar returns. Currently, SSR plot extractors (SSR digitizers) process all the replies from an aircraft during each scan of the antenna to form a digital target report (“plot”), which can contain aircraft position, identification code and flight level (Mode S systems may also provide a range of additional information). SSR plot information may be further processed before display in RDPS, which may perform mono-radar or multi-radar tracking, conflict alert processing, MSAW processing, etc. SSR plot information is normally displayed as a plot position symbol which may have an adjacent alphanumeric label providing the SSR identification information and pressure-altitude information. Furthermore, Mode S information, such as aircraft intent data, may also be displayed as part of the alphanumeric label or as selectable data blocks.

3.2 *Volume of coverage.* SSR must provide coverage under all-weather conditions, at all bearings and at all ranges between at least 1.85 km (1 NM) and the maximum operationally required range (typically 370 km (200 NM) for long-range systems and 150 km (80 NM) for short-range systems), and at all operational altitudes up to at least 30 480 m (100 000 ft) above mean sea level between at least the angles of elevation of 0.5 and 40 degrees (or 0.5 degrees above the terrain in directions of terrain masking). Coverage at ground level on airfields may be required for some SSR Mode S data link applications.

3.3 *Interference.* SSR systems must perform their operational function without degrading the performance of other radio, radar or electronic equipment on board aircraft or on the ground and without being affected by such other equipment.

3.4 *Aircraft manoeuvres.* The probability of detection of manoeuvring aircraft can be reduced due to transponder antenna shielding, which can be alleviated by careful site selection or multi-radar processing as well as by transponder antenna diversity systems.

4. TECHNICAL PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

4.1 *Detection probability.* The P_D is measured inside the volume of coverage. It must be at least 95 per cent everywhere within the volume of coverage. The P_D is influenced by siting, uplink and downlink power budgets and other factors.

4.2 *False detection.* False targets are mainly caused by main beam reflections; detection through side lobes, which can give rise to ring-around at shorter ranges; and second-time-around replies from aircraft beyond the maximum range that appear to be detected at shorter range. Within any scan, the false target count must be less than 2 per cent of the total target count. False detection can be reduced by good vertical antenna cut-off, judicious siting, STC and scan-to-scan processing.

4.3 *Garbling.* Overlapping replies can give rise to missed detection, inaccurate detection and Mode A and Mode C code corruption, particularly when targets are near each other and thus subject to synchronous garbling.

4.4 *Position detection accuracy.* To a first approximation, the detection accuracy can be characterized by the bias and standard deviation in range and azimuth throughout the volume of coverage. Typical figures of standard deviation are 250 m (820 ft) and 0.15 degrees for conventional SSR, and 100 m (328 ft) and 0.06 degrees for monopulse and Mode S ground stations. The data quantization must be consistent with the accuracy. Biases in range and azimuth must be minimized and monitored very carefully, particularly if data from several overlapping radar sites are merged. In particular, the radar north must then be aligned with geographical north to within about 0.1 degree (an azimuth bias of 0.3 degrees at 370-km range corresponds to an error of 2 km). In the case of a single radar site, these biases are less important since the distance between two proximate aircraft will remain correct.

4.5 *Mode A and Mode C.* Reports with missing or invalid Mode A codes must occur with less than 2 per cent probability in any scan. Reports with missing or invalid Mode C codes must occur with less than 4 per cent probability in any scan for Mode C-equipped targets. Reports with undetected corrupted Mode A codes must occur with less than 0.1 per cent probability in any scan. Reports with undetected corrupted Mode C codes must occur with less than 0.1 per cent probability in any scan.

4.6 *Mode S.* The Mode S message undetected error rate must be less than one undetected error in 10^7 112-bit messages. This message protection is provided by the CRC provisions included in the Mode S coding.

4.7 *Ground station capacity.* Maximum number of aircraft per scan must be specified according to local traffic forecast. For example, interrogators operating in high traffic areas may need a capacity of 900 aircraft.

4.8 *Processing and display criteria.* Processing and display equipment must be able to handle the specified ground station capacity. They must not introduce excessive delay (e.g. less than half the scan period) between detection and display.

4.9 *Test and evaluation methods.* Technical performance of the SSR can be tested and evaluated by measurements within the ground station itself, and by comparing the ground station output with a reference based on test flights, employing either an independent means of trajectory determination or trajectory reconstitution, based on non-real-time tracking of recorded radar data. Details are given in the *Manual on Testing of Radio Navigation Aids* (Doc 8071), Volume III — *Testing of Surveillance Radar Systems*.

Appendix D

SSR SYSTEM TECHNIQUES

1. SYSTEM POWER CONSIDERATIONS

1.1 The balance between uplink and downlink power budgets

1.1.1 SSR systems for civil aviation applications are normally designed so that the downlink is more sensitive than the uplink, typically by 3 to 6 dB. This ensures that whenever a transponder is triggered by a ground interrogator, there is a very high probability that the resultant reply will be received properly by the associated ground receiver. The maximum uplink range is that range for which the transponder's received power level is at the minimum triggering level (MTL) of the transponder. MTL is defined as the signal level at which a transponder responds to an interrogation signal or a ground station receiver responds to a reply signal with a 90 per cent reply ratio. The transponder MTL is measured at the antenna end of the transmission line. To a first order approximation, the "round trip" reply-to-interrogation ratio at the output of the ground receiver is then assumed to also be 90 per cent (rather than the 81 per cent which it would be if both up and downlinks were each balanced at 90 per cent probability). It should also be noted that this is the probability of a single successful "round trip" interrogation and reply. The actual "probability of detection" at the output of defruiting and plot extraction processing is dependent on sufficient successful single round trip replies from a sequence of interrogations for the processing technique employed.

1.1.2 The SSR system can become saturated and will degrade in performance if transponders are over-interrogated and/or over-suppressed.

1.1.3 Aircraft transponders can receive from and reply to only one ground station at a time, so it is important that they not be "occupied" by having to respond to more stations than absolutely necessary.

1.1.4 An excessive power margin can enable triggering of the transponder by side-lobe interrogations or by false P₁-P₂ pairs. Unwanted suppressions can then occur which will reduce the availability to reply to other ground stations.

1.1.5 The radar equation applied to SSR is the following:

$$P_{\text{rec}} = P_{\text{trd}} \frac{G_A G_T}{L_{\text{at}} L_I L_T} \frac{1}{(4\pi)^2} \frac{\lambda^2}{R^2}$$

where:

P_{rec} is the received power at the input of the receiver (watts);

P_{trd} is the transmitted power at the output of the transmitter (watts);

G_A is the ground station antenna gain with respect to the isotropic in the direction of the transponder;

G_T is the transponder antenna gain with respect to the isotropic;

L_I is the sum of the losses between the interrogator and the antenna;

L_T is the sum of the cable losses between the antenna and the transponder;

L_{at} is the atmospheric attenuation;

λ is the wavelength (metres);

R is the range between the ground station and the transponder antennas (metres).

Note.— The values for G_A and G_T to be used in this equation need to be chosen carefully. G_A , the gain of the ground station antenna, will vary as a function of azimuth and elevation. For reliable operation over the required coverage volume, the gain should not fall below the chosen value over all elevations in this volume at any given range. Furthermore, the gain should not fall below the chosen value over the azimuth beamwidth, for which replies are required. These considerations lead to an effective gain value which will be less than the peak gain of the ground station antenna. G_T , the gain of the transponder antenna, can be expected to be more constant in normal situations, but it will vary with elevation, and its effective value will be determined by the aircraft attitude.

1.1.6 The number of replies in a beam dwell is proportional to the beam dwell time and the pulse repetition frequency (PRF). The beam dwell time is defined as the beamwidth (in degrees) divided by the antenna scanning rate (in degrees/second).

$$\text{Number of replies} = \frac{\text{beamwidth (degrees) PRF (s}^{-1}\text{)}}{\text{antenna scanning rate (degrees/s)}}$$

1.2 The uplink power budget

1.2.1 The elements of the uplink are shown as a block diagram in Figure D-1. Analysis of the uplink is facilitated if the elements common to the ground station (transmitter power, interrogator feeder loss and interrogator antenna gain) are combined to give a term for the effective radiated power (ERP):

$$\text{ERP}_{(I)} = P_{\text{trd}} G_A / L_I$$

where $\text{ERP}_{(I)}$ and P_{trd} are in watts and G_A and L_I are ratios.

1.2.2 The power level received at the antenna of the transponder is given by:

$$P_{\text{ant}(T)} = \text{ERP}_{(I)} \frac{1}{L_{at}} \frac{1}{R^2} \frac{\lambda^2}{(4\pi)^2}$$

where $P_{\text{ant}(T)}$ and $\text{ERP}_{(I)}$ are in watts, L_{at} is a ratio and λ and R are in metres.

1.2.3 If $\lambda = 29.13$ cm ($f = 1\,030$ MHz), then the atmospheric loss (which varies with wavelength) can be shown to be 0.0065 dB per nautical mile (1.85 km). If R is in nautical miles, the above equation can be written in a logarithmic form:

$$P_{\text{ant}(T)} = \text{ERP}_{(I)} - 0.0065 R - 20 \log(R) - 98.05$$

where $P_{\text{ant}(T)}$ and $\text{ERP}_{(I)}$ are in dB above 1 milliwatt (dBm).

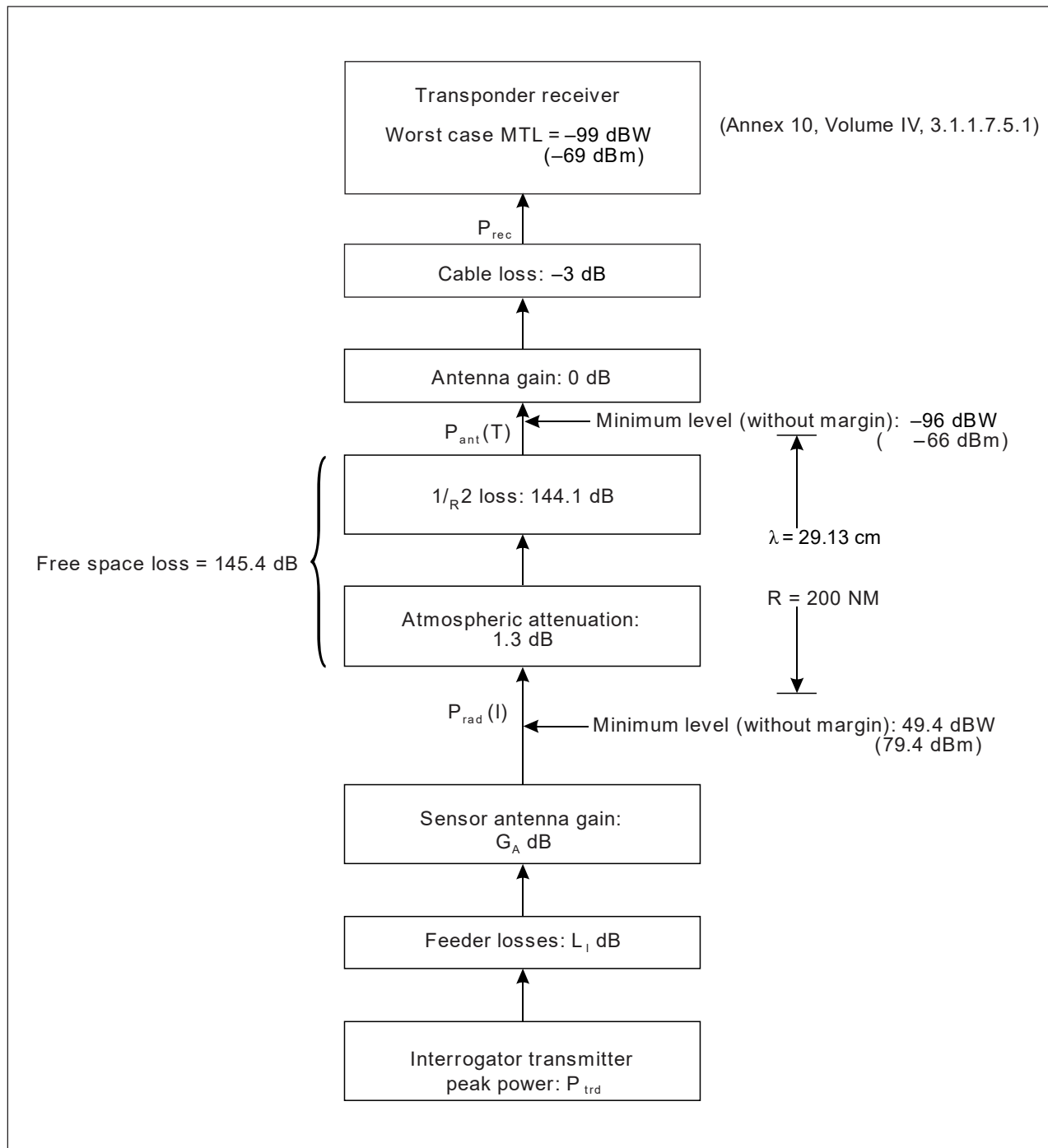


Figure D-1. Uplink margin. ERP equals 79.4 dBm

1.2.4 Figure D-2 plots $ERP_{(i)}$, the power required to be radiated by the antenna of the ground station, to provide given power $P_{ant(T)}$ at the transponder antenna at range R , for values of R between 18.5 and 555 km (10 and 300 NM). The actual power into the receiver of the transponder is calculated by taking into account the transponder's antenna gain and cabling loss:

$$P_{rec} = P_{ant(T)} G_T / L_T$$

where P_{rec} and $P_{ant(T)}$ are in watts and G_T and L_T are ratios (linear form).

$$P_{rec} = P_{ant(T)} + G_T - L_T$$

where P_{rec} and $P_{ant(T)}$ are in dBm and G_T and L_T are in dB (logarithmic form).

1.2.5 Figure D-1 shows atmospheric loss figures for a 370 km (200 NM) range and transponder parameters corresponding to those defined in the standards for worst case limits of transponder performance. The uplink margin is given by the amount the radiated power level exceeds the minimum necessary to trigger the transponder. The uplink margin obtained is determined by transmitter power, antenna gain and feeder loss of the ground station. It should be noted that the last two factors also affect downlink margins.

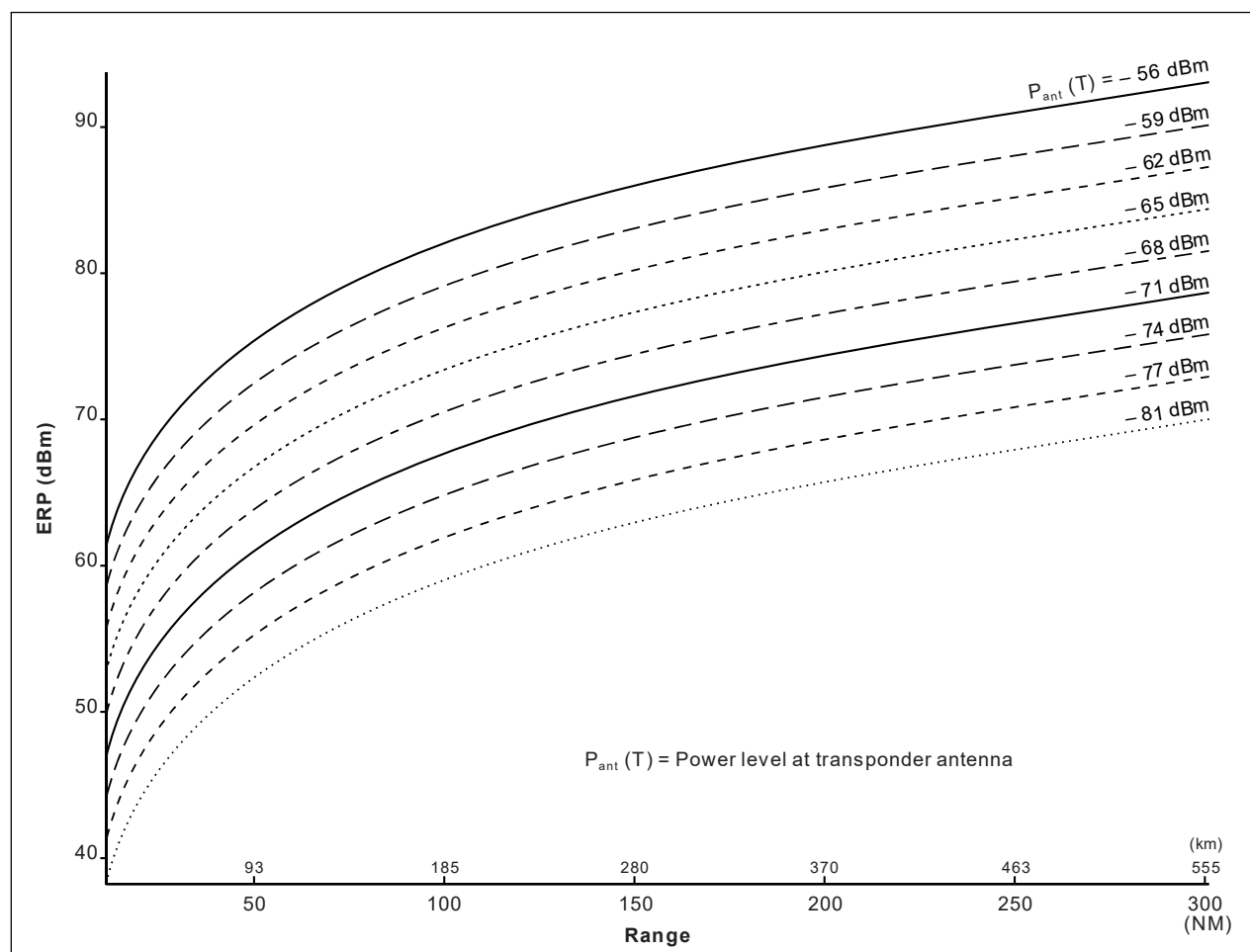


Figure D-2. Relationship between power and range at 1 030 MHz

1.2.6 Mode S data link delivery to aircraft on the airport surface may result in excessive signal dynamic range at the transponder receiver caused by very short minimum ranges. Because of this very large dynamic range, consideration should be given to the use of an auxiliary system with transmitter power programming to match the transmitter power to transponder range.

1.2.7 Allowance must be made for the aircraft transponder to receive interrogations above MTL across a sufficient portion of the ground station antenna beamwidth (nominally 3 dB beamwidth) to enable a sufficient number of replies to be received for subsequent processing (e.g. plot extraction). Depending on the interrogation rate, antenna turning rate, antenna azimuthal pattern and antenna elevation pattern, this number of replies will require operation to a certain level below the peak gain level of the antenna. This level is typically between 2 and 4 dB down on the peak. Note that the signal levels shown are based on free space propagation. Lobing effects can cause significant variations to these levels.

1.3 The downlink power budget

1.3.1 The elements of the downlink are shown as a block diagram in Figure D-3. Analysis of the downlink is facilitated if the elements common to the transponder (transmitter power, transponder feeder loss and transponder antenna gain) are combined to give a term for the ERP:

$$\text{ERP}_{(T)} = P_{\text{trd}} G_T / L_T$$

where $\text{ERP}_{(T)}$ and P_{trd} are in watts and G_T and L_T are ratios, or in a logarithmic form:

$$\text{ERP}_{(T)} = P_{\text{trd}} + G_T - L_T$$

where $\text{ERP}_{(T)}$ and P_{trd} are in dBm and G_T and L_T are in dB.

1.3.2 The power level received at the antenna of the ground station is:

$$P_{\text{ant}(I)} = \text{ERP}_{(T)} \frac{1}{L_{\text{at}}} \frac{1}{R^2} \frac{\lambda^2}{(4\pi)^2}$$

where $P_{\text{ant}(I)}$ and $\text{ERP}_{(T)}$ are in watts, L_{at} is a ratio and λ and R are in metres.

1.3.3 If $\lambda = 27.52$ cm ($f = 1\,090$ MHz), then the atmospheric loss (which varies with wavelength) can be shown to be 0.0090 dB per nautical mile (1.85 km). If R is in nautical miles, the above equation can be written in a logarithmic form:

$$P_{\text{ant}(I)} = \text{ERP}_{(T)} - 0.0090 R - 20 \log(R) - 98.54$$

where $P_{\text{ant}(I)}$ and $\text{ERP}_{(T)}$ are in dB above 1 milliwatt (dBm).

1.3.4 Figure D-4 plots $\text{ERP}_{(T)}$, the ERP from the antenna of the transponder and the resultant power at the antenna of the ground station $P_{\text{ant}(I)}$, as a function of range R , for values of R between 18.5 to 555 km (10 and 300 NM). The actual power into the receiver of the ground station is calculated by taking into account ground station antenna gain:

$$P_{\text{rec}} = P_{\text{ant}(I)} G_A / L_I$$

where P_{rec} and $P_{\text{ant}(I)}$ are in watts and G_A and L_I are ratios.

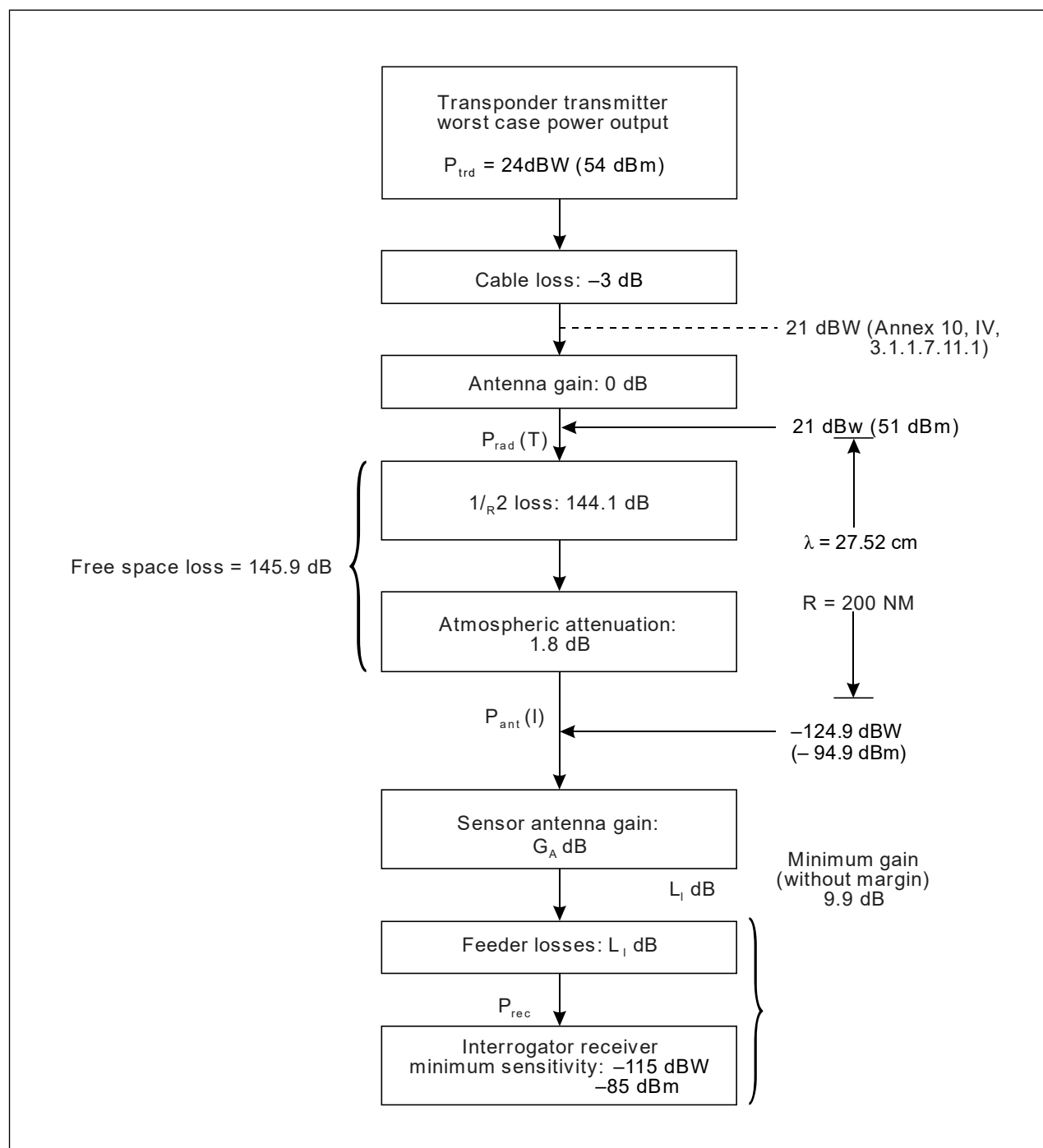


Figure D-3. Downlink margin. Receiver minimum sensitivity power at receiver input

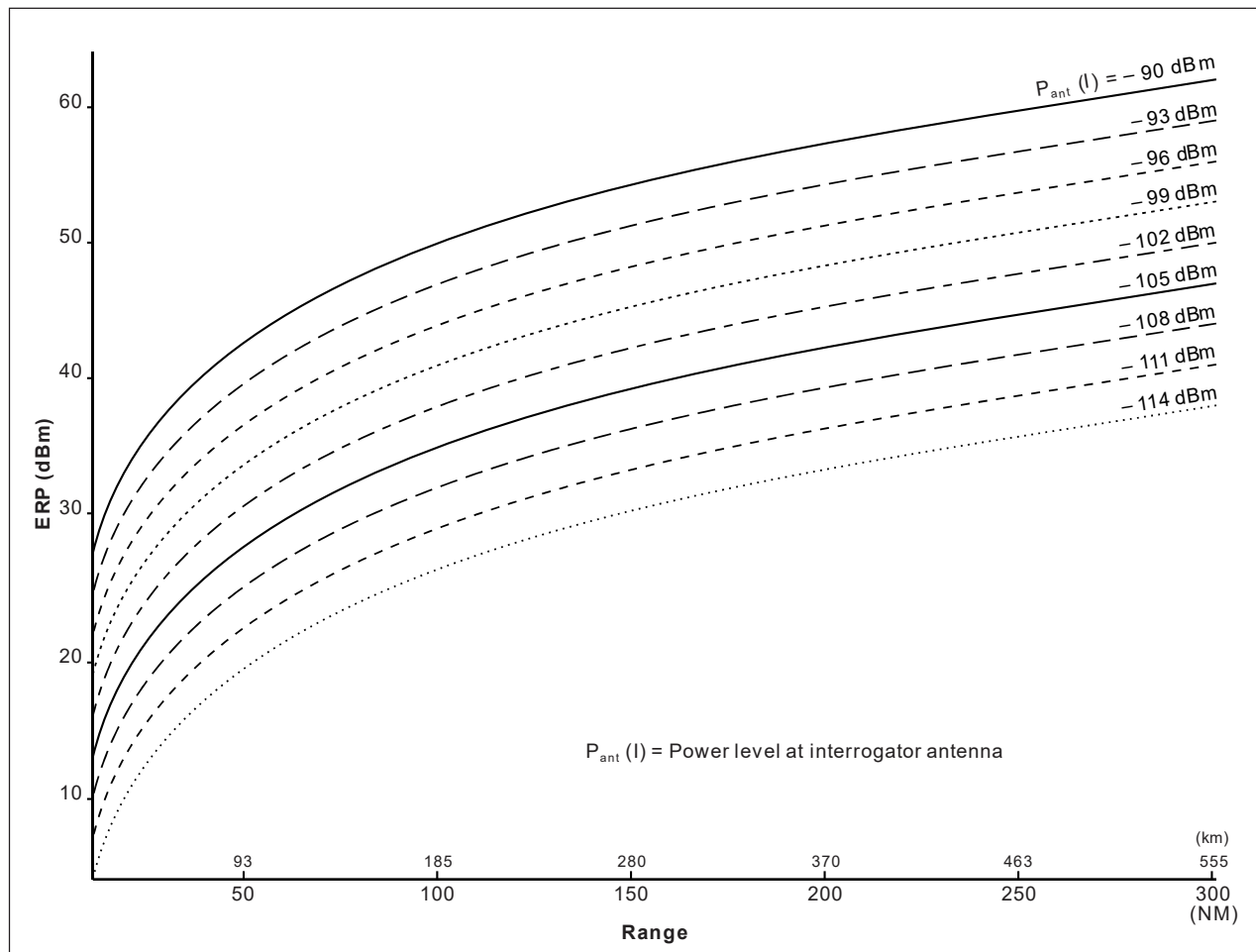


Figure D-4. Relationship between power and range at 1 090 MHz

1.3.5 Figure D-3 gives atmospheric loss figures for a 370 km (200 NM) range, and transponder power output at the lowest level allowed in the Standards, 24 dBW (250 W). The downlink margin is the amount by which the received power level exceeds the receiver sensitivity level. SSR interrogator/receiver sensitivity has traditionally been defined as the “tangential” sensitivity (see 2.4.2.1 of this appendix for receiver sensitivity). In many applications, a more realistic figure to use may be the minimum Signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) required for reliable operation of subsequent signal processors (plot extractors). This is particularly true for monopulse systems using sum/difference ratio techniques where there must be an adequate SNP in the difference channel for maximum range replies.

1.4 The relationship between absolute power levels and power density levels

1.4.1 In some instances, it is convenient to work with power density levels in watts per square metre at various ranges for uplink and downlink signal paths. The received power levels can then be calculated from knowledge of the effective area of the receiving antenna. The relationships for these calculations are summarized below:

- a) For an isotropic antenna transmitting power P_T , the power density at range R metres is $P_D = P_T/(4\pi R^2)$ W/m².
- b) If the gain G_T of a transmitting antenna in a given direction is defined as the ratio of the power radiated in that direction to the power radiated in the same direction by a standard (isotropic) antenna, then the power density in that direction is:

$$P_D = G_T P_T / (4\pi R^2) \text{ W/m}^2$$

Note.— G_T is a dimensionless ratio in the linear form, not a number of dB.

- c) Using the above equation, the power density at any range can be calculated for a given transmitting system.
- d) A receiving antenna with a gain G_R has an effective receiving area A_R given by:

$$A_R = G_R (\lambda^2 / 4\pi) \text{ m}^2 \text{ where } \lambda \text{ is in metres.}$$

- e) Given the above, the power delivered by a matched antenna to its load is then:

$$P_{\text{rec}} = P_D A_R$$

- f) Substituting from previous equations generates the radar equation for transponder systems:

$$P_{\text{rec}} = P_T G_T G_R \lambda^2 / (4\pi R)^2$$

2. GROUND STATION INSTALLATION

2.1 Siting

2.1.1 Number of ground stations

In planning the siting of ground stations, care should be taken to ensure that the number of ground stations with overlapping coverage is kept to a minimum consistent with the operational requirement.

2.1.2 Effects of obstacles

2.1.2.1 Natural and artificial obstacles around an SSR site can have detrimental effects due in particular to reflection or diffraction phenomena. It must be emphasized that reflections of the main lobe can cause serious problems such as false targets.

2.1.2.2 Diffraction phenomena can occur when portions of the beam are obstructed by buildings or other surfaces. Differences between the direct path and the path diffracted by an obstacle perturb the azimuth measurement. Reflection from a non-horizontal ground can cause the image to be displaced in azimuth. Combining of the direct and reflected signals produces a distorted beam shape. It is therefore advisable to avoid large vertical reflecting surfaces within a reasonable distance of the SSR ground station antenna. This distance will depend on the effective cross section of the reflecting surface and its elevation with respect to the ground station.

2.2 Interrogator antenna

2.2.1 HRP

2.2.1.1 Interrogation pulses are radiated by a directional antenna. For a mechanically rotated antenna, the beamwidth in azimuth should be sufficiently narrow, typically between 2 and 3 degrees at the 3 dB points, but it must be noted that there are a minimum number of replies necessary for reliable processing and display. This minimum will depend on the particular processing and display facilities provided. A typical requirement for "sliding window" SSR plot digitizers is four to eight replies per beamwidth on each interrogation mode. Monopulse secondary surveillance radar (MSSR) plot digitizers typically require two to four replies per beamwidth on each mode. It should also be noted that there is a direct relationship between the desired number of replies per beamwidth, the rate of interrogation, the antenna beamwidth and the rate of rotation of the antenna (see 1.1.6 of this appendix).

2.2.1.2 The horizontal beamwidth of the antenna is often made as narrow as possible in order to improve azimuth accuracy. For a mechanically rotated antenna, a narrow horizontal beamwidth reduces beam dwell time and therefore reduces the Mode S capacity of the ground station. A good compromise has been found to be a monopulse antenna with a beamwidth in the order of 2.4 degrees.

2.2.1.3 Azimuth pattern side lobes must be as low as practicable. A level at least 24 dB down from the main lobe is desirable.

2.2.2 Vertical radiation pattern (VRP)

2.2.2.1 Interrogation pulses must be radiated on an antenna which provides adequate signal strength between the angles of 0.5 and 40 degrees to the operationally required range and altitude.

2.2.2.2 Another important characteristic is the ability to lessen the energy directed at the ground. Reflected energy from the earth can have a significant effect on the radiation pattern in space of an SSR antenna. For targets at certain elevation angles, the direct and reflected energy combines in phase, giving a large increase in signal strength, while at certain other angles the signals combine out of phase, causing significant reductions in signal strength. This can have a number of undesirable effects, including:

- a) loss of replies from aircraft in regions of reduced signal strength;
- b) interrogation of aircraft beyond ranges of operational interest in regions of increased signal strength, possibly interfering with the operation of other ground station receiver systems; and
- c) degradation of azimuth accuracy when the magnitude of the reflection is not uniform across the antenna beam. This causes less variation in signal strength on one side of the beam than on the other, shifting the effective centre of the beam.

2.2.3 Techniques for achieving reduced low angle radiation

Inherent limitations of small vertical aperture antennas (e.g. "hog-trough antennas") can be overcome by designing large vertical aperture (LVA) antennas (five wavelengths or more). Antennas of this type are typically implemented from superposed columns of dipoles driven by signals of appropriate phase and amplitude. LVA antennas are typically used for MSSR and Mode S.

2.2.4 Influence of antenna height above ground on VRP

2.2.4.1 At most sites the VRP will be affected to some degree by reflected energy from the ground. The magnitudes of the peaks and nulls will be dependent on the reflection characteristics of the reflecting ground, and the number of peaks and nulls will depend on the height above the reflecting ground surface of the antenna.

2.2.4.2 The peaks and nulls will occur at intervals of approximately $n\lambda/4h$ radians, where λ is the wavelength, "h" is the effective antenna height and "n" is odd for peaks and even for nulls. Figure D-5 illustrates the geometry of reflection, the resultant lobing structure and the variations in signal strength as a function of range seen by a constant-altitude aircraft. This approximation for calculating peaks and nulls is only valid if the reflecting ground is substantially level out to a range of approximately 2.8 to 5.6 km (1.5 to 3 NM), dependent on antenna height.

2.2.4.3 Sloping ground can tilt the lobing pattern up or down. Careful attention should be paid to site selection and antenna tower height to achieve the best operational performance. Raising the antenna height tends to increase the number of nulls but reduces the depth of each individual null. This is shown in Figure D-6, which presents the lobing patterns for a given antenna at effective heights of 8.5 and 25 m.

2.2.5 SLS antenna

2.2.5.1 The main requirement is that the control pattern covers the directional pattern side lobes and back lobe. Another essential characteristic for proper functioning is that the patterns of the control and directional antennas match in the vertical plane, so that the P_1/P_2 power ratio can be maintained over all elevation angles. If separate transmitters are used for P_1 and P_2 (or P_6 and P_5 for Mode S), care must be taken to ensure that the P_1/P_2 (P_6/P_5 for Mode S) power ratio in space is maintained at the levels required for SLS (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.4.1 and 3.1.2.1.5.2.5).

2.2.5.2 The best solution to meet these requirements is that SLS and directional antennas be designed in a common assembly. Generally, the SLS pattern is produced by feeding the central part of the directional antenna with suitable amplitude and phase. Back lobes can be covered by a special radiator.

2.2.5.3 Another solution uses a separate omnidirectional antenna to radiate the SLS pattern. Because of physical constraints, the phase centre of a separate antenna will often be offset from the phase centre of the directional antenna. This causes the ratio between P_1 and P_2 to change with the target azimuth and elevation angle. An off-mounted solution should be reserved to upgrade older equipment and should be avoided in new installations.

2.2.6 Monopulse antenna patterns

MSSR systems require antennas that provide information about the OBA of received signals usually as "sum" and "difference" outputs. A comprehensive description of monopulse signal processing is given in Appendix E. As monopulse processing uses the relative amplitudes or phases of sum and difference outputs to determine off-boresight azimuth, it is important that these relative values are maintained within appropriate tolerances as a function of off-boresight angle over the elevation angle coverage of the antenna. The use of the monopulse technique is a prerequisite for a Mode S scanning beam interrogator.

2.2.7 Feeder system

The ground station feeder system connects the antenna to the transmitters and receivers and includes rotating joint channels, coaxial cables and RF change-over units. The characteristics of the feeder system are an important part of the total system, especially with monopulse systems, where the phase and amplitude matching of each channel of the feeder system must be maintained within appropriate tolerances for the type of processing being used.

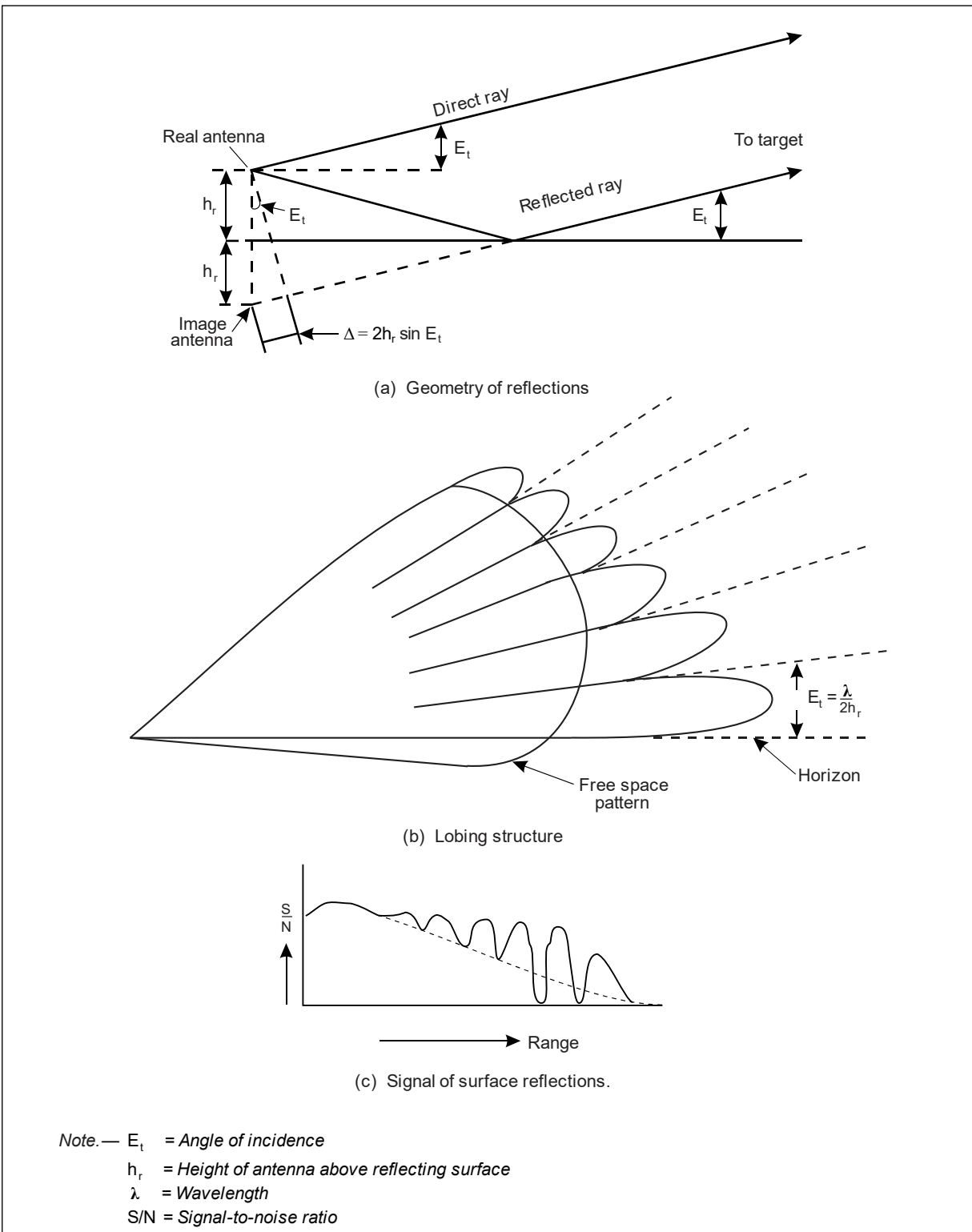


Figure D-5. Effects of surface reflection

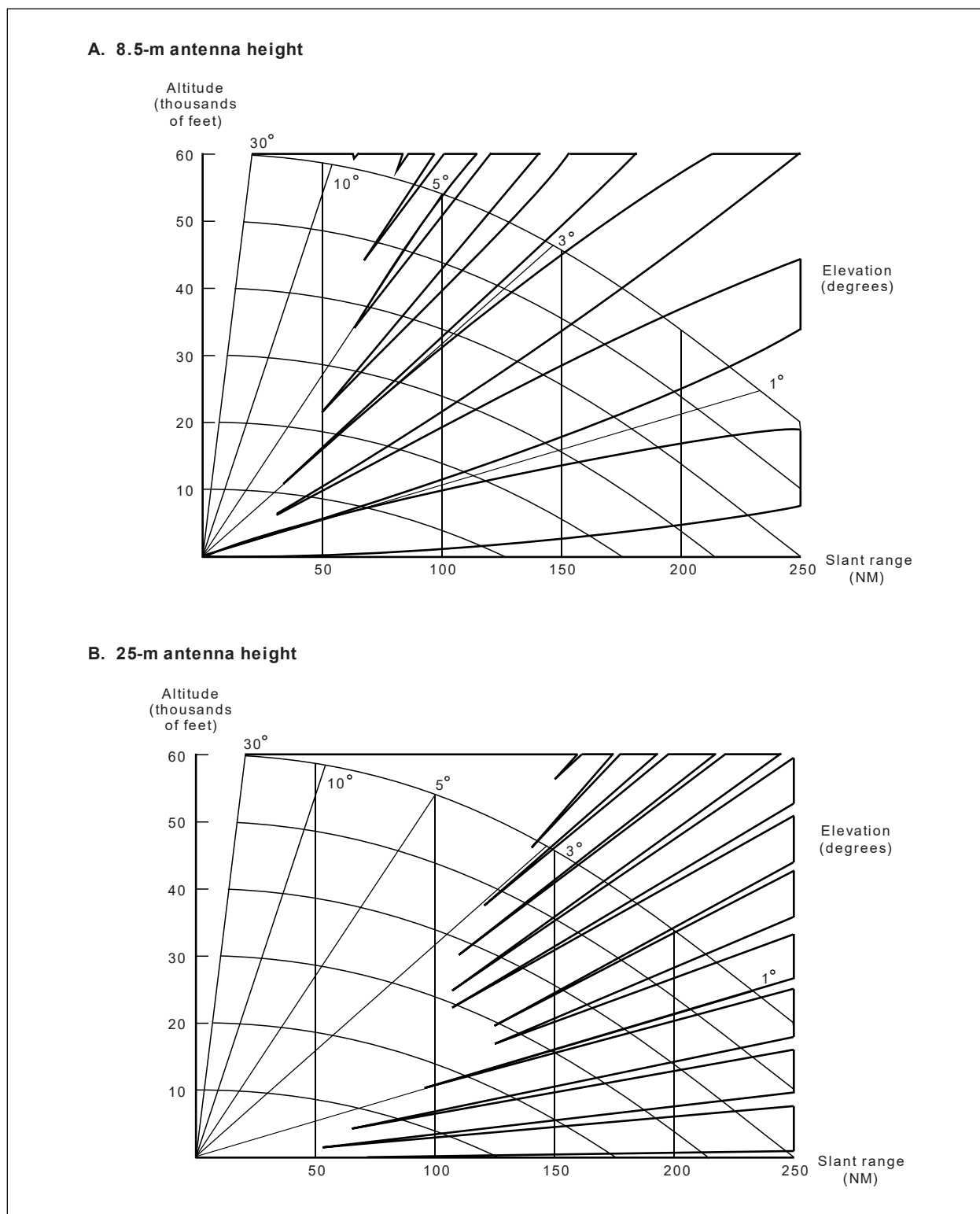


Figure D-6. Typical antenna lobe structure envelope representing 90 per cent probability of detection

2.3 Ground station transmitter

2.3.1 Transmitter power

2.3.1.1 The transmitter power output necessary to achieve a given operational performance objective is highly dependent on the gain and radiation pattern of the antenna with which it is being used. The uplink power budget has been discussed in 1.2.1 of this appendix.

2.3.1.2 If the control pattern for interrogator side-lobe suppression (ISLS) is not provided by an antenna integrated with the directional antenna, then a different power level may be required to adequately drive the control pattern antenna. Separate antennas of this type should be avoided for new installations.

2.3.1.3 Where the full coverage of the system is not required, the interrogator power should be reduced as recommended in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.8.2. It should be noted that digital techniques allow the reduction of transmitted power in predefined azimuth sectors in order to avoid unwanted replies due to reflections, for example.

2.3.2 Techniques for rejecting ISLS

Mode A/C transponders are suppressed on receipt of P_1 - P_2 pulse pairs (see Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.4) as shown in Figure D-7. Mode S transponders are prevented from replying on receipt of P_5 pulses which mask the sync phase reversal of P_6 (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.10.3.1). P_2 or P_5 pulses are radiated by the interrogator via a “control” pattern which shall cover all side lobes of the directional pattern over the operational angles of elevation. This will likely require that the antennas for the directional and control patterns be designed in a common assembly so that the same effective height above the ground can be maintained for both, and a constant phase relationship maintained as the directional antenna rotates.

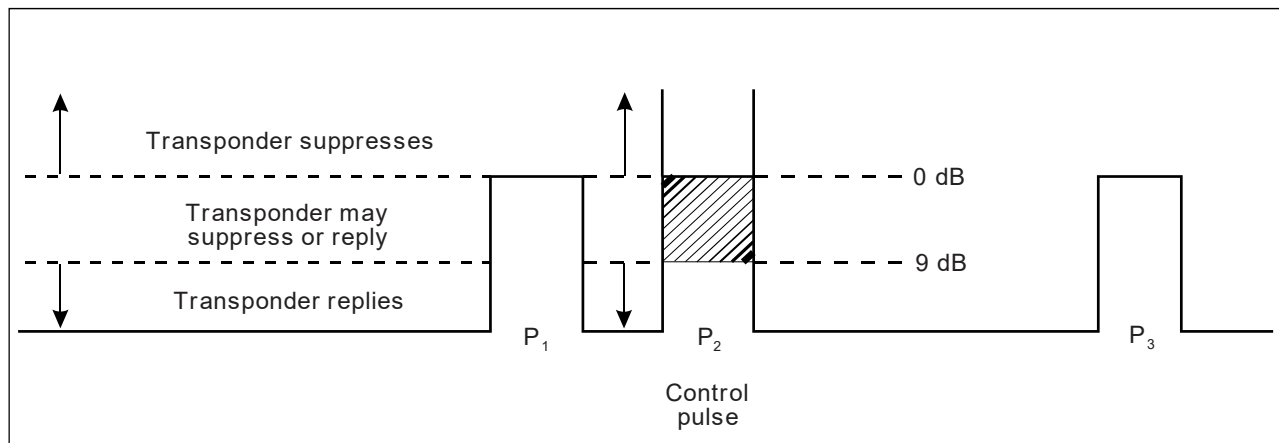


Figure D-7. Pulse amplitude discrimination in transponder for SLS facility

2.4 Ground station receiver

2.4.1 Receiver bandwidth and phase characteristics

2.4.1.1 The bandwidth of the receiver must be adequate to reproduce faithfully the pulses transmitted by the transponder (pulse rise time 0.1 microsecond) and to accommodate the drift in transponder transmitter frequency. Specifically, the minimum overall receiver bandwidth, which is typically determined by the Intermediate frequency (IF) filter, must be at least plus or minus 4 MHz at the 3 dB points.

2.4.1.2 The phase characteristic of the receiver must be linear within plus or minus 10 degrees over a frequency range of plus or minus 4 MHz to provide faithful detection of Mode A/C reply pulses. However, based on observations of actual Mode A/C transponder reply frequency distributions, prudent filter amplitude and phase bandwidth design must allow for reply carrier frequencies ranging from approximately 1 085 MHz to 1 095 MHz. More stringent receiver amplitude and phase specifications may be required to support the monopulse processing requirements of the ground station (see 2.3 of Appendix E).

2.4.2 Receiver sensitivity

2.4.2.1 Receiver sensitivity has traditionally been defined for the SSR ground station receiver in terms of the tangential sensitivity, as determined manually with an oscilloscope. The tangential sensitivity is equal to the amplitude of a pulsed input to the receiver that raises the observed noise amplitude by its own width (i.e. aligns the negative peaks of the noise on the pulse with the positive peaks of the noise alone). This measurement can be made with a linear or non-linear (e.g. logarithmic) receiver transfer function for a square-law detector, as illustrated in Figure D-8. Measured by this method, the receiver shall be more sensitive than 85 dBm, as indicated in Figure D-3. This sensitivity, when associated with a suitable antenna and feeder system, is adequate to provide a downlink range of 370 km (200 NM) for transponders having minimum specification output power.

Note.— Caution should be exercised in respect of measuring and using this sensitivity value. The definition is framed in terms of a single pulse response. Where the receiver drives a digital plot extractor, it is also necessary to consider the plot extractor requirements in terms of the signal-to-noise ratio for reliable defruiting, plot extraction and code validation from a sequence of reply pulse trains.

2.4.2.2 There are several alternative techniques available for determining the receiver sensitivity. Among these alternatives are:

- a) measurement of the receiver mean-square noise power level;
- b) measurement of the receiver noise figure; and
- c) measurement of the overlap of the probability distributions of noise only and signal plus noise.

Note.— Equipment which passes the simple oscilloscope test may fail accurate quantitative measurements. In current and old equipment, allowances may be made for this if desired, but new equipment should meet the more stringent specification.

2.4.2.3 The mean-square noise power can be determined directly by calibrating the receiver gain, sampling the receiver output in the absence of a reply signal to obtain multiple independent measurements of the instantaneous receiver noise power, and processing the resulting samples statistically to obtain the mean-square value of the Gaussian receiver noise. The tangential sensitivity measured, as illustrated in Figure D-8, is approximately 9 dB greater than the mean-square receiver noise power, i.e. a tangential sensitivity of -85 dBm corresponds to a mean-square noise power level of -94 dBm.

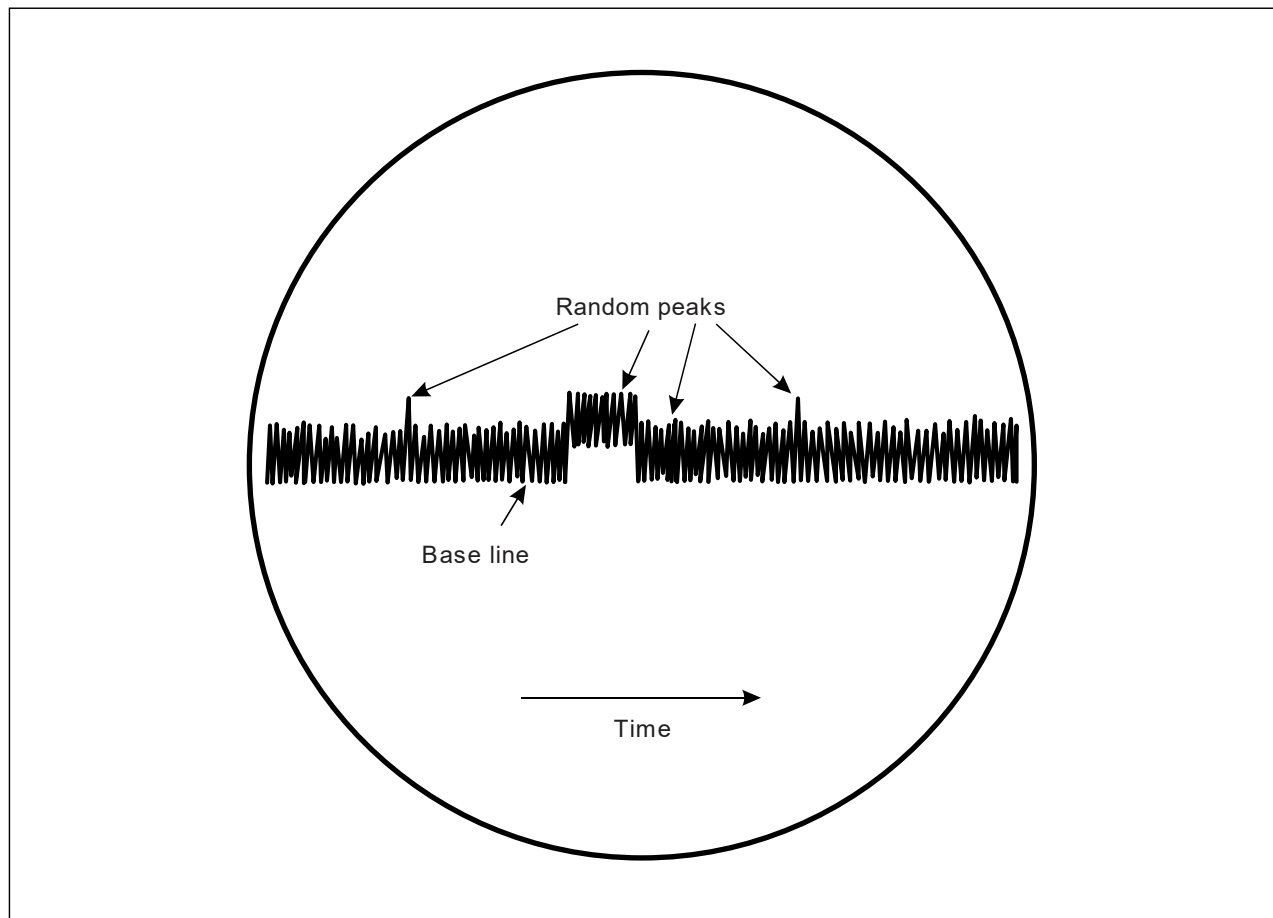


Figure D-8. Pulse signal on an A-scope with square-law second detector

2.4.2.4 The receiver noise figure may be measured directly with any of several commercially available noise figure measurement instruments that employ calibrated noise sources. The noise figure in dB is approximately equal to $114 - B + N$, where “B” is the 3 dB receiver bandwidth in dB relative to 1 MHz and “N” is the mean-square noise power in dBm. That is, a mean-square noise of -93 dBm and an effective bandwidth of 10 MHz (10 dB relative to 1 MHz) correspond to a receiver noise figure of 11 dB.

Note.— Noise bandwidth is dependent on filter characteristics and can vary significantly from 3 dB bandwidth.

2.4.2.5 If the probability distributions of noise-only and signal-plus-noise are plotted on the same axes for the case where the SNR is 8 dB, i.e. tangential sensitivity, the area of the noise only distribution that lies above the point at which the two distributions cross over, and the area of the signal-plus-noise distribution that lies below the point at which the two distributions cross over, will be constant and independent of receiver law. These areas, expressed as a percentage of the total distribution area, are 6.6 per cent and 8.1 per cent, respectively, and can easily be measured using sampling techniques for automatic monitoring.

2.4.2.6 It is desirable to have a method of reducing the receiver sensitivity to a pre-set level at the time of

transmission of the interrogator pulses and to increase the sensitivity to a normal level at a pre-set rate.

2.4.2.7 At 15.36 microseconds (corresponding to 1.85 km (1 NM) plus transponder delay) after pulse P₃, the gain must normally be reducible to a value between 10 and 50 dB below maximum sensitivity. The recovery rate must be adjusted to suit local conditions. A rate of 6 dB for each doubling of range is satisfactory for most applications.

2.4.2.8 Control of receiver sensitivity in this way has two benefits:

- a) it normalizes the amplitude of received signals to make them vary less with range, which reduces the required dynamic range of the receiver, thus reducing susceptibility to pulse stretching and distortion; and
- b) it discriminates against unsynchronized replies, arriving from aircraft at long ranges, interfering with genuine replies from aircraft at short range.

2.4.2.9 It should be noted that digital techniques of sectorization allow the use of adequate laws of sensitivity reduction in azimuths where reflections have been identified.

2.4.3 Techniques for rejecting side-lobe replies

If the SSR antenna and rotating joint system are designed to allow reception as well as transmission via the control pattern, then it is possible to recognize replies received via side lobes by virtue of the relative amplitudes of signals from the directional and control channels. This technique provides protection against transponders with faulty ISLS circuitry. Since an important part of the FRUIT replies is received by the side lobes of the antenna, this technique also allows a great reduction of FRUIT density seen by the processing.

2.5 Additional techniques for combatting reflections

2.5.1 Surveillance processing or tracking

2.5.1.1 Digitizing systems which incorporate surveillance processing or radar tracking based on data accumulated over a number of antenna rotations can use a number of factors to identify reflections. The main criterion of discrimination is the duplication of codes: if a given identification code can be assigned only once in the coverage area, a false target situation will be recognized when two or more targets report the same identification code.

2.5.1.2 Generally, the above discriminant is associated with one or more of the following:

- a) Comparison of the range of associated reports with the same codes. The wrong one generally has a slightly longer range.
- b) Predictions of false targets made by mapping of known reflectors and calculations using the laws of geometric optics.
- c) Comparison of amplitude. If a receiver with wide dynamic range is used, the video amplitude associated with the report can be used as a discriminant. A report with a weaker amplitude is generally typical of a reflection.
- d) Presence of a primary report at the same location. The principle is that the primary radar will not see the reflection seen by the beacon system because of its fourth-power path-loss law.

2.5.2 I²SLS

2.5.2.1 It should be noted that this technique will cause suppression periods in transponders over a wide azimuth, which can degrade the probability of transponder reply to interrogations from other SSR stations. Therefore, it must not be used unless absolutely necessary.

2.5.2.2 This technique exploits the characteristic of transponders that requires them not to reply for 35 ± 10 microseconds after suppression by a pair of pulses conforming to Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3. Since transponders will not reply to interrogations falling within a suppression period, it is necessary to provide for additional suppression in areas where reflections occur. This can be achieved by radiating P_1 in addition to P_2 on the “control” pattern normally used for SLS. Suppression is then assisted throughout the side-lobe region.

2.5.2.3 Digital techniques of sectorization allow one to minimize these drawbacks by using this technique only in an azimuth where reflections have been identified.

2.5.3 Selective interrogation

Systems selectively interrogate when using Mode S capabilities can overcome reflection problems. Reflections can occur during the Mode S all-call acquisition phase, but they can be identified as reflections with a higher level of confidence because two aircraft must never reply with the same Mode S address. The ambiguity can be resolved by surveillance processing, as described in 2.5.1.1 of this appendix (surveillance processing is essential in a Mode S implementation to track aircraft so that the selective interrogations can be scheduled at the required azimuths.) Once acquisition has occurred and a track has been established, selective interrogations are scheduled only when the antenna is in the direction of the aircraft and never when it is in the direction of the reflector.

2.6 Rejection of unwanted responses

2.6.1 In an area where a large number of ground stations are deployed, a considerable number of transponder responses, triggered by other ground stations, will be received at any one ground station. The responses will be received at recurrent frequencies that, if carefully planned, will be different from that of the ground station receiving the information and will constitute a nuisance called FRUIT on the radar display. Defruiting techniques that use storage of received replies to defruit on a reply-to-reply basis should be employed to remove these non-synchronous replies. The defruiting function may also be an integral part of the digital detection process.

2.6.2 As this process relies on the unwanted replies being non-synchronous, it is recommended that interrogation intervals should be able to be varied by small amounts from interrogation to interrogation. This improves the decorrelation of false reply signals and “second-time-around” replies which can occur in certain propagation and antenna lobing situations.

2.7 Monitoring of SSR ground stations

2.7.1 Interrogator monitoring

2.7.1.1 *General.* The performance monitoring of the ground station called for in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, is required to provide responsible personnel with an indication that the equipment is functioning satisfactorily within the system limits prescribed in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, and to give an immediate indication of any significant fault developing in the equipment. It is desirable that continuous monitoring be provided for the system parameters listed in 2.7.1.2 and 2.7.1.3 of this appendix and that alarm indications be given in the event of this monitor itself failing. In addition to the test transponder described below, a test target generator should be provided that inputs video test signals into the

Mode S system, for the purpose of simulating replies from Mode S-equipped aircraft. This generator can be used to monitor system integrity and can perform checks on garbled preambles, garbled messages, poor reply quality, noisy video, etc.

2.7.1.2 *Pulse intervals.* Means must be provided to measure pulse spacing for all modes that are to be employed (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3).

2.7.1.3 *Interrogator relative radiated pulse levels.* When SLS is provided, monitoring of this parameter is most important and must be associated with the tolerances indicated in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3.

2.7.1.4 *Other system parameters.* Monitoring (or checking on a periodic basis) of the following SSR system parameters is also desirable:

- a) *Interrogator RF.* Assuming that a high stability crystal-controlled oscillator is used as the frequency control element of the SSR, it will be necessary only on a periodic basis to determine that the tolerance specified in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.1.1, is satisfied.
- b) *Interrogator pulse duration.* Precise measurement of pulse duration in the interrogator is one means of verifying the transmission of the correct interrogation pattern. A less precise method is the use of a fixed transponder located near the ground station (see monitoring of system operation in 2.7.3 below). The continued presence of replies from this fixed transponder gives a measure of assurance that the interrogator is functioning properly.
- c) *Radiated power.* On-line measurement of transmitter power is one technique for verifying that the ERP limitation recommended in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.8.2 is observed. If implemented, the test monitor should be able to detect transmitter power both above and below normal limits.
- d) *Spurious radiation.* Conformance to the requirements of Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.11.1 and 3.1.2.11.3.1 need only be monitored on a periodic basis.
- e) *Monitor warning location.* The precise location of the monitor warning indication is a matter for determination by the administration concerned in the light of local circumstances but must take into account the need to prevent the presentation of erroneous information to the controller without the controller's knowledge.

2.7.2 Receiver monitoring

2.7.2.1 Receiver sensitivity must be monitored continuously (see 2.4.2.1 of this appendix). In receiver systems that employ monopulse and/or RSLs techniques, the sensitivity of all receiver channels must be monitored.

2.7.2.2 The matching of sensitivity, gain and phase responses of receiver channels employed for monopulse and RSLs techniques must be checked periodically.

2.7.3 Monitoring of system operation

2.7.3.1 The use of a site monitor installed at a suitable fixed location can provide useful monitoring of overall SSR system operation. Observation of the responses from a fixed site monitor can check range and azimuth accuracy of the processing and display system, in addition to providing a simple test of uplink and downlink operations. It is often useful to provide a capability to delay the fixed site monitor replies so that their displayed range may be adjusted to meet local operational and technical requirements. In addition, it may also be useful to adjust the receiver MTL threshold and transmitter output power level of the fixed site monitor to provide a monitor of ground station overall performance.

2.7.3.2 The Mode S site monitor is a remote beacon used for testing of the Mode S station. It mostly operates like an ICAO Mode S transponder, with additional capabilities, such as programmable attenuation and range, and specific Mode S protocols. Several site monitors may be deployed in proximity to each interrogator (refer to Doc 8071, Volume III — *Testing of Surveillance Radar Systems* for location issues). Site monitors serve as the basis for the overall operational surveillance checks by providing replies from “aircraft” with known identification and position. Overall operational communications checks are performed by loop tests with the site monitor. Since a Mode S station can operate with a surveillance identifier (SI) code, the Mode S site monitor should also handle SI codes to allow loop testing of the Mode S station.

2.7.3.3 The Mode S site monitor is used for:

- a) the on-line testing of the Mode S station — station test performed using interrogations to and replies from the site monitor;
- b) the calibration of the Mode S station during the system set-up phase, at site installation of the Mode S station — using interrogations to and replies from the site monitor;
- c) the maintenance of the Mode S station, by visualizing the site monitor data on the local display.

2.7.3.4 The site monitor has many characteristics in common with a Mode S transponder: however, there are a number of important differences. The main differences are the following:

- a) In normal operation, a Mode S interrogator provides surveillance on Mode A/C aircraft using a Mode A/C-only all-call interrogation. This interrogation does not elicit replies from a Mode S transponder. In order to check P_1 – P_3 spacing and the shape of the pulses, provision should be made for the monitor to reply to a Mode A/C only all-call interrogation;
- b) All-call lockout control for a Mode S transponder depends on a timeout of 18 ± 1 second following the last lockout command. This time delay is undesirable in configuring the site monitor to respond to all-calls. It is desirable to provide a means to command the site monitor in and out of lockout without any time delays;
- c) Provision should be made in the site monitor for additional delay to be added to the nominal turnaround time to allow the apparent position of the site monitor to be moved from its actual location. This could be used to prevent synchronous garble if two site monitors are mounted on the same tower or to artificially locate the site monitor at a non-interfering place;
- d) The site monitor should not generate acquisition squitters in order to eliminate the possibility of a site monitor being acquired by an ACAS unit;
- e) The site monitor may be configured to use an internal or an external transmitter source. In either case, the output power should preferably be adjustable in 1 dB steps;
- f) The site monitor receiver MTL should be adjustable in 1 dB steps in such a way that the receiver maintains a sufficient dynamic range (e.g. 40 dB). This variable MTL is provided for different installed ranges as noted in e) above; and

- g) The site monitor should sense any failure that causes a continuous transmission of the 1 090 MHz carrier. If such is detected, the site monitor transmitter should be disabled, preferably within 100 ms. The purpose of this feature is to prevent site monitor interference with sensor operation if the site monitor fails in such a way as to generate CW.

2.7.3.5 There are a number of protocols which may be envisaged to control the site monitor, including:

- a) The use of Mode S interrogations with particular reply request (RR) values;
- b) The use of Comm-A interrogations with specific message Comm-A (MA) field values; and
- c) The use of an uplink mode S specific protocol (MSP) channel 6 containing an SR field of value 2. The SR for this uplink channel has been reserved for this purpose (see Doc 9871, A.3.2.6.3).

2.7.3.6 The site monitor should preferably perform the following checks:

- a) *SLM test.* A communications loop test using the standard length message (SLM) (Comm-A/Comm-B) should be supported by the site monitor. This would test the ability of the sensor to correctly deliver and receive an SLM message. Several solutions may be envisaged, one being to deliver a Comm-A message to the site monitor, which could cause the generation of an air-initiated Comm-B (AICB) message with the same message content. The sensor would then check that the message Comm-B (MB) field content is the same as the MA field content;
- b) *ELM message test.* This test should be similar to the SLM test but based on the extended length message (ELM) protocol;
- c) *Alert bit trigger.* The site monitor would set the alert bit (change of the Mode A code) upon reception of a request from the Mode S station. For example, this request could consist of a Comm-A interrogation with a specific MA field value or of an interrogation with a particular RR value. This is to check that the Mode S sensor correctly processes such an event;
- d) *Downlink capability report announcement.* The site monitor would trigger a downlink capability report announcement upon reception of a request from the Mode S station. For example, this request could consist of a Comm-A interrogation with a specific MA field value or of an interrogation with a particular RR value. This is to change comm-B data selector (BDS) 1,0 to a test value and to check that the Mode S sensor correctly processes this event;
- e) *Aircraft ID change.* The site monitor would trigger a change of aircraft identification upon reception of a request from the Mode S station. For example, this request could consist of a Comm-A interrogation with a specific MA field value or of an interrogation with a particular RR value. This is to change BDS 2,0 to a test value and to check that the Mode S sensor correctly processes this event;
- f) *RA broadcast.* The site monitor would trigger a resolution advisory (RA) broadcast upon reception of a request from the Mode S station. For example, this request could consist of a Comm-A interrogation with a specific MA field value or of an interrogation with a particular RR value. This is to change BDS 3,0 to a test value and to check that the Mode S sensor correctly processes this event; and
- g) *II/SI code delivery.* The site monitor should report the II/SI codes on which the site monitor is locked out. This is to check that the Mode S sensor is working with the II/SI codes it has been assigned. This report could be contained in one of the two transponder registers assigned for this purpose (accessed by either BDS code E,1 or E,2) as defined in Doc 9871, A.2.1. The ground-initiated Comm-B (GICB) protocol would be used to extract this register.

2.7.3.7 The site monitor can provide status information when requested by an interrogation.

2.7.3.8 The information could be contained in one of the two transponder data registers assigned for this purpose (accessed by either BDS code E,1 or E,2) as defined in Doc 9871, A.2.2.1. The GICB protocol would be used to extract this transponder data register.

2.7.3.9 Controls are required to operate the special features of the site monitor beyond those needed for a Mode S transponder. This includes controls for the transmit power and receiver MT Interfaces are needed for inputting information such as altitude and call sign.

2.7.3.10 It should be possible for the user to programme at least the following operational parameters:

- a) Mode S address;
- b) site monitor flight level;
- c) Mode A (and the test value);
- d) aircraft ID (and the test value);
- e) alert bit trigger;
- f) BDS 1,0 (and the test value);
- g) BDS 3,0 (and the test value);
- h) simulated range of the site monitor;
- i) power attenuation;
- j) receiver triggering level;
- k) turnaround delay; and
- l) on-the-ground status.

2.7.3.11 A range check should be performed when changing any of the operational parameters.

2.7.3.12 It should be possible to use rechargeable batteries to supply power to the site monitor. A 2-hour autonomy is recommended.

2.7.4 Monitor transponder interactions with ACAS

2.7.4.1 These fixed site monitor transponders, also referred to as PARROTs, may also respond to interrogations from ACAS-equipped aircraft. It is often useful to encode status information regarding the operation of the transponder into the Mode C reply. However, care should be taken not to use a Mode C code that could be decoded into a valid altitude by ACAS, which could result in the generation of spurious TAs and RAs (see Figure D-9). Guidance for avoiding interaction with ACAS when testing transponders on the ground is presented in 3.5.2 of this appendix and in Appendix O. Several techniques can be used separately or in combination to prevent or reduce this potential problem.

2.7.4.2 For site monitors that employ Mode S transponders, the following two techniques should be used:

- a) Set the VS bit to “on the ground.” This will minimize the interrogations from ACAS.

Note.— The site monitor should be configured in that case to respond to All-Call and Mode A/C interrogations.

- b) If possible, disable the squitter function. This will prevent acquisition by an ACAS because the Mode S site monitor will not reply to the Mode C-only interrogations of an ACAS and will not announce itself (by squitters) for passive acquisition by the ACAS.

2.7.4.3 For monitors which employ Mode A/C transponders, the following techniques can be used (these techniques are also applicable to Mode S site monitors):

- a) Set the Mode C data in the reply from the site monitor to a value which decodes, after allowance for barometric pressure correction, to be always outside the range of altitudes at which ACAS aircraft will fly:
 - 1) at least 150 m (500 ft) below the true (ground) altitude of the site monitor installation, when assuming an atmospheric pressure of 1 013 hectopascals; or
 - 2) at very high altitudes, such as between 24 000 and 37 800 m (80 000 and 126 000 ft);
- b) Set reply code to include C and D reply pulse combinations, which decode as illegal Mode C bit combinations:

	A	B	C	D
	X	X	0	0
or	X	X	5	7
or	X	X	7	7

where X = 0 – 7. Where the Mode C value from a site monitor may change (e.g. to indicate equipment status), this allows for 64 unique status codes. It should be noted however that the design of some commercial transponders prevents the transmission of illegal Mode C bit combinations;

- c) Introduce a range delay into the transponder reply. This is often used to prevent garbling when the geographical location of the site monitor is on an airway. It has the secondary advantage that, if the delay is large enough, the ACAS unit never sees the “aircraft” as being at close enough range to generate traffic or resolution advisories. A possible disadvantage is that a site monitor with delay can appear to be in different places on different radars, if more than one radar is able to interrogate the site monitor. Some display systems may have difficulties with this situation. A second disadvantage, where more than one radar is interrogating a site monitor, is that during the delay time the transponder is unavailable to respond to other interrogations, possibly leading to missed replies; and
- d) Use highly directional antennas with the site monitor installation to limit reception to a narrow angle in the direction of the radar being monitored. This can reduce the likelihood of ACAS interrogations being received but may not totally eliminate it.

2.7.4.4 It is recommended that:

- a) for Mode S site monitor, both techniques described in 2.7.4.2 a) and b) should be implemented;
- b) for Mode A/C site monitor, either:
 - 1) the technique described in 2.7.4.3 a) should be implemented to ensure that Mode C replies decode to altitudes well outside those flown by ACAS-equipped aircraft; or
 - 2) the technique described in 2.7.4.3 c) should be implemented to ensure that the apparent range of the site monitor, as seen by an ACAS, prevents the generation of ACAS advisories.

2.7.4.5 Similar false aircraft responses may be generated by transponder test facilities, particularly those which test pressure-altitude encoding, unless the test facility is adequately shielded to prevent reception and transmission of signals from/to ACAS-equipped aircraft.

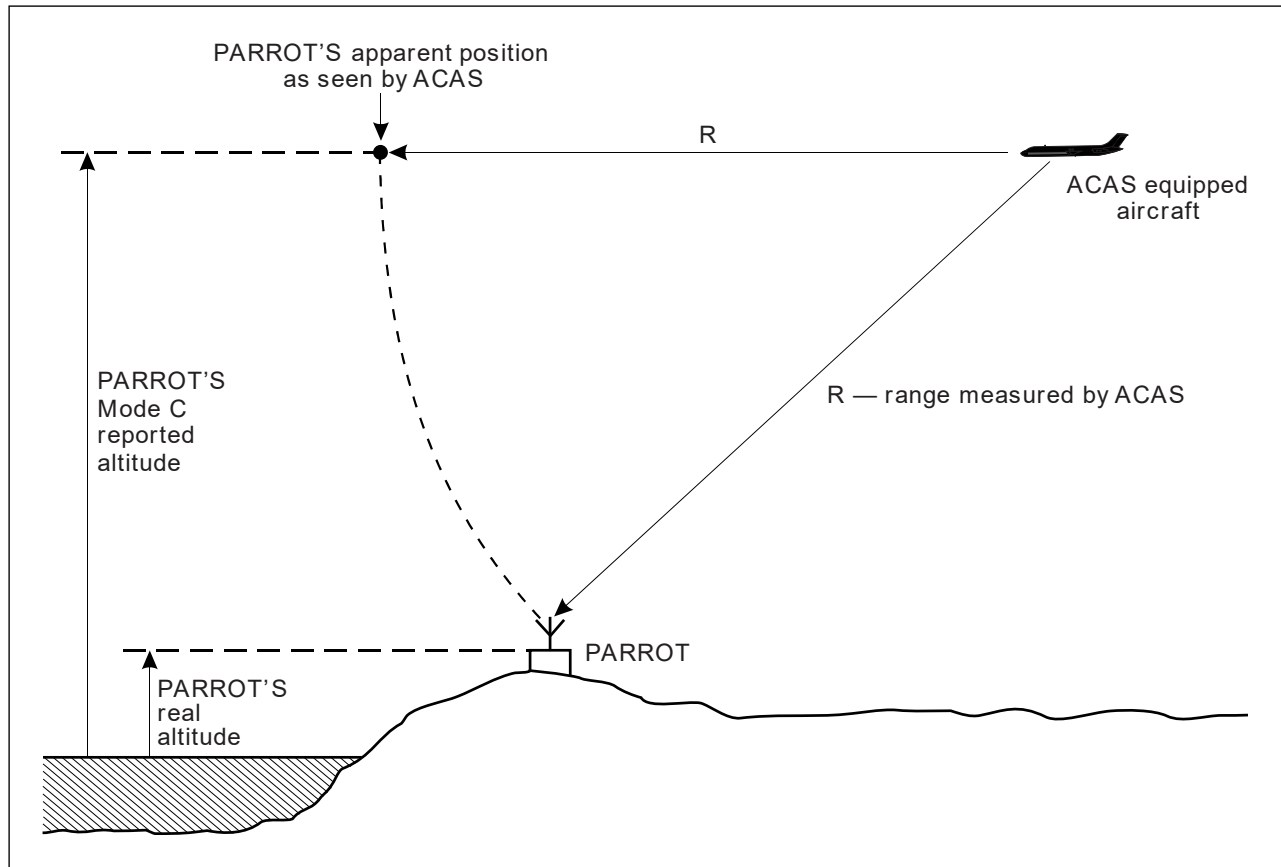


Figure D-9. PARROT apparent intruder to ACAS equipped aircraft

3. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

Note.— See Appendix O for additional guidance on installation and testing considerations.

3.1 Nominal aircraft equipment characteristics

A standard aircraft equipment installation is assumed to have the following characteristics:

- a) an antenna having performance equivalent to that of a simple quarter-wave antenna;
- b) a transponder output power of between 21 and 27 dBW (i.e. 125 to 500 watts) except for transponders used solely below 4 570 m (15 000 ft) or Mode S transponders used in aircraft, operating below 4 570 m (15 000 ft) with a maximum cruising speed of less than 324 km/h (175 kt), which may have a minimum output power of 18.5 dBW (70 watts) at the antenna end of the transmission line (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.11.1 and 3.1.2.10.2). The minimum RF peak output power for Class A3 ADS-B transponder-based equipment is required to be 23.0 dBW (200 W). A 1 090 MHz ES non-transponder device on an aerodrome surface vehicle may operate with a lower minimum power output as specified in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 5, 5.1.1.2;
- c) a Mode A/C transponder receiver MTL of -69 to -77 dBm (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.5) and a Mode S transponder receiver MTL of -71 to -77 dBm (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.10.1) measured at the antenna end of the transmission line.

3.2 Non-standard aircraft installations

An aircraft installation having these characteristics will meet the requirements specified in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.5 and 3.1.1.7.11.1. In the event that an aircraft installation has characteristics that differ from those of the assumed system, the effective radiated peak power and the received power level required at the input of the antenna must be comparable to that of the assumed system.

3.3 Mode A/C transponders

3.3.1 Mode A identity code transmission

3.3.1.1 Mode A identity code interrogations are used to obtain a four-digit octal code from an aircraft that has been manually set in the cockpit. Each digit may have values between 0 and 7, providing 4 096 codes. Coding is by pulse position in accordance with Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.6.6. Rules on the use of Mode A codes for ATC are provided in PANS-ATM. Certain codes are reserved for indicating emergency conditions (e.g. 7 700 for emergency, 7 600 for radio failure, 7 500 for unlawful interference).

3.3.1.2 An SPI pulse may be transmitted with a Mode A reply to further aid in identification of individual aircraft. This pulse is added for a short period (nominally 18 seconds) upon manual activation by the pilot, upon request of the air traffic controller.

3.3.2 Mode C pressure-altitude code transmission

3.3.2.1 In order to achieve the maximum operational benefit from automatic pressure-altitude transmission, the altitude information used by the pilot and that automatically provided to the controller must closely correspond (see Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.12.2.4). The highest degree of correspondence will be achieved by having aircraft systems that use the same static pressure source, same aneroid unit and the same static pressure error correction device for both the pilot and the automatically transmitted pressure-altitude data.

3.3.2.2 If this correspondence is not within the tolerance required in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.12.2.4, a facility is required to remove the pressure-altitude information pulses from the reply, which then consists of only framing pulses. The purpose of this requirement is to ensure that inaccurate information pulses are able to be removed while retaining the capability of detection and position determination.

3.3.2.3 For aircraft installations that are for any reason not able to report pressure-altitude, the transmission of a reply consisting of framing pulses only is required in response to Mode C interrogations (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.7.12.2.1). The framing pulses alone are useful in certain ground processing equipment for enhancing the detection probability and azimuth accuracy and are essential for ACAS efficiency.

3.3.2.4 The following formats may be accepted by the transponder:

- a) ARINC 429 data, which is the format normally used by the latest generation of commercial aircraft;
- b) ARINC 575 data, which are provided by the first generation of inertial reference systems;
- c) ARINC 407 for the delivery of synchro altitude data; and
- d) Gilham altitude data (beginning in 2009 for new installations, and after 2012 for all installations, Gilham altitude data will not meet the altitude-reporting requirements on commercial aircraft).

3.3.2.5 In order to verify that the input altitude is correct, the transponder should monitor the following:

- a) for ARINC 429 data, the status matrix field (bits 30 and 31 of the ARINC word) should be monitored. If “normal operation” is indicated, then the information is considered “valid” and the transponder assumes that the source delivering the data is operating correctly. In other cases, or when the altitude data parity check fails, then the altitude is considered as “invalid;”
- b) for synchro altitude data the “synchro flag” input should be monitored.

Note.— The installation should monitor the coarse and fine inputs to detect variations between the two inputs. Misalignments of more than ± 90 degrees should result in the altitude being considered invalid.

;and

- c) installations using the Gilham altitude data should be equipped with at least two independent sources and a Gilham altitude compare function. The transponder uses the information provided by the Gilham altitude compare function to detect invalid altitude. If the altitude is invalid, the transponder declares an “external failure” fault and logs this information to its non-volatile Random Access Memory.

3.3.3 Transmission of the “X” pulse

3.3.3.1 In Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1.6.2, the position of the “X” pulse (see Figure D-10) is specified as a technical standard. The “X” pulse was originally specified to provide for possible future expansion of the system, but it has subsequently been decided that such expansion would be achieved using Mode S.

3.3.3.2 However, different uses of the “X” pulse exist in different States including:

- a) the use by some ground stations to validate or invalidate transponder replies by checking the absence of pulse at this position;
- b) the provision of information by a test transponder used as a site monitor (see 2.7.3); and
- c) the identification of specific platforms such as remotely piloted aircraft system (RPAS) in Mode A code reply.

Because of its inconsistent uses, the position of the X pulse shall not be used in replies to Mode A or Mode C interrogations if the safe operation of surveillance systems cannot be maintained. Utilization of the “X” pulse for special applications should be carried out in conformance with a procedure established by States to ensure compatibility of all systems. Recent interrogators are designed in order not to discard Mode A/C replies with the “X” pulse set.

3.4 The Mode S transponder

3.4.1 General

3.4.1.1 The Mode S transponder receives and decodes Mode A/C and Mode S interrogations, recognizing which Mode S interrogations are addressed to it. Each Mode S transponder must be able to recognize the discrete 24-bit aircraft address assigned to the aircraft and the address used both in the Mode S-only all-call interrogations and in the Comm-A broadcast transmissions. After determining the type of interrogation and the contents of the control fields in the Mode S interrogation, the transponder formats and transmits the appropriate Mode A/C or Mode S reply. As in the case of a Mode A/C transponder, inputs from an encoding altimeter are required for altitude reporting.

3.4.1.2 The principal elements of the Mode S transponder, and their interconnection, are depicted in Figure D-11. Mode S transponders are categorized according to their data link capability into five levels. Level 1 transponders support only the surveillance functions. Levels 2, 3, 4 and 5 transponders permit various levels of data link communications as defined in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 2. Mode S transponders used by international civil air traffic must conform at least to Level 2.

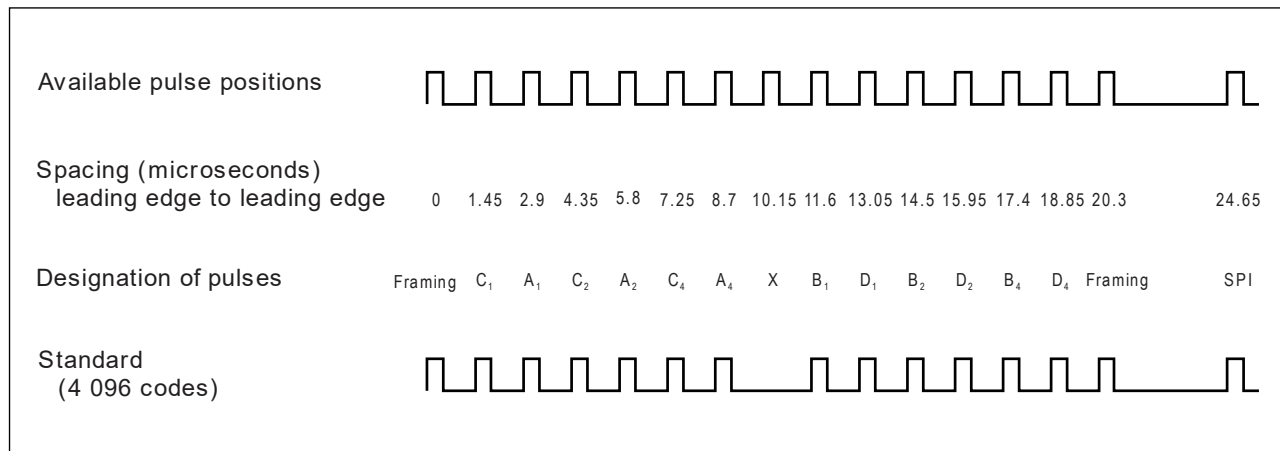


Figure D-10. SSR transponder reply codes in response to Mode A and C interrogations

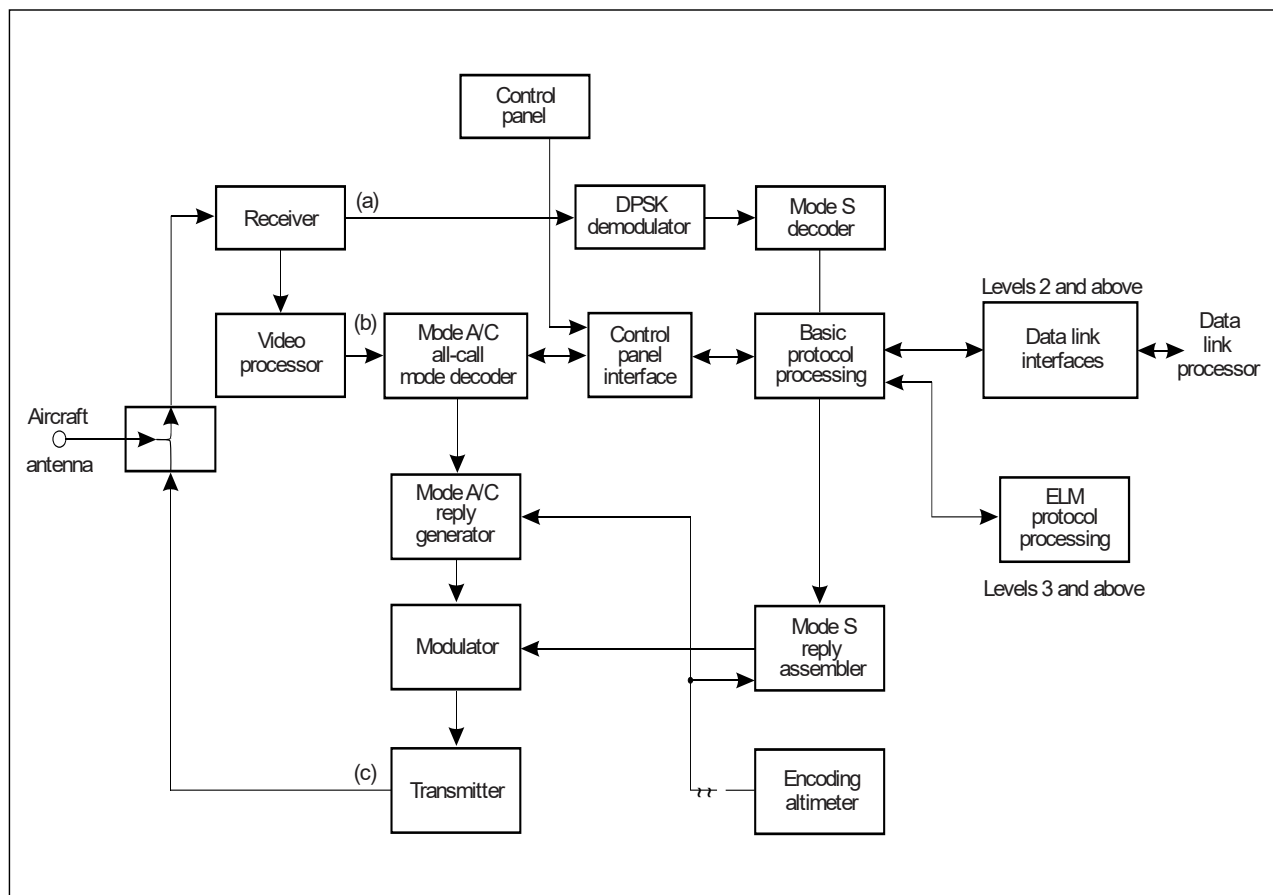


Figure D-11. Mode S transponder

3.4.1.3 A Level 2 or higher transponder is required for data link, in which case the transponder can be considered to act as a modem. Uplink messages, once verified for correct parity, are available for data link processing. The parity technique is arranged so that recognition of its aircraft address is implicit verification that the contents of the interrogation were correctly decoded (see Appendix C). Downlink messages are received from the aircraft data link processing system, incorporated in reply formats and transmitted using the downlink protocols. The transponder does not, in any way, interpret or modify the contents of such messages.

3.4.1.4 Mode S transponders intended for international use (Level 2 or higher) are also capable of transmitting the aircraft ID which requires an appropriate manual input device if this cannot be derived automatically.

3.4.2 Mode S transponder interface function

3.4.2.1 Mode S transponders that are used to provide aircraft data and/or communications to ATC ground systems have been specified with some or all of the Mode S specific services in the same line replaceable unit as the transponder functions (see Doc 9871).

3.4.2.2 It is essential that such Mode S transponders are clearly identified as to the data services that they will provide and that the design is such that it allows the comprehensive testing of the transponder, and data service functions, of the combined unit.

3.4.2.3 Where a GICB service is to be provided, the dataflash service specified in Doc 9871 operating on uplink MSP 6 for requests and downlink MSP 3 for the service provision must be included in the unit to avoid the high data flows on the aircraft bus, which could result from constant monitoring of the serviced GICB registers from outside the unit.

Note.— The above functions are sometimes referred to as an extended interface function.

3.4.3 Antenna diversity operation

3.4.3.1 In order to maintain adequate link reliability, certain aircraft are required to use antenna diversity. Two antennas (one located on the top and the other on the bottom of the fuselage so that at least one is visible from the ground station or ACAS) are connected to the transponder. The most common form of the diversity transponder is one that employs two receivers, selection logic and a switch to connect the transmitter to either antenna (see Figure D-12). The selection logic examines the interrogation as received on each antenna, selects the stronger signal and switches the transmission to the corresponding antenna for the reply. This logic is based on the reasoning that since the interrogation and reply frequencies are separated by only 60 MHz (that is, by about 6 per cent) it is likely that the antenna that provides the stronger signal to the transponder receiver will also provide a stronger return signal to the ground station.

3.4.3.2 Antenna pattern measurements have shown that the interrogation and reply RF links typically track each other to within about 3 dB. Thus, if the received signal on Antenna A is 3 dB stronger than the received signal on Antenna B, it is likely that a reply on Antenna A would be received at the ground station at a greater level than would a reply on Antenna B. It also follows that it is not critical to accurately determine which signal is stronger when both of the signals are well above the minimum detection level of the transponder. It is only necessary to carry out a precise amplitude comparison between the two received signals when those signals are both received within about 6 dB above the transponder MTL.

3.4.3.3 Since the goal of the diversity function is to increase the probability that both the air-air link margin, in the case of ACAS, and the air-ground link margin to the transponder remain adequate as the aircraft manoeuvres, the antenna selection logic should not favour either the top or the bottom antenna.

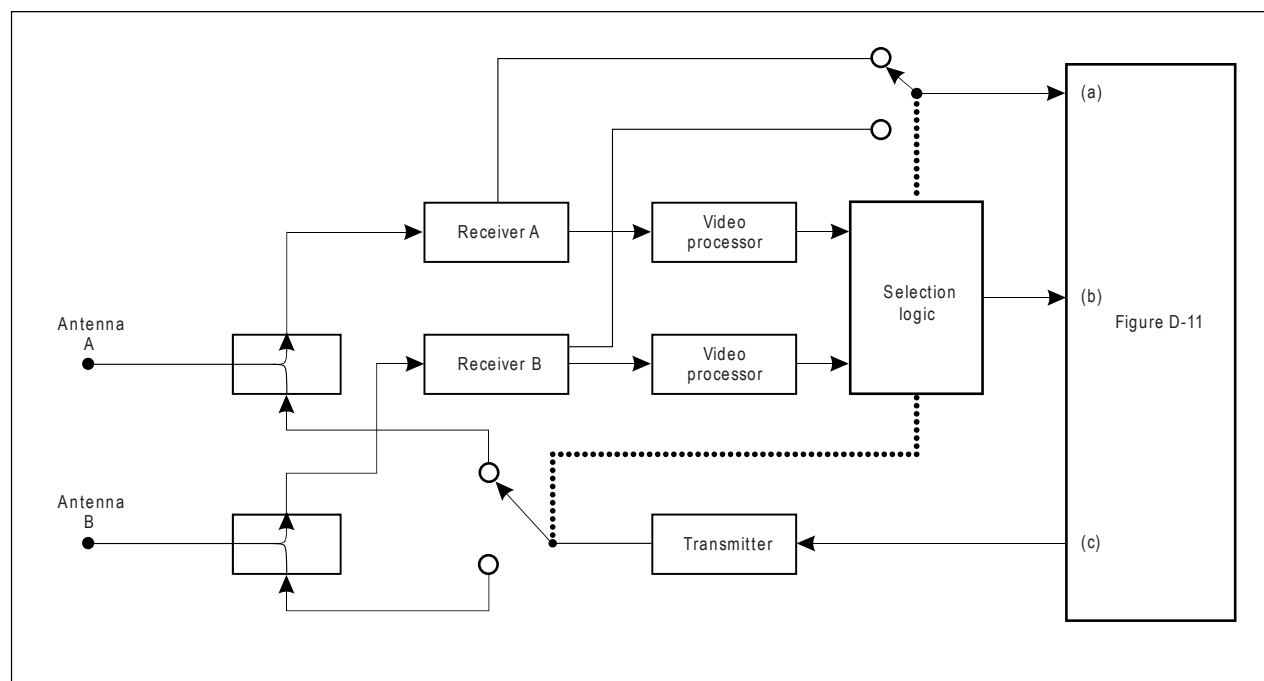


Figure D-12. Example of diversity transponder

3.4.3.4 The amplitude comparison should only be used to select the reply channel if valid P_1 - P_3 or P_1 - P_2 pairs have been received on both channels. For example, if Channel A receives a valid pulse pair and Channel B receives either nothing or an invalid pulse pair, Channel A is selected by default. It is also allowable for a transponder to examine more than merely a pair of pulses before making the channel selection (provided of course, that the selection process is completed in time to generate a reply with the proper reply delay). A transponder could, in principle, include two complete Mode S interrogation decoders operating in parallel. In such a transponder, the amplitude comparison would only be used to select the reply channel if complete and valid Mode S interrogations had been accepted on both channels.

3.4.3.5 If a valid received signal on one channel is delayed by more than T_d (where T_d for a given transponder may be anywhere between 125 and 375 nanoseconds) relative to a valid received signal on the other channel, the latter signal should be assumed to be a multipath reflection, and the channel with the earlier signal, even if weaker, should be selected.

3.4.3.6 The simultaneity requirement makes it important that the time delays through the two antenna-receiver channels be held to well within 125 nanoseconds of each other to avoid an unwanted bias in the selection process. It follows that it is also desirable to mount the two antennas directly above and below each other. Two antennas mounted on the nose and tail of a large aircraft could be more than 40 m apart. Signals arriving at such an aircraft from the 12 o'clock or 6 o'clock directions would always have apparent relative time delays of more than 125 nanoseconds.

3.4.3.7 The use of two independent transponders connected to the separate antennas is not permitted. Such an arrangement could be made functionally equivalent to the use of parallel decoders if provision were made for inhibiting replies from the last transponder to decode a valid signal. However, it is difficult to match the sensitivities and time delays of two independent transponders, particularly the delay variation from reply to reply, which is required to be less than 80 nanoseconds for Mode S signals (see Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.10.3.8.2).

3.4.3.8 The use of a switch to periodically alternate the antenna connection from one antenna to another at a pre-set rate is not permitted. In situations in which only one antenna has an adequate link, such a technique would reduce the

round-trip reliability by half and result in track drops caused by inadvertent statistical synchronization of the antenna switching rate with the interrogation rate. When both antennas have adequate links, such a technique could unnecessarily increase delay variation from reply to reply.

3.4.4 Mode S transponder protocol characteristics

Note.— Details of Mode S transponder processing are provided in RTCA DO-181E and EUROCAE ED-73E. An explanation of a number of the protocols represented by this processing is contained in Appendix F of this manual.

3.5 Transponder tester

3.5.1 A transponder in-flight tester may be provided to indicate normal or faulty operation.

3.5.2 When a tester is used, it should not radiate a signal level external to the aircraft stronger than -70 dBm. The test interrogation signal should not exceed an interrogation rate of 450 per second.

3.5.3 The transponder tester should be limited to intermittent use which is no longer than that required to determine the status of the transponder.

3.5.4 Transponder testing on the ground is one source of “nuisance” ACAS warnings. The problem of nuisance ACAS warnings is more noticeable when ground testing of transponders takes place at airfields located beneath terminal control areas or in the vicinity of control areas and high air traffic zones. Procedures for testing transponders on the ground are described in Appendix O.

Appendix E

MSSR

Note.— Use of monopulse techniques is a prerequisite for Mode S.

1. AZIMUTH MEASUREMENTS

Monopulse azimuth measurement, as its name implies, is a technique that allows the measurement of target azimuth to be made on a single pulse within any transponder reply. Thus, compared to typical sliding window azimuth measurement techniques, a significant reduction in PRF is possible, improving the SSR environment and reducing interference. Monopulse azimuth measurement is also more accurate, particularly in an interference environment.

2. IMPLEMENTATION CONSIDERATIONS

2.1 System elements

A monopulse system consists of the following functional elements: a monopulse antenna, a twin-channel monopulse receiver, a monopulse OBA processor and a plot extractor, which may include scan-to-scan processing. These elements are not necessarily physically separated.

2.2 The monopulse antenna

2.2.1 Monopulse azimuth measurement techniques usually require two antennas or a split antenna, with each antenna or each section separately fed. One technique uses two beams arranged with their radiation axes parallel and their centres separated horizontally. Except for targets on-boresight, there is a difference in path lengths between the target aircraft and the two antennas. This gives rise to a phase difference between the two received signals, which is a function of target angle relative to the antenna boresight (see Figure E-1).

2.2.2 Another technique uses two beams having a common phase centre. It is common practice to combine the two antenna outputs into sum and difference patterns. The resultant signal amplitude patterns are illustrated in Figure E-2. The sum pattern is used for the interrogation signals, whereas both patterns are used for replies.

2.2.3 Figure E-3 shows how the OBA of the target can be estimated from the ratio of the amplitude of the difference signal to that of the sum signal (Δ/Σ) or from a combination of difference and sum channels ($f(\Delta, \Sigma)$). The same consideration needs to be given to the VRP of a monopulse antenna as to any other SSR antenna. In addition, to ensure accurate OBA estimation, the ratio between sum and difference patterns should remain as stable as possible for any given OBA within the 3 dB beamwidth over all practical elevation angles.

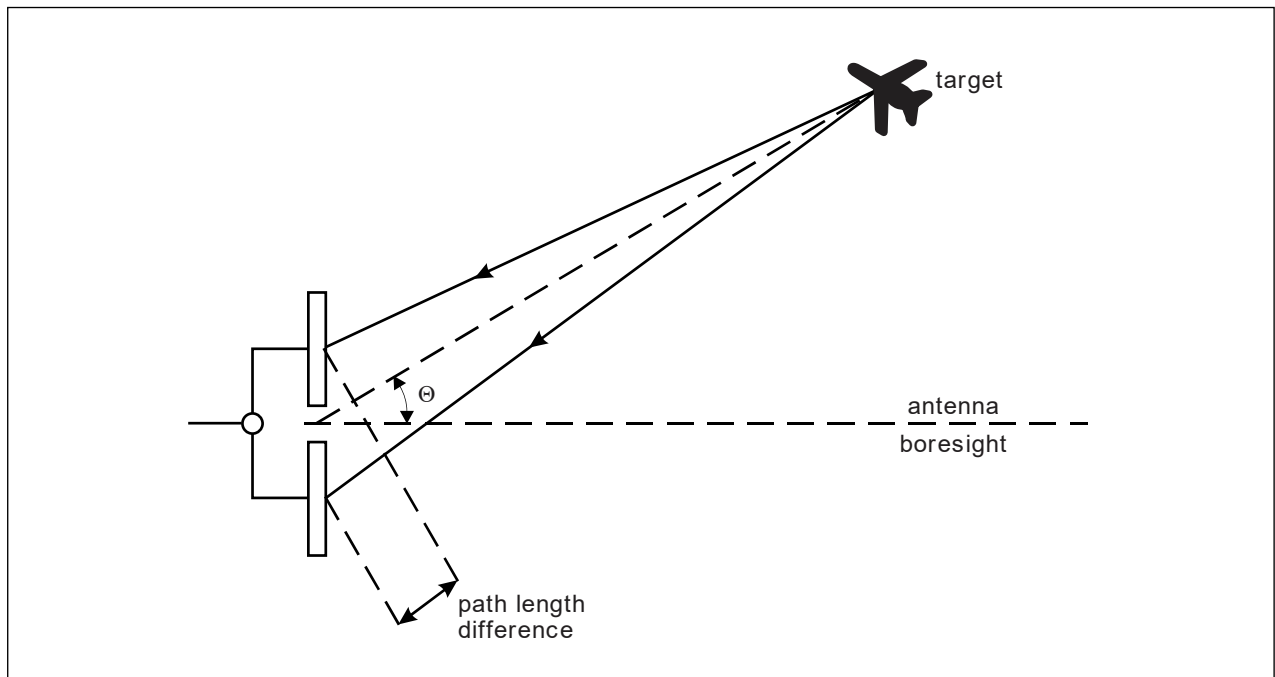


Figure E-1. Monopulse azimuth measurement

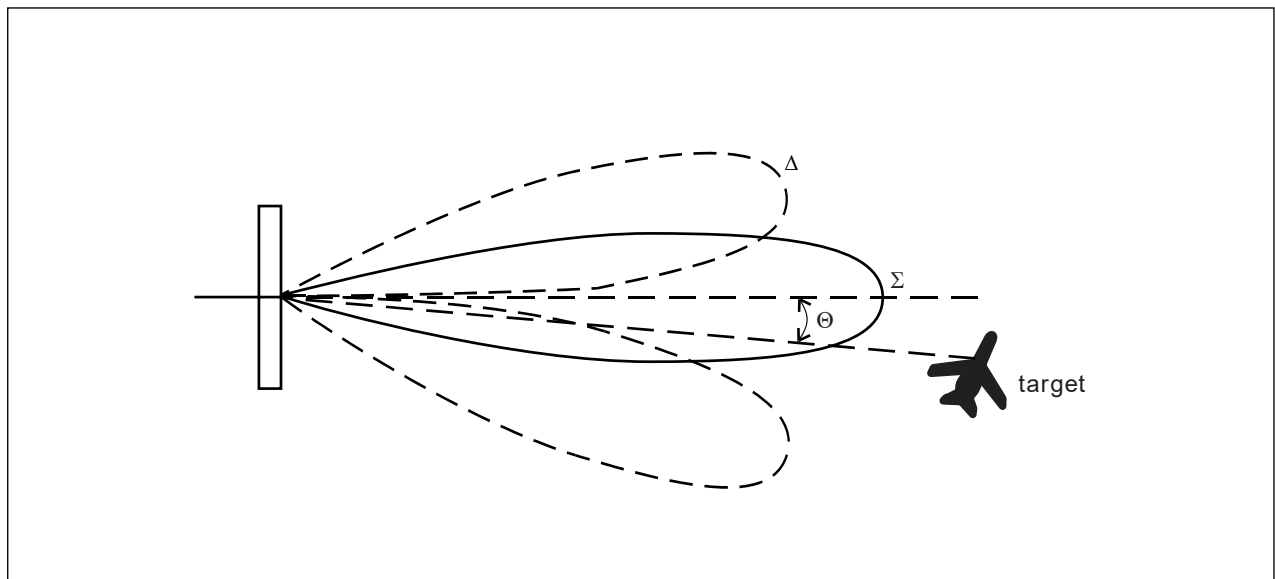


Figure E-2. Sum (Σ) and difference (Δ) patterns

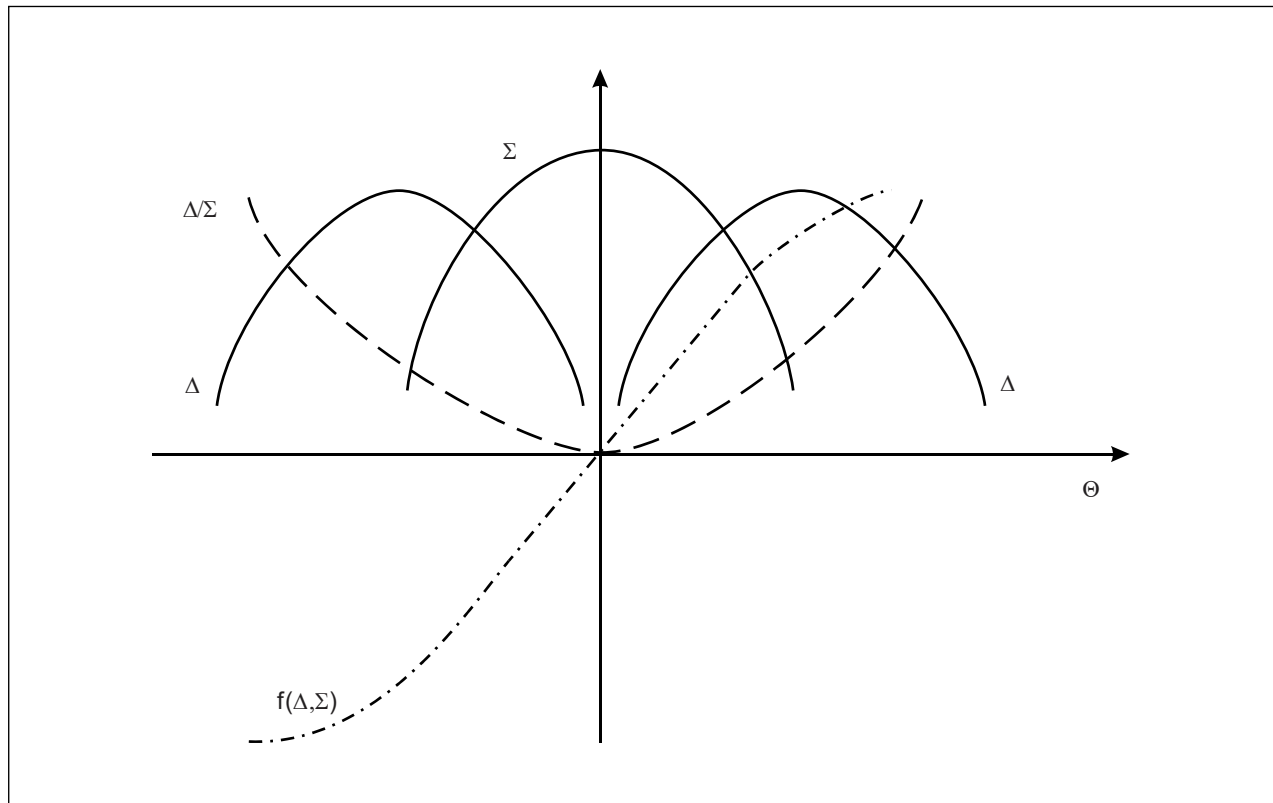


Figure E-3. OBA as a function of sum and difference channel signals

2.3 The monopulse receiver

2.3.1 As the monopulse receiver has to deal with a wide dynamic range, it is advantageous to use a logarithmic receiver for the signals to be processed for target detection and code extraction.

2.3.2 With regard to the bearing measurement accuracy, the receiver has to be fitted with two carefully matched channels (sum (Σ) and difference (Δ)), having stable gain and phase characteristics not only over the dynamic range but also over the possible frequency band of the received signals (at least plus or minus 3 MHz). To limit the beamwidth over which signals are processed, an RLS function is required which needs a third receiver channel (control (Ω)).

2.4 The monopulse processor

2.4.1 The output of the monopulse receiver is fed to the monopulse processor for the calculation of the OBA and added to the antenna bearing to determine the azimuth of the aircraft target.

2.4.2 Figure E-4 shows a possible implementation of a sum/difference ratio monopulse system. After logarithmic amplification, the ratio can be computed by subtraction. The left-right indication is provided by the sign of the phase difference between sum and difference signals.

2.4.3 Figure E-5 shows a possible realization of a half-angle monopulse processor which generates a single-valued output over the entire range of sum/difference ratios. The output is given by the approximate formula:

$$f(\Delta, \Sigma) = 2\arctan(\Delta/\Sigma)$$

2.5 The monopulse extractor

The output of the monopulse processor is fed into a special monopulse extractor which permits improved code processing and achieves a reduction of the effects of synchronous garbling. Considerable benefits in code and target detection can be obtained by use of the extra data available from monopulse processors. Further advantages can also be obtained by correlating this data on a scan-to-scan basis and checking the data for consistency. With additional computation, this process also allows the removal of most multipath targets.

3. BENEFITS

3.1 Increased azimuth accuracy

Monopulse processing gives an improvement in accuracy relative to a sliding window process by a factor of two to three times. The improvement is limited by the amplitudes of the multipath signal entering the system as well as by receiver noise.

3.2 Improved performance in the case of garbling replies

The use of the additional information available in a monopulse system allows a very significant improvement in the processing of garbling replies.

3.3 Reduced interrogation rate

The greater accuracy of the process in both positional measurement and code detection allows smaller correlation windows to be set and fewer repetitions of codes for code validation. Monopulse processing can be reliably expected to detect and decode targets using a minimum of two replies per A/C mode, thus allowing a marked reduction in IRF with consequent benefits in FRUIT generation and channel occupancy.

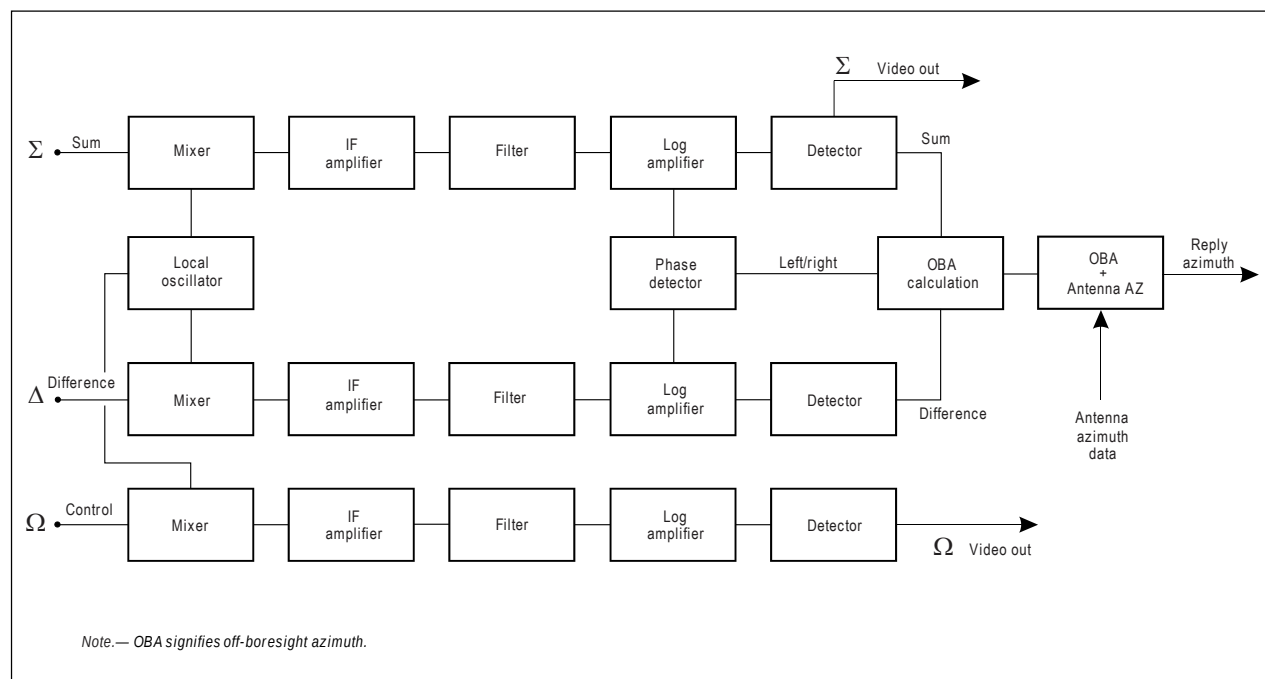


Figure E-4. Example of sum/difference processing

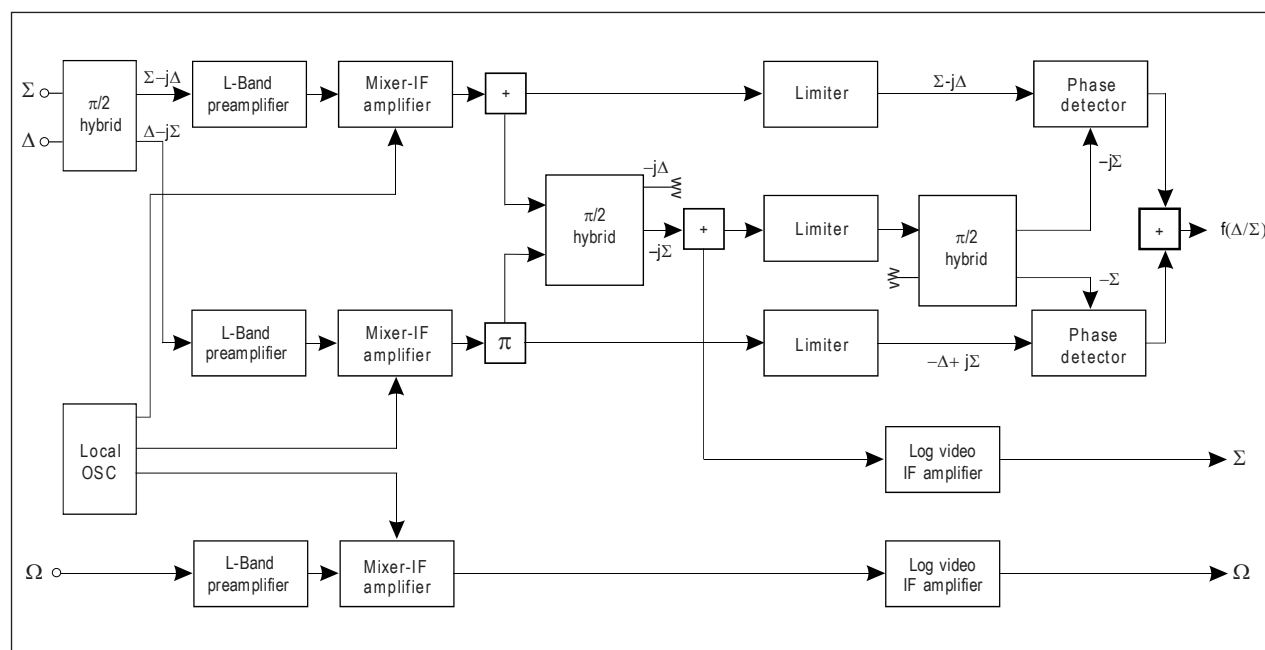


Figure E-5. Example of half-angle processing

Appendix F

MODE S AND MODE A/C COMPATIBILITY

1. SIGNALS IN SPACE

1.1 The overriding principle that has been maintained throughout the design and development of the SSR Mode S system has been that it must be entirely compatible with Modes A and C. Such compatibility requires that SSR ground stations operating only on Modes A and C receive valid Mode A and C replies from Mode S-equipped aircraft without modification to the ground equipment, and that Mode A/C transponders require no modification to receive surveillance services from a Mode S ground station.

1.2 The same carrier frequencies have been adopted for Mode S as those used for Modes A and C (1 030 MHz for interrogations and 1 090 MHz for replies). Special measures have been developed to ensure that the two systems can co-exist on the same frequencies without suffering mutual interference. It was necessary to prevent Mode A/C transponders from being spuriously triggered by the Mode S interrogation signals. This was achieved by beginning each Mode S interrogation with a pair of equal amplitude pulses spaced 2 microseconds apart. This provides an SLS pulse pair which causes Mode A/C transponders to suppress for 35 ± 10 microseconds. The Mode S interrogation is completed within the nominal suppression period. However, transponders with the minimum allowable suppression time of 25 microseconds will nevertheless detect the end of the Mode S P_6 pulse but will not respond since the remaining P_6 pulse duration is not long enough to synthesize a Mode A interrogation. An uplink data rate of 4 megabits per second has been selected in order to accommodate both the 24-bit address and enough data for messages within this suppression period. A one-megabit-per-second data rate is used for replies to allow the Mode A/C and Mode S reply pulses to be generated by a single transmitter.

2. GROUND STATION

2.1 Mode S ground stations interrogate and process replies from both Mode S and Mode A/C transponders. As a result of the signal-in-space compatibility between Mode S and Mode A/C, it is possible to implement Mode S ground stations in an evolutionary manner, allowing a gradual transition from a Mode A/C environment to an eventual all-Mode S environment. As this evolution progresses, the surveillance system will continue to function with any mix of Mode A/C and Mode S ground stations.

2.2 Mode S ground stations have a number of technical characteristics that require tighter tolerances and more capable processing than provided in Mode A/C ground stations. However, the Mode S design is such that each of the technical improvements introduced for Mode S surveillance also improves the surveillance of Mode A/C transponders.

2.3 An example is the interrogation carrier frequency tolerance. Mode A/C interrogations are transmitted with a carrier frequency tolerance of ± 0.2 MHz. This is adequate for decoding the pulse amplitude modulated signals employed by Mode A/C equipment. The use of phase modulation in Mode S interrogations requires a carrier frequency tolerance of ± 0.01 MHz.

2.4 Another important example is the use of monopulse processing to estimate target bearing. In order to achieve optimum use of channel time for Mode A, Mode C and Mode S interrogations, it is necessary to employ an efficient technique for target bearing estimation. Monopulse bearing estimation allows the target bearing to be determined from a

single reply rather than the series of ten or more replies normally required in older sliding-window SSRs. This monopulse processing technique, which can also be used in Mode A/C ground stations, is essential to Mode S operation. Within a Mode S ground station, monopulse bearing estimation can be used for Mode A/C targets as well as Mode S targets, providing significant improvement in performance while providing compatibility between the old and new systems.

2.5 Two other examples of Mode S features that result in compatible and improved surveillance of Mode A/C transponders include the use of multiple interrogation power levels (commonly referred to as power programming) and the use of improved receiver pulse processing techniques. The monopulse processing required by Mode S ground stations can be applied to existing Mode A/C ground stations as a preliminary step in the evolutionary process of upgrading to Mode S without any loss of compatibility and with measurable improvement in performance.

3. TRANSPONDER

3.1 Mode S transponders also respond to Mode A and C interrogations. Thus, as aircraft become equipped with Mode S transponders, they can continue to fly in areas served by Mode A/C ground stations without degrading the surveillance capability of those ground stations. Mode S transponders embody a number of improvements such as tighter transmit frequency and timing tolerances, which are both compatible with, and beneficial to, Mode A/C surveillance techniques. Mode S transponders may also be associated with a dual antenna installation for diversity operation. Diversity provides improved reliability of the radio link for both surveillance and communications.

3.2 The use of the same interrogation and reply frequencies and similar pulse widths permits the sharing of elements between Mode A/C and Mode S functions within the transponder.

4. OPERATION

Operational compatibility between Mode S and Mode A/C aircraft and ground elements is achieved by the use of intermode and Mode S all-call transactions and by the use of the lockout protocols. Intermode transactions allow Mode S ground stations to simultaneously interrogate both Mode S and Mode A/C transponders in order to determine the Mode S addresses of newly detected Mode S aircraft. Intermode interrogations also allow the ground station to simultaneously receive replies from either Mode A/C aircraft or Mode S aircraft, but not both. The lockout protocols permit a Mode S ground station to control a Mode S transponder after its address has been determined so that it replies only to particular subsets of the possible intermode interrogations. The operational compatibility achieved by Mode A/C and Mode S aircraft and ground elements is illustrated in Figure F-1.

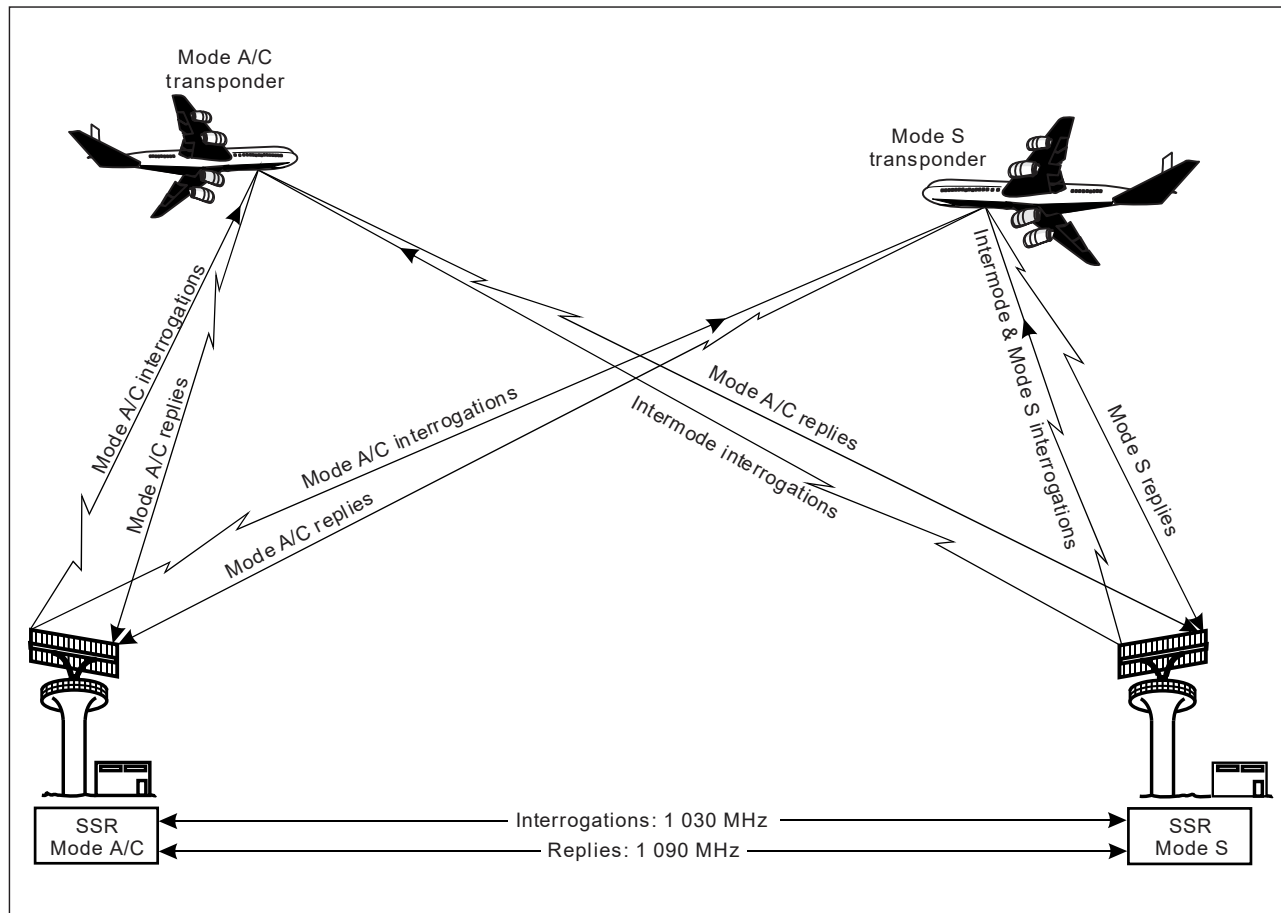


Figure F-1. Compatibility between SSR Mode A/C and Mode S

Appendix G

MODE S ERROR DETECTION AND CORRECTION

1. OVERVIEW

1.1 The 24-bit address/parity field contains the aircraft's 24-bit unique address code overlaid on 24 parity check bits generated from the preceding part of the transmission. This combined address/parity field requires fewer bits than would be needed if address and parity information were coded separately.

1.2 An error occurring anywhere in the reception of an interrogation or a reply will modify the decoded address. On the uplink, the transponder will not accept the message and will not reply, since the interrogation does not appear to be addressed to it. On the downlink, the ground station will recognize that an error has occurred, since the reply does not contain the expected address. Because the ground station knows the address of the transponder replying to a discrete interrogation, the ground station can perform a limited amount of error-correction to increase data throughput or link efficiency. The code parameters have been selected to permit the correction of many error patterns which span no more than 24 successive bits. In particular, most bursts of errors caused by interference from a simultaneously received Mode A/C reply can be corrected.

1.3 The error detection features of Mode S provide an undetected error rate of 1 in 10^7 messages. The use of error correction on the downlink will slightly reduce this undetected error performance.

2. PRINCIPLES

2.1 Cyclic polynomial methods are used to detect, and in some cases correct, errors occurring during transmission of Mode S messages.

2.2 Cyclic polynomial checking relies upon the transmitting station generating a parity sequence by a modulo-2 division of the content of the message by a predetermined "generator polynomial." The remainder obtained from this division process is then added to the message and transmitted with it. Because of this, the transmitted messages are, in principle, divisible by the generator polynomial without a remainder.

2.3 At the receiver, the whole transmission, i.e. the message content and the parity sequence, are similarly divided by the generator polynomial. In the absence of errors, an all-zero remainder will result. In the presence of errors, a non-zero "syndrome remainder" will be obtained which can, in some cases, be used to identify and correct the errors.

2.4 In the Mode S system, an additional pattern, the aircraft address, is added modulo-2 to the parity check sequence before transmission. Hence, the receiver will not, in general, obtain an all-zero remainder. If a particular added pattern is expected, then the corresponding error-free remainder can be predicted. Error-correction, however, cannot normally be used in these cases unless the added pattern is invariant or at least known to the receiver.

2.5 In systems in which the message bits that could possibly be in error are known, and in which all actual errors are confined to within a short burst, the syndrome remainder can be used to identify and correct the errors. On the Mode S downlink, these conditions are met since the main sources of error on the downlink are overlapping Mode A and Mode C replies. The presence of these replies is reliably detected by the receive process and therefore the affected bits in the Mode S reply can be easily identified.

3. MATHEMATICAL EXPLANATION

3.1 Any sequence of “m” bits can be regarded as the sequence of coefficients of an (m – 1) order modulo – 2 polynomial:

$$C_{m-1} x^{m-1} + C_{m-2} x^{m-2} + \dots + C_1 x + C_0$$

where C_0, C_1, C_2 , etc., are either 0 or 1, and “+” means modulo-2 addition. The coefficients C_i are given by the bits “ C_i ” in the sequence. Normally, the first bit transmitted, C_1 , is considered to be C_{m-1} , the coefficient of the most significant term. Thus, we have the following correspondence between bits and coefficients:

x^{m-1}		x^0
C ₁	C(x)	C _m
C_{m-1}		C_0

3.2 If the bits of the message are regarded as the polynomial sequence $M(x)$, and the generator polynomial as $G(x)$, then dividing $M(x)$ by $G(x)$ produces both a quotient $Q(x)$ and a remainder $R(x)$ according to:

$$M(x)/G(x) = Q(x) + [R(x)/G(x)]$$

If this remainder is then added to the message, then:

$$[M(x) + R(x)]/G(x) = Q(x) + [R(x) + R(x)]/G(x)$$

3.3 One of the features of modulo-2 arithmetic is that anything added to itself gives a result of zero, so:

$$[M(x) + R(x)]/G(x) = Q(x) + [0/G(x)] = Q(x) + 0$$

i.e. the remainder after division of $[M(x) + R(x)]$ by $G(x)$ will always be zero. Hence if any $[M(x) + R(x)]$ bit sequence is transmitted without errors, the division by $G(x)$ at the receiver will always yield a zero remainder.

3.4 If an extra sequence, which will be denoted as $B(x)$, is also added to the message, then it will cause a remainder to appear; the same remainder that would result by division of $B(x)$ by $G(x)$, since if:

$$B(x)/G(x) = C(x) + [D(x)/G(x)]$$

then:

$$\frac{M(x) + R(x) + B(x)}{G(x)} = Q(x) + \frac{0}{G(x)} + C(x) + \frac{D(x)}{G(x)}$$

Consequently, if the receiver knows $B(x)$ then it can recognize an error-free message by the appearance of the remainder, $D(x)$. Conversely, if the expected $D(x)$ is not found, then the receiver can deduce that either:

- a) the received message had errors; or
- b) the added sequence $B(x)$ was not what was anticipated.

3.5 This latter feature can be used to ensure that messages transmitted to more than one receiver are accepted as error-free by only one. If each receiver is allocated its own unique $B(x)$, then adding a particular $B(x)$ sequence to a message will ensure that only the wanted receiver generates its expected $D(x)$: all the rest fail to recognize the remainder as “theirs” and consequently, reject the message as apparently corrupt.

3.6 If the message were received with no errors, then the received remainder $R(x)$ would be equal to $D(x)$. If $D(x)$ is known by the receivers and is added to $R(x)$, then the modulo-2 sum $R(x) + D(x)$ would equal ALL ZEROS. In the case of errors, the sum $R(x) + D(x)$ will not be equal to ALL ZEROS. This sum is labelled $S(x)$ and is referred to as the error syndrome.

3.7 In order to perform error correction, it is necessary to label message bits whose values are judged to be low confidence and hence subject to correction by the error correction process. Bit values judged to be high confidence are not allowed to be corrected. One technique for labelling the confidence of each message bit position is to generate a confidence bit sequence that is the same length as the message bit sequence. Each bit of the confidence bit sequence indicates the confidence of the corresponding bit of the message bit sequence. The confidence bits are obtained by monitoring the received signal quality (e.g. if both of the 0.5- microsecond positions of a bit interval contain a significant signal strength, this bit will be labelled as low confidence).

3.8 Once bit confidence is established, the following procedure will perform error correction:

- a) Compare the n -bit syndrome pattern to the n low order bits of the confidence pattern, where n is the order of the generator polynomial;
- b) If all of the bit positions containing ones in the error syndrome correspond to low confidence bit positions in the low order message bits, then correct the message bits corresponding to the ones of the error syndrome (i.e. change a binary one to a zero or vice versa);
- c) Alternatively, shift right by one bit the message and confidence sequences and compute the transformed syndrome that applies to these shifted message and confidence sequences;
- d) Repeat steps (a) through (c) until a match is found; and
- e) If no match is found, the error is not correctable.

3.9 In step c) above, after shifting the message one bit, one in principle would have to calculate the syndrome again by a polynomial division. However, as the computation of the syndrome requires several shift operations, the computation time would increase sharply. In fact, the syndrome of the shifted message sequence can be calculated from the current one by:

$$S''(x) = xS^*(x) + hG^*(x)$$

where “ h ” is the highest order bit of $S^*(x)$, and the asterisk indicates the reciprocal (bit-reversed) polynomial. The bit reversals are required because cyclic transformations only apply to left-shifted operations and here right-shifted ones are being employed.

Note.— For convenience, in practice, it is usual to multiply $M(x)$ by x^n before performing the division that generates $R(x)$. The exponent “ n ” is the order of polynomial $G(x)$. This is equivalent to appending n zero-bits to $M(x)$. This is done so that the addition of $R(x)$ to $M(x)$ before transmission leaves all the information content of $M(x)$ unchanged and eliminates the need to subtract $R(x)$ from $M(x)$ before interpreting the information in the received message.

4. REALIZATION

4.1 There are at least two common methods by which cyclic polynomial parity checks may be realized in hardware (see Figures G-1 and G-2). Both methods are equally effective, and either may be implemented via firmware in state-of-the-art programmable logic devices. This can result in different hardware configurations than in the circuits shown in Figures G-1 and G-2. Since the parity algorithm consists of logical arithmetic operations, the computations could be produced using a high-level software language in a high-speed microprocessor.

4.2 The circuit of Figure G-1 is essentially that of a multiplier. The shift register directly stores the quotient $Q(x)$, and the modulo-2 array calculates the product of $Q(x)$ and the generator polynomial $G(x)$. The remainder, $R(x)$, and the subsequent terms of $Q(x)$, are formed by a bit-by-bit comparison of $Q'(x)G(x)$ and the input sequence $M(x)$.

4.3 The circuit of Figure G-2 directly computes the remainder $R(x)$ obtained after division of $M^*(x)x^n$ by the polynomial $G(x)$, where n is the number of stages in the shift register, i.e. the order of $G(x)$.

4.4 Other circuits not shown here may be equally effective. In general, the only real test of a cyclic polynomial encoder is whether it generates the correct remainder data to append to the message.

5. EXAMPLE OF SSR MODE S

5.1 Parity check sequence generation

The SSR Mode S system employs a systematic code in which the 32- or 88-bit information field (of a 56- or 112-bit data block, respectively) is transmitted unmodified. Twenty-four parity check bits are generated by operating on the information fields, as described in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.3.3. The generator polynomial $G(x)$ is given by:

$$G(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{24} G_j x^j$$

where:

$$G_j = \begin{array}{ll} 1: & j = 0, 3, 10, 12, 13 \dots 24 \\ 0: & \text{otherwise} \end{array}$$

that is:

$$G(x) = x^{24} + x^{23} + x^{22} + \dots + x^{13} + x^{12} + x^{10} + x^3 + 1$$

5.2 Address/parity combination

5.2.1 The parity check bits are combined with the 24-bit aircraft address and transmitted sequentially following the information field. Two different procedures are used for combining the aircraft address and parity check bits: one for interrogations and one for replies. The procedure used for interrogations was chosen to minimize transponder hardware complexity (i.e. the error-free remainder is directly the transponder aircraft address). The procedure used for replies was chosen to facilitate the use of error correction in reply decoding.

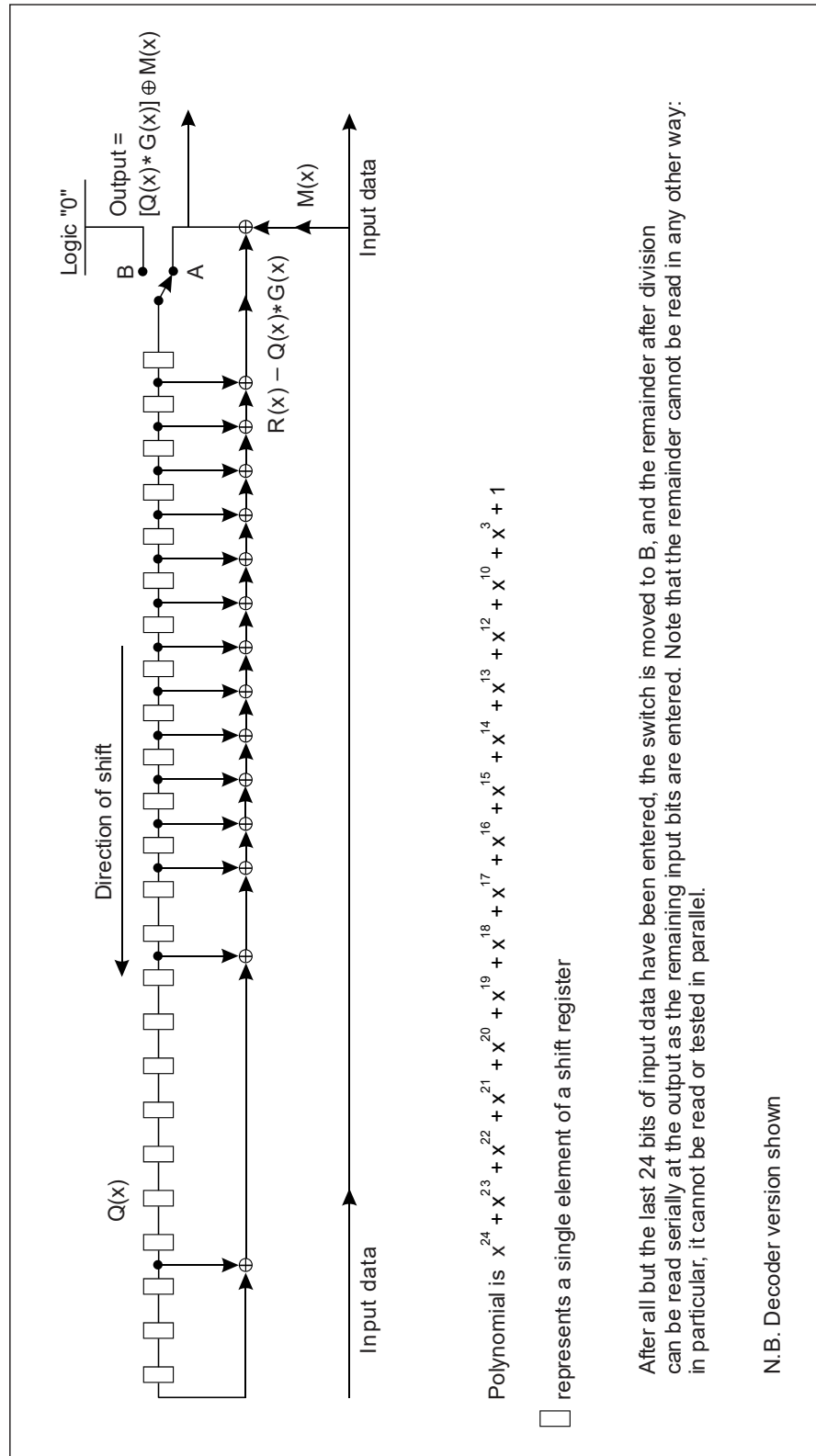


Figure G-1. Multiplier realization of cyclic polynomial checker

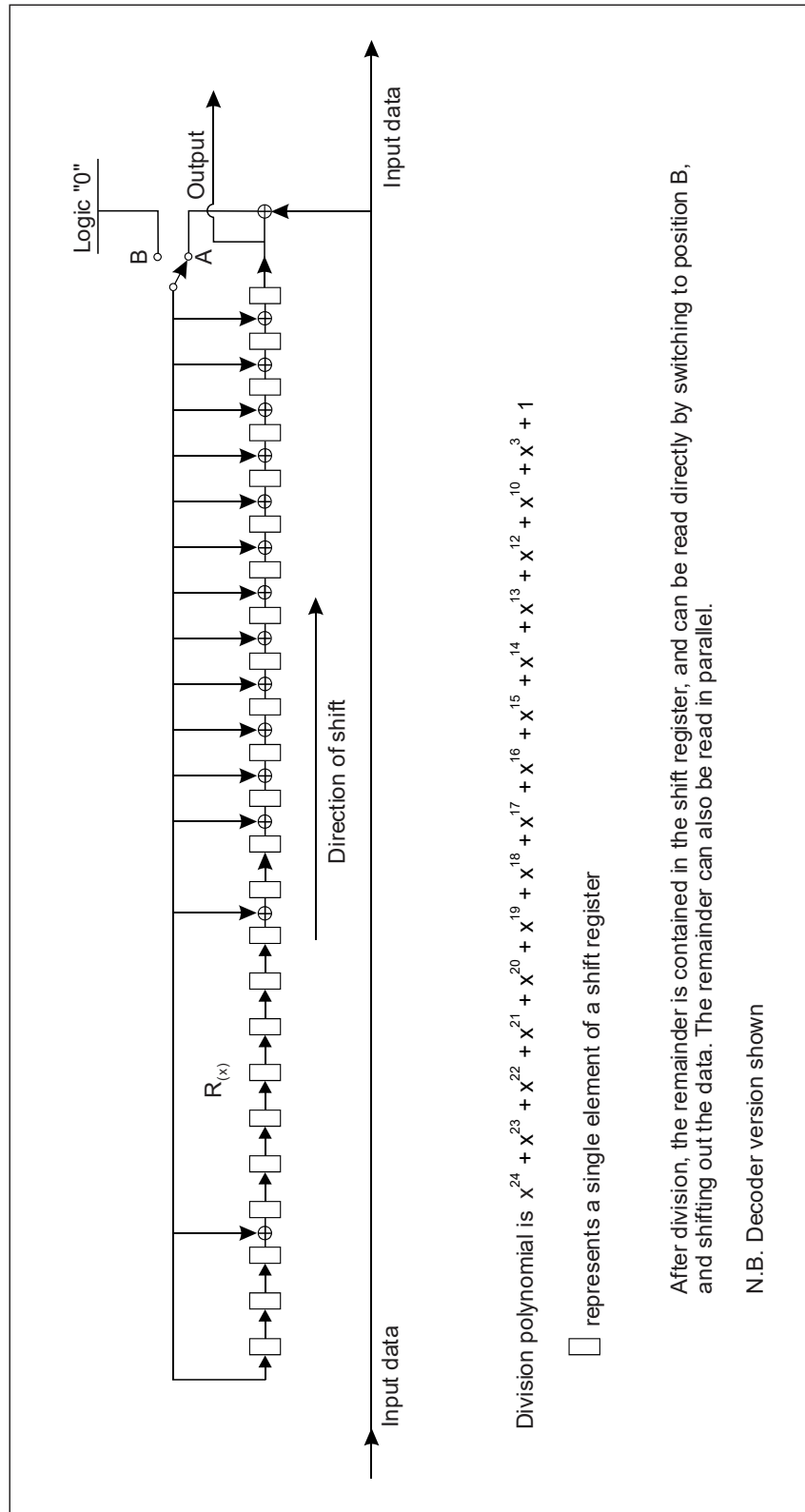


Figure G-2. Alternative realization of cyclic polynomial checker

5.2.2 The interrogations contain the modulo-2 sum of the parity sequence and the most significant 24 bits of the 48-bit sequence generated by multiplying the reserved aircraft address polynomial by the reserved generator polynomial (see Figure G-3).

5.2.3 The replies contain the modulo-2 sum of the parity sequence and the (unmodified) aircraft address (see Figure G-4).

5.3 PI field generation

In downlink transmissions with format DF = 11, DF = 17 or DF = 18, another combination is used, which results in the generation of the PI field. In the format DF = 11, this field contains the modulo-2 sum of the parity sequence and the following sequence of 24 bits ($a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{24}$) = (17 zeroes, code label (CL) field (3 bits), Interrogator code (IC) field (4 bits)). In the format DF = 17 or DF = 18, this field contains the modulo-2 sum of the parity sequence and a sequence of 24 zeros (see Figure G-4 bis).

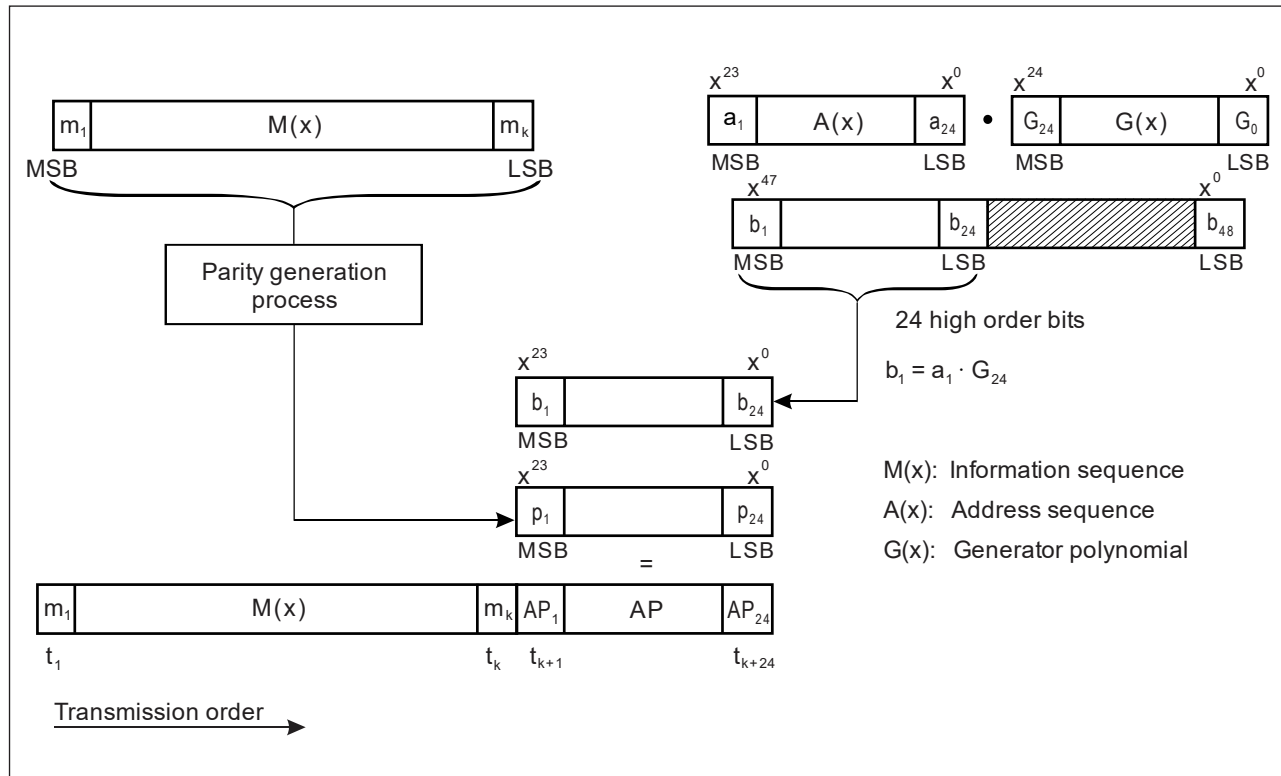


Figure G-3. Uplink encoding process

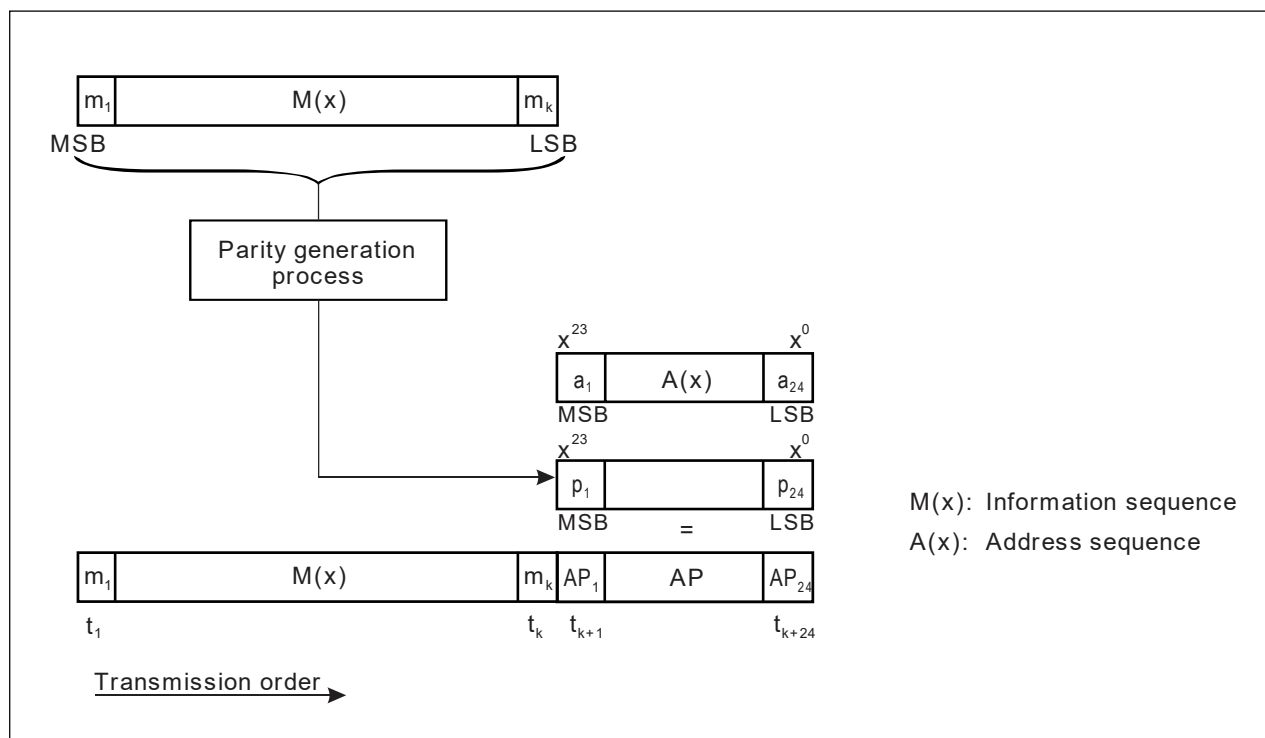


Figure G-4. Downlink encoding process for DF = 0, 4, 5, 16, 20, 21 and 24 replies

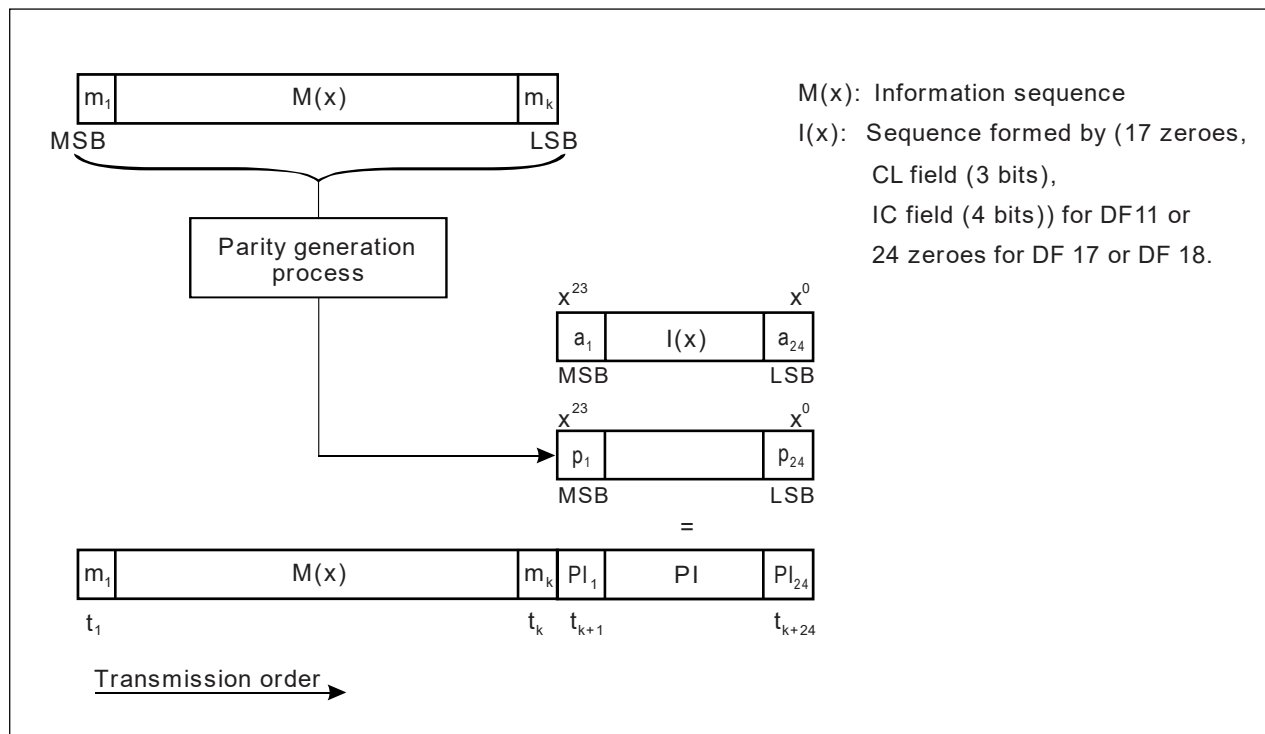


Figure G-4 bis. Downlink encoding process for DF = 11 and DF = 17 or 18 downlink transmissions

5.4 Realization using a multiplier circuit

5.4.1 Figure G-5 illustrates a realization of the ground station and transponder encoder using the multiplier circuit illustrated in Figure G-1. Other functionally equivalent encoder realizations are equally acceptable, provided that the address/parity field generated for all information and address fields are identical to that of the encoder in the figure. As illustrated, the encoder is a 24-stage shift register where the outputs of certain stages, as defined by the generator polynomial, are summed modulo-2 with the input sequence and applied to the shift register input.

5.4.2 The encoder operates in two modes — the first during the transmission of the information field, the second during the transmission of the address/parity field. In the encoder shown, the mode is determined by the position of the switch; the position illustrated corresponds to the mode used during the transmission of the information field.

5.4.3 Encoding commences with all shift register stages initialized to zero. During transmission of the information field, the encoder output is connected directly to the input, i.e. the transmitted bits are identically the information bits. Simultaneously, the information bits are summed modulo-2 with selected shift register stages and applied to the shift register input. In this way, the message is divided by the generator polynomial.

5.4.4 During transmission of the address/parity field, the encoder output (i.e. the sequence of bits to be transmitted) is the output of the sum-modulo-2 network. In the ground station encoder, the 24-bit aircraft address bits are applied sequentially to the shift register input as well as to the sum-modulo-2 network, thus achieving the desired multiplication by the generator polynomial. In the transponder encoder, the aircraft address bits are applied only to the sum-modulo-2 network; the shift register input is set to zero during address/parity field transmission.

5.5 Transponder error detection decoding

5.5.1 The transponder employs error detection logic matched to the transmitted parity sequence. The circuit shown in Figure G-5 also illustrates a realization of an error detection circuit for decoding the encoded sequence.

5.5.2 The entire received message is shifted into this circuit as well as into a storage buffer. After all 56 or 112 bits have been received, the shift register will contain a correct sequence only if no errors have occurred in transmission. If the sequence is received correctly, the data in the storage register can be accepted with high confidence. When using this circuit, the correct sequence is the unmodified 24-bit address of the aircraft.

5.6 Ground station error correction

Note.— The coding used for Mode S transmissions has alternative possibilities for error correction compared to the algorithm described. An improved algorithm could take additional advantage of the bit confidence declarations together with a model of the mechanism by which an overlapping Mode A/C reply could cause errors in the receipt of a Mode S reply. Such an approach might be helpful in areas that have a high RF channel loading, particularly when the Mode S receiver is used in conjunction with a broad beam or omnidirectional antenna.

5.6.1 The ground station employs error correction logic to correct burst errors in the received message. The ground station error check/correction process is illustrated in Figure G-6.

5.6.2 During reception of a message, the message bits are shifted into the message register. In parallel, the confidence bits are generated. After the received message is processed by the decoder circuit shown in Figure G-5, the remainder produced is added (compared) to the expected 24-bit aircraft address to produce the error syndrome. If the syndrome is ALL ZEROS, an error-free message was received. In this case the message is directly available at the output. If the syndrome is non-zero, a single error or error burst is present.

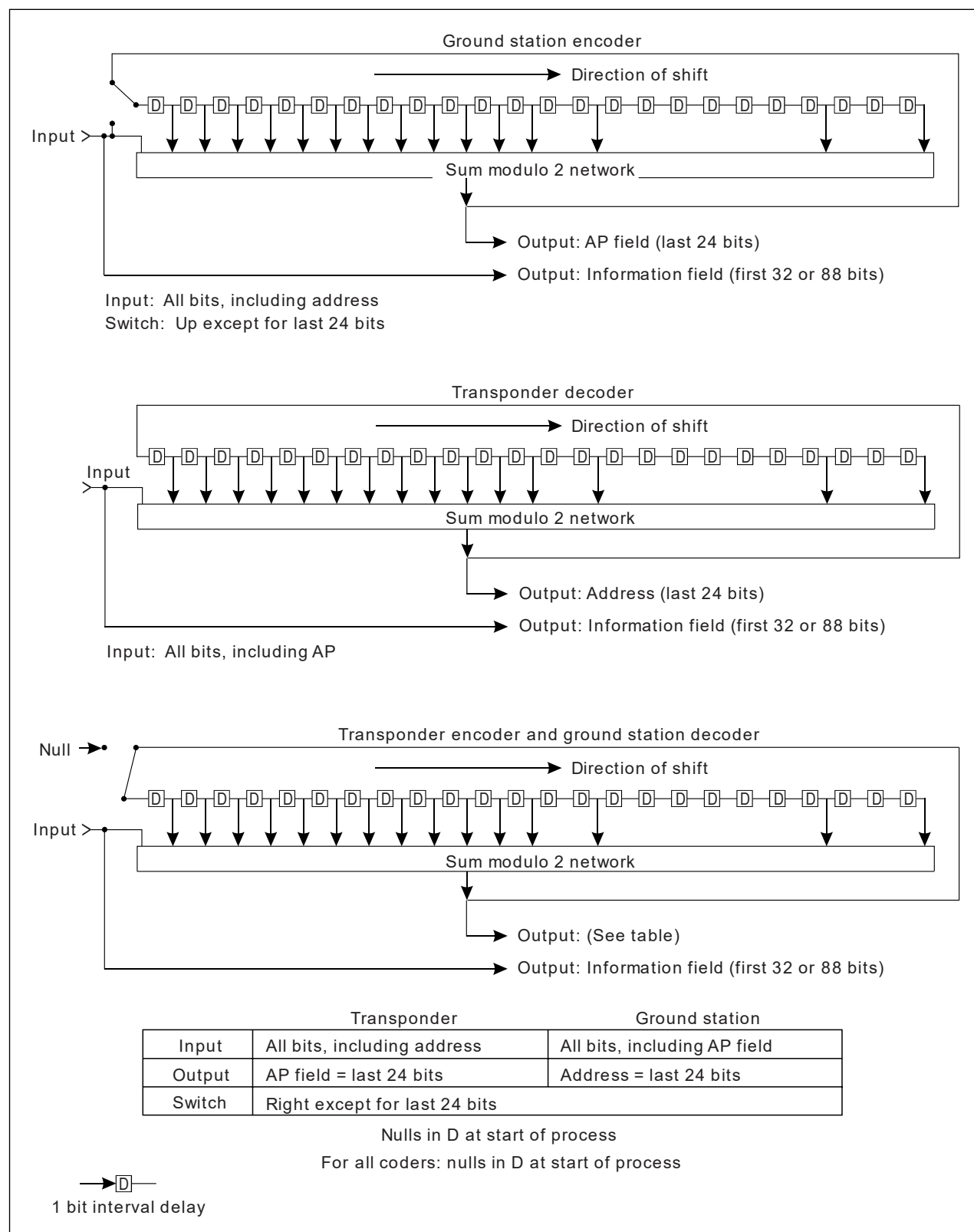


Figure G-5. Functional diagram of Mode S ground station and transponder encoders

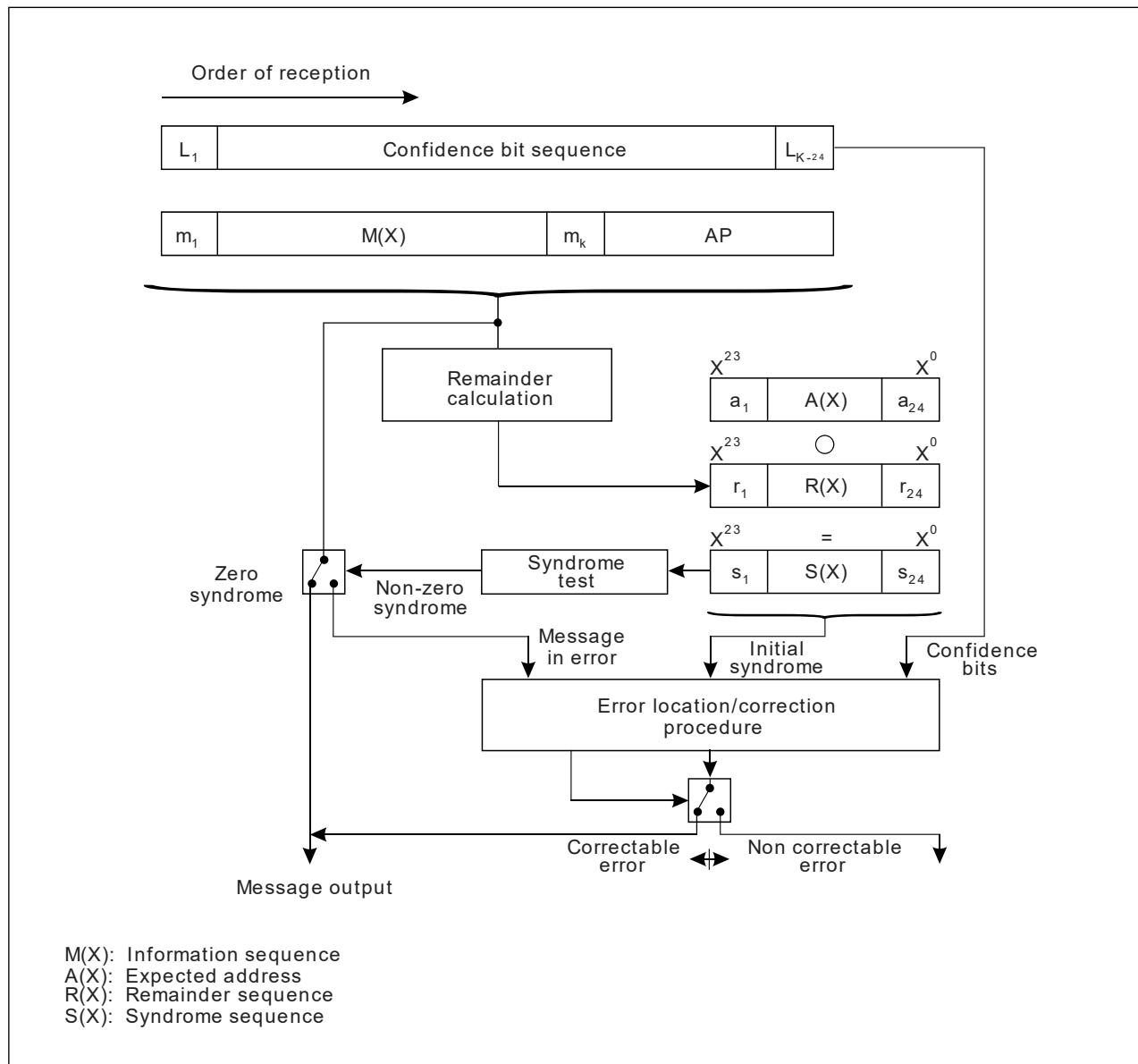


Figure G-6. Ground station error check/correction process

5.6.3 After the receiver has calculated the error syndrome, error correction can be performed by the procedure described in 3.8 and 3.9 of this appendix. The 24-bit syndrome pattern corresponds to a 24-bit error burst somewhere in the received message. The confidence bits are used to obtain the location of the error burst and indicate the section where interference has occurred. The error correction procedure uses the message bit sequence, the initial error syndrome and the confidence bit sequence.

5.6.4 The circuit shown in Figure G-7 illustrates a realization of the circuit that performs the error correction. The initial syndrome is extended into the E-register of Figure G-7 in the bit order shown, while the confidence word is placed in the L-register, and the message is placed in a parallel M-register. Note that the taps of the E-register implement $G^*(x)$, the reciprocal (bit-reversed) of the polynomial $G(x)$, which permits a more efficient error correction process to be employed.

5.6.5 One shift at a time, the successively cycled syndrome is produced. In parallel, the message and confidence stream are cycled one bit at a time. When each one of the syndrome patterns matches a low confidence one in the low order 24-bits of the confidence bit pattern, the error has been trapped. The correction enable bit is then set by the error location function. No further attempts at correction are allowed.

5.6.6 At this time the feedback of the E-register is disabled, so the syndrome can be read out serially. In parallel, the M-register shifts out the message bits. Each bit corresponding to a one in the error syndrome is then corrected by adding the two streams bit by bit.

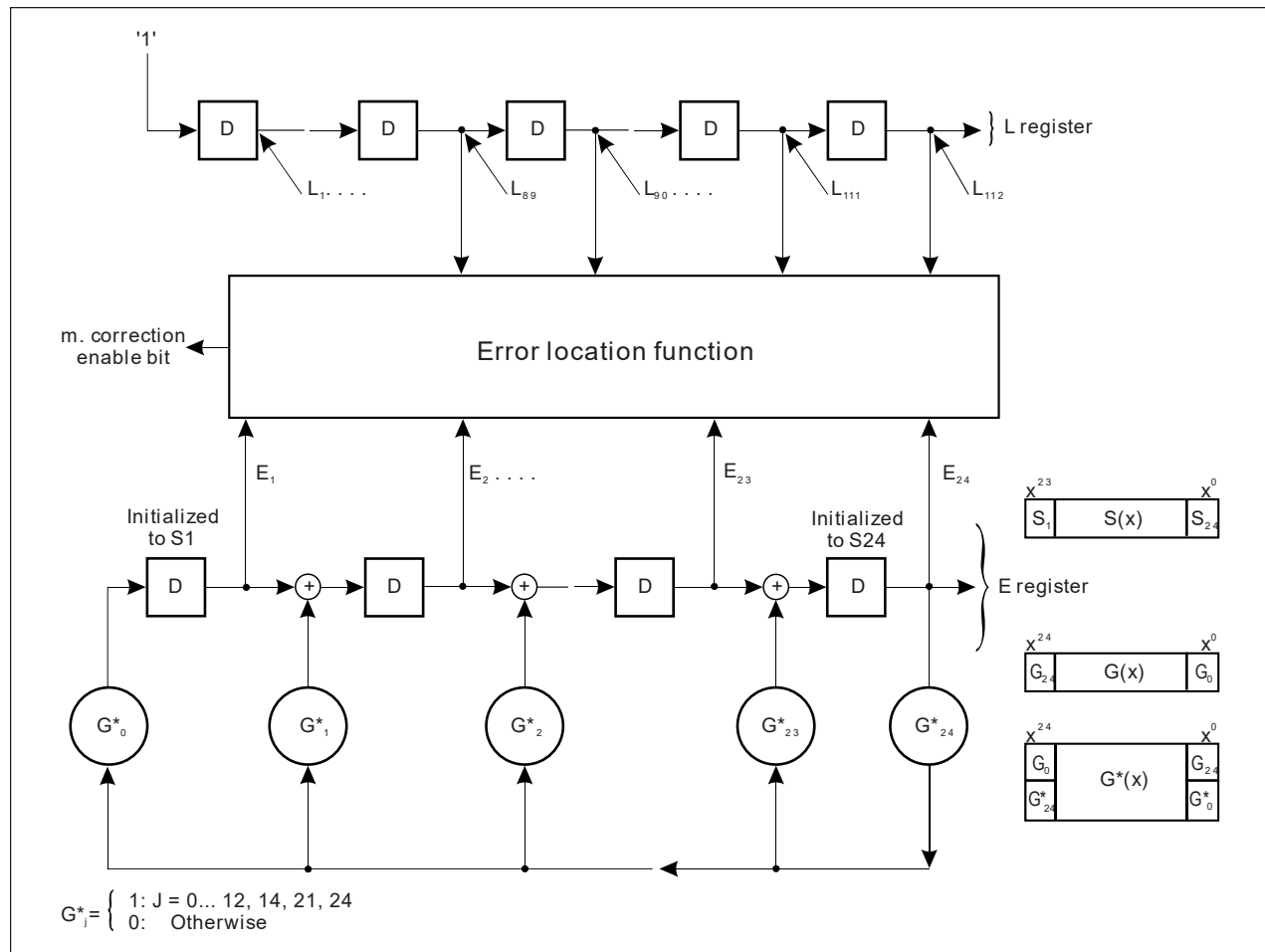


Figure G-7. Error location logic

5.6.7 One further check is made during the detection phase of the correction process, namely, the number of low

confidence bits contained in each 24-bit segment of the message is determined. If their number ever exceeds a threshold, error correction is rejected because the possibility of an erroneous correction rises sharply with the number of low confidence bits. In fact, if any consecutive 24 bits were low confidence, the syndrome pattern would be matched no matter what it was and correction of those specific 24 bits would always occur.

6. ADVANCED ERROR CORRECTION TECHNIQUES

6.1 The error correction techniques for low FRUIT environments, such as those that would be experienced by a rotating beam antenna (long range, narrow beam) or a TCAS (omnidirectional, short range), can utilize the algorithm contained in 5.6 of this appendix. The shifting of the error syndrome across the message as described in 5.6 is known as the sliding window technique. However, the FRUIT environment for the ES long-range air-to-air applications (which relies on omnidirectional antennas) may be very severe and, therefore, the sliding window technique cannot be used because of undetected error considerations.

6.2 For the very severe FRUIT environments, a simpler approach, known as the conservative technique, is used. Using this technique, error correction is only attempted if all of the low confidence bits in the message are within a 24-bit window, and there are no more than 12 low confidence bits. This constraint limits the application of error correction to signals that nominally had only a single overlapping stronger Mode A/C FRUIT. This is a conservative approach in that the conditions for attempting error correction are much more restrictive than with the sliding window technique. It produces a lower level of successful error correction since it does not attempt to correct messages with multiple Mode A/C overlaps. However, it also produces a very low undetected error rate, as intended.

6.3 If the conditions for applying the conservative technique are met, the error syndrome is generated for the window position and (as for the sliding window technique) a check is made to see whether the ones (1) in the error syndrome correspond to low confidence bits in the window. If so, error correction is accomplished. If not, the process is terminated. If the low confidence bits span less than 24-bits, more than one window could be defined to span them. This will not affect the error correction action, since regardless of the 24-bit window selected to span the low confidence bits, the ones (1) in the error syndrome will identify the same message bits, i.e. if the window is moved one bit, the error syndrome will shift by one bit.

Note.— In the description in 6.3 above, there is only one successful error correction possibility. Regardless of the specific 24-bit window position, the same message bits are identified. All of the bits corresponding to a one (1) in the error syndrome must be complemented, which can only happen if they are all low confidence. Therefore, there is at most, one correctable error pattern that can be achieved with the conservative error correction technique.

6.4 Another advanced error correction technique that can be employed is the “brute force” technique. This technique is based on the assumption that if the bit declaration algorithm has performed its function properly, all errors in Mode S data values will reside in bits declared low confidence. If this is true, a simple approach to error correction is to try all possible combinations of low confidence bits and accept the set that matches the error syndrome (provided only one success is discovered). This technique is applicable to any method of data and confidence declaration, with or without amplitude.

6.5 Brute force error correction is normally applied after the conservative error correction technique is attempted and successful correction was not achieved. Implementation of this technique depends upon the fact that each Mode S bit position corresponds to a unique syndrome, and that sets of bits produce a syndrome that is the Exclusive OR of all individual bit syndromes.

6.6 For example, if bit 1 is the only bit declared in error, the error syndrome at the receiver will be {HEX} 3935EA, while bit 31 produces {HEX} FDB444 and bit 111 has syndrome {HEX} 000002. Thus, if those three bits are all declared in error, the error syndrome will be calculated to be {HEX} C481AC. The table of individual bit syndromes can be pre-calculated and stored in the receiver. It is possible for two or more subsets of the low confidence bits to match the syndrome. In such cases, the message is rejected, and no harm is done. However, if a high confidence bit has been declared in error, and a single subset of the low confidence bits matches the syndrome, the message will be "corrected" to the wrong message, producing an undetected error. (If no subset matches the syndrome, it must be true that a high confidence bit error has been made, and the message is rejected.)

6.7 Clearly, for processing time and error bounding reasons, the maximum number of low confidence bits to process must be limited. The number of cases to consider is given by 2^n . If "n" low confidence bits exist for a message, the number of cases grows exponentially with "n" (e.g. 32 at $n = 5$; 4 096 at $n = 12$). The undetected error rate is proportional to the number of cases, and thus also grows exponentially with "n." However, since the Hamming distance of 6 for the Mode S parity code implies that undetected errors are essentially zero if "n" is kept less than or equal to 5, a value of 5 is recommended for "n."

Appendix H

MODE S PROTOCOL CONSIDERATIONS

Note.— In regions of overlapping coverage, Mode S ground stations must coordinate their activities to permit the correct operation of the Mode S surveillance and communications protocols. The multisite protocols provide this coordination with a minimum of ground cooperation through the use of a site identifier in uplink transmissions. The non-selective protocols require ground-to-ground coordination of ground station activity but are more efficient in the use of channel time. However, the non-selective lockout protocols are not compatible with the Mode S subnetwork protocols.

1. ACQUISITION AND LOCKOUT PROTOCOLS

1.1 General

1.1.1 In order to selectively interrogate a Mode S-equipped aircraft, the ground station must know the aircraft's Mode S address and approximate position. To acquire the addresses of Mode S aircraft, each ground station transmits all-call interrogations. A Mode S-equipped aircraft will respond to such an interrogation with its unique address. On the first or second antenna scan after receiving the initial all-call replies, the ground station will discretely interrogate the aircraft and command the lockout condition for the IC in use by the ground station. The benefit of waiting until the second scan before lockout is that it allows a better estimate of aircraft velocity, which gives a more accurate estimate of the time that the aircraft will be in the main beam on the next scan. After acquisition, the aircraft's 24-bit address will be added to the ground station's file of acquired aircraft.

1.1.2 Once acquired, the Mode S-equipped aircraft must be locked out from replying (instructed not to respond) to subsequent Mode S all-call interrogations in order to minimize all-call synchronous garbling. This lockout condition is controlled by the Mode S ground station through Mode S selectively addressed interrogations. If for any reason an aircraft ceases to receive discretely-addressed interrogations containing a lockout command for a period of approximately 18 seconds (corresponding to a few antenna scans), any existing lockout will lapse so that the aircraft may be reacquired by normal Mode S acquisition.

1.1.3 The interrogation used by the ground station to elicit all-call replies depends upon the acquisition technique in effect at that site.

1.1.4 Operational experience has shown that many Mode S transponders interpret a Mode S interrogation that is received near MTL or is corrupted by multipath as a Mode A/C/S all-call interrogation. The result is an unwanted all-call reply with an associated interrogator identifier (II) code equal to zero. These unwanted replies result in a significant increase in the rate of all-call replies around busy terminals. Unwanted all-call replies can be eliminated by locking out all Mode S aircraft under surveillance to II=0 in addition to the radar's assigned interrogator code. This dual lockout can be accomplished by locking out to each interrogator code on alternate scans.

1.2 Multisite acquisition and lockout

1.2.1 Multisite acquisition is carried out by using the Mode S-only all-call interrogation uplink format (UF) = 11. The IC of the interrogating site is contained in the interrogation. Two types of ICs are defined:

- a) the II code is used for multisite surveillance and data link coordination. II codes of 1 to 15 are valid (an II code of ZERO (0) is interpreted as non-selective); and
- b) the SI code is used only for multisite surveillance and the limited data link functions identified SI codes of 1 to 63 are valid. SI code ZERO (0) is not used.

1.2.2 The transponder replies to this interrogation if it is not in a state of lockout to that specific IC. The transponder has a total of 79 independent lockout timers to maintain the lockout state requested by the ground stations (i.e. 16 II and 63 SI lockout timers).

1.2.3 An SI code is composed of the IC field and the CL field. Only transponders complying with at least Amendment 73 (or higher) of Annex 10 will decode the CL field in order to determine whether the content of the IC field is an II code or an SI code. Transponders which have not been upgraded to handle SI codes will, by default, consider the content of the IC field as being an II code value. Therefore, if CL is not equal to zero (meaning that the IC field contains an SI code), the non-upgraded transponders will encode the parity sequence of the reply using the "matching" II code rather than the SI code contained in the interrogation.

1.2.4 The interrogator, which will receive Mode S-only all-call replies encoded with the "matching" II code, will normally reject these replies. The consequence is that transponders which have not been upgraded to handle SI codes will not be detected by the interrogator operating with an SI code.

1.2.5 The following technique enables the acquisition and detection of non-SI capable transponders for the transition period.

1.2.6 The interrogator, when operating with an SI code, must be configurable by the user to accept Mode S-only all-call replies for which the "matching" II code has been used to encode the parity sequence.

1.2.7 The target which has sent such replies must be considered as equipped with a non-SI capable transponder, even if the content of Register 10₁₆ states that the transponder has the SI capability.

1.2.8 The interrogator, if operating with an SI code, must be configurable by the user to interrogate targets equipped with non-SI capable transponders using the Mode S-selective protocols foreseen for II code operation. The II code to be used must be the "matching" II code.

1.2.9 The interrogator, if operating with an SI code, must be configurable by the user to either:

- a) not lockout non-SI capable transponders on the "matching" II code; or
- b) use intermittent lockout for this "matching" II code.

Note.— This is to allow neighbouring interrogators operating with the "matching" II code to acquire the non-SI capable transponders.

1.2.10 The interrogator, if operating with an II code, must be configurable by the user to either:

- a) not lockout Mode S transponders that do not report the SI capability in Register 10₁₆; or
- b) use intermittent lockout for Mode S transponders that do not report the SI capability in Register 10₁₆.

Note.— This is to allow neighbouring interrogators operating with an SI code and the "matching" II code to acquire the non-SI capable transponders.

1.2.11 This technique must only be used to detect aircraft not equipped with SI code capable transponders entering mandated SI code airspace so that appropriate action can be taken (e.g. they can be re-routed out of such airspace).

1.3 Acquisition and lockout techniques

1.3.1 When the system is operating in the multisite mode, separate interrogation of Mode S and Mode A/C targets can be achieved by the use of the Mode A/C-only all-call, together with the Mode S-only all-call, UF = 11.

1.3.2 As the name implies, the Mode S-only all-call interrogation elicits replies only from Mode S transponders. It is therefore used in conjunction with the Mode A/C-only all-call interrogation (distinguished by a short P₄ pulse). This latter interrogation elicits replies only from Mode A/C transponders and therefore complements the Mode S-only all-call so that Mode A/C and Mode S transponders reply to at most one of the interrogations. This avoids the possibility of having the same aircraft under surveillance as both a Mode A/C and a Mode S aircraft.

1.3.3 One technique for managing the RF channel is for each all-call interrogation to be followed by its own listening window. At the expense of more sophisticated management of the reply processors, an alternative technique obtains the benefit of a shared listening interval by pairing the two all-call interrogations as shown in Figure H-1. This shared listening interval results in a much more efficient use of the timeline. The spacing between the interrogations is such that replies are received simultaneously from a Mode A/C transponder and a Mode S transponder at the same range. This allows enough time for a Mode A/C transponder to recover from the SLS caused by the P₁-P₂ Mode S interrogation preamble before it receives the Mode A/C-only all-call.

Note 1.— When operating with overlapping all-calls, there is the possibility for marginally performing transponders to exhibit unexpected results. Some Mode A/C transponders have been observed not to suppress properly to the equal amplitude P₁-P₂ suppression pair of the Mode S preamble. This usually results in the transponder improperly detecting a P₃ pulse within the P₆ waveform and responding with a Mode A reply. This can result in a ghost target being reported up to 10 NM closer in slant range than the actual target position. If the transponder does not recover in time to accept the legitimate interrogation, it will not respond at its actual position.

Note 2.— Some of the benefits of a combined listening interval of Mode A/C-only and Mode S-only all-calls can be obtained without ghost targets by using both combined and separate listening intervals during a beam dwell. In this approach, some interrogations are combined as shown in Figure H-1, but other Mode A/C-only and Mode S-only all-call interrogations with separate listening intervals are interspersed with the combined interrogations during the beam dwell. A Mode A/C track is only initiated on replies received from Mode A/C interrogations with separate listening intervals.

1.3.4 The PI field of an all-call reply, downlink format (DF) = 11, elicited by a Mode S-only all-call interrogation (UF = 11) is encoded using the IC received in the interrogation that elicited the reply. This is composed of CL and IC fields of the all-call interrogation. This address is used in the encoding of the PI field in exactly the same manner as the transponder Mode S address is used to generate the address parity (AP) field. Ground stations operating in the multisite mode decode all-call replies using their own IC as the expected address. All-call FRUIT replies produced by adjacent ground stations will not be accepted by the local ground station since they would be encoded using a different IC. This rejection of all-call replies by the IC eliminates the possibility of extraneous all-call tracks being formed from Mode S FRUIT replies.

1.3.5 The use of all-call lockout makes it necessary for ground stations to coordinate surveillance activities in regions of overlapping coverage to ensure that all ground stations are allowed to acquire Mode S aircraft. If ground stations cannot coordinate via ground communications, the transponder multisite lockout feature is employed.

1.3.6 The multisite lockout feature is based upon the use of ICs (II and SI) and multiple transponder lockout timers. The Mode S transponder can be selectively and independently locked out to multisite all-call interrogations originating from up to 78 different ICs. Adjacent sites using different ICs are unaffected by the other sites' lockout activity and hence can perform acquisition and lockout in a completely autonomous manner. Restrictions on interrogator operations must be taken into account.

1.3.7 Implementation of SI code capability (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 2, 2.1.5.1.7.1) can be determined by monitoring bit 35 of the data link capability report (register 10₁₆). This report should be routinely extracted at track acquisition. SI codes cannot be used in a region of airspace until all of the Mode S aircraft are equipped for SI codes. This monitoring should continue after SI codes are put into use to identify any transponder that is not SI-capable. Follow-up action should be initiated for aircraft that are detected that are not equipped with SI codes.

1.3.8 The reason that all aircraft must be SI-equipped is that a non-SI code-capable Mode S transponder will misinterpret the SI code contained in the Mode S-only all-call interrogation. The II or SI code included in a Mode S-only all-call interrogation is contained in a 7-bit field composed of the 3-bit CL field and the 4-bit IC field as follows:

CL coding (in binary):

000	signifies that IC field contains the II code
001	signifies that IC field contains SI codes 1 to 15
010	signifies that IC field contains SI codes 16 to 31
011	signifies that IC field contains SI codes 32 to 47
100	signifies that IC field contains SI codes 48 to 63

1.3.9 A transponder that does not support SI codes will not detect the CL field and will therefore interpret the IC field as always containing an II code. This causes the mapping of a set of SI codes into an II code. For example, ICs of II = 1 and SI = 1, 17, 33 and 49 will all have "0001" in the IC field. If an aircraft not equipped for SI codes is operating in a region of overlapping coverage of interrogators with II = 1 and SI = 17, the following interaction will occur:

- a) if the aircraft is acquired first by the II = 1 interrogator, the aircraft will be locked out to II = 1. An all-call interrogation from the SI interrogator expressing SI = 17 will not elicit an all-call reply because the transponder interprets the code as II = 1, and it is locked out to II = 1; and
- b) if the aircraft is acquired first by the SI interrogator, the transponder will reply to the SI = 17 all-call interrogation since it is not locked out to II = 1. The SI interrogator will not be able to lock out the transponder, since the mechanism for II and SI code lockout is entirely different. Therefore, the transponder will not recognize the SI lockout command (and will not change its lockout status to any II code).

1.3.10 Thus, with a transponder not equipped with SI code capability, there will never be a loss of surveillance coverage for an interrogator with an II code. Surveillance loss can only happen to the SI code interrogator and then only for a certain combination of II and SI codes.

1.3.11 The transition to SI codes is manageable through monitoring compliance to the SI code requirement via the data link capability report and (where possible for fixed interrogators) assigning II and SI codes for adjacent interrogators to avoid possible interaction. It is possible to assign more than one SI code to an interrogator on a sector basis. This approach might be useful as another means to avoid interacting SI and II codes. For mobile interrogators, or for fixed interrogators where non-interacting SI and II codes cannot be used, a low rate of lockout override Mode S-only all-call interrogations by the SI code interrogator can be used to acquire the occasional non-SI code Mode S transponder. Another means for managing this situation is for the interrogators operating with II codes to periodically remove lockout for non-SI equipped Mode S transponders to ensure acquisition by SI interrogators.

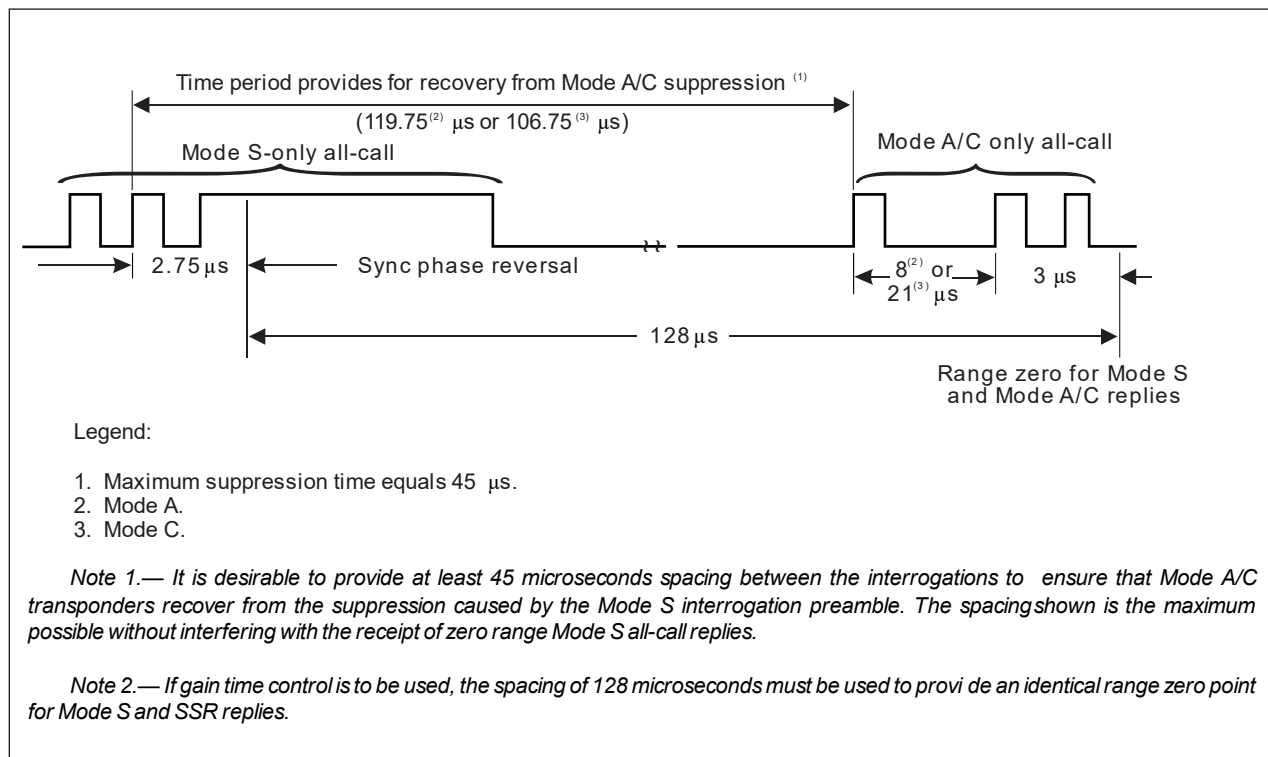


Figure H-1. Combined interrogation for site selective acquisition

1.4 Non-selective acquisition and lockout

1.4.1 Addressed interrogations containing $II = 0$ are not compatible with the Mode S subnetwork protocols. These protocols monitor discrete interrogations for II activity and use non-zero II codes for routing of downlink messages to intended ground addresses. Thus, the use of non-selective acquisition (which is based on $II = 0$) cannot be used with an interrogator that is supporting the Mode S subnetwork. For this reason, $II = 0$ is no longer authorized for use in normal Mode S acquisition. $II = 0$ is now reserved for adaptive acquisition in connection with stochastic/lockout override technique.

1.4.2 The protocol (PC) field is used either for lockout or for communication purposes. When the PC field in an interrogation is used for communication purposes, non-selective lockout can be accomplished in the same interrogation by the use of the lockout subfield (LOS) in the special designator (SD) field.

1.5 Clustered interrogator acquisition and lockout

Interrogators with overlapping coverage using the same IC may be linked via a ground network to coordinate their surveillance and communications activities. This provides the reduced all-call FRUIT benefit of the non-selective acquisition technique in a form that is compatible with the Mode S subnetwork. Since ground coordination is provided, clustered interrogators may use the non-selective communications protocols.

1.6 Stochastic acquisition

1.6.1 While Mode S lockout can reduce synchronous garbling on acquisition, it cannot eliminate it completely, nor is it effective in the case where a Mode S ground station resumes operation after a period of inactivity and must therefore acquire many Mode S aircraft simultaneously. These latter cases are handled by a feature called the stochastic acquisition mode. In this mode, the Mode S ground station interrogates using a special all-call interrogation command that instructs aircraft to reply with a specified less-than-unity reply probability. The resulting reduced reply rate means that some all-call replies will be received ungarbled, and these aircraft will thus be acquired. Once an aircraft is acquired, it is locked out and hence no longer interferes with the all-call replies from the remaining unacquired aircraft. The process is repeated until all aircraft are acquired.

1.6.2 This form of acquisition uses the Mode S-only all-call interrogation, UF = 11. The specified reply probability is contained in the PR field and can be selected from the values 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8 or 1/16. The transponder will not reply if a lockout condition is in effect. Otherwise, the transponder executes a random process and replies only if the outcome of the random process is consistent with the specified reply probability. For example, if the PR code specifies a reply probability of 1/4, the transponder will generate a random number between zero and one and will reply only if:

- a) a lockout condition does not apply; and
- b) the generated random number is less than or equal to 0.25.

Note.— The stochastic acquisition technique described in the following paragraphs is only an example. Other modes of stochastic acquisition may also be employed.

1.6.3 Implementation can include the following two modes:

- a) *Initial acquisition mode.* This mode is executed after a period of Mode S ground station inactivity. It consists of periodic Mode S-only all-call interrogations (4–6 or more per beam dwell) followed by a listening interval out to the range of interest. These are interspersed with scheduled Mode S intervals to permit discrete interrogation and lockout of Mode S addresses acquired on the previous scan. The minimum probability assignment used for this purpose is a site-dependent parameter chosen to match the Mode S traffic load handled by this site. The program for reacquisition begins at this lowest probability level and then moves to higher probability levels after several scans in order to reduce the overall acquisition time. Aircraft not acquired initially, as well as all-call garbling situations which occur unexpectedly during normal operation, are handled as described in the following paragraph; and
- b) *Adaptive acquisition mode.* Mode S replies received with uncorrectable errors during the all-call listening interval are grouped together if they correlate in range and azimuth. Groups formed of three or more replies per dwell are interpreted as evidence of an all-call synchronous garbling occurrence. A trial Mode S track is initiated at the approximate range and azimuth of the correlated replies. On the next scan, the ground station interrogates using a Mode S-only all-call with a specified reply probability of one half. With high probability, an ungarbled reply will be received from one of the two transponders in the garbling situation during the four or more interrogation opportunities possible during a beam dwell, thereby permitting discrete interrogation and lockout on the following scan. If acquisition is not successful, the trial track will be dropped since the continued garbling situation will lead to the initiation of a fresh trial track. Residual garbling caused by more than two aircraft in the initial garble set will also result in a new trial track. The last aircraft in the garbling set will be acquired by the normal all-call process in use at the site.

1.7 Lockout override

1.7.1 Lockout override may be used in situations where it is believed that the lockout activities of an adjacent ground station are preventing Mode S acquisition by the local ground station. For example, the adjacent ground station may inadvertently be using the same II code as the local ground station. Use of this mode must be strictly limited since it elicits Mode S all-call replies from acquired as well as unacquired aircraft and therefore can cause a substantial level of Mode S all-call FRUIT.

1.7.2 An acquisition technique can be defined that combines features of the site-addressed and stochastic acquisition approaches. It uses the Mode S-only all-call, UF = 11, and employs PR codes that define reply probabilities of 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8 and 1/16. In this case, the transponder is instructed to disregard the lockout state in making a reply decision. This will of course result in the continued possibility of garbled all-call replies since both acquired and unacquired Mode S aircraft can reply to the all-call interrogations. The stochastic mode is used to handle the resulting garbling.

2. CONCEPTS FOR MODE S ACQUISITION WITHOUT LOCKOUT

2.1 Mode S acquisition using lockout override

2.1.1 Operational concept

2.1.1.1 Certain interrogators (e.g. mobile military interrogators) may not be in a position to have an assigned II or SI code in order to perform normal Mode S surveillance. A technique for performing Mode S acquisition using lockout override that does not require an assigned IC is described in this section.

2.1.1.2 An operational concept for Mode S acquisition using lockout override is defined as follows:

- a) Routine aircraft surveillance is performed by these interrogators using Mode A/C, primary radar surveillance or other means. For Mode A/C, monopulse processing must be used for having a lower interrogation rate. The channel time now available is used for Mode S acquisition;
- b) On each scan, this type of interrogator schedules a number of Mode S-only all-call interrogations, followed by a listening interval appropriate for the operating range. These interrogations contain a lockout override code that commands Mode S transponders to respond to the interrogation regardless of their lockout state. The resulting synchronous garble is managed through the use of PR = 10 to 12 in the Mode S-only all-call interrogation. These codes command lockout override, together with a reduced probability of reply;
- c) Every ungarbled Mode S all-call reply is processed and correlated in range and azimuth to the corresponding Mode A/C or primary radar track. The all-call reply contains the 24-bit aircraft address. This address is used in Mode S discretely addressed interrogations to obtain any supplemental information available from that aircraft. These discretely addressed interrogations contain an IC equal to ZERO (0) but do not contain any lockout commands. The discrete surveillance replies contain Mode C and Mode A codes which can also be used as further correlation criteria with a Mode A/C track. The interrogator has not modified in any way the lockout state of the aircraft as established by neighbouring Mode S interrogators using the multisite lockout protocols;

- d) The 24-bit aircraft address is stored in the track file and is used for a subsequent update of this supplemental information;
- e) The Mode S acquisition status of every aircraft in track is maintained in the track file, with one of the three following characteristics:
 - 1) aircraft address acquired;
 - 2) confirmation that the aircraft is not Mode S-equipped, since a prescribed number of interrogations has not resulted in an error-free reply reception or a Mode S preamble detection; or
 - 3) Mode S acquisition in process; and
- f) In order to minimize all-call FRUIT, all-call interrogations are only transmitted in beam dwells containing aircraft that are currently in the acquisition process.

2.1.2 Control of synchronous garble

2.1.2.1 The above operational concept for Mode S acquisition is based on the use of the lockout override feature. As the name implies, a Mode S-only all-call interrogation carries a code (PR = 8 to 12) that instructs the transponder to reply to this all-call regardless of its lockout state. Lockout override would be of limited use by itself since such transmissions would likely result in synchronously garbled Mode S all-call replies from aircraft close in slant range and within the same beam dwell as the aircraft of interest. The synchronous garble range for a Mode S all-call reply is 9.6 km (5.2 NM).

2.1.2.2 Mode S includes another feature known as “stochastic acquisition” that should be used with lockout override. Stochastic acquisition overcomes synchronous all-call garble by commanding the transponder (via a code in the all-call interrogation, PR = 10 to 12) to respond with a probability less than unity. Available probabilities are 1/4, 1/8 and 1/16. A reply probability of less than one reduces the total number of replies from a set of aircraft in garble range. This increases the likelihood of receiving a single ungarbled reply from an unacquired aircraft. Stochastic acquisition makes it possible to acquire a Mode S aircraft, even in relatively dense environments.

2.1.2.3 The performance of stochastic acquisition as a function of the number of aircraft in a garble zone and the probability used is presented in Table H-1. A summary of the performance to be expected with this technique is presented in Table H-2. The rows in Table H-2 indicate the number of aircraft in the garble zone defined by the beamwidth, and the 9.6 km (5.2 NM) garble zone for the Mode S all-call reply. It should be noted that having more than ten aircraft in the defined zone is quite rare. The columns indicate the maximum and average number of interrogations needed for 99 per cent probability of acquisition.

2.1.3 Maximum all-call interrogation rate

2.1.3.1 *Limit for a standard Mode S interrogator*

The maximum all-call interrogation repetition rate specified in the Mode S system Standards and Recommended Practices SARPs (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.11.1.1 refers) is 250 per second. This interrogation repetition rate sets the limit of 1 030 and 1 090 MHz interference caused by the all-call interrogation activity of a single Mode S interrogator.

Table H-1. Number of interrogations required for 99 per cent probability of acquisition

<i>Number of aircraft in garble zone</i>	<i>Stochastic probability</i>		
	<i>0.5</i>	<i>0.25</i>	<i>0.125</i>
2	16	22	40
3	35	31	46
4	72	41	53
5	>100	56	61
6		76	70
7		>100	80
8			93
9			105
10			121

Table H-2. Lockout override acquisition performance (interrogations)
p = 0.25 (2 to 5 aircraft), p = 0.125 (6 to 10 aircraft)

<i>Number of aircraft in garble zone</i>	<i>Single aircraft</i>		<i>All aircraft</i>	
	<i>Maximum number of interrogations for 99% probability of acquisition</i>	<i>Average interrogations for acquisition</i>	<i>Maximum number of interrogations for 99% probability of acquisition</i>	<i>Average interrogations for acquisition</i>
2	22	5	26	8
3	31	7	38	13
4	41	10	54	20
5	56	13	76	29
6	70	16	97	38
7	80	18	114	46
8	93	20	133	55
9	105	23	155	66
10	121	27	181	78

2.1.3.2 1 030 MHz considerations

The stochastic/lockout override technique uses a standard Mode S-only all-call and, therefore, has the same effect on the 1 030 MHz channel as the all-call generated by a standard Mode S interrogator. From a 1 030 MHz perspective, an interrogator using stochastic/lockout override could operate at the same all-call interrogation rate as a standard Mode S interrogator.

2.1.3.3 1 090 MHz considerations

2.1.3.3.1 A standard Mode S interrogator using lockout will only elicit all-call replies from Mode S aircraft just entering coverage, or those aircraft that have timed out of lockout due to failure to receive an interrogation in the last 18 ± 1 second. A very high assumption for the number of aircraft not in the lockout state in a high traffic environment is about one aircraft per beam dwell, or a total of 120 aircraft for an interrogator with a standard 3-degree beamwidth (3 dB). Given a maximum specified all-call PRF of 250, this would yield a maximum of about 250 Mode S all-call replies per second per standard Mode S interrogator.

2.1.3.3.2 An interrogator using lockout override will have a higher reply rate to its all-call interrogations since lockout is not used. Assume an interrogator with a 10-second scan, a 3.6-degree beamwidth and 700 aircraft in track. The average beam loading will be seven aircraft for each of the 100 beam positions per scan. If a stochastic probability of 0.25 is used, there will be an average of around two replies to each all-call interrogation.

2.1.3.3.3 On this basis, the total all-call interrogation rate for this example interrogator using lockout override should be limited to about 125 Mode S-only all-call interrogations per second to avoid generating any more Mode S FRUIT than a standard Mode S interrogator.

2.1.3.3.4 Different target loadings, beamwidths and scan rates will lead to different operating points. However, the operating principle is to limit total Mode S all-call FRUIT to no more than the low level generated by a standard Mode S interrogator.

2.1.3.4 Maximum number of Mode S all-call reply rate

2.1.3.4.1 1 090 MHz interference is a critical concern for the performance of surveillance systems and the collision avoidance systems. One of the main causes of the interference is excessive all-call replies. As specified in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.11.1.1.2, the maximum number of Mode S-only all-call reply rates are no more than 6 all-call replies per period of 200 ms and no more than 26 replies counted over a period 18 seconds, on average.

2.1.3.4.2 The intent of this limitation is to complement the maximum all-call interrogation repetition rate (refer to 2.1.3.1 of this appendix). However, the limitation of the all-call interrogation rate (250 per second) is not sufficient to mitigate 1 090 MHz interference. Assuming an interrogator with a 5-second scan and a 2.4-degree beamwidth (3 dB), 180 all-call interrogations per second from this interrogator can trigger up to 12 all-call replies from one aircraft in the effective beamwidth, while 5 or 6 replies per beamwidth are sufficient for an initial acquisition. In addition, a Mode S interrogator that has a relatively high scan rate with a relatively wide beamwidth will trigger, excessively, all-call replies. Assuming an interrogator with a 1-second scan and a 6-degree beamwidth (3 dB), 180 all-call interrogations per second from this interrogator can trigger up to 6 replies per every second from aircraft within the effective beamwidth, which result in 108 replies counted over a period of 18 s on this interrogator.

2.1.3.4.3 The number of all-call replies elicited by a standard Mode S interrogator depends on a number of parameters, such as scan rate, beamwidth, and SLS adjustment. Therefore, these parameters should be carefully configured according to its operational requirement. It would be highly desirable to check the actual number of all-call replies by monitoring. This is because the actual number of all-call replies in the effective beamwidth is about twice the calculated number of all-call replies in the 3 dB beamwidth due to SLS settings. To determine actual all-call reply rates, data collection and analysis of

all-call replies are needed. Required data items are at least 24-bit aircraft address and detection time of the all-call replies.

2.1.3.4.4 There are two main areas that can generate excessive all-call replies. One area is the outer range beyond the lockout coverage. Another area is around an airport that exists within the surveillance coverage. All-call replies transmitted by inbound aircraft beyond the maximum operating range may be continued for several scans before entering the lockout coverage. However, the number of replies indicates almost the estimated value based on the effective beamwidth. On the other hand, the number of all-call replies transmitted by departing aircraft around the airport may increase for various reasons (e.g. multipath). In addition, there is a possibility in the multipath environment to continue all-call replies for several scans until transferring to roll-call interrogations because of misinterpretation of the true target direction.

2.1.3.4.5 On this basis, an interrogator tends to receive excessive all-call replies from departing aircraft in the multipath environment, if the interrogator is located in close proximity to the airport. This implies that the all-call reply rate may increase at a specific time slot having a number of departing aircraft. Taking into account this phenomenon, continuous monitoring should first be conducted to measure its time variation. Then, if there is a specific time slot with a high all-call reply rate, it would be highly recommended to conduct data analysis in detail by focusing on the time slot.

2.1.4 Example of interrogator use of lockout override

2.1.4.1 Interrogator characteristics

Assuming that the interrogator has a beamwidth of 3.6 degrees, a range of 370 km (200 NM) and a scan time of 10 seconds, using 10 lockout override all-call interrogations per beam dwell leads to an interrogation rate of 100 per second. This is within the interrogation rate allowed by the SARPs, even after adjustment for the higher number of replies produced per interrogation.

2.1.4.2 Expected performance

Table H-2 indicates the maximum and average number of interrogations needed to achieve a 99 per cent probability of acquisition. Since ten interrogations are used per beam dwell, the maximum and average number of scans for acquisition can be determined by dividing the last two columns of Table H-2 by ten and rounding up to the next whole scan. The result is shown in Table H-3.

2.1.4.3 Simulation results

2.1.4.3.1 The acquisition performance for an interrogator with the aforementioned characteristics was estimated by simulation. For the simulation, a traffic density of 10, 25 and 50 aircraft per beamwidth was generated randomly in range and azimuth out to 370 km (200 NM) at an extent of three beamwidths. Performance was measured for the aircraft in the centre beamwidth as the interrogator beam scanned through the traffic. The results are presented in Figure H-2.

2.1.4.3.2 An indication of the performance in terms of the number of aircraft acquired is shown in Figure H-3. It can be seen that for the 10 and 50 aircraft cases, all but one of the aircraft were quickly acquired, but the last aircraft was not acquired even after 20 scans.

Table H-3. Stochastic/lockout override acquisition performance (scans)
P = 0.25 (2 to 5 aircraft), p = 0.125 (6 to 10 aircraft)

<i>Number of aircraft in the garble zone</i>	<i>Maximum number of scans for 99% probability of acquisition</i>	<i>Average number of scans for 99% probability of acquisition</i>
2	2	1
3	3	1
4	4	1
5	6	2
6	7	2
7	8	2
8	9	2
9	10	3
10	11	3

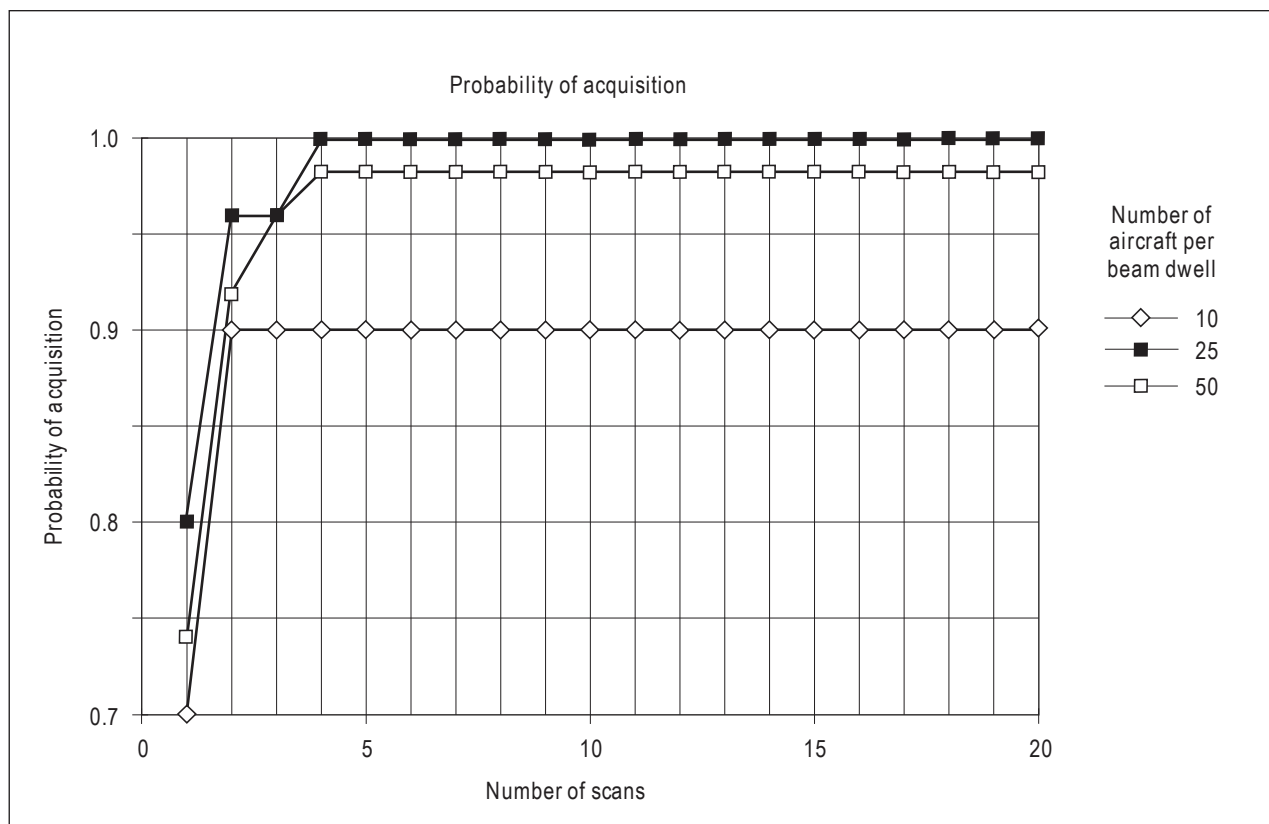
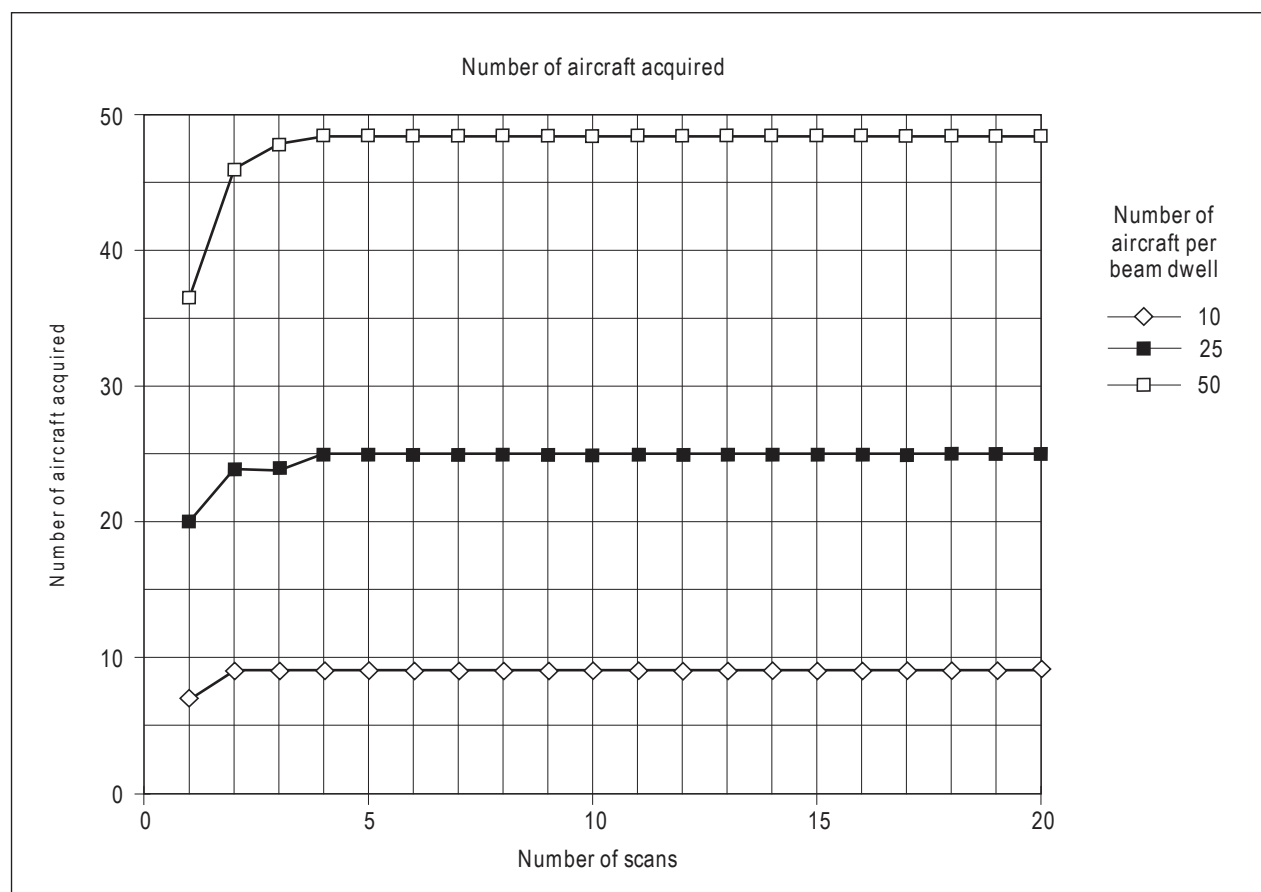


Figure H-2. Lockout override probability of acquisition (3.6-degree beam, 10-second scan, 10 all-call interrogations per beam, $p = 0.25$)



**Figure H-3. stochastic/lockout override number of aircraft acquired
(3.6-degree beam, 10-second scan, 10 all-call interrogations per beam, $p = 0.25$)**

2.1.5 Adaptive technique for reduced acquisition time

2.1.5.1 Need for an adaptive technique

The simulation results show that while rapid acquisition is provided by lockout override for most aircraft, it may take a long time to acquire all aircraft in a high-density environment. Acquisition performance can, however, be improved by the use of selective lockout.

2.1.5.2 Use of $II = 0$

2.1.5.2.1 The development of the Mode S subnetwork algorithms has greatly limited the utility of II code zero. The subnetwork communication protocols require the use of a non-zero II code in order to support downlink routing. Thus $II = 0$ will not be used when Mode S data link is used with the subnetwork services, even in areas of no overlapping sensor coverage.

2.1.5.2.2 Given that $II = 0$ will not be used in the densest areas, it would seem that $II = 0$ could be eliminated for normal acquisition use without restricting Mode S operations.

2.1.5.3 Adaptive acquisition

2.1.5.3.1 For acquiring the last of the aircraft in a garble zone, an adaptive technique using $II = 0$ operates as follows:

- a) all of the acquired aircraft in the beam dwell of the garble zone containing the unacquired aircraft are discretely interrogated and locked out to $II = 0$;
- b) during the following scan, all-call interrogations are transmitted using $II = 0$, without lockout override; and
- c) transponders will unlock to $II = 0$, 18 seconds after the last lockout command.

2.1.5.3.2 The reduced garble density will lead to rapid acquisition of the unacquired aircraft, or a determination that it is not Mode S-equipped. Since lockout is used only temporarily and selectively, only a minimum of coordination is required with neighbouring interrogators using lockout override to avoid conflict in the use of lockout to $II = 0$.

2.2 Mode S passive acquisition

2.2.1 Need for passive acquisition

2.2.1.1 From the initial design to the present day, all Mode S scanning-beam interrogators have used an active approach (all-calls plus lockout) to acquire Mode S aircraft as described in 1.1 to 1.5 of this Appendix. This approach has two disadvantages:

- a) it results in unnecessary all-call replies from aircraft beyond the interrogator's operating and lockout range; and
- b) active acquisition requires the assignment of an II or SI code selected to permit non-conflicting lockout operation with all neighbouring Mode S interrogators that have overlapping coverage.

Passive acquisition's ability to provide significant reduction in all-call FRUIT (especially in areas where many Mode S interrogators are installed) and its ability to operate a Mode S interrogator without the need for an assigned interrogator code are both reasons for considering the use of this technique. The following paragraphs provide more detail on the advantages of operating without an assigned interrogator code.

2.2.1.2 The initial Mode S design had a total of 15 assignable interrogator codes (II Codes). As Mode S was implemented, it became necessary to increase the number of assignable interrogator codes, so a revision was made that added an additional 63 interrogator codes (SI Codes) for a total of 78 interrogator codes.

2.2.1.3 In the highest interrogator density in Europe, even this increased number of codes requires careful assignment in order to meet surveillance requirements that all overlapping coverage areas be assigned to different interrogator codes.

2.2.1.4 Mobile interrogators create a special challenge for the assignment of interrogator codes. These interrogators in particular can benefit from the use of passive acquisition of Mode S aircraft due to the ability to operate without an assigned interrogator code.

2.2.1.5 This section provides guidance on the use of passive techniques to acquire Mode S aircraft. Note that the passive acquisition system will develop information on aircraft being acquired that will have to be input and processed by the serviced Mode S interrogator. Mode S interrogators equipped with an interface for cluster operation can be interfaced with a passive acquisition system with little or no modification. More extensive modification will be required for existing Mode S interrogators without a cluster interface. (See the Explanation of Terms and 1.5 of this Appendix for more details on cluster operation.)

2.2.2 Mode S transmissions available for passive acquisition

Mode S transponder transmissions from airborne aircraft that can serve as the basis for passive acquisition are the following:

- a) Mode S Acquisition Squitter: This 56-bit Mode S waveform is spontaneously transmitted approximately once per second by all Mode S transponders. This squitter is the principal means of Mode S acquisition by ACAS systems. It contains the 24-bit ICAO address as data and is protected by error detection and correction coding. The acquisition squitter has the same format as the Mode S-only all-call reply. See Annex 10, Volume IV, Figure 3-8 for the data format of this transmission.
- b) Mode S Extended Squitter (ES): 112-bit ES transmissions are spontaneously generated by Mode S aircraft equipped for ES ADS-B. For airborne aircraft, the basic ES transmissions consist of 2 ES Airborne Position and 2 ES Airborne Velocity squitters per second, plus one ES Identity and Category squitter per five seconds for a total of 4.2 per second as a minimum for ES-equipped aircraft. As per the acquisition squitter, the 24-bit ICAO address (as well as the ADS-B data) is protected by error detection and correction coding. See the *Technical Provisions for Mode S Services and Extended Squitter* (Doc 9871) for details of the data content of ES transmissions.
- c) Mode S Replies to Addressed Interrogations: Mode S replies to addressed interrogations elicited from ACAS or nearby ground Mode S interrogators can also be used for passive acquisition. The 24-bit ICAO address is not contained in the message data but must be derived from the address/parity field. An error in the decoding of the message will result in a modified 24-bit address. Special processing is required to confirm a 24-bit address reception based on address correlation with future reply receptions. See Annex 10, Volume IV, Figure 3-8 for the data formats of the replies to addressed interrogations.

2.2.3 Independence requirement for passive acquisition

A technique for passively acquiring a Mode S aircraft's 24-bit ICAO address and its position must have the same independence as active acquisition. For example,

- a) ADS-B extended squitter can provide passive reception of the 24-bit address and position, but this technique is dependent on the ES reported position for successful acquisition. If the reported position is accidentally (or intentionally) incorrect, the Mode S interrogator would not be able to acquire the aircraft. Aircraft not equipped with ES would also not be able to be acquired. Hence, ES is not an acceptable primary acquisition technique for a Mode S interrogator.
- b) A wide area multilateration (WAM) system can provide a very accurate position estimate in addition to the 24-bit address based on acquisition or extended squitters. However, using such WAM data for Mode S acquisition would mean that the Mode S interrogator could not be considered independent of the MLAT system for system availability purposes. That is, a failure of the MLAT system would result in a failure of the Mode S interrogator. Therefore, a WAM system is not a suitable primary acquisition technique for a Mode S interrogator.

2.2.4 Information requirements for passive acquisition

2.2.4.1 Using active acquisition, a Mode S interrogator obtains the range, azimuth and 24-bit ICAO address from aircraft replies to Mode S-only all-call interrogations. On a subsequent scan, the interrogator includes discrete interrogations addressed to the newly acquired aircraft at the azimuth and range obtained from the previous all-call replies. As shown in Figure H-4, discrete interrogations are formed into a tightly packed schedule to efficiently use the available dwell time.

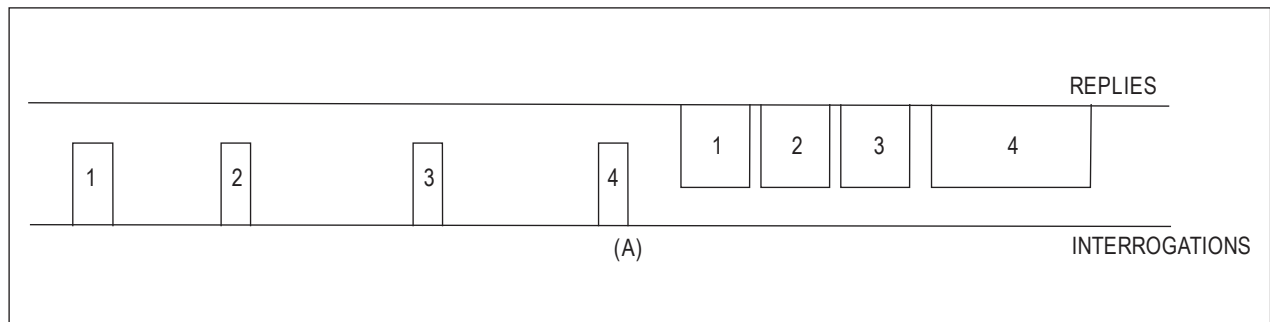


Figure H-4. Mode S discrete interrogation and reply scheduling

2.2.4.2 Efficient scheduling requires knowledge of the range of the newly acquired aircraft. Efficiency is important in order to make the best use of the available dwell time. After a successful initial discrete interrogation, regular roll call surveillance is performed using all-call lockout so that all-call replies from other aircraft entering the coverage area are not garbled by all-call replies from already acquired aircraft.

2.2.4.3 A passive system for Mode S acquisition must as a minimum provide the 24-bit ICAO address and an azimuth estimate. The azimuth estimate must be accurate enough to place the acquired aircraft in one or two beamwidths of the Mode S interrogator so that subsequent addressed interrogations can be made over a limited angle to reduce interference. The typical beamwidth for a Mode S interrogator is nominally 2.4 degrees.

2.2.4.4 The recommended technique for passive Mode S acquisition is a short-baseline multilateration (MLAT) system installed and operated near the interrogator. General details of MLAT system are provided in Chapter 5, 5.3.5 and Appendix L.

2.2.4.5 In cases where an MLAT array is not feasible (e.g. on a ship) an alternative technique that can be used is an omnidirectional antenna with angle of arrival (AOA) capability. This omni antenna can be placed at the centre of an electronically scanned antenna or placed near a scanning beam Mode S interrogator.

2.2.4.6 The above techniques can provide the 24-bit ICAO address and accurate azimuth but cannot provide accurate range without augmentation. Accurate range is very useful since it results in very efficient interrogation scheduling as shown in Figure H-4.

2.2.4.7 A description and expected performance of the short baseline MLAT system and the AOA approach are provided in the following sections. This is followed by sections on augmentation techniques to obtain range so that normal interrogation scheduling can be used, and also scheduling techniques if range is unknown.

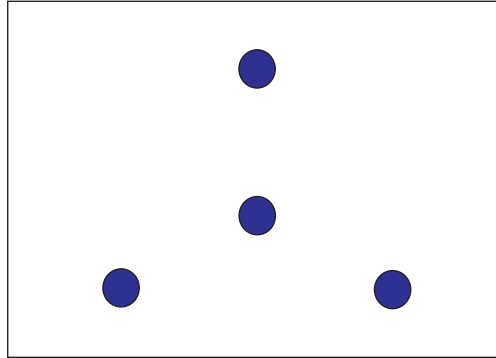


Figure H-5. Short baseline MLAT receiver configuration

2.2.5 Short baseline MLAT system for passive acquisition

2.2.5.1 Configuration: Figure H-5 shows the configuration for a 4 receiver 3D multilateration system with a 100 m (328 ft) baseline. The interrogator would be located near the central receiving station.

2.2.5.2 Error characteristics: Multilateration errors are normally expressed in terms of x and y but if they are expressed in terms of range and azimuth a useful characteristic of a multilateration system becomes apparent that is directly applicable to its use for passive Mode S acquisition. As will be shown, the azimuth error is relatively small but the error in range increases significantly once the target is outside the area of the receivers.

2.2.5.3 Azimuth error: Figure H-6 shows how the error of a 4 receiver 3D multilateration system varies for a 100 m (328 ft) baseline system. It can be seen that the bearing accuracy is accurate to a fraction of a bearing error in degrees. This shows excellent accuracy, typically 0.2 to 0.3 degrees. The error in Figure H-6 is based on a simulation result with 1 ns timing error. A timing error mainly depends on signal corruption (i.e. signal to noise ratio), quantization error and synchronization error. A nominal timing error in a real environment is expected to be about 30 ns.

2.2.5.4 Performance evaluation: The measured error of a short baseline MLAT with 100 m (328 ft) baseline in a real environment was based on Mode S signals transmitted by a traffic of opportunity. During short baseline MLAT performance evaluations in a real environment, bearing error of the targets was 4.6 degrees (1σ) and the timing error of the targets was 23 ns (1σ). The measured performance is sufficient to locate the aircraft to within the required two beamwidths for a Mode S interrogator. Note that this technique by itself provides no range information.

2.2.5.5 Range error: Figure H-7 shows a slice through the area indicating how the range accuracy changes throughout the region. Note that the range accuracy degrades rapidly outside the area enclosed by the receiver stations. It is seen that the range error exceeds 1 NM very rapidly outside the coverage area. For this 100-m (328 ft) baseline scenario the range error caused by a nominal (1 ns) timing error exceeds 1 NM beyond 3 km from the centre.

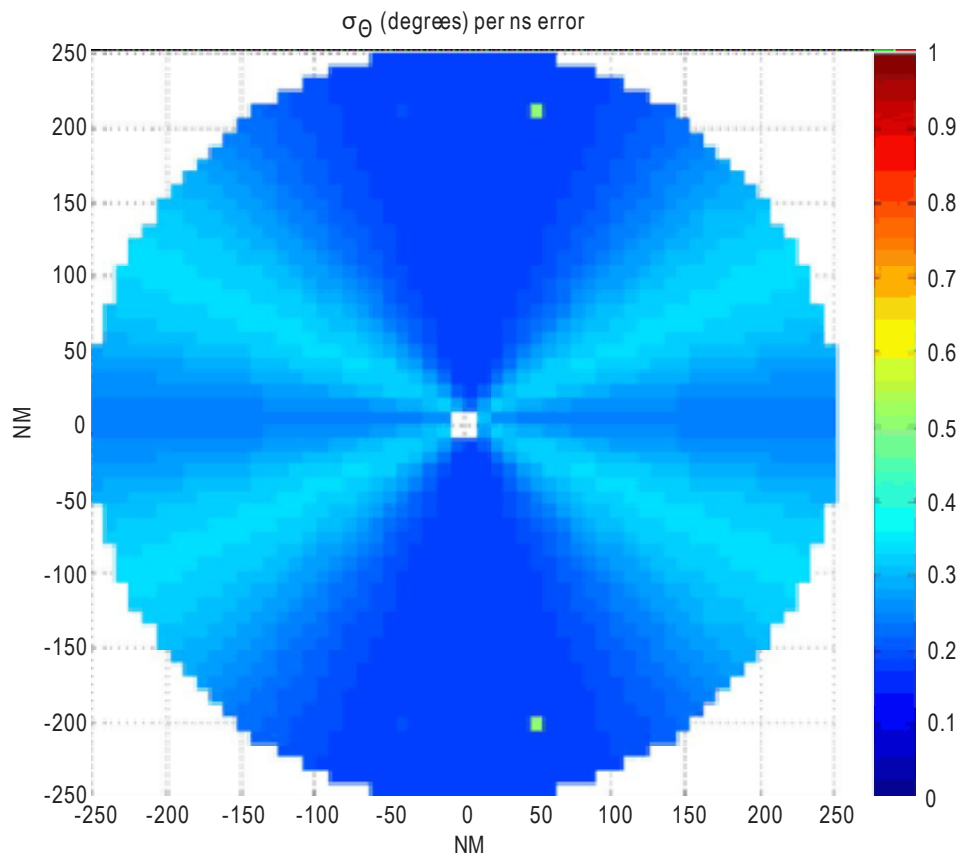


Figure H-6. Azimuth accuracy of a 100 m baseline multilateration system

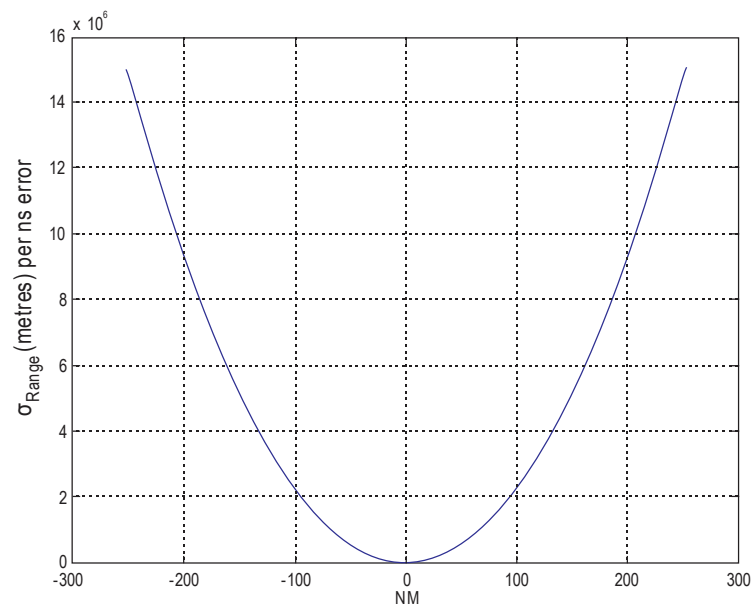


Figure H-7. Range and azimuth accuracy cuts for a 100 m baseline multilateration system

2.2.6 Angle of arrival antenna (AOA) for passive acquisition

2.2.6.1 Configuration: For passive acquisition, a six-sector omnidirectional antenna will be used with a receiver and Mode S reply processor attached to each sector giving continuous 360-degree coverage. AOA is performed by using a monopulse technique based on the relative amplitude of the received signal on adjacent beams.

2.2.6.2 Detailed antenna characteristics: Antenna and physical specifications for the six-sector antenna are as follows:

Azimuth coverage: 60° Nominal for each lobe.

Peak of beam gain: > 16 dBi.

Gain: > 13 dBi throughout 60° sector including edges.

Size: 2.5 m high by 0.6 m in diameter.

Weight: Approximately 115 kg.

Physical design: Six radiating arrays backed by six reflector elements. Entire RF portion is protected by a radome.

2.2.6.3 AOA measurement technique: To measure the AOA performance for this antenna system, the squitters from two aircraft that were at a range of more than 200 NM were received and recorded. One of the aircraft (the target) was used to derive a direction-finding calibration curve, defining the azimuth offset of the target aircraft as a function of the difference in the power received by the two adjacent antenna channels for each squitter. Then the power levels in the two adjacent antenna channels of the squitters received from the other aircraft were used to evaluate the use of this calibration curve to measure its azimuth.

2.2.6.4 Measured AOA results: Using this calibration curve to estimate the azimuth of the target aircraft from the power differences in the two adjacent channels, the RMS error was 3.2 degrees. In a more realistic test, when the calibration curve is applied to the power differences of the squitters received from the other aircraft, the RMS error was 4.2 degrees. However, if 7-point smoothing is applied to the power differences before using the calibration curve to estimate azimuth, the RMS error reduces to 1.9 degrees.

2.2.6.5 Performance evaluation: The measured AOA performance was based on a once-per-second transmission for aircraft at long range. When used on a single one-second measurement, the AOA performance was 4.2 degrees. With smoothing this error was reduced to 1.9 degrees. Smoothing could be used on the higher squitter rate for aircraft equipped with ES to further reduce this error. Even without any smoothing, the measured AOA performance is sufficient to locate the aircraft to within the required two antenna beamwidths. Note that this technique by itself provides no range information.

2.2.7 Augmentation techniques to obtain range

2.2.7.1 Mode S interrogator transmitter

2.2.7.1.1 A technique can be employed to measure the range of aircraft to augment the azimuth-only information obtained from the short baseline MLAT or AOA systems. This approach is particularly attractive if the Mode S interrogator is equipped with an interface for clustered interrogator operation. (See the Explanation of Terms and 1.5 of this Appendix for more details on cluster operation.) When so equipped, a Mode S interrogator can be used to provide active range augmentation without any modification to the Mode S interrogator. The passive acquisition system will measure the

azimuth of Mode S targets within radar coverage and maintain a track list of targets. Any measurement with a 24-bit address not on the track list is a newly acquired aircraft. The cluster interface will be used to instruct the radar to roll-call the aircraft being acquired at the correct azimuth but with a nominal range. In parallel the passive acquisition system will receive the interrogation and record the interrogation and reply times for this 24-bit address and calculate the range to the target. The cluster interface will then be used again to provide the correct position for the aircraft allowing the radar to acquire it using roll-call. This technique could also be used by modifying Mode S interrogators that do not have a cluster controller interface.

2.2.7.1.2 Note that the use of this technique requires a 1 030 MHz receiver, a Mode S interrogation processor and accurate time tagging of the interrogation and reply.

2.2.7.2 *Stand-alone transmitter*

2.2.7.2.1 For AOA-based passive acquisition systems, the alternative exists to use a single transmitter that can be switched to any of the six sectors to make range measurements independent of the collocated Mode S interrogator. The system will transmit an interrogation to the aircraft to be acquired and measure its range. The 24-bit address, bearing and range will then be input to the Mode S interrogator for roll-call surveillance.

2.2.7.2.2 Note that this technique requires a 1 030 transmitter and a Mode S interrogation processor plus accurate time tagging of the interrogation and reply.

2.2.7.2.3 ES reported position: Available ES position can be used to obtain range for a short baseline or AOA system with or without active range augmentation. In the case that active range augmentation is used, the ES position will reduce the frequency of active interrogations and thereby reduce interference effects. In order to guard against acceptance of incorrect ES position data, the bearing derived from the ES data must be compared to that measured by the short baseline MLAT or AOA systems. If there is a discrepancy, the ES data will be discarded.

2.2.7.2.4 WAM position: Available WAM positions can be used to obtain range for a short baseline or AOA system with or without active range augmentation. In the case that active range augmentation is used, the WAM position will reduce the frequency of active interrogations and thereby reduce interference effects.

2.2.8 Scheduling addressed acquisition interrogations

2.2.8.1 Scheduling with a range estimate: If range is available in the acquisition information provided to the Mode S interrogator, the standard technique for interrogation and reply scheduling can be used (as shown in Figure H-4).

2.2.8.2 *Scheduling without a range estimate*

2.2.8.2.1 If no range estimate is available, a different approach to scheduling is required to avoid garble of addressed acquisition replies due to the unknown time at which the reply will be received. An interrogator using active surveillance separates the channel timeline into distinct periods for roll-call and combined Mode A/C and Mode S all-call periods, as shown in Figure H-8. An interrogator using passive surveillance will only perform Mode A/C surveillance in these periods. This presents an opportunity to use the Mode A/C periods for acquisition of Mode S aircraft whose range is unknown.

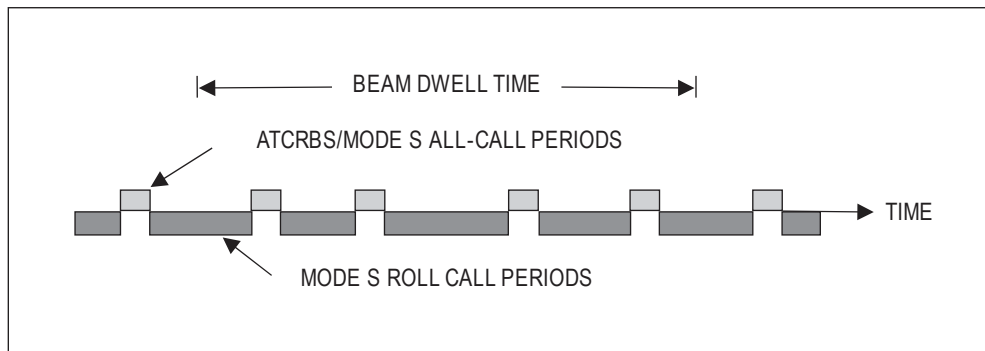


Figure H-8. Mode S interrogator channel periods

2.2.8.2.2 The approach is to schedule one or more addressed acquisition interrogations at the beginning of the Mode A/C period. Since the short P4 pulse will be used with Mode A/C interrogations, only non-Mode S aircraft will reply. This will ensure a low probability of addressed reply loss due to Mode A/C replies overlapping the addressed Mode S reply. If only one addressed interrogation is transmitted in a Mode A/C period, then the reply should be received with high probability since the Mode S error correction coding is optimized for decoding in the presence of a single Mode A/C overlap. In some cases, it may be necessary to attempt acquisition of more than one Mode S aircraft in a single Mode A/C period (e.g. recovery of the track files after a period of interrogator failure). In this case, it is possible to have occurrences of overlapping Mode S replies. Successful decoding of overlapping Mode S replies is a much lower probability event.

2.2.8.2.3 The receipt of a Mode S reply that cannot be error corrected is an indication of a garble condition of two or more Mode A/C replies with the Mode S acquisition reply, or two (or more) overlapping Mode S replies. If this condition happened during normal all-call processing, the remedy would be to use the stochastic acquisition feature to command a reply probability of less than one to obtain a reply from only one of the aircraft of the garbling set. Reply probability cannot be commanded for an addressed interrogation but scheduling another acquisition interrogation in the next Mode A/C period using a different relative interrogation time will achieve the same effect.

2.2.8.2.4 Once a successful reply is received to an acquisition interrogation, future addressed interrogations can be incorporated into the normal roll-call schedule.

2.2.9 Summary

2.2.9.1 This section has described a concept for passive acquisition of Mode S aircraft by a scanning beam Mode S interrogator. The benefit of passive acquisition is reduced all-call FRUIT and the ability to operate without an assigned interrogator code. Two techniques were described for obtaining the aircraft 24-bit ICAO address and bearing; a short baseline MLAT and an AOA antenna system. These systems can be augmented with active interrogation together with ES or WAM position to obtain range data. Two techniques for acquisition interrogation scheduling were described for the cases with or without range data.

2.2.9.2 The described technique for using the Mode S interrogator to obtain range is most attractive for adding passive acquisition to an interrogator with a cluster interface. The availability of this interface makes it possible to integrate passive acquisition capability with little or no modification to the Mode S interrogator.

3. SURVEILLANCE PROTOCOL

3.1 The ground station's surveillance protocol should routinely elicit Mode C altitude in the Mode S surveillance reply. An additional interrogation to elicit the aircraft Mode A code should also be sent:

- a) when the Mode S aircraft is acquired;
- b) after a prolonged coast period; and
- c) in the case of temporary or permanent alert.

3.2 An alert condition is reported in the Flight status (FS) field of every surveillance and Comm-B reply to indicate a change in Mode A code. If the new code is an emergency code (7500, 7600 or 7700), the alert condition remains active (i.e. it does not time-out). If the new code is not an emergency code, the alert condition resets after 18 (plus or minus 1) seconds. The interrogator should continue to elicit a Mode A response for one to two scans after the alert condition clears to ensure steady state reliability.

3.3 Knowledge of the current value of the transponder Mode A code is important to the ATC system since:

- a) the code is used to signal emergency conditions; and
- b) it is needed to identify an aircraft in handoffs to non-Mode S facilities.

3.4 Provision is therefore made in the FS field to notify the ground station when the Mode A code is changed during the flight.

4. UPLINK SLM DATA LINK PROTOCOL (COMM-A)

Note.— Comm-A interrogations are used for the ground-to-air transmission of SLMs. Before any such transfer is initiated, the interrogator has knowledge (from a previous capability report usually obtained when the aircraft is first acquired) of the Comm-A capability of the addressed aircraft.

4.1 Comm-A protocol precautions

4.1.1 If the transponder cannot pass the uplink SLM to the data link processing unit, it may not reply to that Comm-A interrogation. Some transponders are designed not to accept an interrogation if they cannot output the uplink message. However, a transponder in this state will continue to respond to short surveillance interrogations. In the event of loss of contact with an aircraft when using only Comm-A interrogations, a ground station should transmit one or more short interrogations to determine whether interface failure is preventing the transponder from replying. A change of data link capability is announced by the broadcast Comm-B message.

4.1.2 If separate transponder interfaces are used for ACAS and aircraft data link processor (ADLP), the transponder must route selectively addressed Comm-A messages to the appropriate interface based on information in the Comm-A interrogation. Comm-A messages intended for ACAS are identified by DI = 1 or 7, TMS = 0 and the first eight bits of the MA field equal to 05 {HEX}. Messages identified for ACAS (including air-air MU messages) should be delivered to the ACAS interface but not to the ADLP interface. Messages that are not identified for ACAS should be delivered to the ADLP interface but not to the ACAS interface.

4.2 Comm-A broadcast messages

Comm-A broadcast messages are intended for the transfer of a message to all aircraft within an azimuth sector. Depending upon operational needs, this sector can be as small as one beamwidth, or as large as a complete antenna rotation. Because of the absence of a transponder reply, the interrogator will not have positive confirmation that this message was received by a particular aircraft. For this reason, broadcast messages should be restricted to information that is retransmitted periodically in order to ensure a high probability of successful delivery. Comm-A broadcast messages should be transmitted at a rate that allows at least three transmissions within each azimuth sector corresponding to the antenna 3 dB beamwidth. This minimum transmission rate ensures a reasonable probability of delivering the broadcast Comm-A message in one antenna scan.

5. DOWNLINK SLM DATA LINK PROTOCOL (COMM-B)

5.1 Ground-initiated transfer of Comm-B messages

5.1.1 The GICB protocol allows for the immediate transfer of data required by the ground and the extraction of information stored in the transponder. This information (if available) is contained in the reply to an interrogation specifying the address (BDS code) of the storage location containing that information. Examples of information obtainable using the GICB protocol are “data link capability report” and “aircraft identification”. An example of a GICB message delivery is presented in Table H-4.

5.1.2 Airborne applications providing downlink data via the GICB protocol will update specific registers at a rate that is consistent with maintaining current information in those registers. A minimum rate of approximately 5 seconds is used to provide for recovery of the GICB register data in the event of a failure that causes the transponder to lose GICB data. If an interface used to load the GICB registers fails, the data in the registers will become invalid with no indication given to users of these messages. Transponder action in this case should be to clear those GICB registers being updated by this interface, with the exception of the data link capability Register (10₁₆). This register has a special protocol for failure detection. Upon recovery of this interface, the airborne applications will resume loading data into these registers. Recovery will be completed in approximately 5 seconds.

Table H-4. Example of GICB delivery of Register 35₁₆

<i>Interrogation^a</i>	<i>Reply^a</i>	<i>Relevant fields</i>	<i>Significance</i>
S or A		RR = 19 ^b	GICB message with BDS1 = 3
		DI = 7	SD field contains RRS
		RRS = 5	BDS2 of requested Comm-B message
	B	MB	GICB message
Notes: a) S = surveillance (UF = 4, 5), A = Comm-A (UF = 20, 21), B = Comm-B (DF = 20, 21). b) RR code value equals 16 plus the decimal value of BDS1.			

5.1.3 If the transponder interface used to load the aircraft identification subfield (AIS) in GICB Register 20₁₆ fails,

the transponder should clear the AIS and the AIS bit in the data link capability report. This will cause the transponder to broadcast a change in aircraft ID and a change in data link capability. This action can be independent from the general clearing of the GICB registers if a separate interface is used to load the GICB Register 20₁₆. The transponder will ensure that the BDS code 2,0 (bits 33–40) is set in the resulting Comm-B broadcast message.

5.1.4 ACAS will normally be provided with a separate transponder interface. The same protocol for clearing GICB registers in the event of an interface failure should be applied separately to the ACAS interface.

5.1.5 The transponder action, in the event of an interface failure, is a function of the type of data transferred by that interface. For example, if GICB and SLM data use separate interfaces, the transponder will be able to provide GICB data even in the event of an SLM interface failure. Since the SLM interface is used by the ADLP to load the data link capability report, failure of the SLM interface will cause this report to indicate zero data link capability even though the transponder is still capable of supporting the transfer of GICB data.

5.1.6 The readout of a GICB can occur at any time, since it is governed by the transmission time of the interrogators. These interrogations involve an access to the GICB registers. A second asynchronous activity involving register access is the process of updating the information in the GICB registers. It is important that safeguards be provided to ensure that a register update cannot occur during an access due to a received interrogation. This will avoid the error of providing data from a partially updated register in the reply to a GICB request.

5.2 Air-initiated transfer of Comm-B messages

5.2.1 Comm-B message announcement and closeout

5.2.1.1 An air-initiated Comm-B message waiting for delivery causes the downlink request (DR) code of every surveillance or Comm-B reply to be set to a value that indicates that an AICB message is waiting. To extract the Comm-B message, the ground station will transmit a request for a Comm-B message reply in a subsequent interrogation (RR = 16 and if DI = 7, RRS = 0). Reception of this request code will cause the transponder to transmit the Comm-B message. The Comm-B reply will continue to contain a DR code equal to ONE. The message will be cancelled and the DR code belonging to this message will be removed once a Comm-B closeout has been received.

5.2.1.2 This protocol can result in the reception of more than one Comm-B closeout instruction for a particular message if the interrogation containing the closeout is received by the transponder, but the ground station does not receive the reply. The absence of the expected reply will cause the ground station to repeat the interrogation at the next opportunity.

5.2.1.3 If the transponder has a second AICB message waiting to be transferred, it indicates its presence to the ground station by sending the appropriate DR code in its reply to the interrogation that delivered the Comm-B closeout acknowledgement to the previous message. Every effort should be made to deliver this closeout within the same beam dwell period as the message delivery in order to permit the announcement of subsequent messages waiting to be delivered. Note that the avionics must not permit a message to be closed out until after it has been read at least once. This prevents the multiple clears that can be received due to a downlink failure from closing out a second waiting message that has not as yet been transferred to the ground station. The possibility of downlink failure also prohibits the ground station from both reading and closing out a Comm-B message in the same interrogation because multiple delivery of such an interrogation could result in the loss of an undelivered Comm-B message.

5.2.2 Multisite transfer of AICB messages

5.2.2.1 In a multisite environment, an AICB message may be read by more than one ground station. In this protocol, any ground station is allowed to read the air-initiated message, but only the ground station that made a prior reservation may close out the message.

5.2.2.2 If it is possible for more than one ground station to service an AICB message request, the multisite protocol or ground coordination must be used to avoid possible loss of messages. Such a loss can occur when:

- a) a transponder has more than one air-initiated message ready for delivery;
- b) the interleaved read and cancel instructions from the multiple sites results in the following sequence:
 - 1) ground station A has cleared message 1 and has had a downlink failure in reading message 2; and
 - 2) this is followed by a cancel from ground station B (intending to cancel message 1) that in fact cancels message 2, which is lost since it has not been successfully read by either ground station.

5.2.2.3 When the ground station extracts an air-initiated message, normally after having made a reservation, it must check the utility message (UM) field to determine whether it is the reserved site for this message. When this is the case, the message will be processed and closed out by this ground station in a subsequent interrogation before the reservation expires. When another ground station is already reserved for the message, the announcement for this message may be ignored.

5.2.2.4 In a multisite environment, more than one ground station can attempt to extract an AICB message. Normally, the first one to attempt to extract the message will be the one that is reserved for processing and closeout of the message.

5.2.2.5 Multisite closeout of an AICB message can be accomplished in two ways:

- a) through coding in the multisite Comm-B subfield (MBS) of the SD field; or
- b) through coding in the PC field.

5.2.2.6 In either case, closeout will be accomplished by the transponder only if the II code of the interrogator that delivers the closeout command matches the II code reserved for that message.

5.2.2.7 An example of a multisite AICB message delivery is presented in Table H-5.

5.2.3 Multisite-directed Comm-b delivery

5.2.3.1 This multisite Comm-B protocol makes it possible for the ADLP to route an air-initiated message to a particular ground station. This capability is important in a multisite environment since it makes it possible for a pilot acknowledgement message to be routed to the ground station that delivered the message being acknowledged.

5.2.3.2 When a Comm-A message is delivered, the ADLP will receive the SD field along with the MA field and will thus be able to associate the sending site address in the Interrogator identifier subfield (IIS) with the Comm-A message. When a pilot acknowledgement is generated, the ADLP will cause the transponder to reserve the message for the desired site address at the same time that the message is made available for delivery. Thus, even the initial reply indicating that an AICB message is waiting will show (in the UM field) that a reservation already exists for the desired site. This reservation remains in effect until the message is read and closed out by the reserved ground station, or until the message is cancelled by the ADLP.

Table H-5. Example of multisite AICB delivery

<i>Interrogation^a</i>	<i>Reply^a</i>	<i>Relevant fields</i>	<i>Significance</i>
S or A		—	—
	S or B	DR = 1	AICB waiting
S or A		RR = 16	Readout of AICB
		DI = 1	Multisite SD field
		MBS = 1	Comm-B reservation
		RSS = 1	Request for Comm-B reservation status in UM
		IIS = 4	Local site's II
	B	DR = 1	AICB waiting
		IDS = 1	Comm-B reservation status in IIS
		IIS = 4 ^b	Site 4 (the local site) is the reserved site
		MB	Contains the air-initiated message
S or A		DI = 1	Multisite SD field
		MBS = 2	Multisite Comm-B closeout
		IIS = 4	Local site's II
	S or B	DR = 0 ^c	Comm-B closed out (IIS field is also cleared in the transponder)
<i>Notes:</i> a) S = surveillance (UF = 4, 5), A = Comm-A (UF = 20, 21), B = Comm-B (DF = 20, 21). b) If IIS = 4, the local site is not the reserved site, and no further action is taken on the message. c) If DR = 1 in the reply to a Comm-B closeout, it indicates the presence of another air-initiated Comm-B message.			

5.2.4 Non-selective transfer of AICB messages

The non-selective protocol is used if:

- a) the ground station does not have overlapping coverage with any other Mode S ground station; or
- b) it communicates with its neighbouring ground stations to ensure that only one ground station at a time is responsible for Comm-B message transfer.

A reservation is not required in the non-selective protocol. Closeout is accomplished through coding of the PC field. An example of a non-selective AICB message delivery is presented in Table H-6.

Table H-6. Example of non-selective AICB delivery

<i>Interrogation^a</i>	<i>Reply^a</i>	<i>Relevant fields</i>	<i>Significance</i>
S or A		—	—
	S or B	DR = 1	AICB waiting
S or A		RR = 16	Readout of AICB
		DI = 7	No extended data readout
		DI = 7 and	No extended data readout
		LOS = 0	
		DR = 1 ^b	AICB message waiting
	B	MB	AICB message
S or A		PC = 4	Non-selective Comm-B closeout
	S or B	DR = 0 ^c	Comm-B closed out
<i>Notes:</i> a) S = surveillance (UF = 4, 5), A = Comm-A (UF = 20, 21), B = Comm-B (DF = 20, 21). b) The message has not yet been closed out. c) If DR = 1 in the reply to an AICB closeout, it indicates the presence of another air-initiated Comm-B message.			

5.2.5 AICB error recovery

5.2.5.1 If a multisite-directed Comm-B message is input to the transponder by the ADLP, this message can only be cleared by:

- a) the interrogator after a successful delivery; or
- b) ADLP action after a timeout if the message is not delivered, since multisite-directed message reservations do not time out in the transponder.

If the transponder SLM interface fails while a multisite-directed Comm-B message is awaiting delivery, no other Comm-B activity can occur until the multisite-directed message is delivered. An undeliverable multisite-directed message will block any further Comm-B activity by the transponder. This includes the Comm-B broadcast of the change of data link capability report that the transponder will initiate to inform the ground of loss of communication capability because of the SLM interface failure.

5.2.5.2 In the event of SLM interface failure, the transponder should clear any waiting air-initiated messages and notify the ADLP of this action when the interface operation is restored. Whenever ADLP operation is initiated at power-up or resumed after recovery from a failure, the ADLP should clear the transponder AICB registers.

5.3 Broadcast Comm-B

5.3.1 The AICB protocol described above is designed to deliver a Comm-B message initiated on board an aircraft to a single ground station. Certain types of messages may require delivery to more than one ground station. In this case

the broadcast Comm-B message protocol is used.

5.3.2 The broadcasting of Comm-B messages should be strictly controlled and limited to those messages that are required to be received by all ground stations that have the aircraft in coverage. For example, a change in the data link capability would be delivered by a broadcast Comm-B message. The broadcast Comm-B message should never be used for messages that are intended to elicit a subsequent response from a single ground station as this would result in multiple delivery of the requested response, one from each ground station that reads the broadcast message.

5.3.3 The broadcast Comm-B protocol uses the DR field to signal the presence of a broadcast Comm-B message that is available for delivery. Any ground station in contact with the transponder may read the message using the same coding as for an AICB message. The key difference is that the ground station cannot clear a broadcast message; the message clears automatically after approximately 18 seconds. During the period when the message is active, it can be read by every ground station in contact with the transponder.

5.3.4 Provision is made in the coding of the DR field to distinguish two different broadcast messages, i.e. broadcast message 1 and broadcast message 2. The transponder will send successive broadcast messages using alternate message codes. This permits the ground station to detect the change in a broadcast message and therefore eliminates the need for the ground station to read the message at every scan. Thus, a ground station that has read broadcast message 1 from a particular transponder on one scan can safely avoid reading the same message on subsequent scans (until it times out) since the presence of a new broadcast message will be indicated by DR = 5, i.e. "broadcast message 2 is available".

5.3.5 Provision is made for an AICB message to interrupt the delivery of a broadcast Comm-B message. In this case, the broadcast message delivery is resumed for the full 18-second period following the delivery of the air-initiated message. In the case of a queue of AICB messages, the delivery of a broadcast message may take considerably longer than 18 seconds.

5.3.6 The transponder is required by the broadcast protocol to provide a delivery notice to the data link interface upon timeout of a broadcast message. This is used by the ADLP to update its message processing bookkeeping. The transponder can initiate two broadcast messages:

- a) a change in transponder capability; and
- b) a change in aircraft ID — the ADLP is not aware of the presence of these messages.

Therefore, it is unnecessary for the transponder to generate delivery notices for these transponder-initiated broadcast messages.

6. UPLINK ELM DATA LINK PROTOCOL

Note.— The uplink ELM protocol provides for more efficient transmission of long data link messages by permitting the grouping of up to 16 80-bit message segments into a single entity that can be acknowledged by a single reply. Each segment is included in a single Comm-C transmission. The limit of 16 segments refers solely to the manner in which the message is transferred over the link. Longer messages can be accommodated through the use of M-bit sequencing of packets within the Mode S subnetwork.

6.1 Basic uplink ELM protocol

Uplink extended-length messages are transmitted using the Comm-C format with three different reply control codes. The three reply control codes designate an initializing segment, intermediate segments and a final segment. The minimum

length of a ground-to-air ELM is two segments since the protocol requires at least an initializing and a final segment. The transfer of all segments may take place without any intervening air-to-ground replies, as described in the following paragraphs. In this way, channel loading is minimized. Message segments (one per Comm-C interrogation) may be transmitted at any rate up to one per 50 microseconds. This limit on the minimum spacing is required to permit the re-suppression of Mode A/C transponders. Delivery of the message may take place during a single scan or over a few scans depending on the length of the message and the ground station loading. Normally, sufficient time will be available within one scan to permit complete delivery of the message.

6.2 Multisite uplink ELM protocol

6.2.1 The multisite uplink ELM protocol is used to coordinate the activities of multiple ground stations so that only one ground station at a time is reserved for uplink ELM activity. Before beginning an uplink ELM, a ground station uses the multisite protocol to obtain a reservation.

6.2.2 A reservation remains in effect for 18 (plus or minus one) seconds from the time of last delivery activity, i.e. the reservation itself or any segment delivery or acknowledgement request. If delivery activity ceases for more than 18 (plus or minus 1) seconds before delivery is complete, it is assumed that the ground station is no longer in contact and, the reservation is cancelled along with any segments that have been delivered up to that point. The transponder is then able to grant a reservation to any other ground station that is currently in contact.

6.2.3 Multisite uplink ELM closeout can be accomplished in either of two ways:

- a) through coding in the multisite ELM subfield (MES) of the SD field; or
- b) through coding in the PC field and SD fields.

Every effort should be made to deliver the closeout within the same beam dwell period as the completion of message delivery in order to make transponders available to other interrogators for uplink ELM delivery. It is not advisable to attempt the delivery of two uplink ELMs in the same beam dwell. This increases the probability of the second message not being completed. An example of a multisite uplink ELM delivery is presented in Table H-7.

6.3 Non-selective uplink ELM protocol

6.3.1 The non-selective protocol may be used when only one ground station at a time has the responsibility for delivering an uplink ELM message. No reservation is required. A partially delivered non-selective uplink ELM is not automatically cleared by a timeout. It is recommended that a ground station precede the first uplink ELM delivery to a newly acquired aircraft with an uplink ELM closeout to ensure that the transponder uplink ELM registers are cleared.

6.3.2 Ground stations with overlapping coverage that do not properly coordinate their communications activity through the use of the multisite protocols or ground coordination may experience the following communications failure modes:

- a) a multisite uplink ELM transaction in progress by one interrogator can be interfered with through the action of another interrogator delivering an uplink ELM using the non-selective protocol. The transponder will accept uplink ELM segments as though they were being delivered by a single interrogator using the uplink delivery protocol. In this case, the completed message will be composed of segments from both ground stations; or
- b) if an interrogator is delivering segments of an uplink ELM using the non-selective protocol, these segments will be discarded upon receipt of an initializing segment from a second ground station.

Table H-7. Example of multisite uplink ELM delivery

<i>Interrogation^a</i>	<i>Reply^a</i>	<i>Relevant fields</i>	<i>Significance</i>
S or A		D = 1 MES = 1 RSS = 2 IIS = 6	Multisite SD field Uplink ELM reservation Request for uplink ELM reservation status in UM Local site's II
	S or B	IDS = 2 IIS = 6 ^b	Uplink ELM reservation status is in IIS Site 6 (the local site) is the reserved site
C		RC = 0 NC = 2 MC	Initializing segment delivery Announces a 3-segment ELM Segment 3 of uplink ELM
	None		Reply not elicited by RC = 0
C		RC = 1 NC = 1 MC	Intermediate segment delivery Indicates MC contains segment 2 Segment 2 of uplink ELM
	None		Reply not elicited by RC = 1
C		RC = 2 NC = 0 MC	Segment delivery and request for technical acknowledgement Indicates MC contains segment 1 Segment 1 of uplink ELM
	D	KE = 1 TAS ^c	MD contains technical acknowledgement of uplink ELM in the transmission acknowledgement subfield (TAS) 1 to 3
S or A		DI = 1 MES = 2 IIS = 6	Multisite SD field Multisite uplink ELM closeout Local site's II
	S or B		Technical acknowledgement of closeout command
<i>Notes:</i> a) S = Surveillance (UF = 4, 5), A = Comm-A (UF = 20, 21), B = Comm-B (DF = 20, 21), C = Comm-C (UF = 24), D = Comm-D (DF = 24). b) If IIS = 6, the local site is not the reserved site, and no further action is taken this scan. The IIS subfield is in the UM field. c) The ground station will resend any segment not acknowledged by TAS.			

7. DOWNLINK ELM PROTOCOL

Note.— The transfer of an air-to-ground ELM is similar to the ground-to-air process. Differences between the two protocols result primarily from the fact that:

- a) all channel activity is ground-initiated; and*
- b) the transponder can reply with longer communications formats only when given specific permission by the ground station.*

7.1 Basic downlink ELM protocol

Downlink ELMs are transmitted (under ground control) using the Comm-D reply.

7.2 Multisite downlink ELM protocol

7.2.1 When the multisite downlink ELM protocol is used, a ground station obtains a reservation before beginning the readout of a downlink ELM message.

7.2.2 A reservation will time out if 18 ± 1 second pass with no delivery activity. The transponder is then able to grant a reservation to another site for transfer of the downlink ELM. Multisite downlink ELM closeout should be accomplished in either of two ways:

- a) through coding in the MES of the SD field; or
- b) through coding in the PC field and SD fields.

Every effort should be made to deliver the closeout within the same beam dwell period as the message delivery in order to permit the announcement of subsequent messages waiting to be delivered. An example of a multisite downlink ELM delivery is presented in Table H-8.

7.3 Multisite-directed downlink ELM protocol

The technique used for air-directed downlink ELM delivery is equivalent to the air-directed Comm-B protocol described earlier.

7.4 Non-selective downlink ELM protocol

The non-selective protocol may be used when only one ground station at a time has the responsibility for delivering a downlink ELM message. No reservation is needed. Closeout is accomplished through coding in the PC field.

7.5 Downlink ELM error conditions

7.5.1 Over interrogation

If the transponder has a queue of downlink ELMs, and the interrogator attempts to extract downlink ELM segments at a higher rate than the transponder can support, the transponder should stop replying as necessary to protect its transmitter. The transponder should not withdraw the announcement of the current downlink ELM while it is recovering, since the recovery time will normally be short compared to an interrogator scan time. Withdrawal of the announcement could lead to unnecessary transactions by the interrogator since any delivered segments of the current downlink ELM would be discarded if the interrogator detected a withdrawal of the announcement.

Table H-8. Example of multisite downlink ELM delivery

<i>Interrogation^a</i>	<i>Reply^a</i>	<i>Relevant fields</i>	<i>Significance</i>
S or A		—	—
	S or B	DR = 17	Announces presence of 2-segment downlink ELM
S or A		DI = 1 MES = 3 RSS = 3 IIS = 2	Multisite SD field Downlink ELM reservation Request for downlink ELM reservation status in UM Local site's interrogator identifier
	S or B	IDS = 3 IIS = 2 ^b	Downlink ELM reservation status is in IIS Site 2 (the local site) is the reserved site
C		RC = 3 SRS	MC contains request for downlink in SRS Indicates delivery request for segments 1 and 2
	D	KE = 0 ^c NC = 0 MD	Downlink ELM in MD Indicates MD contains segment 1 Segment 1 of downlink ELM
	D	KE = 0 ^c NC = 1 MD	Downlink ELM in MD Indicates MD contains segment 2 Segment 2 of downlink ELM
S or A		DI = 1 MES = 4 IIS = 2	Multisite SD field Multisite downlink ELM closeout Local site's interrogator identifier
	S or B	DR = 0 ^d	Downlink ELM closed out

Notes:

- S = Surveillance (UF = 4, 5), A = Comm-A (UF = 20, 21), B = Comm-B (DF = 20, 21), C = Comm-C (UF = 24), D = Comm-D (DF = 24).
- If IIS = 2, the local site is not the reserved site, and no further action is taken on this message.
- If all segments are not successfully received, the ground station will send another SRS requesting redelivery of missing segments.
- If DR = 0 in reply to a Comm-D closeout, it indicates the presence of another air-initiated message (either B or D) depending on the value of DR.

7.5.2 Response if no message waiting

If the interrogator commands the delivery of a downlink ELM when the transponder has no message waiting for delivery, the transponder should respond with the commanded segments, with an MD field of ALL ZEROS. Failure to respond would result in a repeated request from the interrogator. The receipt of segments containing ALL ZEROS will indicate to the interrogator that there is no message waiting. This parallels the action taken for the same situation as in the Comm-B protocol.

7.5.3 Command for out-of-range segments

When the transponder announces the presence of a waiting downlink ELM in the DR field, it indicates the number of segments of the waiting message. If the ground commands the delivery of segment numbers beyond the maximum announced (but within the transponder reply capability), the transponder should deliver the commanded segments. The segments beyond the announced length should contain ALL ZEROS in the MD field. This reaction to the error condition avoids repeated requests from the interrogator.

7.6 Downlink ELM error recovery

An equivalent error recovery condition, as identified for the multisite-directed Comm-B protocol, applies to the multisite-directed downlink ELM protocol. For this reason, the transponder should clear any waiting downlink ELMs in the event of an ELM interface failure and notify the ADLP of this action when the interface operation is restored. Whenever ADLP operation is initiated at power-up or resumed after recovery from a failure, the ADLP should clear the transponder downlink ELM registers.

8. ENHANCED COMMUNICATIONS PROTOCOLS

8.1 Overview of protocol characteristics

8.1.1 The non-selective communication protocol required that only one interrogator be allowed to provide Comm-B or ELM service to a given transponder. Management of the coverage of the ground interrogators was required to enforce this constraint. One technique for managing the assignment of interrogators is to use a geographical coverage map that defines the coverage area of each interrogator.

8.1.2 The multisite protocol made it possible for the interrogators to make reservations (via the transponder) for Comm-B and ELM transactions. While the transponder participated in this protocol, its role was limited to reporting reservation status. It reported the same status to every interrogator. The interrogators interpreted this status and determined whether or not to proceed with a Comm-B or ELM transaction.

8.1.3 The enhanced protocol adds the transponder capability to treat interrogators individually and to report downlink message waiting and technical acknowledgment as appropriate for each interrogator. This makes it possible for this protocol to perform Comm-B and ELM activity with more than one interrogator at a time and eliminates the need for multisite reservations. The protocol is backward compatible in that it can operate with multiple interrogators, even if they are not using the enhanced protocol. It does this by granting simultaneous reservations. Details of the enhanced protocols are contained in 8.2 to 8.6 below.

8.2 Enhanced Comm-B protocol

8.2.1 The enhanced Comm-B protocol provides improved capacity through the ability to operate on a concurrent basis with multiple interrogators. This is accomplished by providing 16 sets of AICB registers, one for each II code. Each set includes four registers to provide storage for unlinked or linked Comm-B messages. Operation in overlapping coverage without the use of multisite reservations is provided by requiring a match of the II code associated with the message transfer with the II code of the message closeout. This prevents a closeout from one interrogator from clearing a message in process to a second interrogator.

8.2.2 This protocol is backward compatible with multisite and non-selective protocols since it can operate correctly with interrogators using the current protocols. This protocol provides increased activity even when operating with multiple interrogators using the current protocol since it can provide for parallel delivery by granting multiple simultaneous reservations.

8.3 Enhanced multisite-directed Comm-B protocol

8.3.1 Message initiation

When a multisite-directed message is input to the transponder, it is placed in the Comm-B registers assigned to the II code specified for the message. If the registers for this II code are already occupied (i.e. a multisite-directed message is currently in process to this II code) the new message is queued until the current transaction with that II code is closed out.

8.3.2 Message announcement

8.3.2.1 In the multisite protocol, the announcement of a waiting Comm-B message for a given II code is made by setting DR = 1 or 3 and by inserting the destination II code in the IIS subfield of the UM field in the reply to a surveillance interrogation. With the multisite protocol, the same announcement is made to all interrogators since only one message can be in process at a time. The Comm-B message is then read and cleared only by the interrogator using the corresponding II code.

8.3.2.2 With the enhanced protocol, the same control fields are used. However, the DR and IIS field contents are set specifically for the interrogator that is to receive the reply. For example, if an air-directed message is waiting for an interrogator with II = 2, the surveillance replies to that interrogator contain DR = 1 and IIS = 2. If this is the only message in process, replies to all other interrogators will indicate that no message is waiting.

8.3.2.3 In addition to permitting parallel operation, this enables a greater degree of announcement of downlink ELMs. The announcements for the downlink extended length message (DELM) and the Comm-B share the DR field. Only one announcement can take place at a time due to coding limitations. In case both a Comm-B and a DELM are waiting, announcement preference is given to the Comm-B. In the example above, if a multisite-directed Comm-B were waiting for interrogator II = 2 and a multisite-directed DELM were waiting for interrogator II = 6, both interrogators would see their respective announcements on the first scan, since there would be no Comm-B announcement to interrogator II = 6 to block the announcement of the waiting DEL.

8.3.3 Message closeout

Closeout for the enhanced protocol operates in a similar manner to the other protocols.

8.3.4 Announcement of the next message waiting

The DR field will indicate a message waiting in the reply to an interrogation containing a Comm-B closeout if another multisite-directed message is waiting for that II code, or if an air-initiated message is waiting and has not been assigned to an II code.

8.4 Enhanced multisite air-initiated protocol

8.4.1 Message initiation

An AICB message input into the transponder is stored in the registers assigned to II = 0.

8.4.2 Message announcement and extraction

An air-initiated message will be announced in the DR field of the replies to all interrogators for which a multisite-directed message is not waiting. The UM field of the announcement reply will indicate that the message is not reserved for any II code (i.e. IIS = 0). When a command to read this message is received from an interrogator with a given II code, the reply containing the message will contain a UM field content indicating that the message is reserved for that II code. After readout and until closeout, the message is associated with that II code. That is, the message is handled like a multi-directed message for the delivery process. Announcement of this message is therefore no longer made in the replies to other interrogators. If the message is not closed out by the assigned interrogator in 18 seconds, it reverts back to air-initiated status (i.e. IIS = 0) and the process repeats. To simplify the protocol, only one AICB message can be in process at a time.

8.4.3 Message closeout

The air-initiated message can only be closed out by the interrogator that was assigned most recently to transfer the message. Every effort should be made to deliver this closeout within the same beam dwell period as the message delivery in order to permit the announcement of subsequent messages waiting to be delivered.

8.4.4 Announcement of the next message waiting

The DR field will indicate a message waiting in the reply to an interrogation containing a Comm-B closeout if another air-initiated message is waiting and has not been assigned to an II code or if a multisite-directed message is waiting for that II code.

8.4.5 Enhanced broadcast Comm-B protocol

A broadcast Comm-B message is assigned to all 16 II codes. The message remains active for 18 seconds for each II code. The provision for interruption of a broadcast by a non-broadcast Comm-B applies separately to each II code. Thus, it is possible that the broadcast message timeout will occur at different times for different II codes. A new broadcast message cannot be initiated until the current broadcast is timed out for all II codes.

8.4.6 Storage requirements

To support the enhanced protocol, the transponder must provide an enhanced Comm-B buffer with the capacity to store a four-segment linked Comm-B message for 16 different ground stations at the same time.

Note 1.— Except for the multiple registers required for the second to fourth segments of linked Comm-B messages, the GICB protocol is not affected by the enhanced Comm-B protocol.

Note 2.— ACAS messages are announced to all interrogators (by setting DR = 2 or 3) and read out separately from the Comm-B message and are therefore not affected by the enhanced protocol.

8.5 Enhanced uplink ELM protocol

8.5.1 Overview

8.5.1.1 The enhanced uplink ELM protocol provides a higher data link capacity by permitting parallel delivery of uplink ELM messages by up to 16 interrogators, one for each II code. Operation without the need for multisite uplink ELM reservations is possible in regions of overlapping coverage for interrogators equipped for the enhanced uplink ELM protocol. The enhanced protocol requires the addition of the IIS subfield in all uplink ELM segments, and this requirement is incorporated into the general protocol. Thus, the enhanced protocol is fully conformant to the standard multisite protocol and is also compatible with interrogators that are not equipped for the enhanced protocol.

8.5.1.2 This improved performance is achieved by the enhanced uplink ELM protocol by examining the IIS subfield contained in the first four bits of the MC field of each uplink ELM interrogation. Message segments are sorted on II code and then the standard ELM protocol operates on the resulting segments.

8.5.2 Message delivery

The message delivery for the enhanced uplink ELM protocol takes place according to the procedures specified for the standard ELM delivery, as contained in Annex 10. This involves the transmission of an initial segment followed by up to 14 intermediate segments and followed by a final segment. The transponder reassembles the message segments to form the complete message according to the segment number (contained in the NC field) and the II code (contained in the IIS subfield).

8.5.3 Acknowledgement

The technical acknowledgment from the transponder to the interrogator contains the received II code to allow the interrogator to verify that it is receiving the correct technical acknowledgment.

8.5.4 Closeout

After the delivery is complete, the interrogator performs closeout in the same manner as in the multisite and non-selective protocol in order to clear the TAS subfield.

8.5.5 Storage requirements

To support the enhanced protocol, the transponder must provide an enhanced uplink ELM buffer with the capacity to store 16 ELM segments from 16 different ground stations at the same time.

8.6 Enhanced downlink ELM protocol

8.6.1 Overview

8.6.1.1 The enhanced downlink ELM protocol provides a higher data link capacity by permitting concurrent delivery of downlink ELM messages of up to 16 interrogators, one for each II code. Operation without the need for multisite downlink ELM reservations is possible in regions of overlapping coverage for interrogators equipped for the enhanced downlink ELM protocol. The enhanced protocol requires the addition of the IIS subfield to the Comm-C interrogation that requests the transfer of downlink ELM segments, and this requirement is incorporated into the general protocol. Thus, the enhanced protocol is fully conformant to the standard multisite protocol and is also compatible with interrogators that are not equipped for the enhanced protocol.

8.6.1.2 This improved performance is achieved with the enhanced downlink ELM protocol by providing storage for a 16-segment downlink ELM to each of 16 different interrogators at the same time. Announcement of multisite directed downlink ELM messages is made only in replies to the intended interrogator. The transponder examines the IIS subfield contained in the Comm-C interrogation that delivers the request for segment transfer in order to determine which message buffer to access. The delivery and closeout are performed using the standard downlink ELM protocol.

8.6.2 Announcement

A multisite-directed downlink ELM is announced only in replies to the intended interrogator. A non-directed downlink ELM is announced in the replies to all interrogators that do not have a multisite-directed message waiting.

Note.— Other aspects of announcement and delivery of a non-directed downlink ELM are the same as for the AICB protocol.

8.6.3 Delivery

The SRS contained in the MC field is used to request the transfer of downlink segments. The SRS subfield must be accompanied by the IIS subfield in order to identify the II code of the message to be transferred. The IIS must be included with the SRS even though the interrogator may not be equipped for the enhanced protocol. Since the IIS unambiguously identifies the interrogator transmitting the request to send segments, it is possible for the transponder to grant multiple simultaneous reservations to interrogators that are not equipped for the enhanced protocol.

8.6.4 Closeout

After the delivery is complete, the interrogator performs closeout in the same manner in order to clear the downlink ELM message buffers.

8.6.5 Storage requirements

As for the enhanced uplink protocol, the transponder must provide an enhanced downlink ELM buffer with the capacity to store 16 ELM segments from 16 different interrogators at the same time.

9. MESSAGE PROTOCOL INDEPENDENCE

The Mode S communication protocols are defined in such a way that the Comm-A, Comm-B, uplink ELM and downlink ELM protocols are completely independent. This means that except for field coding limitations, delivery activity for the different message types can be freely interleaved without restriction. If the multisite protocol is used, it is possible for the Comm-B, uplink ELM and downlink ELM reservations to be granted to three different sites.

10. CAPABILITY REPORTING

Note.— The ground system must know the aircraft's capability in order to accept and provide data link information. This is accomplished through the reporting of capability.

10.1 Capability report

The basic data link capability of the transponder is reported in the CA field, which indicates whether or not the transponder is capable of providing a data link capability report. The CA field also indicates the on-the-ground or airborne status of the aircraft as well as whether the transponder is announcing a flight status condition or a downlink message waiting. This announcement is intended for Mode S ground stations that perform acquisition via the transponder squitter (e.g. a surface surveillance system).

10.2 Data link capability report

10.2.1 The data link capability report contains details that inform the ground system of the specific Comm-A, Comm-B and ELM capability that currently exists on board the aircraft. The capability is updated on board the transponder every second to ensure that the reported capability reflects the current status of the airborne data link equipment.

10.2.2 The data link capability report will normally be read by a ground station immediately after the aircraft is acquired. In addition, any time that the transponder detects a change in communications capability, it causes a transfer of the data link capability report to the ground station as a broadcast Comm-B message. The ADLP will input a current capability report to the transponder every second. The transponder will perform a bit-by-bit comparison of the former and current data link capability reports at least once every 4 seconds and will generate a broadcast of the current capability if a difference is detected. This also covers the case where the ADLP interface fails, since the current capability will appear to be ALL ZEROS. In all cases (change of the current data link capability report or failure of the interface), the transponder will ensure that the BDS code 1,0 of the data link capability report is set in the resulting Comm-B broadcast message (bits 33–40).

10.3 Reporting of transponder communications capability to the ADLP

10.3.1 If the ADLP is incorporated into the transponder, the data link communications capability of the transponder can be provided to the ADLP function by means internal to the transponder. If the ADLP is not incorporated into the transponder, some automatic means must be provided to notify the ADLP of transponder data link capability. One example of an automatic means is the coding of pins in the connector of the cable between the transponder and the ADLP. An automatic means is required to cover the case where a transponder is replaced with one that has a different communications capability.

10.3.2 As a minimum, the capability provided to the ADLP should indicate the designed data link communications capability of the transponder. Reporting of dynamic capability changes (e.g. the loss of ELM capability due to an ELM interface failure) is beneficial to the operation of the Mode S data link, but it is not a requirement. The interrogator data link protocol is designed to cope with incorrect reporting of transponder capability.

11. AIRCRAFT ID PROTOCOL

11.1 The call sign, which is normally inserted in Item 7 of the ICAO flight plan, is normally used as the means of identifying the aircraft. Some aircraft (usually general aviation) employ the aircraft registration. Other aircraft (principally those used for air transport and military flights) employ variable aircraft ID which may be based on the commercial flight number or the military call sign. Although there is provision for eight characters, a maximum of seven should be used in line with the provisions specified for the content of Item 7 of the ICAO flight plan.

11.2 Mode S transponders (except level 1) can automatically report aircraft ID data via the GICB protocol. General aviation aircraft can permanently report the registration as the aircraft ID. Other aircraft can employ a pilot input device to allow manual selection of:

- a) the aircraft ID code for each flight; or
- b) the aircraft registration when the aircraft is not operating under a commercial flight number or flight plan.

The default value of the aircraft ID GICB register should be the aircraft registration number. This should be automatically inserted at transponder initialization and then replaced by a variable call-sign where appropriate.

11.3 If the aircraft ID is changed, for instance to correct for an error made in an earlier manual entry, the new aircraft ID is reported to ground stations using the broadcast Comm-B message protocol.

12. UM PROTOCOL

12.1 The function of the UM field is to report reservation status. If the content of the UM field in a reply is not specified by the interrogation, the UM field contains the site number reserved for multisite Comm-B or Comm-D activity (if any). If both Comm-B and Comm-D message protocols are in use, the reporting of the Comm-B reserved site takes precedence over the reporting of the Comm-D reserved site.

12.2 The specific activity (Comm-B or Comm-D) being reported is defined by the IDS subfield (of the UM field). This is followed by the IIS subfield, which gives the site number of the reserved site.

12.3 The voluntary reporting of reserved Comm-B and Comm-D site interrogators eliminates unnecessary

attempts by other ground stations to transfer a message if a reservation has already been granted.

13. MULTISITE RESERVATION TECHNIQUES

Note.— The consequences of a failure to coordinate data link activity in a multisite environment have been described in the previous sections. This section describes techniques for making and verifying the existence of a multisite communications reservation.

13.1 Initial reservation request

A multisite communications (Comm-B, uplink ELM or downlink ELM) reservation is requested by coding in the SD field of a surveillance or Comm-A interrogation. In order to determine whether the reservation was granted, the RSS value must be set in the interrogation to request the site number of the reserved site in the UM field of the elicited reply. For example, if an uplink ELM reservation is requested, a value of RSS = 2 will instruct the transponder to insert the number of the site reserved for uplink ELM transfer into the UM field of the reply.

13.2 Verifying the existence of a reservation

13.2.1 Once granted, a multisite reservation lasts for 18 plus or minus 1 second. If the reservation and delivery are accomplished in the same beam dwell, no special procedures are required to verify the reservation. If delivery is not completed within 17 seconds, the ground station must ensure that the reservation is still in effect in order to continue the delivery process.

13.2.2 The technique for doing this is to mark the time of the reservation and then renew, if necessary, the reservation request before the reservation times out. The reservation can be renewed as follows:

- a) by repeating the action used to make the initial reservation; and
- b) for an ELM transfer, by automatically renewing the reservation each time a segment is requested or received.

13.2.3 For case b), successful renewing of the reservation is determined from the receipt of a reply that confirms that the transponder actually received the interrogation expected to renew the reservation. A ground station cannot assume that the transmission of an uplink ELM segment will automatically result in renewing the reservation since it is possible that the interrogation may not be received by the transponder.

13.2.4 After successfully renewing, the ground station can then advance the time of reservation to the latest time that the reservation was renewed and repeat the above actions.

14. AIR-TO-AIR CROSS-LINK

14.1 Purpose

14.1.1 Mode S transponders are equipped with 255 transponder data registers of 56 bits each. These transponder data registers can contain a variety of aircraft state and intent information. A definition of the contents of these registers is contained in Doc 9871.

14.1.2 The technique for extracting transponder data register information over the air-ground link has already been described. The technique used for air-air transfer is described in the following paragraphs.

14.2 DS field in UF = 0

14.2.1 The BDS is currently defined in the SARPs as the code that specifies the transponder data register to be accessed. The short air-air format UF = 0 contains a DS field for the code of the transponder data register whose contents are to be returned in the reply to the UF = 0 interrogation.

14.2.2 This field is not included in the long air-air interrogation UF = 16. This long interrogation is only used for ACAS air-to-air coordination. The reply to this interrogation will always include coordination information in the 56-bit MV field, so cross-link data cannot be carried. In addition, omitting the DS field from the long ACAS interrogation has the desirable effect of completely separating the coordination and cross-link protocols.

14.3 CC field in DF = 0

An indication of a transponder's ability to support the air-to-air cross-link communications capability is provided in order to allow for a transition phase where not all of the transponders have this capability. A one-bit flag CC field is provided in the short air-air reply to indicate the transponder has cross-link capability when this field is set to 1. In operation, an aircraft using ASA would not attempt a cross-link transaction unless it first interpreted this field. The first transponder register data extracted would be the Mode S specific service capability report so that the ASA could determine what data were specifically available.

14.4 Protocol for long reply with transponder register data

The extraction of transponder register data over the air-air link is defined in terms of the reply length (RL) and DS fields in the short air-air interrogation. Note that BDS = 0 does not access a legal transponder data register so it is not permitted. In fact, BDS = 0 accesses the transponder register used for an AICB.

15. ACQUISITION SQUITTERS

15.1 Transmission of acquisition squitters

15.1.1 When commanded to report the surface format by TCS commands, aircraft without automatic means of determining the on-the-ground condition, and aircraft with such means that are reporting airborne status, will transmit acquisition squitters, in addition to the surface type ES's, unless acquisition squitter transmission has been inhibited. This action is taken to ensure ACAS acquisition in the event that the ground station inadvertently commands an airborne aircraft to report the surface type of ES.

15.1.2 If aircraft are commanded to stop emitting surface ES's by TCS command, these aircraft will begin to emit the acquisition squitter (if not already doing so). This will reduce the squitter rate from two ES's per second to one acquisition squitter per second.

15.1.3 In the event that the transponder generates acquisition squitters while in the surface state, these squitters will be generated using only the top-mounted antenna for aircraft with antenna diversity.

15.1.4 A summary of the acquisition squitter conditions is presented in Table H-9. In this table, Y indicates that the acquisition squitter is regularly broadcast, and N means that the acquisition squitter is suppressed. The condition of no transmission of any ES can result from (1) initialization with no position, velocity, identity or altitude data available, or (2) a surface squitter lockout command while reporting the surface type of ES.

15.1.5 The CA field of the acquisition (and extended) squitters reports the vertical status as determined by the aircraft. The TCS in SD controls the position format type reported by the transponder, either airborne or surface. These commands affect only the format type reported; they do not change the aircraft determination of its on-the-ground condition and therefore have no effect on the status reported in the CA, FS or VS fields.

16. ES

Note.— All the aspects of the ES technique are dealt with in detail in Appendix K, including protocol considerations.

17. DATA LINK CAPABILITY FOR AN INTERROGATOR USING AN SI CODE

17.1 Some of the data link protocols defined in this section require the use of an II code. These protocols cannot be used by an interrogator operating with an SI code.

17.2 The data link activity for an interrogator operating with an SI code is therefore limited to unlinked Comm-A, broadcast Comm-A, GICB, broadcast Comm-B and ACAS downlink transactions. This specifically excludes the use of the AICB protocol.

Note.— The AICB protocol is required for data flash and downlink MSPs.

Table H-9. Acquisition squitter transmission requirements

	Acquisition squitter not inhibited			Acquisition squitter inhibited		
<i>Aircraft on-the-ground condition</i>	<i>No transmission of any surveillance type ES</i>	<i>At least one surveillance type extended squitter transmitted</i>	<i>Reporting surface Format</i>	<i>No transmission of any surveillance type ES</i>	<i>At least one surveillance type extended squitter transmitted</i>	<i>Reporting surface format</i>
Airborne	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
Surface	Y	N	N	Y	N	N
Airborne or surface	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N

Notes:

- Y = regular transmission of acquisition squitters.*
- N = acquisition squitter suppressed.*
- Surveillance type ES's are airborne position, airborne velocity or surface position ES's.*

Appendix I

MODE S SPECIFIC SERVICES

1. MODE S SUBNETWORK

1.1 Introduction

Mode S message formats and protocols provide data communication capability between air and ground systems. Mode S data link and subnetwork provide a high integrity means of exchanging information between air and ground.

1.2 Functional elements

1.2.1 The Mode S subnetwork is composed of the following functional elements:

- a) a Mode S transponder (level 2, 3, 4 or 5 defined in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 2);
- b) an ADLP;
- c) a ground data link processor (GDLP); and
- d) a Mode S ground interrogator.

1.2.2 The Mode S ground interrogator is responsible for operating the Mode S protocols, in conjunction with aircraft Mode S transponders, as defined in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3. Once acquired by an interrogator (i.e. by identifying its unique 24-bit aircraft address), a suitably equipped aircraft within Mode S coverage may be selectively interrogated for surveillance purposes. The interrogations may include certain data in the uplink data fields that would invoke replies containing downlink data fields.

1.3 Service provided

1.3.1 The Mode S air-ground subnetwork has been designed to provide two types of communication services:

- a) switched vertical circuit (SVC) communication service between two subnetwork points of attachment (SNPAs), one in the aircraft and the other on the ground. This connection-oriented communication service may be accessed by means of the protocol defined in ISO 8208 and is entirely conformant with the ATN architecture; and
- b) a number of services particular to the Mode S system, known as Mode S specific services. These may be accessed by means of locally defined special purpose interfaces.

1.3.2 The first type of communication services supporting connection-oriented communication allows a transparent exchange of general-purpose messages. It is based on complex protocols and has not yet been used.

1.3.3 The second type of services (Mode S specific services) is based on simple exchanges of specific messages allowing easy implementation of certain applications. This capability of the Mode S subnetwork is used to support applications like EHS (downlinking of airborne information) or TIS (uplinking of aircraft position in close proximity of an aircraft). A number of other applications can be envisaged like meteorological data collection, airspace infringement alert, runway incursion alert, audio communication loss alert and ACAS sensitivity level control for the register formats and protocols of currently defined applications (see Doc 9871).

2. DATA LINK CAPABILITY REPORTING

2.1 Transponder capability levels

A number of different levels of SSR transponder are defined in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 2, that indicate the data link capability. The basic transponder required to support data exchange is level 2. Such a transponder is capable of handling uplink and downlink SLM transactions. Level 3 adds the capability of handling uplink ELM transactions, while level 4 offers both uplink and downlink ELM capability. In order to provide a higher throughput compared to a level 4 transponder, the level 5 transponder provides a higher data link capacity with the added ability to operate with more than one interrogator at a time.

2.2 Data link services capability reporting

2.2.1 General

2.2.1.1 The amount and type of data link activity supported by an aircraft Mode S installation is defined by the Mode S data link capability report (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, and Doc 9871). This report is extracted from the transponder by the ground interrogator at surveillance acquisition when notified by the transponder that the report has changed. This report specifies the aircraft data link capability class, level 2, 3, 4 or 5 and provides additional information regarding:

- a) data rates that the aircraft installation can support;
- b) presence and status of ACAS equipment;
- c) availability of Mode S specific services; and
- d) availability of SVC services.

2.2.1.2 The transponder capability is used by the ADLP and GDLP to determine an appropriate Mode S packet size and protocol for uplink and downlink transmissions.

2.2.2 Mode S specific services reporting

2.2.2.1 The “Mode S specific services capability” (bit 25) of register 10₁₆ indicates that at least one Mode S specific service (other than data link capability reporting, aircraft ID reporting, or ACAS RA reporting) is installed when it is set to ONE (1).

2.2.2.2 Registers 18₁₆ to 1C₁₆ indicate which GICB services (transponder registers) are installed, i.e. the transponder manages the register, and there is an interface to load data in the register.

2.2.2.3 Register 17₁₆ indicates which GICB services (transponder registers) are currently loaded with useful data.

2.2.2.4 Register 1D₁₆ to 1F₁₆ indicate which MSP services are installed.

2.2.3 Mode S SVC services reporting

Register 10₁₆ indicates the status of on-board data terminal equipment (DTE) supported by the aircraft systems.

2.2.4 Mode S subnetwork version

Mode S subnetwork version available in Register 10₁₆ is used to indicate which version of SVC services and Mode S specific services is installed. This indication allows compatibility and smooth transition between versions. The subnetwork version number is very important for managing the different versions of Mode S specific services which are expected to change more often than SVC services as they are application dependent. The correspondence between the version number and the format of Mode S specific services is given in Doc 9871.

2.3 Report generation

2.3.1 Within a particular level, the capability of transponders may be expected to vary in terms of peak and average data acceptance and reply rates. This information is required by the ADLP to construct and send the aircraft data link capability report to the ground system. If the ADLP is not combined with the transponder, this information must be made available by the transponder through a locally defined transponder interface. The approach used for such information transfer must ensure that transponder capability information to the ADLP is automatically updated if a transponder is replaced. An example of an acceptable means for this transfer is to incorporate transponder capability information into pins on the connector of the cable that interfaces the transponder with the ADLP.

2.3.2 If there is a change in the capability report (including the absence of the report from the ADLP due to an interface failure), the Mode S transponder will make the new report available as a broadcast Comm-B message in order to update the data link status for ground interrogators currently providing communications service.

2.4 Interrogator handling of incorrectly reported capability

2.4.1 In designing the data link communications function of a Mode S Interrogator, care must be taken to handle the case of an incorrectly reported data link capability, in particular, the case of the reported capability being greater than the actual capability. If an aircraft reports a higher than actual communication capability, its transponder may fail to reply to an addressed interrogation. This can happen when the transponder is not equipped for the service (e.g. an ELM interrogation to a level 2 transponder) or in a case where the interrogator exceeds the communications capacity of the avionics installation. In the latter case, a Mode S transponder may not reply to a data link interrogation if it cannot store the message field of the interrogation.

2.4.2 Since an incorrectly reported capability can lead to an absence of replies, the interrogator communications function should detect the absence of expected replies to communications interrogations and revert to 56-bit surveillance interrogations that command 56-bit surveillance replies in order to maintain the essential surveillance function. The initial transaction on subsequent scans should continue to be for surveillance only. After a successful surveillance transaction, additional attempts may be made in the beam dwell to see whether the aircraft has recovered its communications capability. Repeated communications failures should lead the interrogator to downgrade the aircraft capability to a level corresponding to the observed reply performance.

2.5 Interrogator capability

Interrogators with advanced antenna and transmission capabilities will be able to transfer a greater amount of data in a given period of time. The interrogator capability will be used to determine the quality of service that is available over a particular subnetwork connection.

3. MODE S SPECIFIC SERVICES

3.1 Protocols used by Mode S specific services

Mode S specific services include:

- a) the GICB protocol;
- b) an MSP corresponding to a datagram service developed for specific real-time applications; and
- c) the Mode S broadcast protocols (uplink and downlink).

3.2 SSE

3.2.1 Provision is made for Mode S specific services to be accessed by means of one or more special purpose interfaces, routing data directly between applications and the Mode S SSE of the ADLP or GDLP. Alternatively, an application may access the SSE by means of the DTE/data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) interface.

3.2.2 Access to the SSE must take account of the following factors:

- a) the SSE is dedicated mainly to time-critical applications. In this context, it is generally better to tolerate sporadic loss of real time information that will be replaced with more current data, than to enforce reliable, ordered, end-to-end transmission of messages. Enforcing this discipline will put the communication system at risk of failing to keep up with the pace of the application;
- b) the Mode S specific services support real time connectionless communication protocols with minimum overhead and do not fit into the basic concept of open system interconnection (OSI). Implementing intermediate connection-oriented services between the SSE and its users would require the development of specific protocols, e.g. to ensure the proper end-to-end delivery of broadcast messages; and
- c) most applications using Mode S specific services have a high probability of being run on stand-alone end-systems that have a direct connection with the GDLP, rather than communicating across the ATC.

3.2.3 When connection-oriented intermediate layers are excluded, the responsibility for managing the dialogue between the SSE and its subscribers depends entirely on the applications.

3.3 Mode S specific services processing

Note 1.— There are three services to be handled by the SSE: broadcast, GICB and MSP.

Note 2.— Formats of data contained in aircraft registers, broadcast messages and MSP are defined in Doc 9871.

3.3.1 GICB processing

3.3.1.1 The GICB protocol was developed to make it possible to deliver real-time information, such as aircraft state data, in an efficient manner to several interrogators without requiring coordination. The technique used is to provide 255 transponder data registers of 56 bits in the transponder and provide coding in the interrogation to allow the interrogator to specify which, if any, of the register contents it wants to have transferred in the reply to that interrogation. Thus, only a single transaction is used to transfer the information, and no coordination with neighbouring interrogators is required since an interrogator cannot clear or alter the contents of the registers. Information stored in the registers must be kept current since the aircraft application loading the register does not know when it will be read. The overall operation is very similar to the readout of the altitude code in a surveillance reply.

3.3.1.2 The recommended protocol for GICB subscription is as follows:

- a) a ground user sends a subscription message to the SSE indicating that it wants to receive GICB data for one or more registers;
- b) a ground user can send a GICB request for single or periodic extractions of a given transponder register for a given aircraft;
- c) when a GICB has been extracted, the response message is sent to the subscriber by the ground SSE; and
- d) the user can cancel an active subscription at any time.

3.3.1.3 This recommended protocol is intended to minimize the data traffic between the ground SSE and the users. Developers might wish to build upon this minimum protocol and use more sophisticated features.

3.3.1.4 For example, EHS installations provide information about magnetic heading, ground speed, airspeed, vertical rate and selected altitude through three registers (40₁₆, 50₁₆, 60₁₆). The registers are periodically extracted by ground interrogators and the additional information is provided within the target report messages sent to users.

3.3.2 MSP

3.3.2.1 *Requirements for MSPs.* Messages transferred in support of certain real-time applications must be transferred with a minimum of delay and overhead. Furthermore, they must not be subject to retransmission in the event of a lost message or one received with a detected error. Real-time applications require that missing messages or messages with detected errors be ignored since the following messages will contain more recent data. If this retransmission service is applied, old messages would be retransmitted and current messages would be delayed waiting for the delivery process to catch up. The MSP was defined to support these real-time applications by defining a technique to bypass the ISO 8208 protocol and to permit data transfer with a minimum of overhead.

3.3.2.2 The operating characteristics of MSPs compared to SVCs show the following advantages:

- a) they have the potential for shorter delivery time since they are not subject to flow control;
- b) they operate with a total overhead of 1 or 2 bytes per packet; and
- c) there is no set-up time.

For these reasons, they are well suited to support real-time data transfer.

3.3.2.3 However, MSPs are not as reliable as SVCs since:

- a) they cannot have subnetwork-wide user addresses;
- b) packets may be lost without notification to the sender (e.g. discarded by a flooded ADLP or GDLP); and
- c) the order of packets is not guaranteed.

3.3.2.4 It is important to note that the speed advantage of MSPs might be reduced if the messages sent via an MSP channel are too long since:

- a) they may become subject to segmentation and reassembly; and
- b) their delivery may require more than one antenna scan.

3.3.2.5 *MSP processing and use.* The ground SSE must notify a subscriber of the successful delivery of an uplink MSP to the transponder (i.e. a technical acknowledgement). However, it is recognized that the only certain way to ensure that an MSP message has reached its peer application is through the use of an application acknowledgement.

3.3.2.6 In general, uplink and downlink MSP channels are simplex and independent. The simplest way to approximate a duplex MSP channel is to match an uplink and a downlink channel, both with the same channel number.

3.3.2.7 *MSP coordination in overlapping coverage.* The MSP achieves its bit efficiency, in part, through the use of limited addressing capability. On the uplink, the addressing consists of the MSP channel number. Downlink addressing also consists of the MSP channel number, although the II code can be used in a multisite-directed delivery. A second consideration for coordination is that the sequence numbers for L-bit processing are reset at the beginning of each message transfer on an MSP channel number basis. See Annex 10, Volume III, Part I, Chapter 5, 5.2.7.4, for the definition of L-bit processing and sequencing.

3.3.2.8 To ensure the correct downlink routing of aircraft request/response messages and the correct assembly of an L-bit sequence, some form of coordination is required between adjacent ground applications using the same MSP channel number. The simplest form of coordination is to ensure that there is no overlap in service volume between two ground applications using the same MSP channel number. An alternative technique is to have the ground applications (with overlapping coverage) coordinate their activities to ensure that only one application is active with a given aircraft at any one time.

3.3.2.9 In order to detect delivery errors, applications making use of MSPs may be developed with the ability to build and verify a checksum. For example, one such algorithm is defined in ISO 8073. Upon detection of an error, local procedures could be invoked to notify the user of the error.

3.3.3 Examples of applications using MSP

3.3.3.1 *TIS*. TIS is intended to improve the safety and efficiency of a “see and avoid” flight by providing the pilot with an automatic display of nearby traffic and warnings of any potentially threatening traffic conditions. TIS uses uplink MSP channel 2 to send keep-alive messages, goodbye messages and traffic data to aircraft.

3.3.3.2 *Dataflash*. Dataflash is a service that announces the availability of information from air-to-ground on an event-triggered basis. Dataflash is an application that runs on board aircraft and accepts different types of contracts to indicate to users when a register has changed. When “dataflash MSP service is implemented”, bit 31 of Register 1D₁₆ is set to 1 and uplink MSP channel 6 is used to send ground SRs to the airborne application. Downlink MSP channel 3 is used to downlink register values or to indicate contract status.

3.3.4 Broadcast processing

3.3.4.1 The broadcast Comm-A protocol was designed to permit a Comm-A message to be delivered efficiently and quickly to a number of aircraft. A Comm-A interrogation containing the message is transmitted using a 24-bit aircraft address of all ONEs. The transponder recognizes this as a broadcast message and accepts the interrogation but does not reply. To ensure delivery, the interrogation must be transmitted two or more times per beamwidth. Ground-to-air uses might include information of general interest such as the status of ATC services at a particular terminal or the transmission of hazardous weather information.

Note.— A similar protocol referred to as Comm-U is used by ACAS on the air-air link to announce its presence to other ACAS units to support interference-limiting calculations. It is also used by ACAS to broadcast its manoeuvre intent to omnidirectional Mode S receiving stations.

3.3.4.2 The recommended protocol for uplink broadcast is as follows:

- a) a user generates a broadcast request that contains the broadcast message, an indication of the required broadcast area and the duration of the requested broadcast delivery; and
- b) a user can cancel a request for broadcast delivery at any time.

3.3.4.3 The Comm-B protocol is designed to deliver a downlink message to a single interrogator. This is accomplished by the interrogator clearing the message after it is successfully transferred. The broadcast Comm-B protocol indicates its presence to the ground through an indication in surveillance and Comm-B replies. This indication remains set for at least 18 seconds and cannot be reset by an interrogator, which makes it possible for any interrogator in contact to read the message. This protocol is used by the transponder to deliver a change in either the capability report or aircraft ID.

Note.— A modified form of this protocol is used by ACAS to deliver intent messages to Mode S interrogators.

3.3.4.4 The recommended protocol for downlink broadcast is as follows:

- a) a user sends a subscription message indicating that it wants to receive downlink messages for one or more specified broadcast channels;
- b) the ground SSE adds the user to an internal list of downlink broadcast subscribers; and
- c) a user can cancel its broadcast subscription at any time.

3.3.4.5 Examples of defined Mode S broadcasts are:

- a) downlink broadcast 02₁₆ is used by aircraft to request to be either connected or disconnected from the TIS service;
- b) downlink broadcast 10₁₆ is used to transmit a new data link capability report after a change;
- c) downlink broadcast 20₁₆ is used to transmit a new aircraft ID after a change; and
- d) downlink broadcast 30₁₆ is used to transmit an ACAS RA report.

4. EXAMPLE OF AN SSE ACCESS APPLICATION PROTOCOL (LOCAL ACCESS)

4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 This section describes a possible local access protocol for Mode S specific services both on the ground and in the air. The protocol has been designed to provide for interaction between the SSE and locally connected end-systems.

4.1.2 The following assumptions have been made regarding the Mode S subnetwork:

- a) on the ground, the SSE could be located in the GDLP or ground station. In the air, the SSE is located in the ADLP;
- b) the airborne end-system includes an ARINC 429 concentrator to supply the ARINC 429 labels required for the GICB service;
- c) ISO 8208 is not needed to access Mode S specific services either on the ground or in the air;
- d) the SSE is dedicated mainly to real-time applications. This means that the timeliness of the data is paramount; and
- e) end-to-end acknowledgement is not supported by the subnetwork. Applications requiring delivery guarantees must provide their own transaction management.

4.1.3 Service interactions are described in terms of service primitives. A primitive is an abstract view of protocol information and places no format restrictions on the contents.

4.1.4 In order to provide a comprehensive service, the following primitive parameters are used:

- a) aircraft address: 24-bit address of aircraft;
- b) flight identity: flight dependent call sign;
- c) II code: interrogator identification code used as ground address;
- d) request interval: number of seconds between GICB requests;
- e) active period: number of seconds for which broadcast remains active;
- f) channel number: MSP channel number, Comm-B register number of broadcast identifier;
- g) data length: length of data field (MSP only);

- h) application data: data (Comm-B register contents, broadcast data, MSP data);
- i) channel selection: list of selected broadcast or MSP channels;
- j) control data: additional data required to control the service which is not transferred over the subnetwork;
- k) diagnostic code: used in confirmation primitives to indicate whether the transfer was successful or not;
- l) application identification used to distinguish between different applications hosted on the same end-system; and
- m) request number: used to distinguish between messages from an application when providing technical acknowledgement (confirmation).

Note.— Request numbers must be assigned uniquely. Subfields should be used to distinguish between applications collocated on a single end-system.

4.2 GICB service

4.2.1 There are two aspects to the GICB service:

- a) the airborne end-system is responsible for the timely update of the Comm-B register contents, which means that the airborne end-system is required to provide the airborne SSE with the required information along with the Comm-B register identifier; and
- b) the requirement is to allow the ground user to request a GICB schedule.

4.2.2 A GICB request is for a particular Comm-B register from a particular aircraft. The SSE is responsible for managing all incoming requests to minimize the required interrogations. The GICB request includes the period between required replies.

4.2.3 The GICB-request interrogations only interact with the ADLP so far as they are used to maintain entries in the ADLPs II-code DTE cross-reference table. A GICB interrogation extracts the latest contents of the Comm-B register held in the transponder.

4.2.4 There are two ways of setting up multiple GICB requests:

- a) each GICB request is for a single Comm-B register; multiple register schedules are set up by issuing multiple requests, each of which may be cancelled individually; and
- b) the GICB request primitive could be defined to include all required requests. In this case, it needs to be determined whether a new GICB request is treated as an additional schedule or a replacement for the old schedule.

4.2.5 The user interactions required for the GICB service are shown in Figure I-1.

4.2.6 The primitives required for the GICB service are defined as follows:

- GICB_request:
 - *direction*: from application to ground SSE;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - request interval;
 - channel number.
- GICB_reply:
 - *direction*: from ground SSE to application;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel number;
 - application data.
- GICB_cancel:
 - *direction*: from application to airborne SSE;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel number.
- GICB_update:
 - *direction*: from application to airborne SSE;
 - *contents*: channel number;
 - application data.

Note.— A time stamp could be added to this primitive to provide an indication of the age of the received data (UTC or indication of time in ground station).

4.3 Broadcast service

4.3.1 The user interactions required for the broadcast downlink (BDN) service are shown in Figure I-2.

4.3.2 Ground users subscribe to broadcast by aircraft address and broadcast identifier. The ground SSE only forwards those broadcast messages for which a subscription is held.

4.3.3 The primitives are defined as follows:

- BDN_subscribe:
 - *direction*: from application to ground SSE;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel selection.
- BDN_request:
 - *direction*: from application to airborne SSE;
 - *contents*: data (including identifier).

- BDN_reply:
 - *direction*: from GDLP to application;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel number;
 - application data.

Note 1.— Subscriptions overwrite previous subscriptions. A null channel selection would cancel all subscriptions. An “ALL ONES” would indicate that broadcast from all aircraft should be forwarded.

Note 2.— Some BDNs’, for example, data link capability and flight identity are generated by the transponder.

Note 3.— For broadcast services, the channel number is extracted from the application data.

4.3.4 The user interactions required for the broadcast uplink (BUP) service are shown in Figure I-3. No subscription is required by the airborne end-system; the airborne SSE forwards all received broadcast messages to the SSE interface.

4.3.5 Uplink broadcasts are enabled for a variable period (approximately a period of three complete antenna scans is recommended). Uplink broadcast may be cancelled at any time before the enabled period expires.

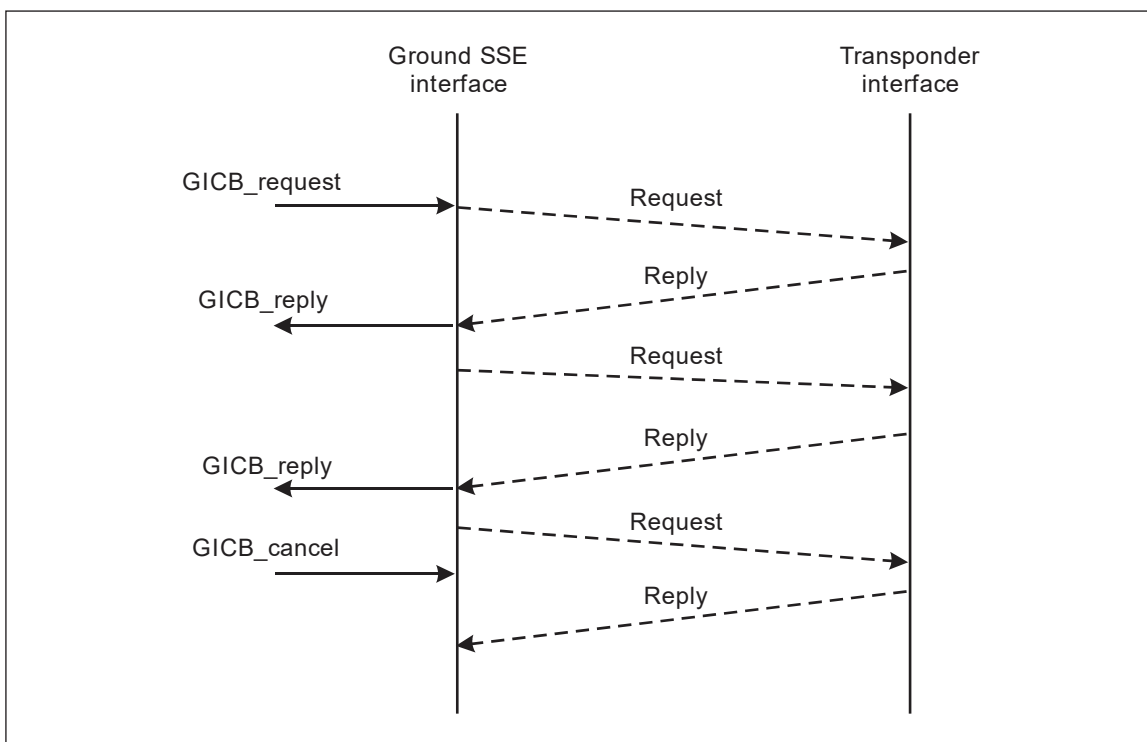


Figure I-1. GICB service

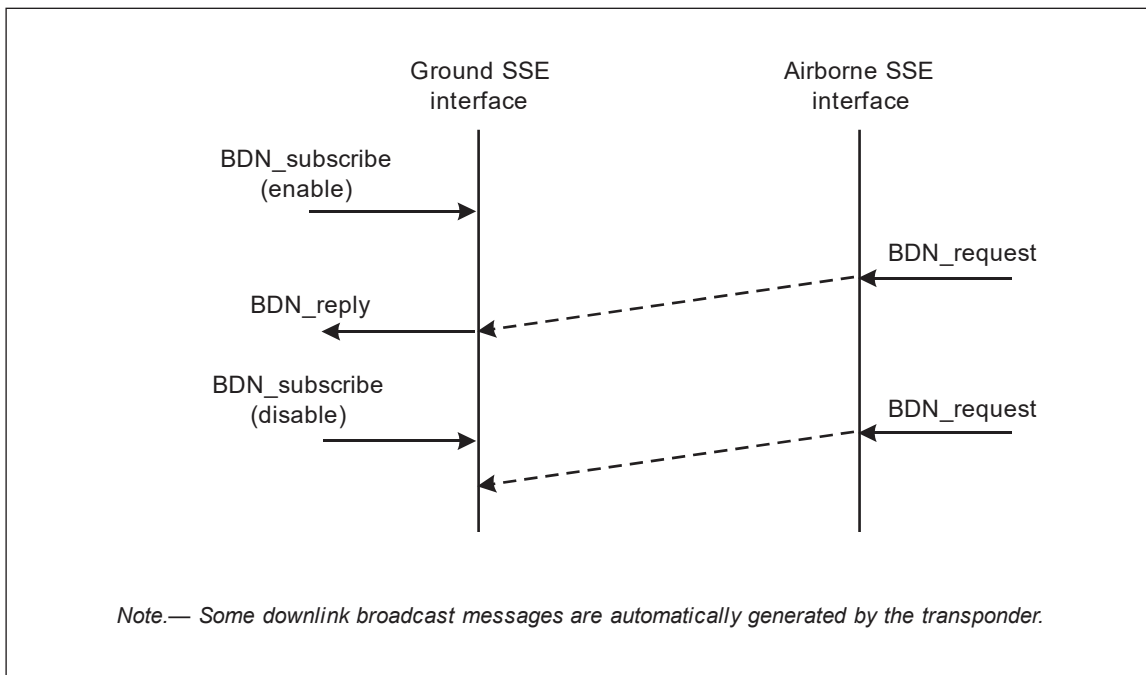


Figure I-2. BDN service

4.3.6 The primitives are defined as follows:

- BUP_request:
 - *direction*: from application to ground SSE;
 - *contents*: control data;
 - request number;
 - active period;
 - channel number;
 - application data.
- BUP_cancel:
 - *direction*: from application to ground SSE;
 - *contents*: request number.
- BUP_reply:
 - *direction*: from airborne SSE to application;
 - *contents*: channel number;
 - application data.

Note.— The control data for BUP determine which portion of sky is broadcast to; it may include II codes, azimuths and scan times.

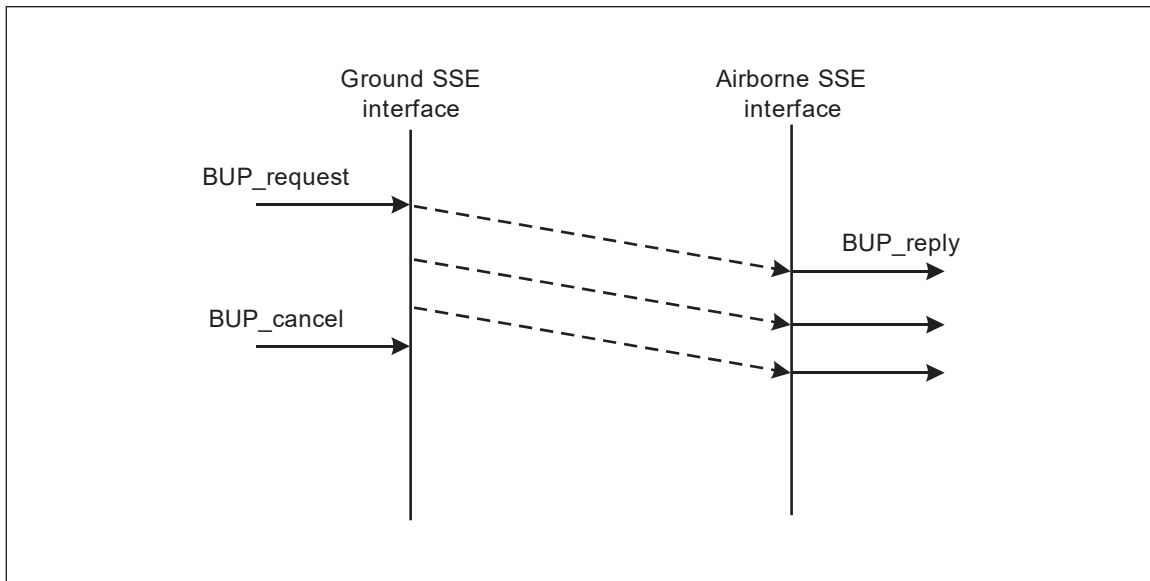


Figure I-3. BUP service

4.4 MSP service

4.4.1 The user interactions required for the MDN service are shown in Figure I-4.

4.4.2 The ground user subscribes to an MSP channel; only messages that are subscribed to are forwarded to the user. The delivery confirmation message is dependent on successful delivery to the interrogator and not to the end-user.

4.4.3 Applications making use of the MSP service are ground initiated. If the applications require air initiation of service, for example, a pilot request for weather data, then the ground application needs to advertise its existence to the airborne application.

4.4.4 The primitives are defined as follows:

- MDN_subscribe:
 - *direction*: application to ground SSE;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel selection.

Note.— Subscriptions overwrite previous subscriptions. A null channel selection would cancel all subscriptions.

- MDN_request:

- *direction*: application to airborne SSE;
 - *contents*: request number;
 - II code;
 - channel number;
 - data length;
 - application data.
- MDN_confirm:
- *direction*: from airborne SSE to application;
 - *contents*: request number;
 - diagnostic code.

Note.— This is a technical acknowledgement that an interrogator has tried to extract the data. It does not guarantee delivery to either the interrogator or the ground application.

- MDN_reply:
- *direction*: from ground SSE to application;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel number;
 - data length;
 - application data.

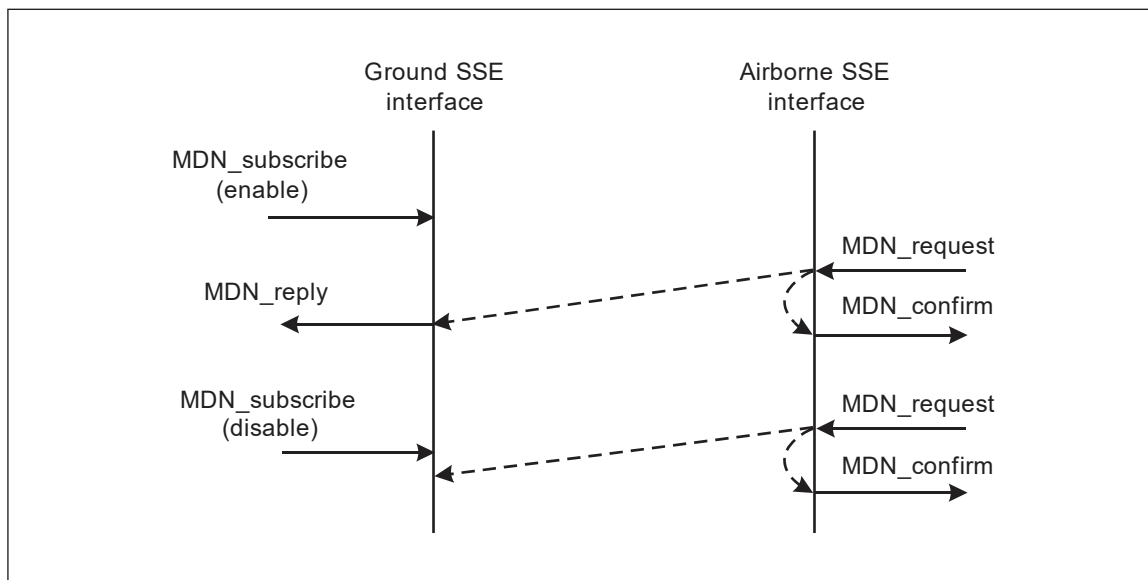


Figure I-4. MDN service

4.4.5 The user interactions required for the MSP uplink (MUP) service are shown in Figure I-5. No subscriptions

are used for the airborne service. The ADLP forwards all received MSPs on all Mode S specific services interfaces.

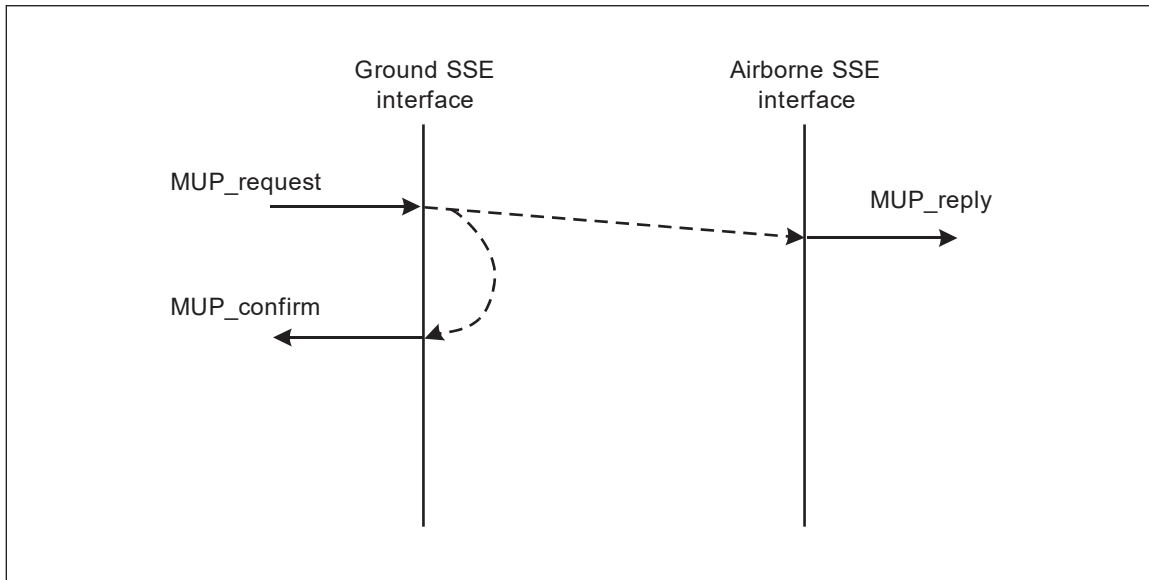


Figure I-5. MUP service

4.4.6 The required primitive contents are defined as follows:

- MUP_request:
 - *direction*: from application to ground SSE;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel number;
 - data length;
 - application data.
- MUP_confirm:
 - *direction*: from ground SSE to application;
 - *contents*: request number;
 - diagnostic code.

Note.— This is a technical acknowledgement that the information has been delivered to the transponder. It does not guarantee delivery to the airborne application.

- MUP_reply:
 - *direction*: from airborne SSE to application;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - request number;
 - channel number;
 - data length;
 - application data.

4.5 SSE management service

4.5.1 In order to support Mode S specific services, the ground end-system needs to obtain certain information concerning potential targets. It is recommended that join and leave events are sent from the ground SSE to the ground applications.

4.5.2 In addition, the aircraft end-systems need to be informed when an II-code is no longer available for data link communications.

4.5.3 The primitives are defined as follows:

- SSE_join:
 - *direction*: from ground SSE to application;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - flight identity.
- SSE_leave:
 - *direction*: from ground SSE to application;
 - *contents*: aircraft address;
 - diagnostic code.
- SSE_leave:
 - *direction*: from airborne SSE to application;
 - *contents*: II code;
 - diagnostic code.

Primitives are also required to initiate refresh cycles.

Appendix J

MODE S IMPLEMENTATION

1. EVOLUTION OF GROUND FACILITIES

1.1 Mode S features

1.1.1 MSSR is an established technique and described in Appendix E. Monopulse processing is a prerequisite for a Mode S interrogator. The principal functions to be added to upgrade a monopulse ground station to Mode S are:

- a) a second transmitter for Mode S sidelobe suppression;
- b) channel management;
- c) Mode S surveillance processing; and
- d) if used, data link processing and network management.

1.1.2 The steps to add these functions can be taken, for instance, when surveillance performance of monopulse alone becomes inadequate or when it is considered desirable to take advantage of the additional capabilities offered by the Mode S data link. As well as improving surveillance performance, the basic Mode S system will allow ATS authorities to offer, and to benefit from, a number of additional services that can be accomplished through use of the Mode S specific services capability. The benefits of Mode S surveillance or communications will, of course, increase as the proportion of Mode S-equipped aircraft increases. For example, Europe has implemented Mode S ELS to alleviate the shortage of available Mode A codes and EHS to provide the controller with aircraft derived data, usually obtained through voice communications.

1.2 Antenna requirements

1.2.1 Rotating antenna

In order to support monopulse processing of Mode A/C aircraft, four or more intermode interrogation and reply intervals must be scheduled within the antenna 3 dB beamwidth. The antenna beamwidth and antenna rotation rate determine the intermode IRF and thus the channel time required for Mode A/C operation. The antenna beamwidth together with the antenna rotation rate also determine the dwell time, i.e. the time that an aircraft is illuminated by the main beam and thus the period of time that Mode S activity can take place on a particular scan. Both of these considerations imply the need to avoid extremely narrow beam antennas. An antenna beamwidth of approximately 2.4 degrees has been found to provide a reasonable compromise between azimuth measurement accuracy and Mode S operations.

1.2.2 E-scan antenna

Note.— An E-scan antenna with the capability of randomly and instantaneously pointing in any desired direction is expected to provide several benefits to Mode S operation.

1.2.2.1 *Data link capacity.* The effective data link capacity of a rotating beam antenna is limited by the fact that aircraft are often not uniformly distributed in azimuth but bunched in high-density azimuth sectors. This bunching can be as much as 4 to 1 at some locations, i.e. most of the aircraft are in a 90-degree azimuth sector. This means that most of the available Mode S channel time is unused. An E-scan antenna can increase the effective capacity of the data link by utilizing all of the available Mode S time. Furthermore, data link service to a particular aircraft is no longer limited by dwell time.

1.2.2.2 *Data link delivery delay.* The inherent delivery delay of a rotating beam antenna is determined by the scan time. This must be taken into account for certain data link functions, e.g. tactical manoeuvre commands. The uplink delivery delay time for an E-scan antenna can be reduced to a small fraction of a second. This improvement applies to downlink transfers only after the announcement has been detected.

1.2.2.3 *Variable surveillance rate.* Certain activities, such as monitoring approaches to closely-spaced parallel runways, may require a surveillance update rate higher than that for normal ATC activities. An E-scan antenna can provide a basic surveillance update for all aircraft within coverage, plus a higher update rate for selected aircraft based on operational requirements.

1.2.2.4 *Transmitter duty cycle.* Since Mode S aircraft can be accessed at any time by an interrogator with an E-scan antenna, the Mode S data link load can be uniformly handled throughout a scan period, significantly reducing the transmitter duty cycle for a given data link loading.

2. STEPS TO FACILITATE UPGRADING OF MSSR TO MODE S

2.1 Mode S transmitter requirements

Note.— Ground station transmitter requirements for Mode S interrogations are more stringent than for Mode A/C interrogations. Consideration should therefore be given to incorporating a Mode S-compatible transmitter at the time that conversion is made to monopulse.

2.1.1 Main-beam transmitter

The *transmit* power level for a Mode A/C ground station must provide for an ERP that gives good link reliability out to its maximum operating range. This power level always includes an additional link margin beyond nominal values to allow for link differences between the ground station and individual aircraft. This normally results in an ERP that is higher than necessary for most aircraft. The selective aircraft address and re-interrogation features of Mode S permit the use of a Mode S transmit power that is below the nominal Mode A/C interrogation level. This power level can be used for all Mode S aircraft on the initial interrogation attempt for each scan. In most cases, this power level will be sufficient for a successful reply. In cases where a reply is not received after a few attempts, a higher power interrogation can be used for the aircraft. The power can be set at a level above or equal to the nominal Mode A/C interrogation level. This provides an improved transmit link margin at an acceptable interference level because this high-power Mode S interrogation is used selectively and in exceptional cases. For a given maximum operating range, antenna gain and traffic and data link load, the required peak power of a Mode S ground station transmitter may be determined by using the uplink power budget equation given in Appendix D. The short-term transmitter duty cycle for a very high-capacity ground station can be as high as 63.7 per cent over a 1.6-millisecond interval.

2.1.2 Auxiliary transmitter

2.1.2.1 *Requirement for Mode S sidelobe suppression.* When transmitting Mode S-only all-call interrogations, Mode S SLS is required to prevent replies from aircraft in the side lobes and back lobes of the interrogation antenna. It should also be used with discretely addressed Mode S interrogations to:

- a) reduce the amount of time that a nearby transponder is unable to process main-beam interrogations from other ground stations because it is busy processing unwanted side-lobe interrogations from the Mode S ground station; and
- b) to reduce the probability of a nearby transponder accepting interrogations that are not addressed to it but which may be corrupted by multipath or uplink interference so as to appear to be properly addressed.

2.1.2.2 *Suppression technique.* Suppression is accomplished by the omnidirectional transmission of a separate pulse, known as the P_5 pulse, which overlaps the sync phase reversal within the P_6 pulse of the Mode S interrogation causing the transponder to fail to synchronize when the received amplitude of the P_5 pulse is comparable to or larger than the received amplitude of P_6 .

2.1.2.3 *Auxiliary transmitter.* Since the P_5 pulse and the P_6 pulse are transmitted simultaneously, an auxiliary transmitter is required for transmitting P_5 . This transmitter can also be used to generate the omnidirectional P_2 suppression pulse for non-Mode S interrogations.

2.1.2.4 *Power output relative to main-beam power.* The pulses transmitted by the auxiliary transmitter are radiated by a separate control antenna pattern, the gain of which exceeds the gain of the main antenna pattern in all directions outside of its main beam. The auxiliary transmitter power should be such as to assure that the received power of the P_5 pulse exceeds the received power of the P_6 pulse by several dB everywhere outside of the main beam of the directional antenna. If the main-beam power is variable, the auxiliary transmitter power should be automatically controlled to follow the main-beam power.

2.1.2.5 *Power and duty cycle.* Depending upon operational use, the auxiliary transmitter may be required to provide up to 2 000 watts peak power at the control antenna RF port. The duty cycle of the auxiliary transmitter should be consistent with the interrogation rate of the main beam transmitter but is generally much lower than that of the main transmitter, since the P_5 suppression pulse is much shorter than the P_6 pulse. The P_5 pulse is approximately 1/20th the width of a short P_6 pulse or 1/40th the width of a long P_6 pulse. Duty cycles given above for the main transmitter can be scaled by these factors.

2.1.3 Amplitude stability

For *satisfactory* operation, transmitters intended for use with ground stations that handle uplink ELMs should have the ability to transmit the desired number of consecutive ELM segments with an amplitude drop of no more than 2 dB.

2.1.4 Frequency and phase stability

2.1.4.1 The carrier frequency of all interrogations from Mode S ground stations, Mode A/C as well as Mode S, is required to fall within a frequency band of $1\,030 \pm 0.01$ MHz. This is equivalent to a maximum phase variation of 0.9-degrees over the duration of a 0.25-microsecond interval.

2.1.4.2 The overall tolerance on the 180-degree phase reversals of the carrier within the P_6 pulse is ± 5.0 degrees over the duration of any 0.25-microsecond interval. Thus, taking into account the possible 0.9-degree error due to carrier frequency mistuning, the phase accuracy of the mechanism used for generating 180-degree phase reversals must be better than 4.1 degrees.

2.1.5 Phase reversal generation and verification

2.1.5.1 The phase reversal can be generated using different methods. This includes hard keying with strong amplitude drop and rapid phase reversal, or other techniques with little or no amplitude drop but with frequency shift during the phase reversal and slow phase reversal (80 ns).

2.1.5.2 For verification purposes of a system using hard keying, the 90-degree point can be approximated by the minimum amplitude point on the envelope amplitude transient associated with the phase reversal, and the phase reversal duration can be approximated by the time between the 0.8A points of the envelope amplitude transient. See Figure J-1.

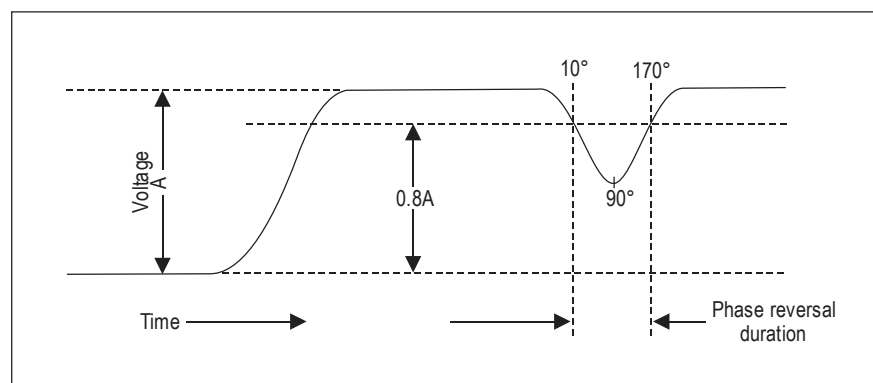


Figure J-1. Example of amplitude transient associated with phase reversal using hard keying

2.1.6 Spurious radiation

Mode S transmissions cannot occur at the same time as transmissions from a possibly synchronized primary radar. Therefore, care must be taken in implementing the Mode S transmitter to prevent spurious radiation that could affect the operation of the receiver of a collocated primary radar, particularly those operating in L-band.

2.2 Mode A/C reply processor blanking

If Mode S ground stations are configured to perform Mode A/C surveillance and Mode S all-call acquisition in a shared listening interval, Mode S replies may then be detected by the Mode A/C reply processor. In addition, Mode S FRUIT replies will also be received during the Mode A/C listening interval by interrogators without Mode S capability. In order to prevent possible spurious SSR bracket detections, it is advisable to blank the Mode A/C reply processor for the duration of the Mode S reply. This may be accomplished by detecting the Mode S preamble and blanking the Mode A/C reply processor for a time equivalent to the duration of the Mode S reply.

2.3 Azimuth processing

Using monopulse for Mode A/C surveillance permits a reduction in the Mode A/C PRF and therefore makes channel time available for Mode S roll-call processing. The reduced Mode A/C PRF means that the replies will not necessarily be received on boresight. Hence, the monopulse processor must have good off-boresight performance. The same characteristic is required for Mode S processing: the initial interrogation is normally scheduled early in the beam dwell of each scan to permit the possibility of multiple interrogations. A monopulse processor intended for Mode S use should have good performance over as wide a portion of the beamwidth as possible (e.g. between the points where the delta-to-sum beam ratio is equal to two).

3. GROUND STATION IMPLEMENTATION TECHNIQUES

Note.— The material presented in this section represents one approach to the implementation of a high capacity Mode S ground station. It should be noted that other approaches are also possible.

3.1 Mode S reply processing

3.1.1 Preamble detection

3.1.1.1 Mode S replies are detected on the basis of the four-pulse preamble preceding the reply data block. The preamble detector provides accurate time-of-arrival estimation for aircraft ranging and for synchronization of message bit processing and reply decoding.

3.1.1.2 For replies to roll-call interrogations, channel management provides to the preamble detector, an estimate of the expected reply time and an uncertainty window. A reply is accepted only if its preamble is detected within this window. Since the reply processor cannot start decoding a new reply when it is still decoding an earlier one, the use of this window minimizes the probability that the reply decoder will miss the desired reply due to Mode S FRUIT. Care must be exercised in selecting the conditions for preamble detection. If detection conditions are too loose, reply preamble false alarms will result in lost channel time. If detection conditions are too stringent, missed preambles will result in reduced reply probability.

3.1.2 Confidence determination

3.1.2.1 Since a message bit is transmitted as a pulse in one of two possible positions, depending on whether the bit value is “ZERO” or “ONE”, bit decisions are based primarily on the relative amplitudes of the signals received in these two pulse positions. A receiver channel operating with an associated omnidirectional antenna can determine whether a received pulse was received in the antenna main beam or in its side lobes. This side-lobe information is used to help resolve ambiguous situations in which a signal is received in both pulse positions.

3.1.2.2 Bit decisions are indicated as high-confidence only when a main-beam signal appears in one pulse position, and either no signal or a side-lobe signal appears in the other. Otherwise, they are indicated as low confidence.

3.1.3 Error detection and correction

3.1.3.1 Message decoding uses the parity check code described in Appendix C to detect errors in the demodulated message. Since the parity check bits for roll-call replies are combined with the transponder 24-bit address, the decoder must know the expected 24-bit address (supplied by channel management) in order to perform error detection.

3.1.3.2 Whenever a decoded reply contains errors, an error correction process can be initiated if the total number

of low-confidence bits in the reply and the total number of low confidence bits in the 24-bit correction span do not exceed a pre-set threshold. The use of these thresholds minimizes the possibility of erroneously “correcting” a reply that contains a very large number of errors. The error correction exercise can be successful only if:

- a) all errors are confined within a span of 24 contiguous bits; and
- b) all errors occur in bits flagged as low confidence.

3.1.3.3 Garbling by a single strong Mode A/C reply, which can result in bit decision errors spanning no more than 24 bits, usually results in a correctable error pattern. Thus, with high probability, the Mode S data block will be correctly decoded unless it is garbled by more than one strong Mode A/C reply.

3.2 Channel management

3.2.1 Purpose

3.2.1.1 The channel management function regulates all activities on the RF channels through control of the modulator/transmitter and the Mode A/C and Mode S reply processors. Its principal function is the scheduling of intermode and Mode S interrogations.

3.2.1.2 To provide surveillance of both Mode A/C and Mode S-equipped aircraft with minimal mutual interference, the RF channel is time-shared between all-call activities and roll-call activities.

3.2.1.3 One example of a technique for time-sharing the channel is shown in Figure J-2. This approach divides the channel timeline into non-overlapping periods of a) Mode A/C and Mode S all-call activity and b) Mode S roll-call activity.

3.2.1.4 An additional approach for time-sharing the channel is to allocate channel capacity to Mode S based upon actual demand rather than the fixed allocation of time between Mode A/C and Mode S that was presented in Figure J-2.

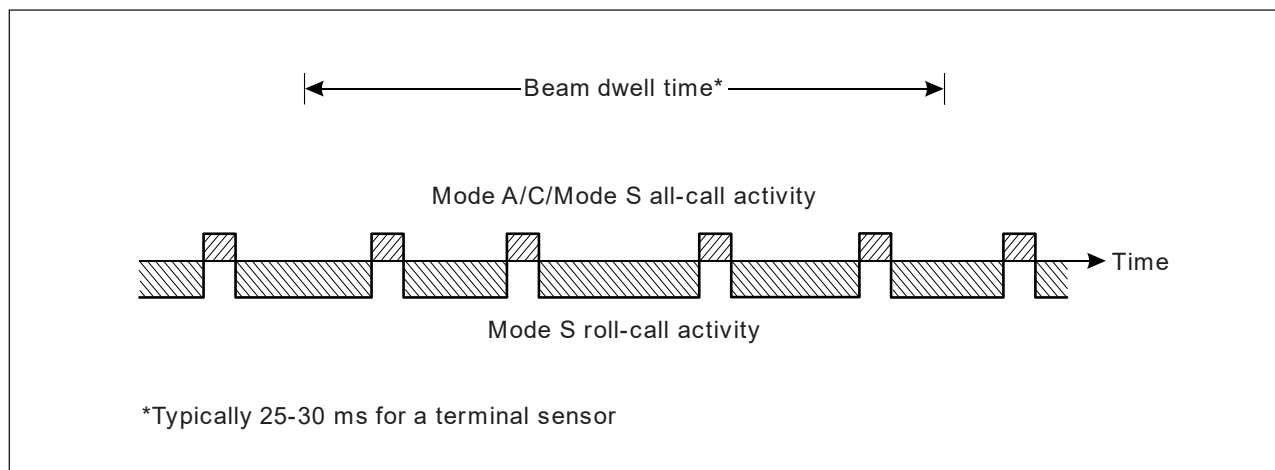


Figure J-2. Example of Mode A/C/S time sharing

3.2.2 Mode A/C and Mode S all-call scheduling

3.2.2.1 Mode A/C and Mode S all-call interrogations are scheduled at the beginning of a Mode A/C period, as determined by a site adaptation input that defines the ground station timeline. To reduce the incidence of FRUIT and second-time-around target reports, these interrogations should be pseudo-randomly jittered from the nominal interrogation time.

3.2.2.2 Following each Mode A/C interrogation, the ground station processes Mode A/C replies for an interval corresponding to the maximum desired coverage range at the current antenna azimuth. When the desired coverage range is short, initiation of the subsequent Mode S interval may be delayed so that reception of replies from longer-range Mode A/C targets does not interfere with roll-call replies in the following roll-call interval. The use of adaptive interrogation power to limit replies to the required operational range minimizes unnecessary interference on the channel.

3.2.2.3 In order to conserve channel time, Mode S all-call acquisition is also performed during the Mode A/C listening period. Replies from unacquired Mode S and Mode A/C aircraft are elicited by using a Mode S-only all-call interrogation followed by a Mode A/C-only all-call interrogation.

3.2.3 Mode S roll-call scheduling principles

3.2.3.1 Scheduling of Mode S roll-call interrogations and replies occurs under the following principles:

- a) Mode S interrogations are addressed only to aircraft within the antenna beam;
- b) channel time is allocated to each Mode S interrogation and reply based upon a prediction of aircraft range; and
- c) the ground station is able to interrogate an aircraft more than once while it remains in the beam.

3.2.3.2 The ground station maintains an active target list, comprising those Mode S aircraft that are within the antenna beam, and makes repeated passes through this list, scheduling discreetly addressed Mode S interrogations and replies on a non-conflicting basis. A single aircraft may appear on more than one of the resulting schedules of interrogation and replies, so that multiple surveillance and communication tasks can be accomplished. In the case of a failure to receive a reply, the capability for repeated scheduling of interrogations to an aircraft provides a high overall surveillance/communication reliability.

3.2.3.3 The principal elements of Mode S roll-call scheduling are illustrated in Figure J-3. The intervals of time devoted to Mode S roll-call activity are called Mode S roll-call periods. During a Mode S period, one or more roll-call schedules are produced. A schedule is a set of interrogation and reply times that allows the ground station to carry out one interrogation reply pair per aircraft to some or all of the aircraft on the active target list without providing a second transaction to any aircraft. The interrogations are timed so that non-overlapping blocks of channel time are assigned to each individual interrogation and reply. If insufficient time is available to schedule all aircraft on the list, the time is allocated to aircraft according to a pre-assigned transaction priority.

3.2.3.4 While several mechanisms exist, roll-call scheduling will usually begin with the first (longest range) aircraft on the list or aircraft which will soon exit the beam dwell, scheduling an interrogation at the assigned start time of the schedule. Next, the expected reply arrival time is computed, and a suitable listening period provided. Subsequent aircraft are scheduled by placing their reply listening periods in sequence and computing the corresponding interrogation times. A cycle is completed when the next interrogation, if so scheduled, overlaps the first reply. This interrogation is deferred to start a new cycle.

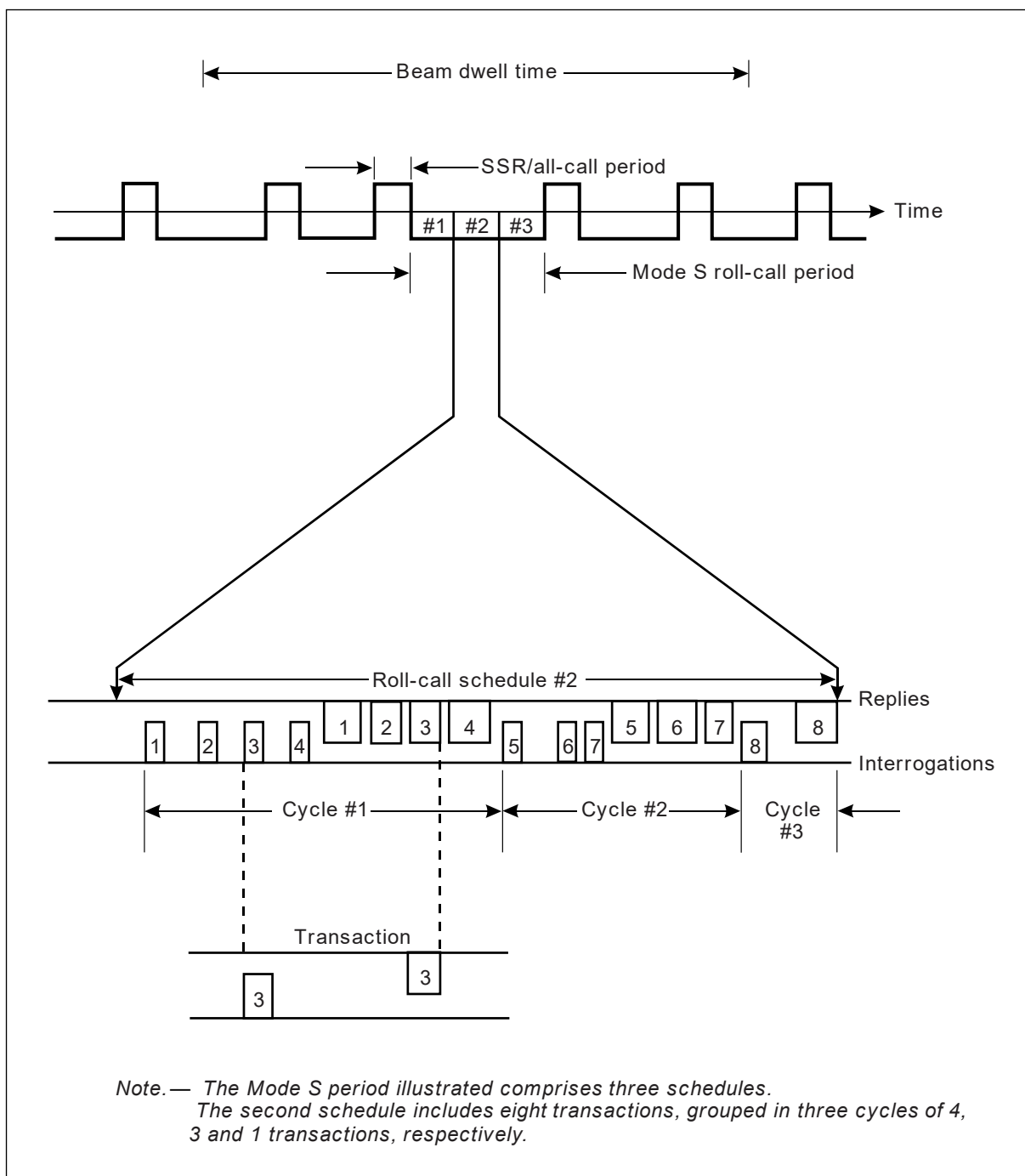
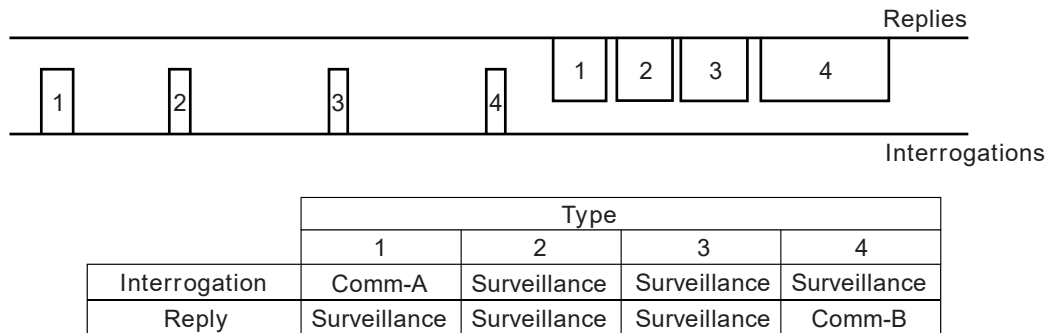


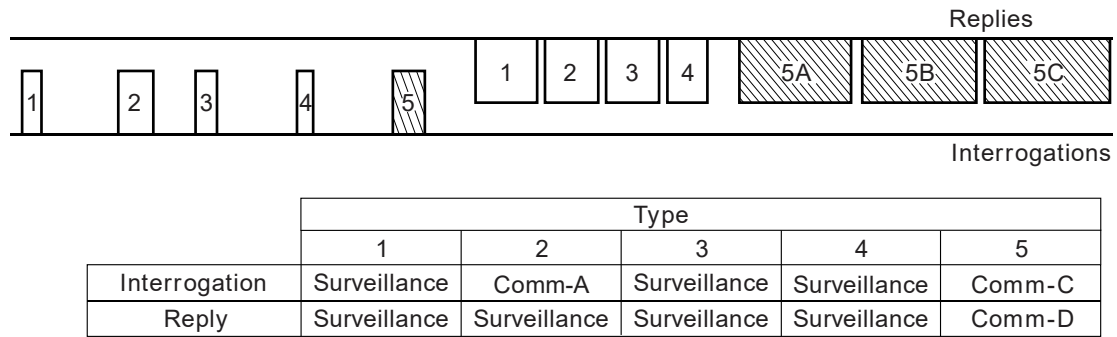
Figure J-3. Example of Mode S roll-call scheduling

3.2.3.5 Several types of transactions must be efficiently combined in forming a Mode S schedule. Since the aircraft on the active target list are in various stages of completion, with respect to Mode S activity, each may require a different kind of transaction. Figure J-4 a) illustrates a typical cycle comprised of long and short interrogations, coupled with long and short replies.

(a) Cycle containing surveillance and standard length message transactions



(b) Cycle containing surveillance, uplink standard length message and downlink extended length message transactions



(c) Cycle containing surveillance and uplink extended length message transactions

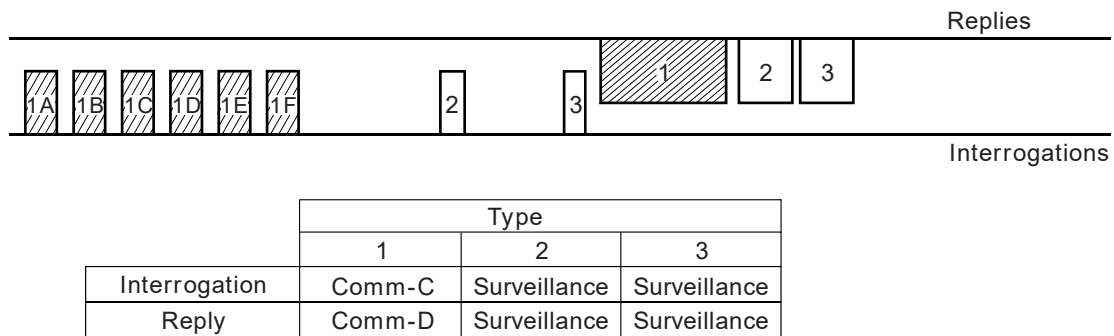


Figure J-4. Examples of Mode S cycles

3.2.3.6 The cycles shown in Figure J-4 b) and c) illustrate uplink and downlink ELM transactions as well as short and long interrogations.

3.2.4 Channel management organization

3.2.4.1 *General.* The five subfunctions that comprise channel management are:

- a) channel control;
- b) transaction preparation;
- c) target list update;
- d) roll-call scheduling; and
- e) transaction update.

The data flow paths between these subfunctions and their interfaces with other ground station functions are illustrated in Figure J-5. An example of one approach to channel management follows.

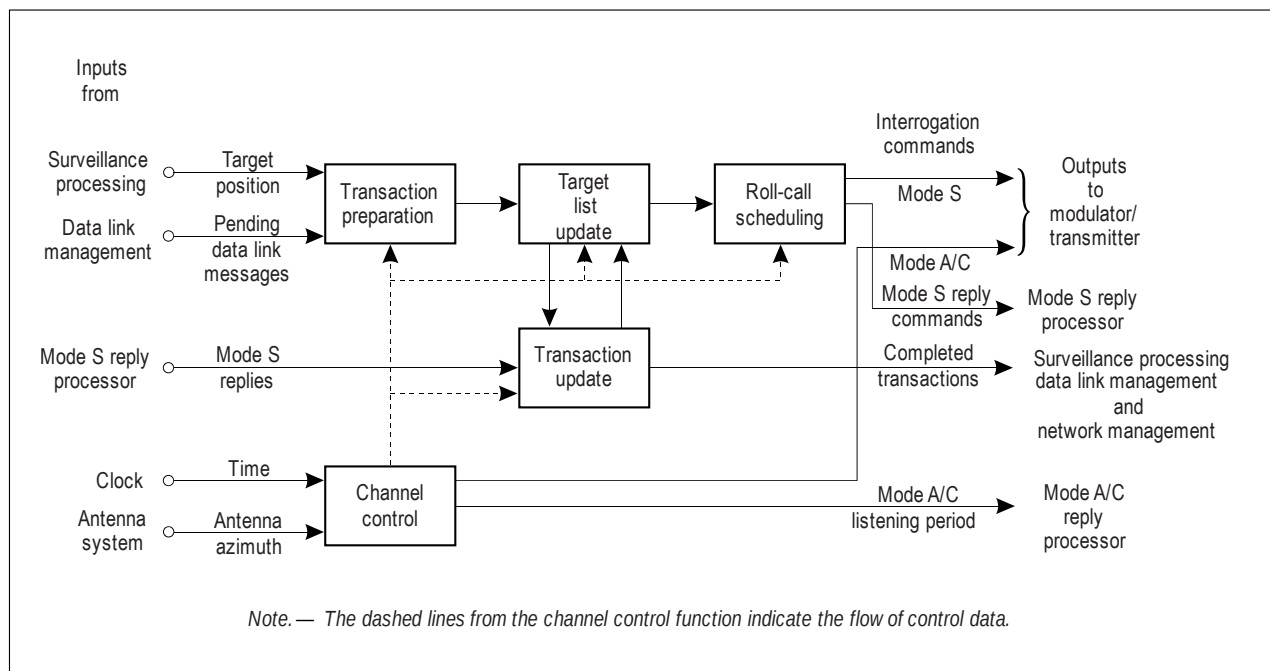


Figure J-5. Example of channel management

3.2.4.2 *Interfaces.* Channel management receives inputs from surveillance processing, data link management and network management. Surveillance processing provides channel management with the predicted position (azimuth and range) of Mode S aircraft. Data link management provides organized lists of pending uplink messages for each Mode S aircraft. Network management controls the track state to define the kinds of service, both surveillance and communication, to be afforded to each aircraft. Channel management has control over the modulator/transmitter unit and the Mode S and Mode A/C reply processors and communicates with these units by generating interrogation and reply control commands and by receiving Mode S reply data blocks. When an aircraft leaves the beam, a record of channel activity and downlink message content is passed on to the surveillance processing, data link management and network management functions.

3.2.4.3 *Channel control.* Channel control monitors the system real-time clock and the antenna pointing direction, assuring that all Mode A/C and Mode S activities take place at the proper time and in the proper sequence. The other four channel management subfunctions are periodically activated by channel control. In addition, channel control regulates the flow of control commands to the modulator/transmitter and to the reply processors, and it directs the transfer of Mode S reply data blocks from the Mode S reply processor to channel management.

3.2.4.4 *Transaction preparation.* At regular intervals, channel control directs transaction preparation to provide a list of aircraft about to enter the beam. Transaction preparation consults the surveillance file that contains the predicted position, the pending uplink message data placed there by data link management and control information generated by network management. If uplink messages and/or downlink message requests are pending for an aircraft entering the beam, transaction preparation will determine the number and type of transactions required to accomplish these tasks. Transaction preparation creates a list of data blocks, one for each new aircraft, containing a complete specification of the required set of transactions needed to accomplish all pending surveillance and communication tasks.

3.2.4.5 *Target list update.* An active target list is updated regularly by the target list update subfunction. The entries on this list are the data blocks which have been formulated by the transaction preparation subfunction. Data blocks on new targets, supplied by transaction preparation, are merged into the list, while old targets, either leaving the beam or completely serviced, are removed. In order to facilitate the computation of a non-conflicting schedule of interrogations and replies, an active target list is arranged in order of decreasing target range.

3.2.4.6 *Roll-call scheduling.* As directed by channel control, roll-call scheduling operates on the contents of an active target list to produce Mode S schedules according to the procedures described earlier. If insufficient time remains for a complete schedule (i.e. one transaction per aircraft on the active target list), then the available time is allocated based on transaction priority. The outputs of roll-call scheduling are Mode S interrogation control blocks specifying interrogation time, power level and data-block contents, and reply control blocks specifying expected reply time and aircraft address.

3.2.4.7 *Transaction update.* If a target enters the beam with several transactions to be carried out, these transactions will normally take place on successive schedules. The transaction update function examines each reply and, if the transaction was successful, modifies the target's data block so that the next pending transaction will be carried out in the subsequent schedule. If the transaction was unsuccessful, it will be repeated in the next schedule and the next pending transaction delayed to a later schedule. Finally, transaction update indicates the completion of targets for which no further transactions are pending.

3.3 Surveillance processing

Surveillance processing maintains target files on all Mode A/C and Mode S aircraft within the ground station's coverage volume. Its principal functions are:

- a) to select the Mode S reply to be used for surveillance processing, if more than one reply is available;
- b) to edit and correct Mode A/C target reports based upon data from previous scans;
- c) to predict the next-scan position of Mode S aircraft for interrogation scheduling; and
- d) to disseminate surveillance data to ATC users.

The interconnection between the principal subfunctions of surveillance processing is illustrated in Figure J-6.

Note.— Figure J-6 does not necessarily imply the order in which processing tasks would take place.

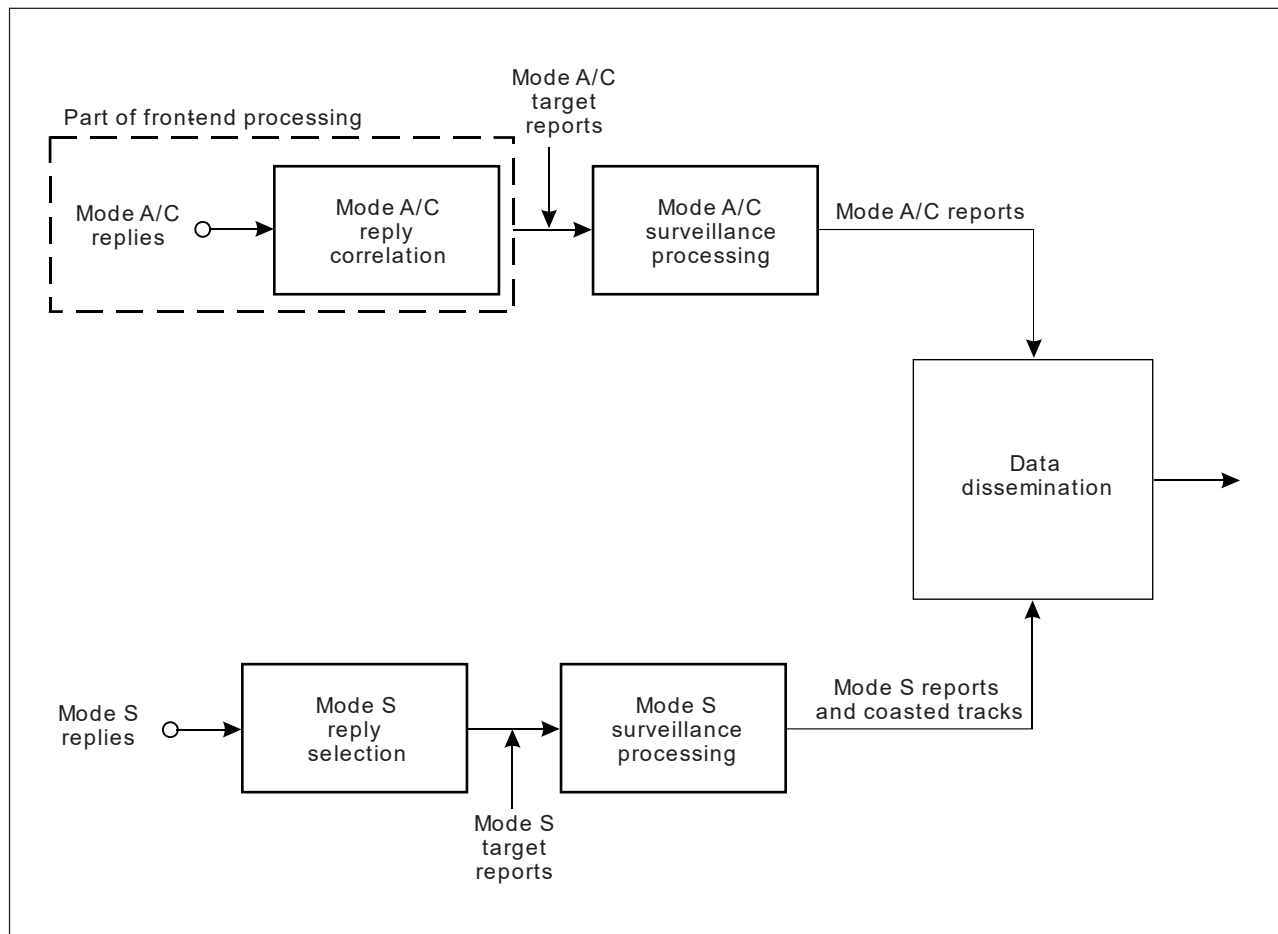


Figure J-6. Example of surveillance processing for a Mode S ground station collocated with a primary radar

3.4 Mode S data link management

3.4.1 Data link management regulates the flow of messages on the air-ground link. This is accomplished through the maintenance of a file, called the active message list, which contains a record of all of the pending communications activities. Entries in this file are organized by Mode S addresses and are used by channel management to determine the number and type of interrogations and replies to be scheduled for an aircraft when it is present in the antenna main beam.

3.4.2 As shown in Figure J-7, the two major subfunctions of data link management operate to update the active message list. Input processing handles messages received from the ground processing and in general is involved with additions of ground-to-air messages to the active message list. Output processing examines the transaction record prepared by channel management. The transaction record together with the contents of the reply messages indicate which communication activities are complete and which transponders, if any, are requesting an air-to-ground message transfer.

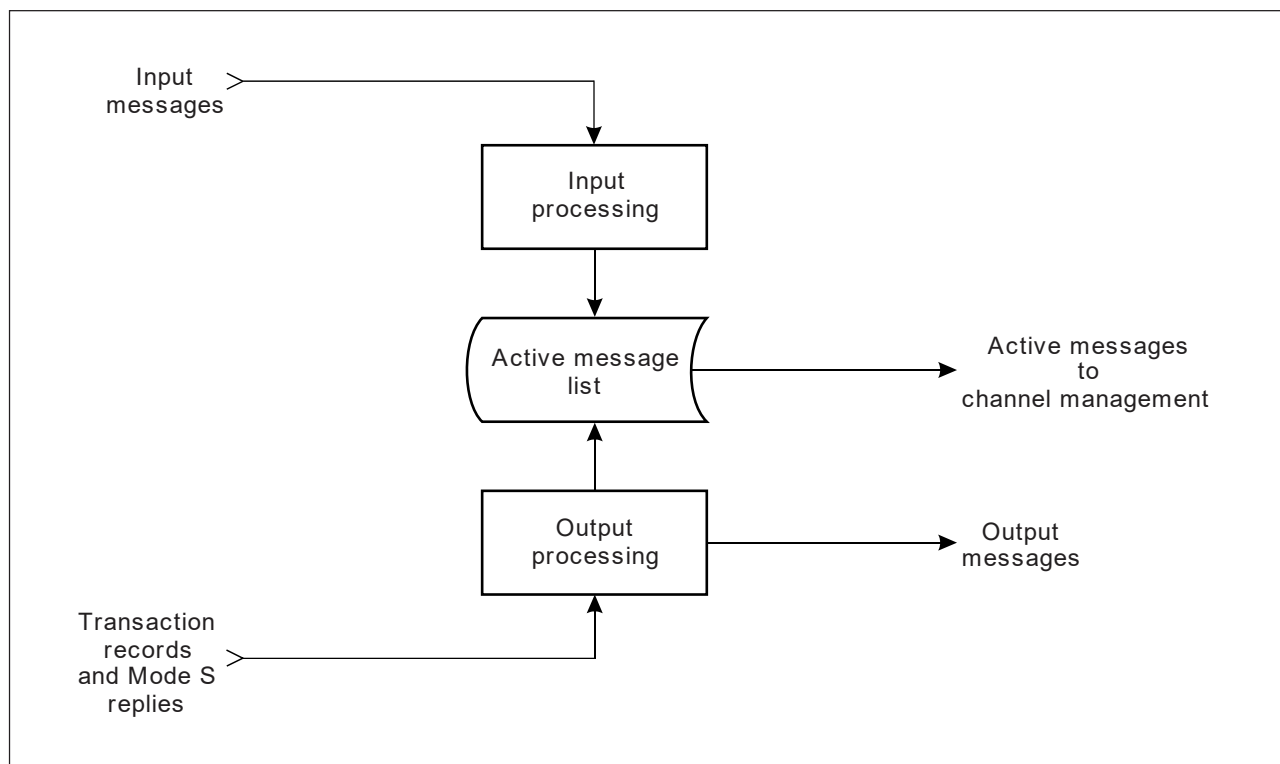


Figure J-7. Example of data link management

3.5 Network management

3.5.1 *Purpose.* Network management provides for continuity of surveillance and data link services where adjacent ground stations have overlapping coverage. When operating in a network, Mode S ground stations exchange surveillance data to hand off targets between ground stations and to maintain surveillance continuity and rapid target re-acquisition in the event of a temporary link interruption. This multisensor coordination is directed by the network management function, operating under the control of the ground station coverage map.

3.5.2 *The coverage map.* The extent and type of coverage to be provided by each ground station is controlled by a data file known as the ground station coverage map. In general, three major boundaries are defined by this map:

- a) the area in which the ground station is to provide surveillance coverage;
- b) the area in which the ground station is to manage all-call lockout; and
- c) the area in which the ground station is to provide data link coverage.

Note.— The surveillance coverage area and the lockout coverage area may be the same.

The coverage map can be implemented in Cartesian or World Geodetic System — 1984 (WGS-84) coordinates (see Figure J-8). The coverage maps can be defined using:

- a) coverage grid based on Cartesian coordinates;
- b) coverage cells delimited in range and azimuth (local coverage responsibilities); and
- c) cells based on steps of WGS-84 coordinates (LAT/LONG).

Figure J-8 is also an example of a coverage map using coverage cells delineated in range and azimuth. In this case, coverage maps are local to each radar and cells do not correspond between adjacent radars.

3.5.3 An example of a coverage map based on a common grid defined in a global WGS-84 system of coordinates is presented in Figure J-9. In the horizontal plane, the coverage maps contain cells delimited by latitude/longitude boundaries ($\Delta\text{Lat} = 0.0833^\circ$ and $\Delta\text{Long} = 0.1253^\circ$) and are not strictly Cartesian. The size of each of these coverage cells is nominally about 5 NM by 5 NM. This refers to the approximate size of the cells at approximately 49 degrees North. The cells are potentially divided into several levels in the vertical plane and are the same for all radars; and each radar shares the same view of the coverage. The different radar coverage areas are defined in a unique system of coordinates. This type of coverage map allows the definition of an exclusive area of responsibility.

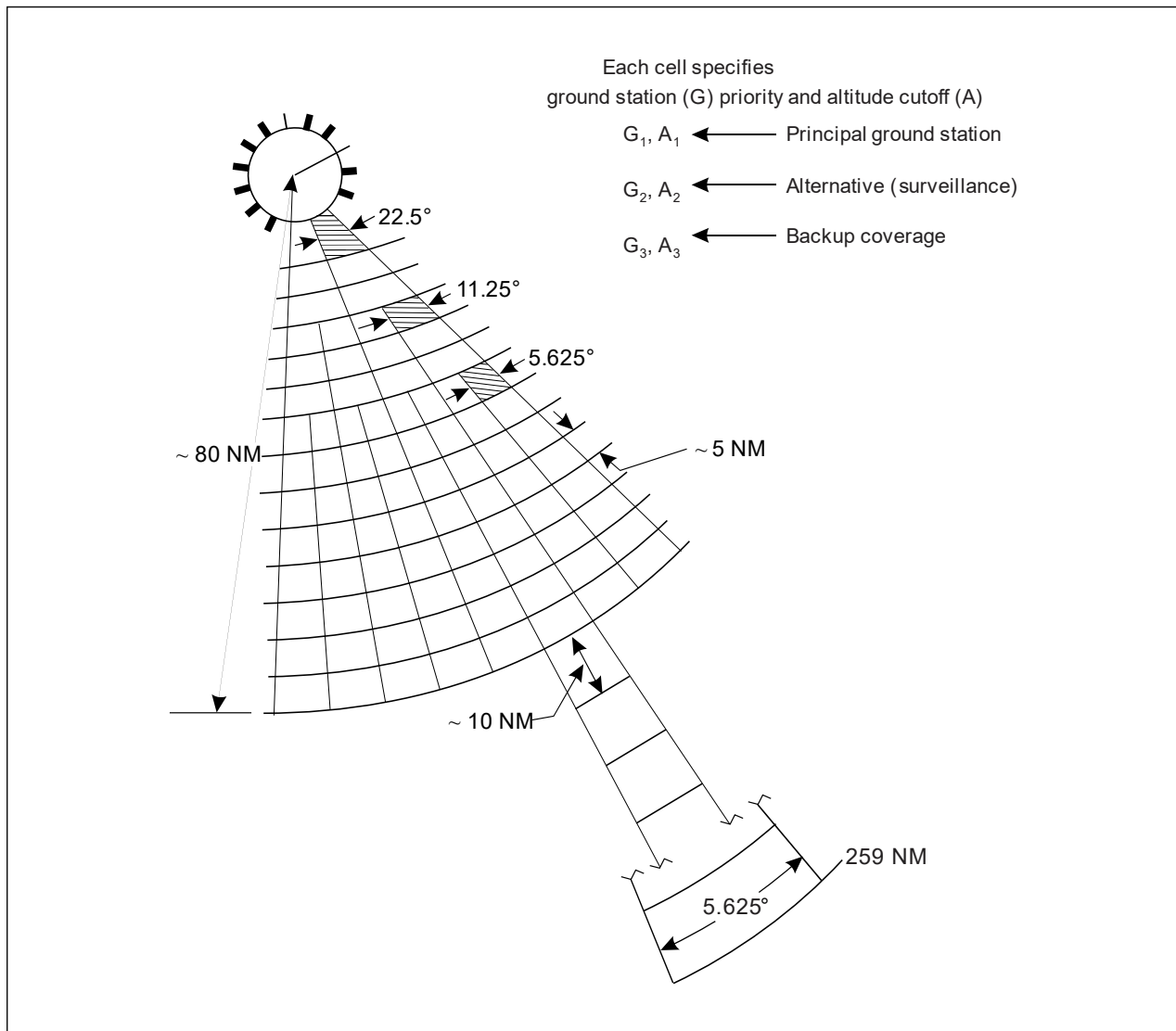


Figure J-8. Example of a rho/theta coverage map grid structure

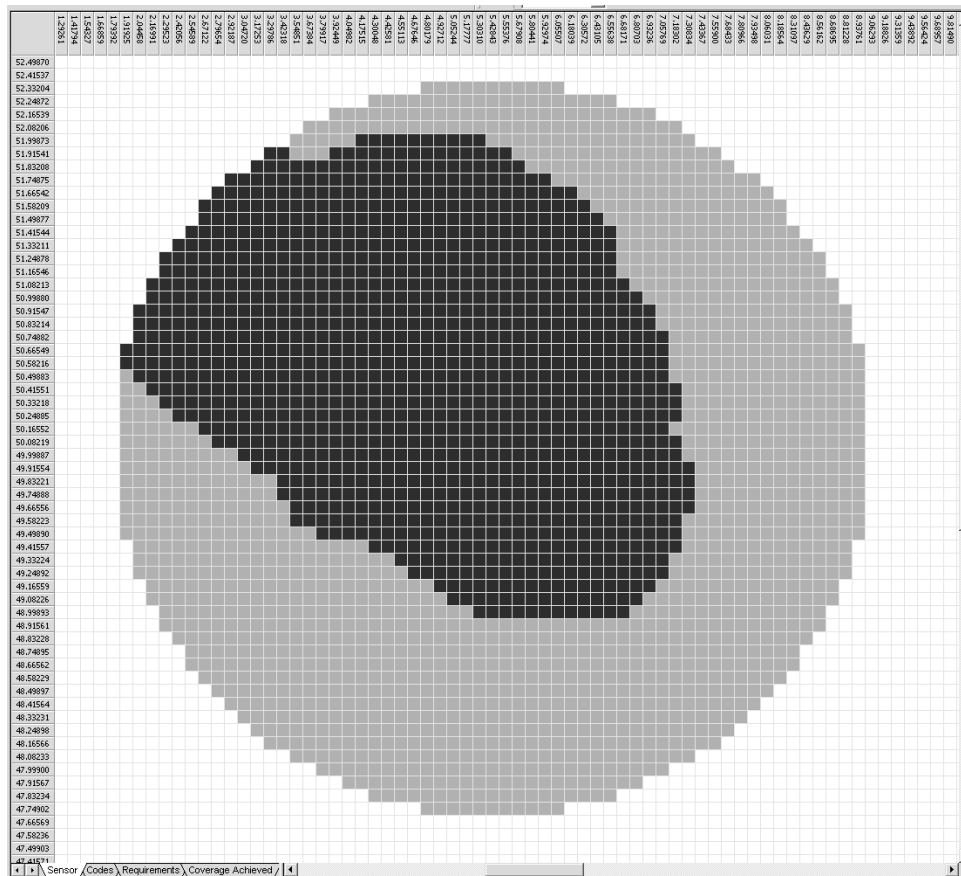


Figure J-9. Example of latitude/longitude (WGS-84) coverage map

4. OPERATION OF ADJACENT MODE S GROUND STATIONS

Note.— Coordination is required when adjacent Mode S ground stations have overlapping coverage (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 2, 2.1.2.1.2). This is particularly important where radar coverage crosses national boundaries. The need for this coordination and the technical and administrative procedures for achieving it are described in the following paragraphs.

4.1 Need for coordination

4.1.1 Mode S all-call lockout is used to minimize interference for all-call replies. This means that provision must be made to ensure that acquisition of Mode S aircraft is not denied to a neighbouring ground station with overlapping coverage.

4.1.2 The Mode S data link protocols for AICB and ELMs also need coordination because only one ground station at a time can perform any one of these protocols with a given Mode S transponder.

4.1.3 For these reasons, care must be exercised when deploying Mode S ground stations to ensure that handoff and communications protocol constraints are met.

4.2 All-call acquisition considerations

Note 1.— Three types of Mode S acquisition techniques are described in Appendix H, i.e. multisite, non-selective and clustered. Each technique has different characteristics from the standpoint of required channel time, Mode S all-call FRUIT generation, and the level of coordination required in a region of multisensor coverage. It should be recalled that the non-selective technique is not compatible with the Mode S subnetwork.

Note 2.— IC can take the form of II codes or SI codes.

4.2.1 Channel time requirements

Multisite and clustered acquisition require the transmission of the local site's IC code and thus use the Mode S-only all-call interrogation for Mode S acquisition. This interrogation is used together with the Mode A/C-only all-call interrogation to handle Mode A/C-equipped aircraft. Ground stations using multisite or clustered acquisition should use the combined interrogation described in Appendix H to obtain the benefit of a shared listening interval for Mode S-only and Mode A/C-only all-call replies.

4.2.2 Techniques for minimizing Mode S all-call FRUIT

4.2.2.1 Ground stations using a cluster of interrogators with the same IC code use a common lockout code. This means that aircraft under Mode S coverage (and lockout) of any one ground station will not reply to the all-call interrogations of any other ground station. These other ground stations will acquire the aircraft through ground communications.

4.2.2.2 Consider the set of six terminal ground stations shown in Figure J-10. Each circle defines the maximum range at which each ground station acquires and locks out Mode S aircraft. In order to have reliable operation to the acquisition range, the interrogation power is sufficient to interrogate most aircraft at considerably greater ranges. Thus, aircraft 1 will likely receive all-call interrogations from ground station D even though it is outside of D's acquisition range. Now assume that all of the ground stations are clustered interrogators with the same IC code. Aircraft 1 will not respond to all-call interrogations from the other ground stations if it is locked out by ground station B. When a common IC code is used, aircraft only reply to all-call interrogations when they enter or exit the combined coverage of a set of Mode S ground stations. Thus aircraft 2 will not respond to any all-call interrogations between points x and y. This acquisition technique produces the minimum Mode S all-call FRUIT.

4.2.2.3 If the six ground stations in Figure J-10 are using multisite acquisition, every aircraft will reply to the all-call interrogations of every ground station for which it is in cover and not in a state of lockout. Thus aircraft 1 in Figure J-10 would respond to the all-call replies of ground stations A, C, D, E and F if it is only locked out to ground station B. Consequently, this acquisition technique can produce a significant amount of all-call FRUIT.

4.2.2.4 When the multisite mode is used with en-route ground stations, aircraft able to receive an all-call interrogation beyond the ground station's maximum range must be at very high altitudes due to the earth's curvature. This limits the number of such aircraft and thus limits the all-call FRUIT. For example, an aircraft at 390 km (210 NM) from a ground station with a zero-degree screening angle must be above 9 150 m (30 000 ft) to receive the all-call interrogation.

4.2.2.5 The non-selective clustered acquisition technique (which is compatible with the Mode S subnetwork) should be used in high Mode S traffic densities where many terminal ground stations have overlapping coverage. The multisite acquisition mode may be used in any other environment.

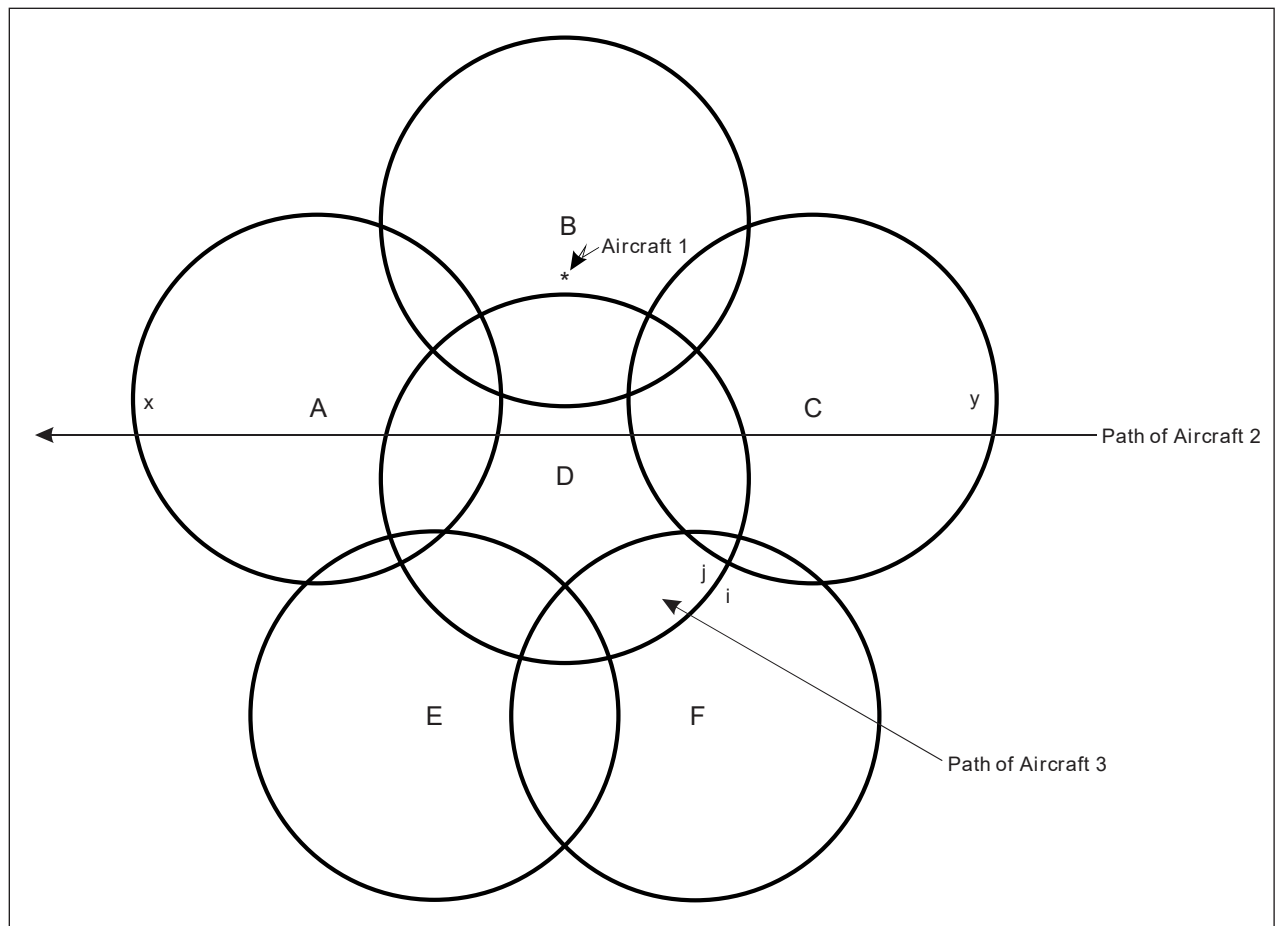


Figure J-10. Overlapping coverage of closely spaced Mode S ground stations

4.2.3 Ground station coordination

4.2.3.1 Need for coordination. Acquisition in a region of overlapping ground station coverage implies the need for some form of coordination between adjacent sites. Aircraft 3 in Figure J-10 is covered only by ground station F at point i but is in the joint coverage area of D and F at point j. Two options, namely, linked and unlinked ground station operation, are available.

4.2.3.2 Clustered ground station operation. If ground stations D and F in Figure J-10 are in contact via ground communications, F can send D a message giving the range, azimuth and Mode S address of aircraft 3. This information is sufficient for ground station D to schedule interrogations at the correct location using the proper Mode S address to acquire aircraft 3 without unlocking aircraft 3.

4.2.3.3 Autonomous ground station operation. Autonomous ground stations will normally use the multisite acquisition technique. Some administrative coordination is required for successful acquisition in overlapped regions. Each ground station need only use a different IC from any neighbour with which it has overlapping acquisition range coverage. In the situation illustrated in Figure J-10, each ground station could be assigned a unique IC code. Another acceptable assignment of IC codes is shown in Figure J-11: the six ground stations are assigned using only four different IC codes. It

is only required that unique IC codes be assigned to ground stations that share overlapping coverage within the areas in which they acquire and lock out Mode S aircraft. The IC code assignment of Figure J-11 satisfies this requirement in each region of double and triple overlap. The assignment of IC codes should be the subject of regional air navigation agreements.

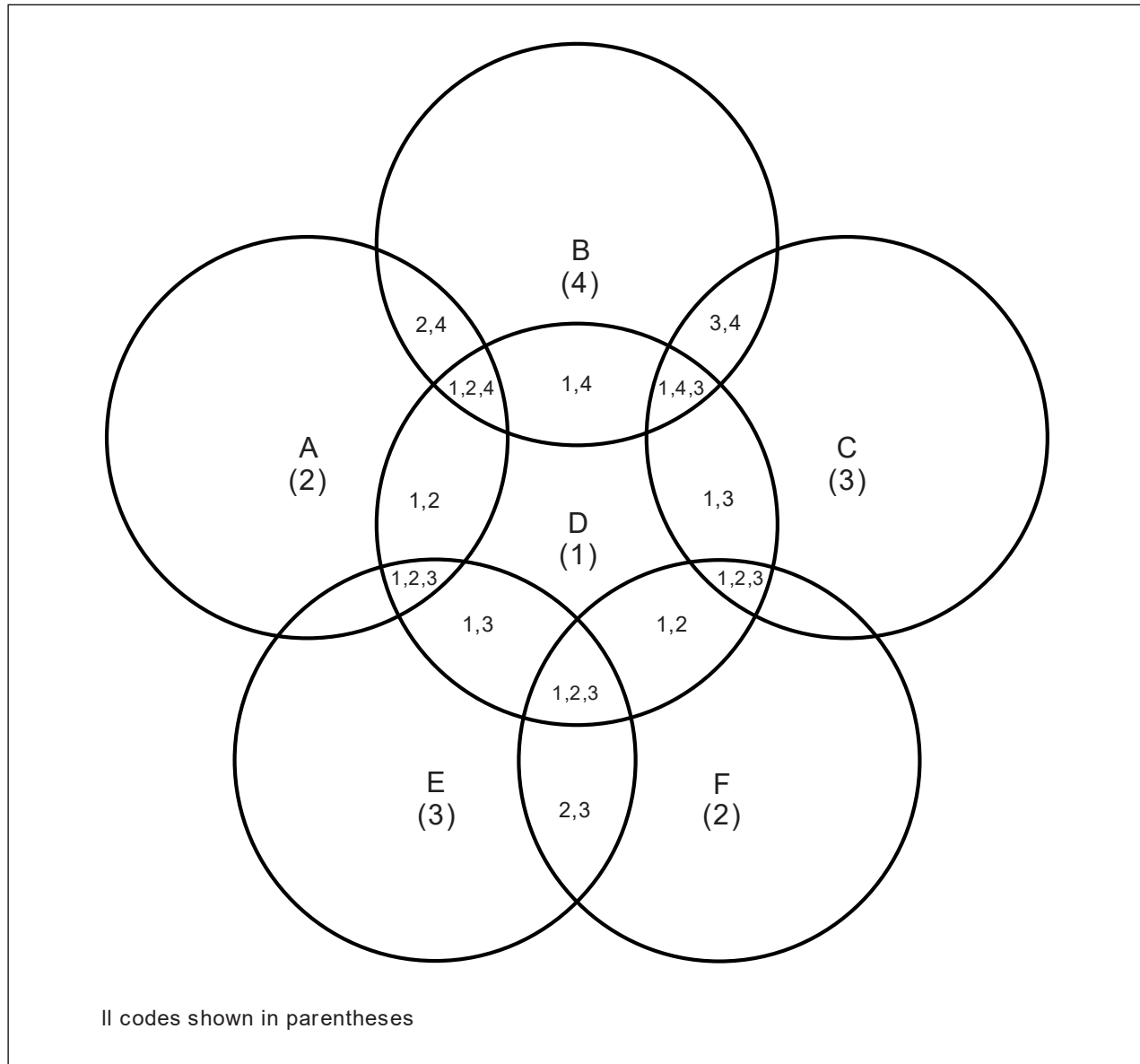


Figure J-11. Possible IC assignment (six ground stations)

4.2.3.4 The required number of different IC codes does not necessarily increase as the number of ground stations

increases. Consider the expanded ground station deployment shown in Figure J-12. Here five ground stations have been added to the original six, but no additional IC codes are required for the overlap regions assumed. If the complexity of the configuration of ground stations is such that satisfactory operation with multisite acquisition cannot be ensured with 15 II codes, then the use of SI codes or clustered ground station operation becomes necessary.

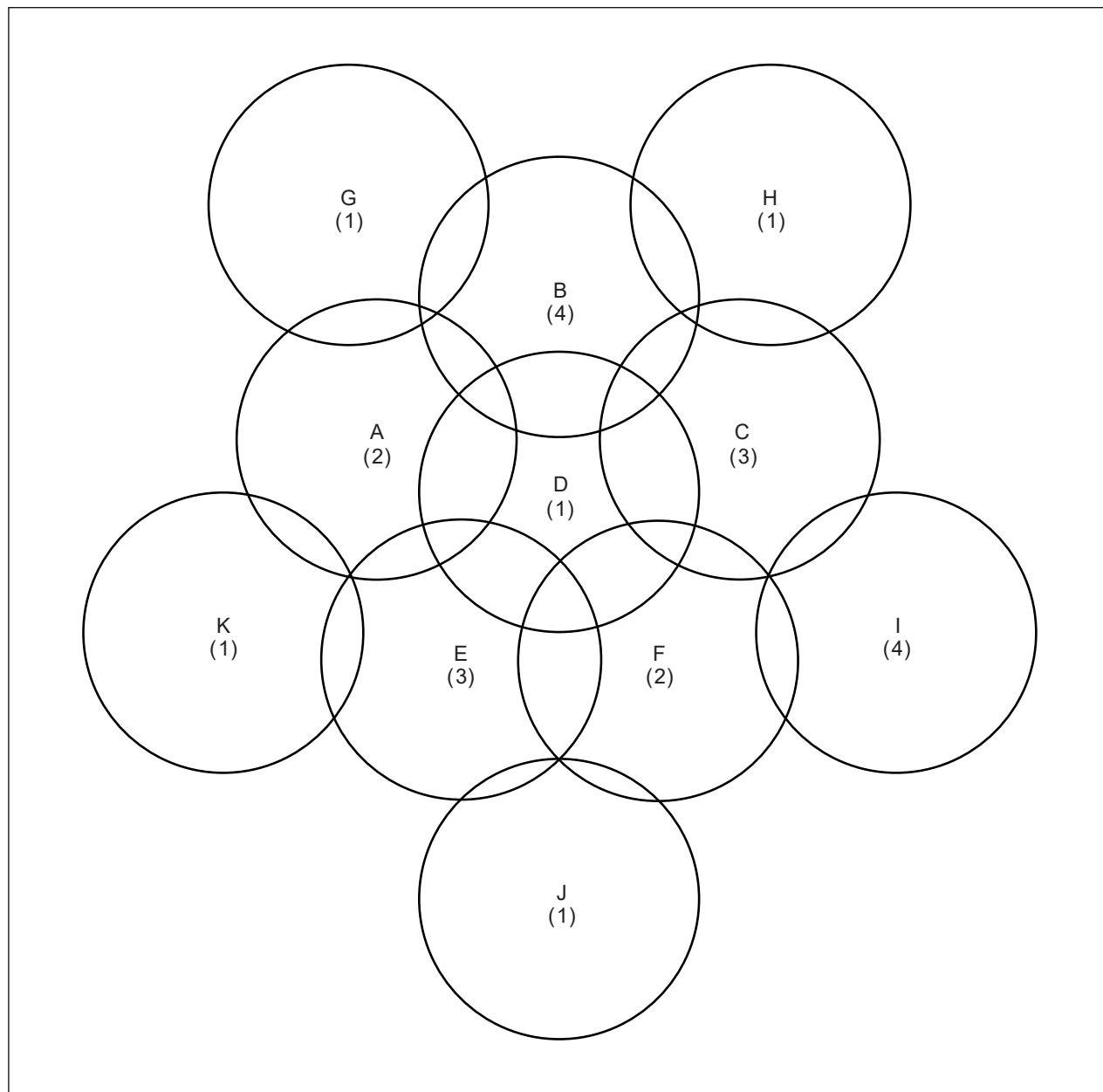


Figure J-12. Possible IC assignment (11 ground stations)

4.2.3.5 A more complex IC code assignment example is shown in Figure J-13. In this example, interrogators A, B,

D, E form a first cluster; C, F, I a second cluster; and L, M, N a third cluster. These three clusters show interconnections by ground communications and hence can use the same IC code. Note also the possibility of a single interrogator (labelled "I" in the figure) using different IC codes in different sectors in order to achieve compatible operation for the given code assignment.

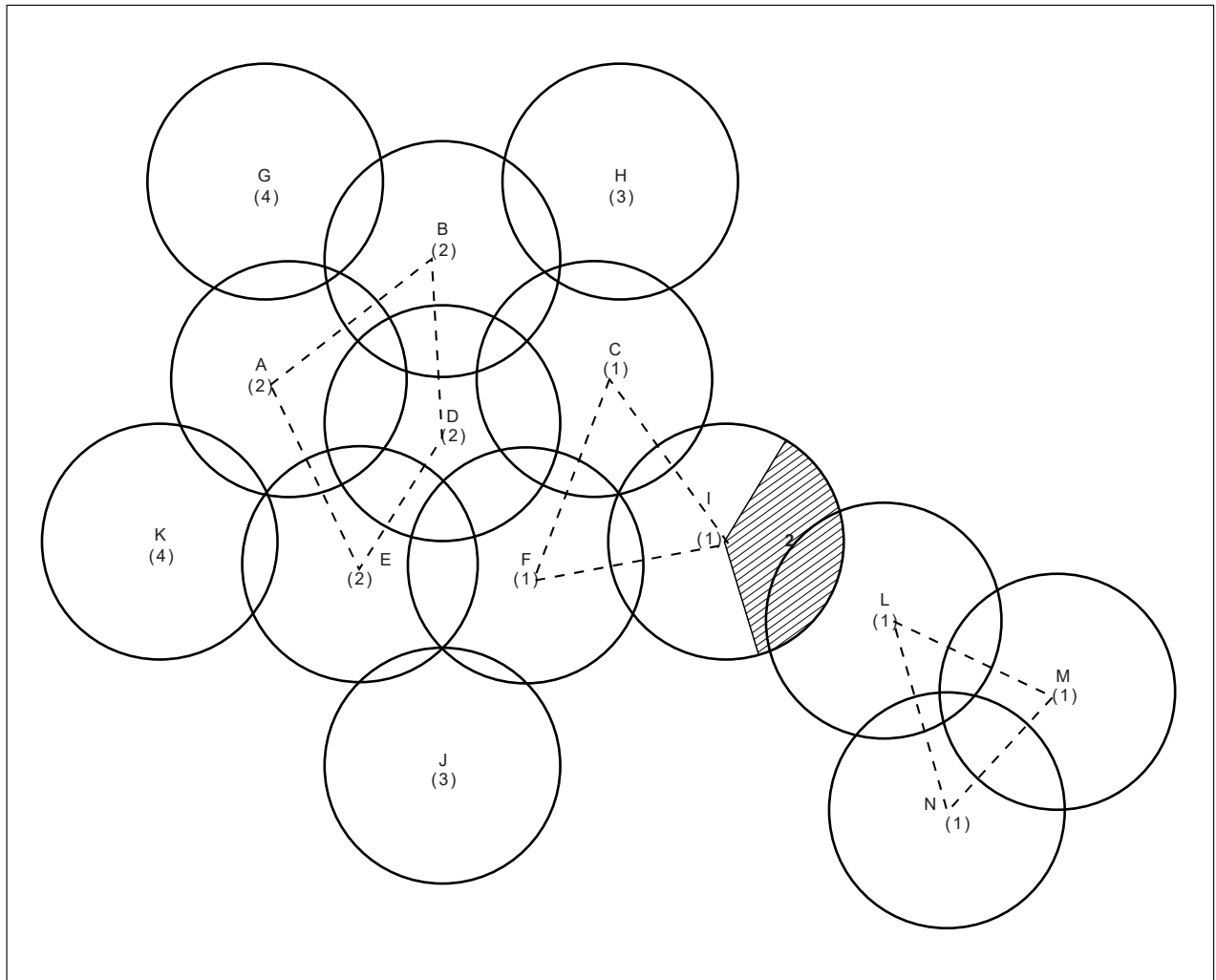


Figure J-13. Possible IC assignment with netted clusters of ground stations

4.2.4 Interrogator Code Allocation

4.2.4.1 The coordination of SSR Mode S interrogator codes is required in order to avoid overlapping coverage when autonomous ground stations use the multisite acquisition technique on the same Interrogator Code.

Note.— Guidance for planning criteria for SSR Mode S II Code is included in section 8 of this appendix.

4.2.4.2 Initially, coordination should be carried out at the State Civil Aviation Authority level and include all Mode S interrogator code users within a State, including military.

4.2.4.3 At the regional level, coordination should be enacted through ICAO Regional Offices. The ICAO regional coordination procedures, specific tools and mechanisms can vary depending on regional needs and limitations.

Note.— These specific mechanisms and procedures are described in the regional air navigation plans and other regional documents.

4.2.4.4 At the interregional level, coordination should be also undertaken through the ICAO Regional Offices, whenever the coverage overlap occurs between SSR Mode S interrogators located in different Regions. In order to accommodate the regional differences, bilateral coordination procedures should be agreed between the ICAO Regional Offices involved, while documenting, inter alia, actions with timelines and information required for coordination.

4.2.4.5 The information required for interregional coordination should include the Mode S interrogator position, range, allocated interrogator code and allocated coverage.

4.2.4.6 The list of the assigned SSR Mode S interrogator codes, along with their coverage maps, may be published in the regional ANP in order to facilitate the interregional coordination.

4.3 The use of multiple ICs by a single interrogator

If multiple ICs are used by a single interrogator, as shown for the interrogator labelled “I” in Figure J-13, the codes should be used on a sector basis. The sectors should be defined so that the boundaries do not coincide with busy traffic areas, i.e. along airways. The ICs should be chosen so that both codes can be used in a buffer zone across the sector boundaries so that selectively addressed aircraft can be locked out to Mode S-only all-calls in the buffer zone. Acquisition in the buffer zone should be capable of using all-call replies from both ICs.

4.4 Use of multiple ICs

4.4.1 When an interrogator is configured to use more than one IC, only one of the ICs can be used for full data link activity. Limited data link functions that may be carried out in all sectors include single segment Comm-A, the uplink and downlink broadcast protocols, and also GICB extraction, which includes ACAS RA and flight identity extraction. This is to keep down the complexity of the system and avoid the problems of coordinating data link activity across the sector boundaries. All data link activities should be terminated in an orderly way whenever possible as the aircraft exits the sector designated for full data link.

4.4.2 If ground communications are not available between interrogators D and F in Figure J-10, interrogator F can make aircraft 3 visible to D by withdrawing its lockout commands to aircraft 3. After the 18-second timeout, aircraft 3 will respond to the acquisition interrogations of ground station D and will be acquired. In order to be certain of a successful handoff, ground station F must periodically unlock all aircraft in the overlap region. This technique is only recommended for limited overlap situations. It must be recognized that this technique results in an increase in Mode S FRUIT.

4.4.3 The assignment of IC codes must be coordinated in regions of overlapping ground station coverage at

international boundaries to ensure acquisition of Mode S aircraft. The assignment of II and SI codes should be the subject of regional coordination (see Annex 10, Volume IV).

4.4.4 *Clustered acquisition.* Clustered interrogators using a common non-zero IC code and ground coordination produce the same level of all-call FRUIT as the non-selective technique. This is the preferred technique in very high Mode S traffic and interrogator density environments.

4.4.5 *Multisite acquisition.* Multisite acquisition requires slightly more channel time, produces more all-call FRUIT, but requires no ground communication with adjacent ground stations.

4.5 Mode S data link coordination consideration

Note.— These are two ways of managing Mode S communications: “multisite” and “non-selective protocols”. These techniques differ in the amount of channel time required and in the level of coordination required in a region of multisensor coverage.

4.5.1 Channel time requirements

4.5.1.1 Except for the enhanced protocols, the use of the multisite technique for AICB and ELM protocols requires that the interrogator make a reservation when performing a message delivery. For the AICB, this is performed as part of the delivery process and requires no additional channel activity. For the multisite ELM protocols, the reservation requires a separate interrogation/reply transaction before the ELM delivery begins. This could take place during the surveillance transaction performed in each scan and thus might not represent additional channel activity. Lost channel time can definitely occur when a ground station attempts a reservation and finds that the transponder is busy. It must then make another attempt on a subsequent scan.

4.5.1.2 When the non-selective mode is in use, only one ground station at a time is authorized to provide data link service to a particular aircraft. Therefore, a reservation process is not required. Channel utilization is therefore more efficient.

4.5.2 Interrogator coordination

4.5.2.1 In order to use the non-selective communications technique in a region of overlapping coverage, ground stations must be coordinated via ground communications to assure that only one ground station at a time is assigned data link responsibility for a given aircraft.

4.5.2.2 The only coordination required when using the multisite protocols is for the II codes to be assigned such that interrogators with the same II code never share overlapping coverage.

Note.— Guidance for planning criteria for SSR Mode S II code is included in section 8 of this appendix.

4.5.3 Summary of data link coordination considerations

4.5.3.1 *Non-selective protocols.* The non-selective protocols permit more efficient operation than the multisite protocols but require ground communication. Non-selective protocols will be of use for:

- a) a ground station with no overlapping coverage; or
- b) a cluster of terminal ground stations. Since ground communication is provided for acquisition

coordination, it can also be used for communication coordination.

4.5.3.2 *Multisite protocols.* The multisite protocols use slightly more channel time than the non-selective protocols, but they can be implemented with a minimum of site-to-site coordination. Multisite protocols will be used whenever the non-selective protocols cannot be used, i.e. in the majority of cases.

5. EXAMPLE OF OVERALL GROUND STATION OPERATION

A functional block diagram of a Mode S ground station showing the interrelationship of major functions is presented in Figure J-14. Three different categories of processing are identified in the figure. Pulse processing refers to activities that take place within microseconds. These tasks are usually performed in special-purpose hardware. Beam dwell processing refers to activities that take place within the passage of the antenna beam and thus take place within milliseconds. Scan processing refers to activities that are performed in each scan of the radar antenna and thus take place within seconds. Dwell processing and scan processing are normally implemented in general purpose computers. Experience has shown that the implementation of beam dwell processing requires great care in order to complete channel management and Mode A/C reply correlation tasks within the allotted time.

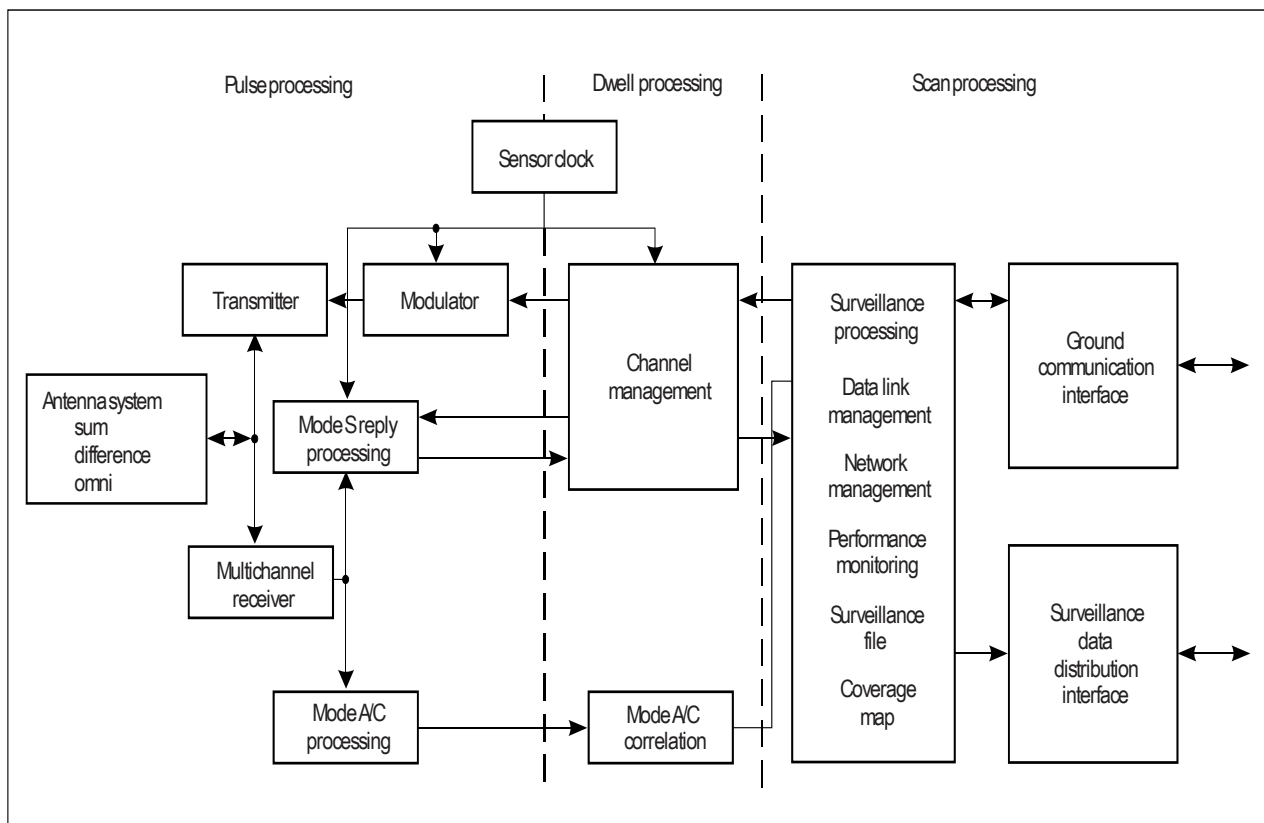


Figure J-14. Example of a Mode S ground station functional block diagram

6. OPERATIONAL NEED FOR MODE S

6.1 Improved detection performance in high density

Problems of resolution due to synchronous garbling are frequently encountered with Mode A/C radar. For example, it is particularly critical when two aircraft are transferred between two centres at the same place at the same time but at different altitudes. The selective interrogation technique used by Mode S allows the interrogation of two aircraft in close proximity without generating an overlap of the triggered replies.

6.2 Improved integrity of air-ground exchanges

The Mode S protocol includes a 24-bit parity mechanism which supports the rejection of corrupted messages. Therefore, the problem of invalid Mode A code and altitude encountered with Mode A/C is drastically reduced.

6.3 More efficient use of the 1 030/1 090 MHz band

Mode S has been designed to minimize the number of transmissions made on 1 090. Once acquired, the all-call replies are inhibited using the lockout protocol. A basic Mode S Surveillance can be achieved using only one selective interrogation/reply cycle per scan. Parameter changes (e.g. Mode A code) are reported by the airborne side avoiding useless systematic extractions.

6.4 Shortage of Mode A code

6.4.1 In high traffic density areas, and in areas with a complex organization of the air traffic services, there are occasions when there are insufficient Mode A codes for assigning on the basis of a simple Mode A code allocation scheme. Mode S ELS provides the Aircraft Identification as an alternative means to identify all flights without recourse to the use of the Mode A codes. In this instance, those aircraft that are compliant with Mode S ELS may be assigned a common, rather than a unique, Mode A code.

6.4.2 The use of Mode S ELS is extending into areas with lower traffic densities because it is easier and more efficient to use Mode S ELS in a large block of airspace to reduce the number of flights transiting between areas where ELS is supported and those where it is not supported.

6.5 Reduced R/T use and improved safety

6.5.1 The Mode S format used for the encoding of the interrogations and the replies allows additional information (up to 112 bits in a message) to be exchanged between air and ground or between air and air. By supporting the extraction of a number of aircraft registers, the Mode S enables the Enhanced Surveillance application.

6.5.2 Due to the ready availability of key parameters available from EHS-compliant aircraft, an air traffic controller is presented with information rather than needing to contact the aircrew for the information.

6.5.3 The improved performance and ready availability of key information, such as the altitude the pilot has selected for the aircraft, have been seen to contribute to improved safety by reducing level bust occurrences.

6.5.4 The improved safety brought by the use of Mode S EHS may also be of interest in areas of lower traffic densities. As an increasing number of aircraft are becoming equipped to download certain parameters, it is expected to see the use of EHS spread in these areas, too.

7. MODE S IMPLEMENTATION CONSIDERATION

7.1 The operational use of Mode S provides better surveillance performance (e.g. better detection of aircraft and availability of additional aircraft information) which could, in certain operational scenarios, result in improved safety. However, to achieve the expected benefits of Mode S, a thorough assessment should be conducted of the numerous technical, operational and legislative issues involved. An air navigation service provider contemplating the implementation of Mode S should therefore balance its needs for improved surveillance performance with its capacity to handle the considerable additional complexities. Upgrading from Mode A/C to Mode S should not be considered as a simple replacement exercise. Some of the associated issues or tasks to take into account are mentioned in the following paragraphs.

7.2 On conventional SSR type radar it was necessary to establish an appropriate Mode A/C interlaced interrogation pattern and the associated PRF. On Mode S radar, the configuration of the interrogation pattern (Mode Interlace pattern (MIP)) is more complex. A period of time shall be reserved for the Mode S all-call acquisition, another for the selective interrogations and yet another for Mode A/C only interrogation to detect the aircraft not yet Mode S-equipped. In general Mode S radar provides a fully configurable MIP which needs to be optimized, taking into account local constraints.

7.3 One of the constraints is the potential presence of faulty Mode S or Mode A/C transponders. This requires the addition of classical Mode A/C interrogations in the MIP to ensure their detection. This approach has been required in both the US and in Europe to support the operational introduction of Mode S. However, this approach can obscure certain problems associated with faulty transponders and also contributes to 1 090 MHz RF pollution. This suboptimal interrogation scheme can be removed if an appropriate monitoring programme is established. The MIP of Mode S radar may need to be configured in order to cope with older Mode A/C-equipped aircraft, correct Mode S, incorrect Mode S and incorrect old Mode A/C transponders met in the coverage.

7.4 Mode S radars can be configured to provide different types of radar coverage like:

- a) surveillance coverage in which selective interrogations can be performed;
- b) lockout coverage where the aircraft will be locked out once acquired (i.e. where the aircraft does not reply anymore to the all-call interrogations made using the specified interrogator code); and
- c) data link coverage where airborne data may be extracted.

All aforementioned “coverages” should be configured differently depending on manufacturers and local/regional agreements. The correct configuration of the lockout coverage is critical as it directly impacts on the interoperability with the adjacent radars using the same interrogator code. The different coverage can be configured by a maximum range per sector or by using coverage maps defined in a global system of coordinates like the - WGS-84 system of coordinates. Radar coverage, especially the radar lockout coverage, shall be carefully configured to ensure interoperability with the adjacent radars using the same interrogator code. This may force the implementing authority to think about the real operational requirement rather than just use the maximum available physical coverage. In general, high diligence is needed during planning and implementation of new Mode S radars to avoid compromising the performance of existing ones that operate in the same geographic area.

7.5 The “traditional” Mode A/C SSR transponder is a relatively simple avionic component providing two types of reply (Mode A code, Mode C code). The implementation of Mode S has drastically changed the level of complexity of SSR transponders used on board the aircraft. This is because Mode S requires:

- a) more complex functions which may have their own failure modes (e.g. the use of a phase demodulator to decode the Mode S interrogations);
- b) more stringent requirements on the signal-in-space than on the Mode A/C transmissions (frequency

stability, pulse width, etc.);

- c) the management of a complex protocol with a significant degree of interdependency between the data received and transmitted; and
- d) the transponder to act as a focal point of communication in relation with the rest of the avionics. The number of interfaces involved makes the transponder more complex and dependent upon a correct installation on the aircraft (e.g. 24-bit aircraft address, ground switch and correct update rate on the input interfaces).

7.6 Mode S transponders may have been installed a long time ago to support the mandatory ACAS function. Their Mode A/C function has been permanently used by ATC, but their Mode S functions may not have been used. Therefore, should a failure impacting Mode A/C happen, it would have been detected by ATC during normal operation and corrective action would have been undertaken. On the contrary, before implementing Mode S for ground surveillance, no system checked the correct operation of the Mode S transponders so a number of failures may have accumulated over the years of operation.

7.7 A number of Mode S transponder versions have been observed to be non-compliant with Annex 10 Volume IV, Chapter 2, 2.1.5.2 requirements (e.g. no SI code, no reply to aircraft register extraction although level 2, and incorrect all-call parity). Although actions have been taken in some areas (mainly where Mode S has been implemented) to address this problem, some aircraft with incorrect transponders still operate (mostly in areas where Mode S has not yet been implemented).

7.8 During the initial deployment of European Mode S it was discovered that avionics upgrades performed on some aircraft had resulted in erroneous transponder operations so that, in some cases, the aircraft could not even be detected by the ground radar. It is therefore highly recommended that before commencing Mode S surveillance in a given airspace, a proper fleet monitoring programme be put in place for the purpose of timely detection and rectification of hidden transponder problems.

7.9 Remote Field Monitors (Parrots) may require an upgrade to ensure that they are compatible with Mode S ground stations.

7.10 A Mode S transponder can provide the barometric pressure altitude in 25-ft resolution if it is provided with such resolution by the pressure altitude sensor. Some aircraft are still equipped with Gilham encoders which have a 100-ft resolution only. Many existing ATM systems are based on the use of 100-ft resolution. In such cases, if pressure altitude is provided in 25-ft resolution, means should be provided to convert it to the 100-ft resolution, as used by the ground ATM. The conversion is done by rounding the altitude to the nearest 100-ft altitude. The use of a 25-ft altitude barometric pressure altitude brings advantages for the ATM system in terms of early detection of vertical trajectory changes. However, experience has shown that it is necessary to modify the vertical trackers filter in a way to avoid false STCA alarms based on small altitude variations.

7.11 The communication lines for transferring surveillance information in a Mode S radar require much higher throughput as there is more information per aircraft. For example, compared to a Mode A/C radar, Mode S ELS and EHS require twice and three times more throughput, respectively. Also, a proper format (like ASTERIX Category 048) can be used to transmit the additional data to the centre.

7.12 Centralized trackers may need to be adapted to recognize the Mode S messages. The additional information present in Mode S data messages supports improved tracking algorithms. Any tracking systems deployed will need to be adapted to accommodate the Mode S data formats. Similarly, further adaptations may be necessary to exploit the additional information contained within those messages, which can enable improvements to the tracker functionality. Specifically, the multi-radar tracker should be modified to take into account the 24-bit aircraft address to facilitate the plot-to-track association. Additionally, if EHS is implemented, the centralized tracker should be upgraded to handle the

additional aircraft parameters and to filter out possible spurious values.

7.13 The use of “Aircraft Identification” which is broadcast directly from the aircraft (in an implementation like the ELS), rather than via a ground-based correlation between flight plan and Mode A code, offers significant refinement in the surveillance infrastructure. In order to exploit such benefits and also to cope with the “common” or “conspicuity” Mode A codes, the Flight Plan Processing System (FPPS) may need to be modified accordingly.

7.14 Presenting the additional information broadcast by Mode S EHS-compliant aircraft to the controller can result in significant improvements in system safety whilst at the same time reducing controller workload (mainly by reducing radiotelephony). However, essential information only should be presented to ensure that the display remains legible and clear.

7.15 In geographical areas where there is an insufficient number of interrogator codes available, it may be beneficial to network a number of Mode S radars that have overlapping coverage in a cluster. This involves interconnecting Mode S radars by ground communications so that they can exchange position and 24-bit aircraft addresses. In that way, each interrogator does not have to rely on all-call interrogations to acquire every new aircraft entering the composite coverage area and can use selective interrogations for aircraft already “acquired” by the cluster. However, the implementation of a cluster requires additional functionality in the radars and proper ground communications. In addition, some cluster designs may use an additional function known as a cluster controller to centrally manage the exchange of information with interrogators. Therefore, the additional costs, and the more complex means and method of management, should be duly considered before a decision is made for cluster implementation.

7.16 The replacement of an SSR Mode A/C with a Mode S, which provides additional pieces of information, is a major change to the ATM infrastructure. Therefore, an appropriate review of possible implications with regard to safety and security should be undertaken in order to ensure that the introduction of the new systems has not degraded the existing configuration. A safety analysis would be highly desirable to ensure that the differences brought by Mode S are understood and that the partial or full failures of new equipment can be tolerated or mitigated.

7.17 Aircraft Identification (flight identification) configured in the aircraft avionics to identify flights may be used in place of the Mode A code for identification and correlation with the flight plan. In such environments, a non-unique Mode A code (conspicuity code) can be used for all aircraft that provide correct Aircraft Identification through their Mode S replies. Since Annex 6 contains no requirement for having an on-board means of configuring Aircraft Identification, appropriate regional or national regulations would be necessary to permit operational use of this feature in the desired airspace. It should be noted that Aircraft Identification is a new piece of information to enter and verify in the aircraft. The on-board setting of the Aircraft Identification can be incorrect or even forgotten by the flight crew. Moreover, in some aircraft, the crew may not have the means of entering or re-entering the Aircraft Identification. As such, before commencing the operational use of Aircraft Identification, flight crew should be properly trained, and necessary changes to operational procedures and controller workstations should be modified to indicate if the information correlates with the flight plan. Finally, a monitoring system to detect incorrect setting for the purpose of their rectification would be highly desirable.

7.18 Aircraft that are properly equipped for Mode S Enhanced Surveillance (EHS) provide, through replies to ground interrogations, the following additional information on their short-term intent:

- a) Magnetic Heading;
- b) Indicated Airspeed;
- c) Mach No.;
- d) Vertical Rate (barometric rate or, preferably, baro-inertial);
- e) Roll Angle;

- f) Track Angle Rate;
- g) True Track Angle;
- h) Ground Speed;
- i) Selected Altitude (MCP/FCU Selected altitude is currently used, flight management system (FMS)-selected altitude is not yet available on all platforms); and
- j) Barometric Pressure Setting (where readily available).

7.19 One parameter that can be of considerable benefit to ATC is the MCP/FCU Selected Altitude. The receipt of this parameter by the ATC provides an additional confirmation that the vertical clearance has been well understood and followed. It can also provide for the early detection of possible level busts. Mode S EHS brings safety benefits even when only a portion of the traffic is properly equipped. Some aircraft can be configured to provide additional data items, but their use should be considered with caution since some airborne installations may not have been certified hence data may be erroneous. Regulations are therefore needed to ensure correct airborne installations and the correctness of the data they transmit to the ground. Again, a proper fleet monitoring programme to validate the transmitted information would be highly desirable.

7.20 It has been noted that from time to time the content of the extracted aircraft register does not correspond to the content of the requested register. For example, the content of Register 50₁₆ is received when extracting Register 40₁₆. This is due to interrogations transmitted by different radars arriving at the transponder at almost the same time. Only one reply is generated and received by the two radars resulting in one radar not receiving the content of the register it has requested. Different options can be implemented to decrease the impact of such phenomenon: limit the number of radar extracting aircraft registers; implement specific filters in radar or in the surveillance data processing to discard the erroneous data (e.g. when two different registers are received with the same content they are both discarded); implement Mode S protocol enhancement to differentiate the content of the MB field in DF20/21.

7.21 Mode S transponders are capable of downlinking ACAS RA reports the aircraft is experiencing. The operational use of ACAS RA is still being studied. Moreover, monitoring programmes have shown that some platforms are continuously transmitting empty RA reports. Such false RA reports should be filtered out before the information is provided to the ATC. More information can be found in Doc 9863.

7.22 Mode S radars continue to track the aircraft on the ground after landing. Although ICAO Annex 10 requires aircraft with an automatic weight-on-wheels type switch not to transmit all-call replies when on the ground, some aircraft with incorrect installations still continue to be acquired and tracked on the ground. These aircraft are shown on the ATC display resulting in useless clutter of labels around big airports. Systems implementing Mode S must have the possibility to filter out aircraft on the ground to avoid creating clutter on the controller display. Such filter can be located in the radar or in the control centre. The filter cannot rely only on the on-the-ground status provided by the aircraft and must use a combination of on-the-ground status, speed and altitude information in limited geographical areas.

7.23 The normal Mode S acquisition process requires a number of successive steps to acquire, confirm the track, lock out the transponder and remove possible reflection(s). This process could take several scans. This is not a problem on the outer range of the radar coverage, but it could be seen as a constraint after aircraft take-off. The constraint can be overcome by implementing specific zones in which the initialization will be done more rapidly. Zones of quick acquisition may need to be configured in proximity of runways in order to reduce the delay of acquisition after take-off.

7.24 The regulatory authority must ensure that appropriate legislation (e.g. in the form of an Aeronautical Information Publication) that mandates the carriage and operation of suitable avionics is published. Its date of publication should be such that aircraft operators have an acceptable period of time to undertake the necessary upgrade(s). Therefore,

before deploying Mode S in an area, it must be ensured that legislative requirements pertaining to the operational introduction of Mode S are readily available, and the dates are consistent with the needs of the surveillance service provider. The regulation must detail the correct version of Mode S transponder required.

7.25 If the period of time allowed for the upgrades is significant, it may be necessary to implement some form of exemptions procedures to be applied during the transition period leading up to the operational introduction of Mode S. The time between the announcement of the Mode S carriage requirements and the date of full operational implementation is referred to as the transition period. It is necessary to ensure that, if a transition period is introduced, operational aspects and implications of mixed mode (i.e. both Modes A/C and S) operations are considered. As with all legislation, means of enforcing the requirements should also be put in place.

7.26 As specified in Annex 10, Volume III, the aviation authority of each State is responsible for assigning 24-bit addresses to all aircraft in its registry using the block allocated by ICAO to that State. It has, however, been observed that in some cases the 24-bit aircraft address transmitted by the aircraft does not match its nationality (i.e. its State of Registry's block) and several aircraft reported duplicate 24-bit aircraft addresses. These incorrect aircraft addresses were observed when:

- a) first installations of a Mode S transponder were made;
- b) a major modification was made to the Mode S equipment; or
- c) the aircraft was sold to another State, which required a change of its registration.

The third case described above has been observed most frequently. Since those occurrences can jeopardize flight safety and undermine the effectiveness of systems, appropriate measures need to be taken to ensure that the registration and the 24-bit aircraft address of every aircraft are processed and assigned simultaneously by the regulatory authority. For more details, refer to Appendix O.

7.27 ICs are a scarce resource. Before implementing Mode S radars, it is necessary to coordinate the allocation of the required ICs with all the other civil and military users operating Mode S radars in the same area. In general, this requires the establishment of a regional coordination process to allocate the ICs. The coordination between the civil aviation authorities is managed by the regional offices of ICAO, which may delegate that task to some other organizations (e.g. FAA and EUROCONTROL). If military authorities use Mode S in the same area, they must also be involved in the IC coordination process. Regional agreements should ideally be in place to facilitate the allocation of ICs. In areas where only a few Mode S radars are deployed, a simple paper process can be sufficient to ensure that there is no overlap between two radars using the same code. However, where a large number of Mode S radars with overlapping coverage have been implemented (e.g. Europe and North America), a computerized tool for managing ICs would be helpful.

8. PLANNING CRITERIA FOR THE COORDINATION OF SSR MODE S INTERROGATOR IDENTIFIER (II) CODES

8.1 Introduction

8.1.1 Applicability of planning criteria

8.1.1.1 Mode S surveillance operation requires that both the SSR Mode S ground station and the aircraft are capable of identifying each other. The aircraft is identified in this process by the 24-bit aircraft address; the SSR Mode S ground station is identified by its interrogator code, which can either be an II code or a SI code.

8.1.1.2 Four bits are available for 16 different II codes. II code 0 requires special handling and is not further addressed here (see Annex 10 Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.5.2.1.2.3). This leaves II codes 1-15 for assignment to fixed Mode S ground stations with overlapping coverage. In some regions, certain II codes have been reserved for specific purposes and are not available for general assignment. For aircraft complying with the provisions of Annex 10, Volume IV, Amendment 73 (or later), an additional 63 codes known as SI codes can be used, which adds significant complexity when assigning and operating SI codes.

8.1.1.3 This complexity results from the fact that SI codes are a later addition to the ICAO SARPs for SSR Mode S transponders (1998). Currently, many Mode S transponders in operation do not have SI code capability. Therefore, it cannot be assumed that all transponders in any region of airspace are 100 per cent equipped to handle both SI and II codes, even if a mandate exists.

8.1.1.4 Aircraft without SI code capability operating in designated II and/or SI code airspace require special handling to ensure that they can be placed in surveillance by all covering Mode S interrogators. The level of complexity necessary to provide reliable service to aircraft which are not equipped with SI code capability is beyond the scope of the planning criteria in this appendix. Therefore, this technique of SI code assignment is not further addressed here, and these planning criteria described below can only be used for assignment of II codes.

Note.— For more information on the assignment and management of SI codes, see ICAO EUR Doc 024 – IC Allocation for the European Region and Eurocontrol IC Planning Tool.

8.1.2 Selective interrogation of Mode S aircraft

8.1.2.1 In order to selectively interrogate a Mode S-equipped aircraft, the interrogator (SSR Mode S ground station) needs to know the aircraft's Mode S address and its approximate position. To acquire the address and position of a Mode S-equipped aircraft, the interrogator transmits all-call interrogations. A Mode S equipped aircraft will respond to such interrogations with its unique 24-bit aircraft address. Acquisition can also be accomplished by provision of the address and position through other means (e.g. clustering of interrogators, which is described in 8.3.3 of this appendix).

8.1.2.2 The designated operational range of the SSR Mode S interrogator is the range within which the interrogator accepts all-call replies from aircraft or generates selective interrogations to aircraft. When the aircraft is outside the designated operational range of the SSR Mode S interrogator, the interrogator does not accept all-call replies received from the aircraft transponder to all-call interrogations. The interrogator will also no longer generate selective interrogations to "acquired" aircraft that have left the designated operational range, in which case, after 18 seconds, the aircraft will no longer be locked out for all-call interrogations from this interrogator. In both cases, the aircraft may receive (and respond to) all-calls from this interrogator, but the responses will not be accepted by this interrogator (SSR Mode S ground station).

8.1.2.3 Once the response is received by the interrogator and the aircraft is within the designated operational range

of the interrogator, the aircraft will be added to the interrogator's list of acquired aircraft — the aircraft is in an “acquired” state. The designated operational range is programmed into the SSR interrogator and is promulgated by the State responsible for the SSR Mode S ground station.

8.1.2.4 Once the aircraft is in the acquired state (i.e. it has been added to the interrogator's list of aircraft, of which the 24-bit aircraft address has been acquired), the aircraft is instructed to no longer respond to (or be “locked-out” from) Mode S all-calls from that particular ground station, in order to minimize all-call synchronous garbling. This is achieved when the aircraft receives Mode S selectively addressed interrogations that contain an instruction to the on-board SSR Mode S transponder not to respond to Mode S all-call interrogations from that interrogator.

8.1.2.5 When an aircraft is within the designated operational range of two (or more) Mode S ground stations, it must be acquired and locked out (from all-call interrogations) by each Mode S ground station. This is known as multisite acquisition and multisite lockout. Measures need to be taken to avoid aircraft, within the designated operational range of more than one SSR Mode S interrogator (the SSR Mode S ground stations have overlapping coverage), receiving interrogations from interrogators with the same interrogator identifier. This is achieved by ensuring that Mode S interrogators with the overlapping designated operational range have been assigned different interrogator identifiers or are coordinated for ground communications (see 8.3.3 of this appendix). The assignment of interrogator identifier codes is subject to regional coordination.

8.2 Interrogator Identifier

8.2.1 The interrogator identifier (II) is a four-digit code (0 – 15) which is transmitted by the SSR Mode S ground station when transmitting a Mode S-only all-call (or a Mode S-selective) interrogation. It serves the purpose of identifying the SSR Mode S ground station. When the aircraft is operating in an area where two (or more) SSR Mode S ground stations have overlapping coverage, different II codes are required to ensure that all SSR Mode S ground stations can provide surveillance on the aircraft independent from each other. In special cases, overlapping SSR Mode S ground stations may share the same II code (see 8.3.3 of this appendix).

8.2.2 A Mode S-only all-call interrogation elicits replies only from Mode S transponders. The (uplink) format of the Mode S-only all-call is shown in Figure J-15. (See Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.5.2.1):

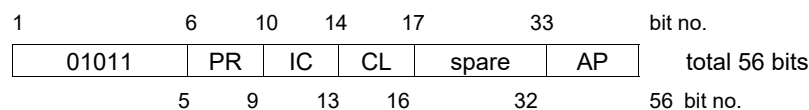


Figure J-15. Uplink format 11

8.2.2.1 This message contains the following information:

Bit 1-5 01011 (uplink format; decimal value 11):
If the uplink format is 01011 (decimal value 11), the content of bits 6 – 56 is as described below:

Bit 6-9 PR (probability of reply); this information is not further addressed here.

Bit 10-13 IC (interrogator code):
These four bits contain the interrogator identifier (0-15) or the last four bits of the surveillance identifier (SI).

Bit 14-16 CL (code label):

If CL = 000, the information in the IC field is the interrogator identifier.

If CL = 001 to 100 (decimal value 1 to 4), the information in the IC field contains the last four bits of the surveillance identifier.

Bit 33-56 AP (address/parity):
For a Mode S-only all-call, the address consists of 24 one's, on which the parity is overlaid.

8.2.3 A Mode S-only all-call reply from the aircraft, in which the II (or SI) is encoded in the PI field, has the format shown in Figure J-16. (See Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.5.2.2):

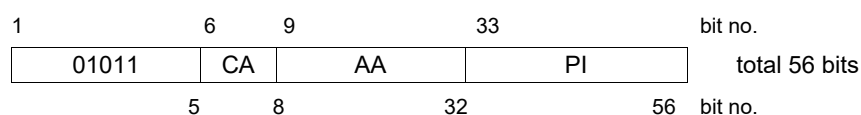


Figure J-16. Downlink format 11

8.2.3.1 This message contains the following information:

Bit 1-5 01011 (downlink format; decimal value 11)
If the downlink format is 01011 (decimal value 11), the content of bits 6 – 56 is as described below:

Bit 6-8 CA (capability)
An encoded definition of the communications capability of the transponder.

Bit 9-32 AA (address announced)
24-bit aircraft address.

Bit 33-56 PI (parity/interrogator identifier):

Interrogator identifier code (II or SI), on which the parity is overlaid.

Note.— The interrogator identifier is the same as that received by the aircraft in the all-call message as described in 8.2.1 of this appendix.

8.2.4 Following the Mode S-only all-call reply, the ground station will send a selective interrogation, which uses the format shown in Figure J-17 or Figure J-18. (See Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.6.1 to 3.1.2.6.4):

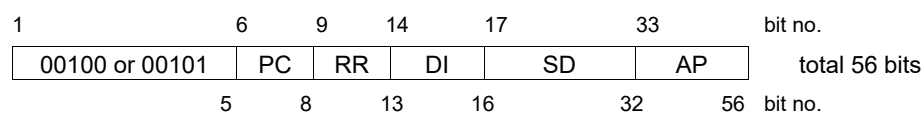


Figure J-17. Uplink formats 4 and 5

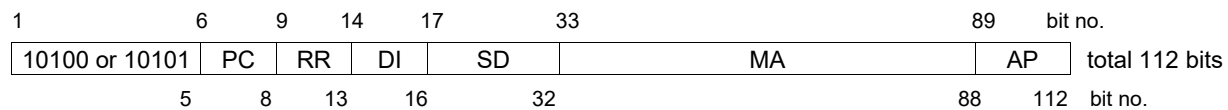


Figure J-18. Uplink format 20 and 21

8.2.4.1 This message contains the following information:

Bit 1-5 00100, 00101, 10100 or 10101 (Uplink Format; decimal value 4, 5, 20 or 21)

If the uplink format of the selective interrogation is 00100 (decimal value 4), the selective interrogation is a surveillance interrogation altitude request.

If the uplink format of the selective interrogation is 00101 (decimal value 5), the selective interrogation is a surveillance interrogation identity request.

If the uplink format of the selective interrogation is 10101 (decimal value 20), the selective interrogation is a Comm-A interrogation altitude request.

If the uplink format of the selective interrogation is 10101 (decimal value 21), the selective interrogation is a Comm-A interrogation identity (Mode A) request.

After obtaining the range, the azimuth and the 24-bit Mode S address from the all-call reply, a Mode S interrogator will start selective Mode S surveillance (of the aircraft) using the uplink format 4 (UF=4) interrogation to obtain a surveillance update of the altitude of the aircraft at every scan. At track initiation, the interrogator will also send an interrogation with the uplink format 5 (UF=5) to obtain the aircraft Mode A code. The interrogator does not need to continuously read out the Mode A code since changes in the Mode A code are indicated in the flight status field of a Mode S reply with the downlink format DF = 4, 5, 20 or 21.

Bit 6-8 PC (protocol)

If PC=1, the transponder shall lock out to II=0 (non-selective lockout).

Bit 9-13 RR (reply request); command the length and content of a requested reply.

Bit 14-16 DI (designator identification).

The designator identification identifies the structure of the SD field. (See Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.6.1.3 for details)

Bit 17-32 SD (Special Designator)

Contains a number of control codes, specific to SSR, including the interrogator identifier code of the interrogator and the lockout subfield (LOS) bit that commands multisite lockout (See Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.6.1.4 for details).

Bit 33-56 AP (address/parity) *Uplink Formats 4 and 5 only:*

24-bit aircraft address of the aircraft which is selectively interrogated and on which the parity is overlaid.

Bit 33-88 MA (message; Comm. A) *Uplink format 20 and 21 only:*

The MA field contains a data link message to the aircraft.

Bit 88-112 AP (address/parity) *Uplink format 20 and 21 only:*

24-bit aircraft address of the aircraft which is selectively interrogated and on which the parity is overlaid.

8.2.5. The aircraft responds as requested by the selective interrogation. The process of selective interrogation and replies continues until the aircraft is outside the designated operational range of the SSR interrogator. As long as the aircraft receives the selective interrogations with LOS=1, it is locked out to all-calls from that interrogator.

8.3 Coordination of II codes of adjacent SSR Mode S interrogators (ground stations)

8.3.1 Coordination of the SSR Mode S interrogator identifier codes is required when adjacent Mode S ground stations have overlapping designated operational coverage. Coordination is required between adjacent States and regions. The example described below illustrates the process of aircraft becoming (selectively) interrogated by SSR Mode S ground stations when travelling through the designated operational coverage areas of these facilities. The example also clarifies the effect of the interrogator identifier codes in this process.

8.3.2 In Figure J-19, an aircraft travelling from A to B will respond to interrogations of SSR Mode S ground stations (interrogators) P and R as follows:

- a) When the aircraft is outside the designated operational coverage of the interrogator P, but is within the (radio) range (point A) where it can receive all-call interrogations, the aircraft transponder will generate an all-call reply. This reply includes the II code of interrogator P and the 24-bit aircraft address. However, as long as the aircraft is outside the designated operational coverage of interrogator P, it will not accept this reply.
- b) When the aircraft enters the designated operational coverage of interrogator P (point B), the all-call reply from the aircraft transponder will be accepted by interrogator P and a selective interrogation (see 8.2.4 of this appendix) commanding lockout to II=1 will be sent to the aircraft. The aircraft will be added to the list of "acquired aircraft" that is maintained by interrogator P.

Upon reception of this (and any further) selective interrogation commanding lockout, the aircraft transponder will not respond to further all-call interrogations from interrogator P (and all-call interrogations from other interrogators that have the same interrogator identifier code = 1).

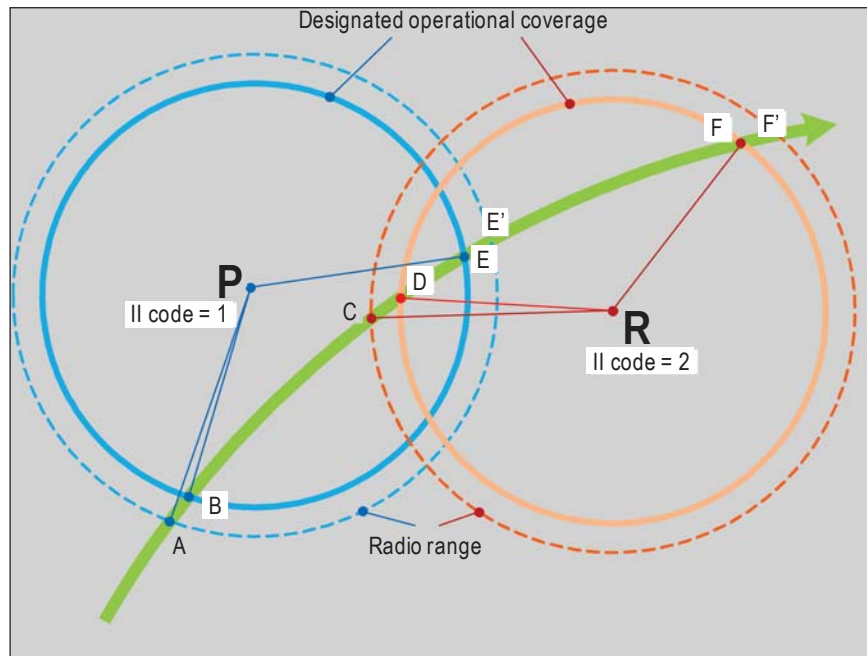


Figure J-19. Process for II code acquisition and lockout

- c) When the aircraft is outside the designated operational coverage of the interrogator R, but is within the (radio) range (point C) where it can receive all-call interrogations from interrogator R, the aircraft transponder will generate an all-call reply only when the II code of interrogator R is different from the II code of interrogator P. This reply includes the 24-bit aircraft address. However, as long as the aircraft is outside the designated operational coverage of interrogator R, the interrogator will not accept this reply.

Note.— If the II code of interrogators P and R are the same, the aircraft will not respond to all-call interrogations of interrogator R.

- d) When the aircraft enters the designated operational coverage of interrogator R (point D), the all-call reply from the aircraft transponder will be accepted by interrogator R and a selective interrogation will be sent to the aircraft commanding lockout to II=2. The aircraft will be added to the list of “acquired aircraft” that is maintained by the interrogator R. Upon reception of this (and any further) selective interrogation containing a lockout command for II=2, the aircraft transponder will not respond to further all-call interrogations from interrogator R. The aircraft is now “acquired” by two SSR Mode S ground stations and selectively interrogated independently by each interrogator.

Note.— If the II code of interrogators P and R are the same, the aircraft will not respond to all-call interrogations of interrogator R and as a result the aircraft will not be identified by interrogator R until it has left the operational coverage of interrogator P.

- e) When the aircraft is outside the designated operational coverage of interrogator P (point E), interrogator P will no longer selectively interrogate the aircraft. After a period of 18 seconds the aircraft will lose its lockout status with respect to interrogator P (II=1). Although the aircraft will respond to all-calls from

interrogator P, as long as the aircraft is within the radio range of interrogator P (until point E'), these replies are not accepted by interrogator P. The aircraft is now only under surveillance by interrogator R.

Note.— If the II code of interrogators P and R are the same, the aircraft will start responding to all-call interrogations of interrogator R 18 seconds after it has left the designated operational coverage of interrogator P and no longer receives selective interrogations from this interrogator.

- f) When the aircraft is outside the designated operational coverage of interrogator R (point F), the interrogator will no longer selectively interrogate the aircraft. After a period of 18 seconds, the aircraft will lose its lockout status with respect to interrogator R (II=2). Although the aircraft will respond to all-calls from interrogator R as long as it is within the radio range of interrogator R (until point F'), these replies are not accepted by interrogator R. The aircraft is now no longer under surveillance by any interrogator.

8.3.3 Clustering of interrogators (ground station networking)

8.3.3.1 SSR Mode S interrogators can share the same interrogator identifier code in cases where the ground stations are networked and share their tables of acquired aircraft (and in particular the 24-bit aircraft address and the approximate location of the acquired aircraft). In this case, both interrogators P and R in Figure 4 send selective interrogations to the aircraft and obtain valid responses. This process will allow for the use of the same interrogator identifier by two (or more) interrogators with overlapping coverage areas. This method is called “clustering”; the group of cooperating ground stations is a “cluster”. Two techniques for managing a cluster have been developed:

- a) *Distributed clustering* — A “distributed” cluster of interrogators contains a defined number of interrogators which are interconnected. Using coverage maps, each interrogator knows the designated operational range of all other interrogators within its own coverage. Based on this knowledge, tracking support is given to or requested from other interrogators of the cluster.
- b) *Central clustering* — A “central” cluster of interrogators is basically the same as a “distributed” cluster, but a cluster controller takes care of supplying the interrogators with needed tracking support and node states. Central clustering has been proved to be more powerful, with higher safety capabilities compared to distributed clustering because of:
 - permanent availability and consistency check of the complete air situation;
 - possibility of also using non-clustered sensors for tracking support;
 - efficient and safe central cluster control capabilities, e.g. use of alternative cluster states on command, enabling, for example, reaction in case of IC conflicts; and
 - efficient validation and verification possibilities.

8.3.3.2 The operation of a cluster is illustrated in Figure J-20. At point “D”, interrogator “R” gets tracking support containing the Mode S address, position and speed vector of the aircraft at a defined time. This defined time is also included within the tracking support. Taking this information, interrogator “R” can calculate when the antenna beam is over the aircraft the next time. Therefore, it is possible to use a selective interrogation directly without having received any all-call reply from that aircraft. The tracking support message can be sent either by:

- interrogator “P” (distributed clustering), or by
- a cluster controller (central clustering).

8.3.3.3 In terms of RF channel load optimization, it is very advantageous to allocate the same II code to adjacent non-overlapping radars, since this reduces the FRUIT in the area between the designated operational range and the radio range.

Note.— For additional recommendations and statement of benefits of clustering, see Appendix J, 4.4.4, Appendix M, 1.10, and Appendix M, 12.2.1.

8.3.4 Techniques for managing overlapping coverage

8.3.4.1 Using multiple interrogator identifier codes by a single Mode S ground station.

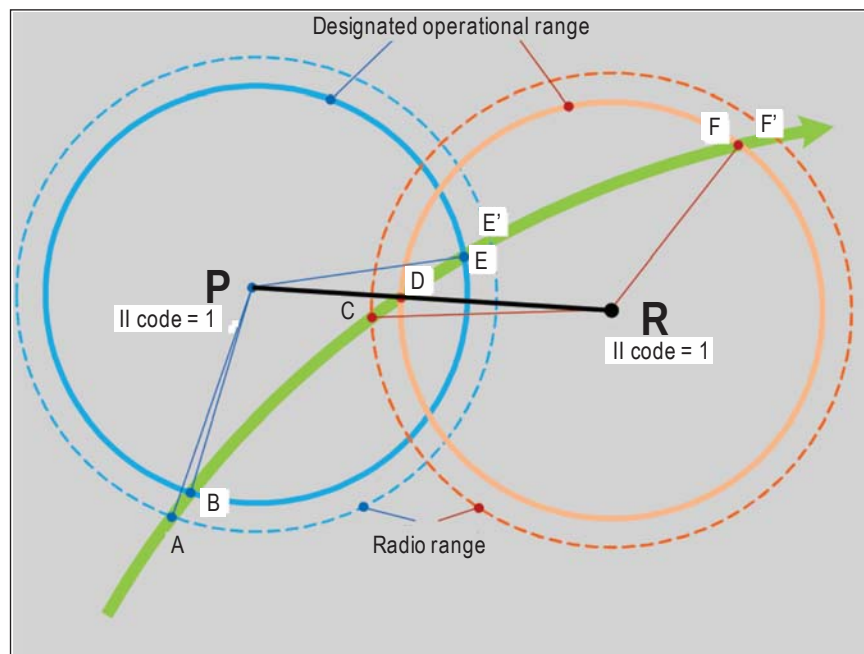


Figure J-20. SSR Mode S interrogator clustering (interrogators with same II code)

8.3.4.1.1 Another method for improving the efficient use of II codes is using two (or more) II codes by a single interrogator. In this method, different sectors of the interrogator can be assigned different II codes. The sector that overlaps with another interrogator will have a different II code, while the parts of the coverage not overlapping can have the same II code. However, it is recommended to use the minimum possible number of interrogation identifiers by one single Mode S ground station. Figure J-21 gives an example of sectorized use of II codes.

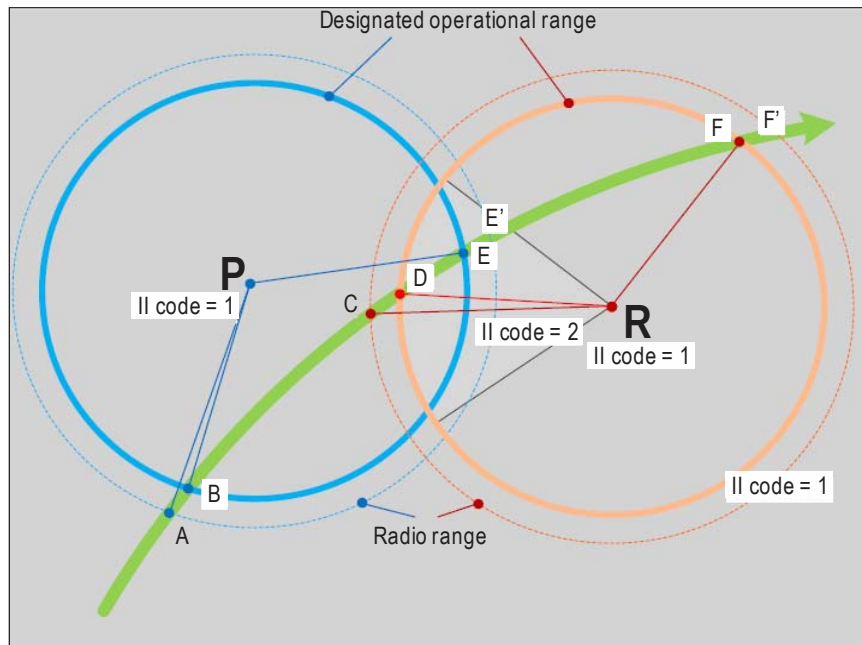


Figure J-21. Sectorized use of II codes

8.3.4.2 Define the maximum designated operational range on a sector basis.

8.3.4.2.1 In some cases, adjacent SSR Mode S ground stations may have limited overlapping coverage areas. In this case, it is possible to use the same II code for both ground stations if the designated operational range of one or both of the ground stations is reduced in the sector of the overlap. The net effect of the range reduction is to eliminate the overlap. Figure J-22 gives an example of the use of sectorized range reduction to eliminate overlap. This range reduction can also be achieved using a coverage map defining a common grid. In this case, the process consists of specifying an II code for a given area in which this II code can be used for lockout.

8.3.5 The above examples illustrate the need for SSR Mode S ground stations, which have overlapping coverage, to be assigned a unique Mode S II code, except in the case where SSR Mode S ground stations are clustered, as described in 8.3.3 of this appendix.

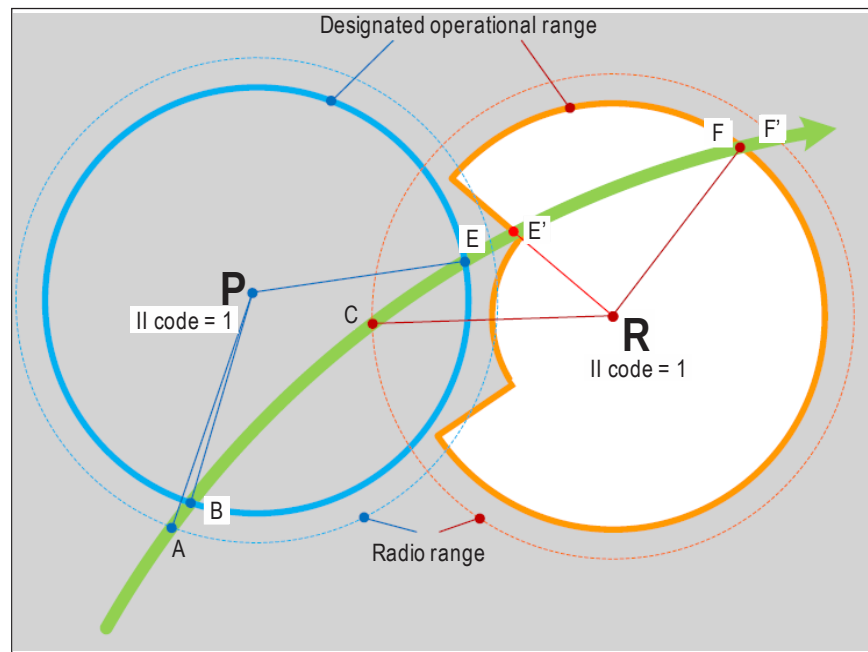


Figure J-22. Sectorized maximum range

8.4 Practical examples of interrogator identifier code assignments

8.4.1 Figure J-23 provides an example of assigned interrogator identifier codes for Mode S interrogators with overlapping coverage areas. In the areas of overlap, the aircraft responds to all-call interrogations and selective interrogations from more than one ground station, as indicated.

8.5 Planning parameters for SSR Mode S ground stations

8.5.1 All SSR Mode S interrogators have a maximum operational range within which surveillance service will be offered to aircraft. This maximum range is determined by operational considerations and is referred to as designated operational range (DOR). This DOR can be simply defined by a range valid for all azimuths, by different ranges for different azimuth sectors or by a more complex coverage map indicating where the ground station will selectively interrogate and lock out aircraft. When the aircraft is within the radio range of the interrogator, but outside the designated operational range, the aircraft will reply to all-call interrogations from the interrogator. These replies will not be accepted by the interrogator after it has determined that the aircraft is outside the designated operational range.

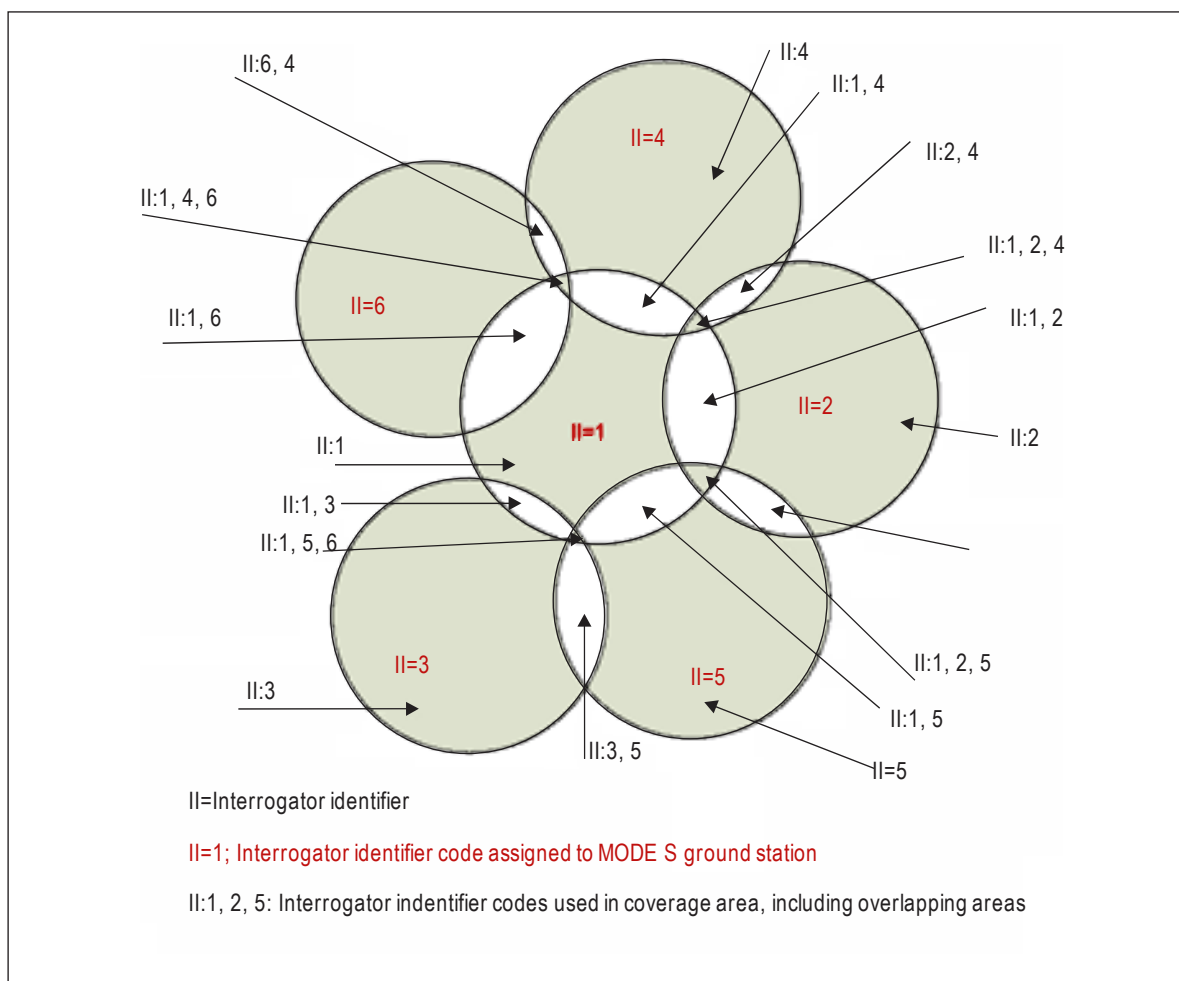


Figure J-23. Example of II code assignments

8.5.2 SSR Mode S ground stations with the same II code

8.5.2.1 As shown in Figure J-24, the minimum geographical separation between two SSR Mode S interrogators, which have been assigned the same II code, is the sum of the respective designated operational range for each interrogator, plus a buffer zone. The buffer zone should be large enough to enable the aircraft to time out of its lockout status for all-call interrogations, plus a margin that would cater for certain processing delays. The aircraft transponder cancels its lockout status for all-call interrogations if, for a period of 18 seconds, no selective interrogation with a lockout command has been received. For an aircraft travelling at a speed of 600 NM/hr, this would be equal to 3 NM. For example, a buffer of 10 NM is adequate to ensure that an incoming aircraft will be unlocked when it enters the operational coverage area of the next interrogator.

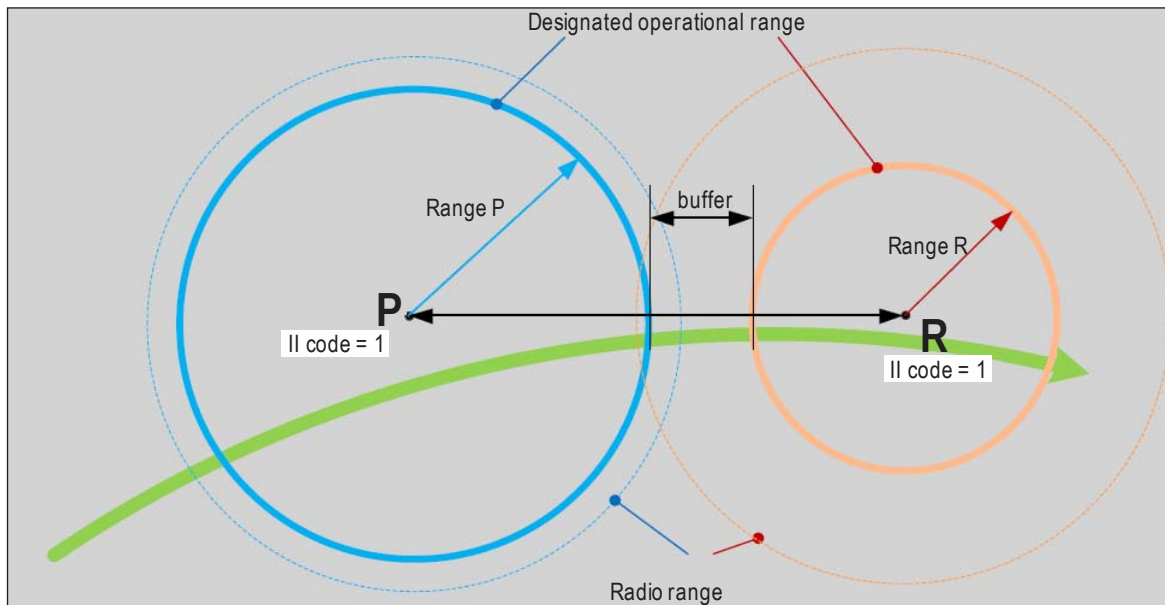


Figure J-24. Minimum separation distance between interrogators having the same II code

8.5.2.2 The minimum separation distance between two SSR Mode S interrogators with the same II code as shown in Figure J-24 is:

$$\text{Range P} + 10 \text{ NM} + \text{range R}$$

8.5.3 Mode S ground stations with different II codes

8.5.3.1 When SSR Mode S ground stations have different II codes, no separation criteria between the Mode S ground stations needs to be applied.

Appendix K

1 090 MHz ES

Note 1.— The following description of 1 090 MHz ES is based primarily on the use of GNSS as the navigation source. While this is expected to be the principal source, the message formats for ES permit the reporting of position based on other sources of navigation (e.g. inertial navigation system). The message formats support the accuracy and integrity reporting of the position information.

Note 2.— This appendix provides a high-level overview of the 1 090 MHz ES. More detail may be found in Doc 9871.

1. INTRODUCTION

A technique that combines the capabilities of the SSR Mode S system with those of ADS-B is the 1 090 MHz ES (1 090 ES). This is accomplished by using an ES as the broadcast data link for transferring the aircraft-derived ADS report from the aircraft to airborne or ground users. In addition to airborne and ground surveillance, ES is expected to find application in enhancements to ACAS operation.

2. SYSTEM CONCEPT

2.1 Each operating Mode S transponder pseudo-randomly radiates (squitters) its unique Mode S address in an azimuth-omnidirectional pattern once per second. This acquisition (or short) squitter is a 56-bit transmission of 64-microsecond duration, broadcast on the Mode S transponder reply frequency (1 090 MHz). The acquisition squitter is used by ACAS to detect the presence of Mode S-equipped aircraft. In operation, an ACAS listens for acquisition squitters, extracts the 24-bit aircraft address contained in the squitter data and uses this address as the basis for discrete interrogation, as required, to perform surveillance on Mode S-equipped aircraft. This form of squitter has been in operational use with ACAS for many years. Its performance is well understood from the design and validation of ACAS as well as from the substantial experience with ACAS as an operational system.

2.2 The Mode S message protocol defines both 56-bit and 112-bit reply formats. The ES approach uses a 112-bit format. This creates a 56-bit message field for ADS-B data. All other fields remain the same as in the original acquisition squitter.

2.3 In operation, aircraft equipped with a GNSS receiver, or another navigation source, determine the position and velocity of the aircraft. This information is processed and formatted into the 56-bit ADS-B message fields of ES and broadcast by the Mode S transponder. The 56-bit acquisition squitter continues to be broadcast for compatibility with ACAS. The acquisition squitter transmission can be omitted in the future if all ACAS equipment is converted to receive and process the ES.

2.4 The omnidirectional pattern of an ES broadcast makes it possible to support both air-ground and air-air surveillance applications.

2.5 In addition to the transponder implementation of ES described above, the system concept also includes the capability to transmit ES from a non-transponder device. The rationale for an ES/NT capability is to obtain a lower cost implementation of ADS-B for surface vehicles. An ES non-transponder device may also be used in connection with a Mode A/C transponder for general aviation purposes. The ES's from a Mode S transponder are identified by a DF code equal to 17. ES/NT devices, however, use a DF code of 18 to be distinguished from Mode S transponders. The use of a different DF code format is used to ensure that replies from these ES/NT devices are clearly identified in order to prevent ACAS from attempting to interrogate them as part of ACAS hybrid surveillance. The ES/NT devices perform all of the ES functions of the transponder-based implementation, except those that directly depend on Mode S transponder functions. The ES concept is illustrated in Figure K-1.

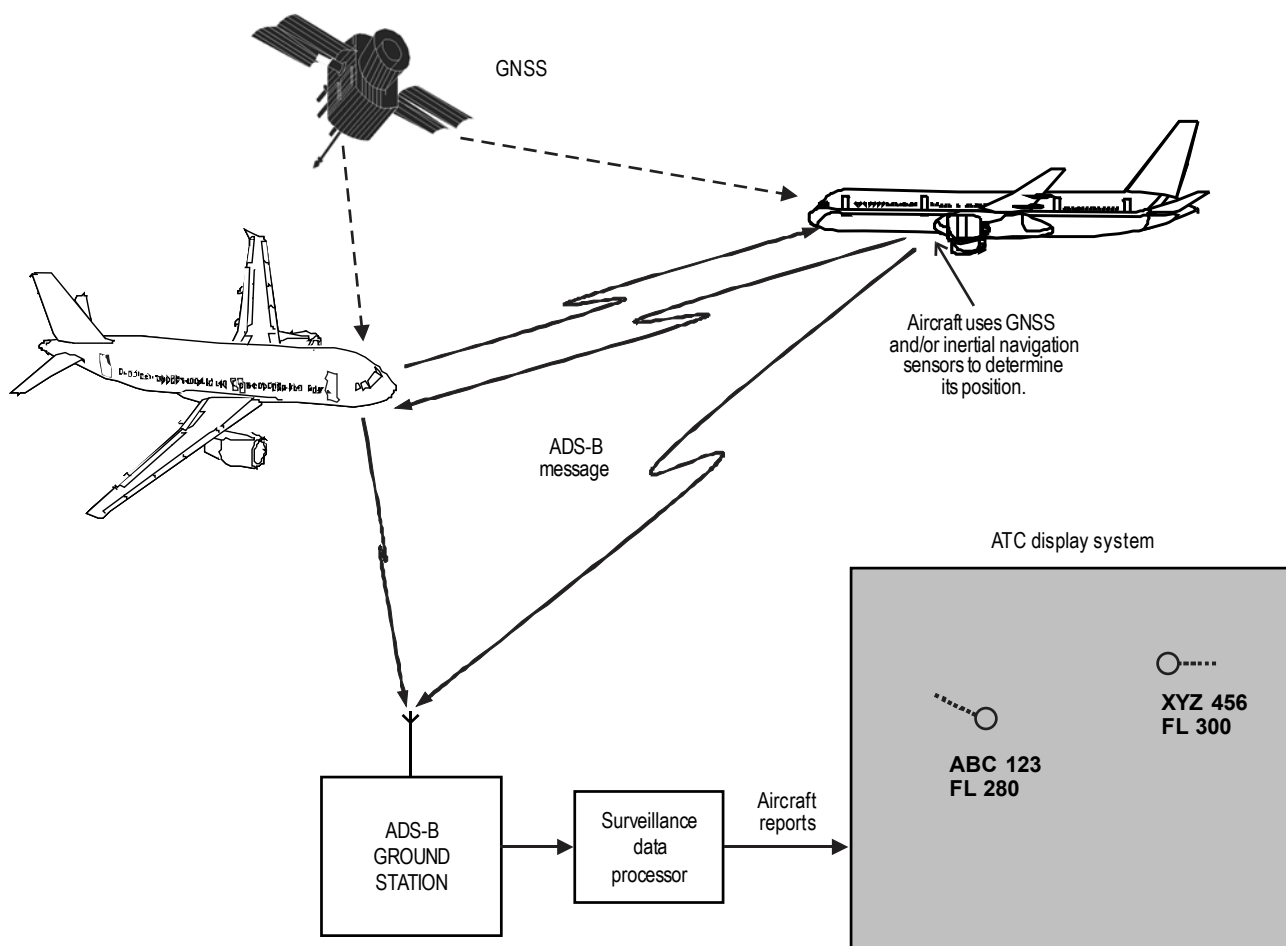


Figure K-1. ES concept

3. OPTIONAL USE OF ACTIVE INTERROGATION

ES ground stations may optionally include the capability of interrogation as well as reception. This capability could be useful for validation of ADS-B information.

4. SURVEILLANCE APPLICATIONS

4.1 Surveillance examples

Examples of ADS-B surveillance applications that can be supported by ES are:

- a) air-ground:
 - 1) en-route;
 - 2) approach/terminal; and
 - 3) PRM;
- b) surface/aerodrome:
 - 1) surveillance for runways and taxiways;
 - 2) airport situational awareness; and
 - 3) final approach and runway occupancy awareness; and
- c) air-air:
 - 1) ACAS hybrid surveillance;
 - 2) enhanced visual separation and approach;
 - 3) in-trail procedure in oceanic airspace; and
 - 4) conflict detection.

4.2 Air-ground surveillance

4.2.1 For approach/terminal operations, the squitter is received by approach ground stations. The antenna can be a single omni, providing a squitter reception range of 90 to 180 km (50 to 100 NM).

4.2.2 PRM surveillance can be supported using either the same antennas used for approach surveillance or dedicated antennas to provide the required coverage.

4.2.3 For en-route operation in higher density environments, a multi-sector antenna will likely be necessary. For example, a six-sector high-gain antenna (with six independent low-noise receivers) can achieve a 370 km (200 NM) surveillance range. The multi-sector antenna may also be used in high traffic density areas to overcome interference

effects and to limit the number of aircraft being processed by any single receiver. In lower density areas, an omnidirectional antenna may provide adequate performance.

4.3 Surface surveillance

Aircraft transmit squitters containing their positions even while operating on runways and taxiways. These squitters are received by several stations around the periphery of the airport. The number of ground receivers will be determined by airport layout and by squitter reception performance in the environment of the airport surface. Measurements have indicated that four or more stations may be needed to provide good coverage for most large airports.

4.4 Air-air surveillance

4.4.1 ACAS hybrid surveillance

4.4.1.1 Hybrid surveillance is a term used to describe ACAS use of passive ADS-B surveillance data for non-threat intruders. Use of passive surveillance in place of active interrogation results in reduced 1 090 MHz channel usage by ACAS.

4.4.1.2 If an ES is received at track initiation, an addressed interrogation is made to determine the aircraft range and altitude. This is compared to the relative range and reported altitude determined from a comparison of own and the intruder's ADS-B information. If the ADS-B surveillance data are validated by ACAS active surveillance, the passive ADS-B surveillance data can be used as long as the intruder is not determined to be a near threat.

4.4.1.3 Monitoring after acquisition is based on an assessment of the imminence of a threat status of the intruder. If the intruder becomes a near threat in range or altitude, it is interrogated every 10 seconds. If the intruder becomes a near threat in both altitude and range, full active surveillance is performed every second. Full active interrogation and ACAS surveillance starts well before any TA or RA is issued.

4.4.2 Situational awareness enabled by CDTI

CDTI enables situational awareness and is an option for aircraft that are equipped with a 1 090 MHz receiver. Such aircraft would listen to ES's from nearby aircraft and display their positions and identity on a cockpit display. A range of 26 km (14 NM) can be supported for CDTI using a receiver equivalent to those in ACAS equipment. This range can be extended to over 93 km (50 NM) through the use of a low-noise receiver.

Note.— For more information, see RTCA/DO-260A, Appendix E.

4.5 Other surveillance applications

ES can provide a low-cost means of surveillance for:

- a) small terminals that do not qualify for high-cost ground surveillance equipment; and
- b) en-route gap filling in mountainous or remote areas.

5. ES ADS-B MESSAGES

5.1 ES message types

5.1.1 ES makes use of five types of squitter:

- a) airborne position;
- b) airborne velocity;
- c) surface position;
- d) aircraft ID and emitter category; and
- e) event-driven.

5.1.2 The first four types of ES are regularly broadcast when the ES equipment is active and supplied with the required aircraft data. The event-driven squitter type is actually a communications mechanism to allow ADS-B applications to broadcast squitter data as needed to support these applications.

5.1.3 The initial versions of ES messages were defined in RTCA DO-260. These are known as Version ZERO (0) formats. Complete definitions of message structures and data sources for the Version 0 formats are specified in Doc 9871, Appendix A.

5.1.4 The revised versions of the ES messages are defined in RTCA DO-260A. These are known as Version ONE (1) formats. Complete definitions of data structure and data sources for the Version 1 formats are specified in Doc 9871, Appendix B.

5.1.5 Each ES transmission contains the aircraft address. This makes it possible to unambiguously associate the data in the various squitter formats with the originating aircraft.

5.1.6 Each ES transmission contains a 5-bit field which identifies a message "TYPE CODE" which is unique to each message. Version 0 formats allow airborne and surface position messages TYPE CODES to be associated with a navigation uncertainty category (NUC). Version 1 formats allow airborne and surface position messages TYPE CODES to be associated with an NIC. The NIC is reported so that surveillance applications may determine whether the reported geometric position has an acceptable level of integrity for the intended use. The NIC parameter specifies an integrity containment radius, R_c . The surveillance integrity limit (SIL) parameter acts in conjunction with the NIC parameter and specifies the probability of the true position lying outside that containment radius without alerting.

5.1.7 The airborne or the surface position squitter is transmitted depending on the aircraft's VS. The aircraft ID and emitter category, and event driven squitters are transmitted as additional squitters in the air and on the ground. The 56-bit acquisition squitter is retained while airborne (and in certain cases when on the surface) for continued compatibility with current ACAS equipment.

5.1.8 The message data for each squitter format is obtained from a defined transponder register as indicated in Table K-1.

Table K-1. Defined transponder registers

<i>Transponder register number</i>	<i>Assignment</i>
05 ₁₆	ES airborne position
06 ₁₆	ES surface position
07 ₁₆	ES status ^a
08 ₁₆	ES identification and category
09 ₁₆	ES airborne velocity
0A ₁₆	ES event-driven information
61 ₁₆	ES emergency/priority status ^{b,c}
62 ₁₆	Reserved for ES target state and status
65 ₁₆	ES aircraft operational status ^d
F2 ₁₆	Military applications ^e

Notes:

- a) *The information in this register is not broadcast. It is used as an interface to notify the transponder of aircraft motion for selection of surface position message broadcast rate.*
- b) *The name of this message was changed to “aircraft status” in Version 1.*
- c) *Subtype 1 of this message type provides additional information on the nature of a declared emergency. For Version 1, subtype 2 of this message contains the ACAS RA broadcast message.*
- d) *For Version 0, this message provided limited information on the capability class and current operational mode of ATC-related applications on board the aircraft. For Version 1, this message was significantly expanded to provide additional operational details.*
- e) *This message type is reserved for military use. It is broadcast using Mode S format DF = 19 to distinguish it from the civil ES broadcast that uses DF = 17 or DF = 18.*

5.2 Airborne position message**5.2.1 Message content**

The airborne position message provides basic surveillance information that includes the three-dimensional position plus validity time and surveillance status information. Airborne position is encoded using the compact position reporting (CPR) compression technique in order to make more efficient use of the available bits in the position message. CPR is described in more detail in Doc 9871.

5.2.2 Transponder insertion of barometric altitude

5.2.2.1 The barometric altitude is inserted into the airborne position message directly by the transponder, since this ensures that the altitude is based upon the same source as used for the altitude in a transponder reply. Provision has been made for the direct insertion of barometric altitude into the airborne position messages. Since provision is also made in the airborne position formats for future use of GNSS height data, the ATS subfield has been included in the ES status data register (transponder data Register 07₁₆), to suppress the internal insertion of altitude when GNSS height is being used (Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.8.6.8.2). It should be noted that the GNSS offset from barometric altitude is currently provided in the airborne velocity message.

5.2.2.2 The transponder insertion of altitude into the ES position message requires the use of a 12-bit altitude field. This allows the transponder to determine the quantization (25 or 100 ft) and results in a direct transfer of the AC field data (less the M-bit) into the airborne position message.

5.2.2.3 When the transponder determines that it is time to broadcast an airborne position squitter, it will (unless inhibited by the ATS subfield) insert the current value of the barometric altitude and surveillance status into the appropriate fields of transponder data Register 05₁₆. The contents of this register will then be inserted into the ME field of DF = 17 and transmitted. Insertion in this manner ensures that:

- a) the squitter contains the latest altitude and surveillance status at the time of squitter transmission; and
- b) ground readout of Register 05₁₆ will yield exactly the same information as contained in the previous squitter.

5.2.3 Surveillance status subfield

5.2.3.1 In the acquisition squitter, the means to alert the ground of a surveillance or data link condition requiring ground interrogation is the setting of code 7 in the CA field. This indicates that one or more of the following conditions is set in the transponder:

- a) an air-initiated message or an ACAS RA is waiting;
- b) the SSR Mode A code has been changed (includes emergency); or
- c) there is an SPI condition.

5.2.3.2 This code is sufficient if ground stations are capable of interrogation. To provide similar information passively, the airborne position message contains a surveillance status subfield. The coding in this field indicates the presence of an emergency condition, a change in Mode A code or an SP.

5.3 Airborne velocity message

The airborne velocity message contains velocity information and other aircraft state data. Together with the airborne position message, the information in the velocity ES provides a four-dimensional aircraft state vector providing additional information to improve the prediction performance of both airborne and ground-based tracking systems.

5.4 Surface position message

The surface position message provides the complete surface state vector in a single message. This is made possible since altitude and vertical rate reporting are not required on the surface. The use of a single squitter type on the surface is important. For the surface application, the majority of the channel activity will be ES's. Therefore, use of a single squitter for aircraft state will lead to a higher surveillance capacity. Surface position is also encoded using the CPR compression technique in order to make more efficient use of the available bits in the position message. This is a higher resolution version of the technique used in the airborne position message.

5.5 Airborne/surface state determination

5.5.1 Selection of the surface format will normally be based on the use of a "weight on wheels" switch (also referred to as a squat switch). Override of the airborne position format is provided for certain classes of aircraft without a squat switch so that the surface format may be transmitted when on the ground. Provision is also made in the SD field of an addressed Mode S interrogation to command an aircraft to use the surface format. This command times out to prevent an aircraft from remaining in the surface format condition while airborne. Provision is also made in the SD field for a timed command to lock out surface squitters for cases where surface surveillance based on squitter transmissions is not required.

5.5.2 Aircraft with automatic means for determining the on-the-ground condition (squat switch) will use this input to determine whether to transmit the surface or the airborne squitter type. Aircraft that do not have a squat switch will report the airborne type, unless commanded by the ground to report the surface type. These commands may also be sent to aircraft with squat switches where they take precedence over the squat switch input. This provision is made to handle the case of a failed squat switch.

5.5.3 These commands can only affect the format type reported; they cannot change the aircraft determination of its on-the-ground condition. Thus, an aircraft without the means to set the on-the-ground condition will continue to report code 6 in the CA field, and an aircraft that senses an airborne status, with the means to set the on-the-ground condition, will continue to set code 5, independent of the ES format that is emitted.

5.5.4 When an aircraft takes off, the squat switch input or commands from the ground station will cause a change back to the airborne format. Commands to report the surface position type will timeout to prevent continued transmission of the surface format to cover the case of loss of contact with the aircraft after take-off.

5.6 Aircraft ID and category message

The identification and category squitter provides the aircraft type category as well as the aircraft ID corresponding to item 7 of the ICAO flight plan. Such information is useful for visual acquisition and for wake vortex avoidance and is necessary for operational identification of the aircraft. (See Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, Table 3-8, Character coding for transmission of aircraft ID by data link.)

5.7 Event-driven message

5.7.1 The event-driven squitter is a message transfer protocol intended for the transmission of additional information that may be needed infrequently. It may also be associated with an airborne application that may not be used by all aircraft. This message type is also defined as a means for accommodating the needs of future ADS-B applications.

5.7.2 The ES aircraft status message is used to provide information about a change in the aircraft status, such as the emergency/priority indicators.

5.7.3 The ES aircraft operational status message (for Version 1 formats only) is used to provide the current status of the aircraft. Among other aircraft parameters, the operational status message contains the version number of the ADS-B transmitting equipment, the SIL parameter and the navigation accuracy category for position (NAC_P). The NAC_P parameter is reported so that surveillance applications may determine whether the reported geometric position has an acceptable level of accuracy for the intended use.

6. ES PROTOCOLS

6.1 Channel access

6.1.1 ES's are broadcast using a pseudo-random channel access technique. This is the same technique that is used for the acquisition squitter that is in operational use in support of ACAS. A pseudo-random technique for ES provides some advantages which are explained in 6.1.2 and 6.1.3 below.

6.1.2 For a high data rate system (like Mode S) it provides higher capacity than other channel access techniques. For example, if a TDMA approach were used on 1 090 MHz supporting surveillance to 460 km (250 NM), this would require a 1.5 milliseconds guard time following each 120 microseconds ES. This would lead to a maximum capacity of approximately 600 aircraft using the 1-second update required to support ACAS.

6.1.3 The pseudo-random approach has the ability to satisfy aviation surveillance users with different update requirements. The ACAS surveillance requirement is for a 1-second update rate out to about 26 km (14 NM). A 5- to 9-second update is required for terminal ATC operation for aircraft out to about 110 km (60 NM). En-route interrogators currently provide up to a 12-second update rate to a range of 370 km (200 NM). An ACAS receiving ES would operate at a sensitivity level adequate for 26 km (14 NM). This level means that the ACAS squitter receiver would process squitters from a small fraction of the aircraft visible to a terminal or en-route squitter receiver, permitting the ACAS to operate at a squitter reception level suitable for a 1-second update. The en-route and terminal receivers operate with a much higher signal traffic density because of their greater operating range. While leading to a lower probability of reception of a single squitter, the multiple squitter opportunities produce a high probability of an update during a 5- to 12-second update period. Both requirements are handled simultaneously by the same pseudo-random squitter.

6.2 Antenna selection

For aircraft with antennas, diversity squitters are transmitted alternately from top and bottom antennas when the aircraft is airborne. When the aircraft is on the surface, the default is to use the top antenna only. The alternative is to alternate between the top and bottom antenna using commands in the SAS subfield of the SD field for DI = 2, that is delivered via an addressed uplink interrogation.

6.3 Reporting of ES capability

Provision has been made in the data link CA field to identify a transponder with ES capability (bit 34 of transponder data Register 10₁₆). This is desirable to monitor transponder equipage via narrow-beam Mode S interrogators, since they cannot receive ES broadcasts.

6.4 Timeout of transponder data registers

6.4.1 Three of the transponder data registers used for regularly scheduled ES's with frequently changing data content (airborne position, airborne velocity, surface position) are cleared if they are not updated within 2 seconds, except for the altitude and surveillance status in the airborne position message. This is done to prevent the transmission of outdated information. This timeout is not required for the event-driven squitter since it is loaded each time that an event-driven squitter is to be transmitted.

6.4.2 The internal insertion of data by the transponder into these registers (e.g. altitude and surveillance status fields for the airborne position report) does not qualify as a register update for the purposes of this timeout condition.

6.5 Suppression of unnecessary ES's

6.5.1 Provision has been made to emit acquisition squitters upon the power up of the transponder. ES operation will only be initiated if a message is loaded into transponder data Registers 05₁₆ (airborne position), 06₁₆ (surface position), 09₁₆ (airborne velocity) or 08₁₆ (aircraft ID and category).

6.5.2 Once a decision is made to broadcast a specific type of ES, this squitter type will continue to be broadcast for 60 seconds if inputs to its related transponder data register stop being updated. After timeout, this squitter type may contain an ME field of ALL ZEROS. Continued transmission is required so that receiving devices know that the data source for the message has been lost. If the squitter transmission was stopped, receiving devices could conclude that the aircraft was no longer within reception range.

6.6 Future suppression of acquisition squitter

6.6.1 Airborne aircraft generating ES's must continue to transmit acquisition squitters in order to remain compatible with the current ACAS equipment. If all ACAS equipment were converted to receive the ES (as a minimum to read the 24-bit address and the CA field), the acquisition squitter would no longer be required. Channel occupancy would be reduced if the acquisition squitter could be suppressed.

6.6.2 Acquisition squitter will continue to be broadcast by transponders that are not emitting any ES's. This is necessary in order to ensure acquisition by ACAS. Thus, ACAS will need to retain the ability to receive the acquisition squitter even after the implementation of the ability to receive the ES.

6.7 ES transmission rates

6.7.1 Transmission rate overview

6.7.1.1 The airborne position and velocity squitters are each transmitted pseudo-randomly twice per second when the aircraft is airborne. When airborne, the identification and category squitter is transmitted pseudo-randomly once every 5 seconds. On the surface, the surface position squitter is transmitted pseudo-randomly twice per second when the aircraft is moving and once per 5 seconds when the aircraft is stationary. On the surface, the identification and category squitter is transmitted pseudo-randomly once per 5 seconds when the aircraft is moving and once per 10 seconds when the aircraft is stationary. A determination of aircraft motion is made outside of the transponder based on monitoring the position and velocity data. The result of this determination is passed to the transponder via transponder Register 07₁₆.

6.7.1.2 A squitter may be delayed, but not omitted, if the transponder is busy with an addressed transaction or another squitter. A delayed squitter will be transmitted at the next available opportunity.

6.7.2 Airborne position and velocity squitter rate considerations

ES operates on a channel that is shared with other users. In the airborne case, the majority of the activity is because of conventional SSR or ACAS replies. The rate of successful ES receptions will be influenced by the transmission rate of the transponder. This rate must be at least once per second in order to support the update rate required by ACAS. Since most of the channel activity is background interference, an average rate of two per second for the airborne position and velocity squitters is used to obtain a higher operating capacity.

6.7.3 Identification and category squitter rate considerations

This squitter contains static data (aircraft ID and category). For this reason, it can be transmitted at a lower rate than the position and velocity squitters. Since acquisition of an aircraft may not be considered complete until the identity is received, a squitter rate must be chosen that will not cause a long delay in the reception of identity. A transmission rate of once per 5 seconds has been selected for this purpose.

6.7.4 Surface position squitter rate considerations

6.7.4.1 *Variable transmission rates.* The required surface position update rate is once per second. Since surface multi-path will result in loss of some squitters, a higher than once per second data rate is required. For this reason, the same twice per second transmission rate is used.

6.7.4.1.1 On the surface, the majority of the channel activity results from squitter transmissions due to the following:

- a) transponders do not respond to conventional SSR or Mode S all-call interrogations while on the surface; and
- b) surface squitter receiving stations operate with a very short range. They therefore receive replies from only those aircraft operating near the airport.

6.7.4.1.2 For this reason, it is desirable to lower the squitter rate for stationary traffic as a means of increasing surface capacity. The approach used to reduce the squitter rate for surface aircraft is as follows:

- a) when the aircraft is moving, it emits:
 - 1) position squitter twice per second; and
 - 2) identity squitter once per 5 seconds;
- b) when the aircraft is stationary, it emits:
 - 1) position squitter once per 5 seconds; and
 - 2) identity squitter once per 10 seconds;
- c) transition to the higher squitter rate occurs when motion is detected on board the aircraft; and
- d) the content of the SD field of an addressed interrogation is used to prevent a transition to the low rate when the aircraft is in a critical position (e.g. stopped at the entrance to an active runway).

6.7.4.2 *Reporting of variable surface squitter rate capability.* As indicated earlier, the variable surface squitter rate will be determined outside of the transponder based on position and velocity information. For example, this function may exist in the navigation unit or in the Mode S ADLP. A means is needed to pass this information to the transponder and to notify the ground that this transponder is capable of determining its surface squitter rate. Transponder Register 07₁₆ is defined for this purpose. The airborne process that determines the rate will set the contents of squitter transmission rate subfield (TRS). The TRS information will be read by the transponder to set the surface squitter rate. In addition, the TRS contents can be read by the ground to determine whether the aircraft is capable of surface squitter rate determination, or whether the rate must be controlled by the ground.

6.7.4.3 *Surface squitter lockout.* Some airports may not need to use the surface position squitters transmitted by surface aircraft.

6.7.4.3.1 For this reason, a command has been provided in the SD field for DI = 2 of an addressed interrogation to suppress surface position squitters for 60 seconds in order to reduce channel occupancy at these airports.

6.7.4.3.2 This command has no effect on a transponder that is broadcasting the airborne type of ES. Therefore, aircraft without the means of determining the on-the-ground condition must first be commanded to transmit the surface format before they can be placed into a state of squitter lockout. Both of these commands have a specific timeout period.

6.7.4.3.3 Acquisition squitters will continue to be broadcast during a period of surface squitter lockout.

6.7.5 Event-driven squitter rate considerations

The actual rate and duration of the event-driven squitter will be determined by an application that is generating the messages that are input into the transponder ES event-driven information Register 0A₁₆. The transponder will broadcast each message that is input into the event-driven register a single time. A maximum rate of no more than twice per second will be permitted by the transponder.

7. INDEPENDENCE OF NAVIGATION AND SURVEILLANCE

7.1 Potential for loss of independence

7.1.1 Traditionally, ATC has required the use of separate and independent systems for CNS. Such independence of functions makes it unlikely that an aircraft could lose more than one of its capabilities at the same time. It also provides a robust backup in the event of a failure of one of the systems. For example, loss of navigation capability on board an aircraft can be accommodated through the use of ground vectors provided by an air traffic controller based on ground SSR interrogation data.

7.1.2 If used as the sole means of surveillance, ADS-B inherently combines the aircraft navigation and surveillance capabilities. As a consequence, loss of navigation capacity would not be able to be accommodated by ADS-B alone since ATC would lose surveillance and, therefore, would be unable to provide vectors.

7.1.3 Moreover, an undetected failure of the navigation system that resulted, for example, in a slowly increasing error may not be detected. This can happen since both pilot and ground controller would see the aircraft on its intended course, when, in fact, the aircraft could be on a very different course.

7.1.4 As such, the use of ADS-B as a primary means of surveillance should be carefully considered, particularly if it is planned as a direct replacement for SSR.

7.2 Validation of ADS-B reports

7.2.1 The integration of ES into the SSR Mode S system offers a straightforward way to obtain the benefits of ADS-B while still maintaining independence of CNS. This is based on the use of active interrogation to validate ES surveillance.

7.2.2 The technique can be applied to both the ground ATC and ACAS surveillance applications. The active surveillance is used to validate the ADS-B reported surveillance, and to replace it if an aircraft loses its navigation capability.

7.2.3 If the validity check at track initiation is successful, the aircraft can be maintained on ADS-B and periodically monitored to verify continued correct operation of the navigation system. If a check fails at any time, then the track can be maintained by active surveillance.

7.2.4 Another method for validating ADS-B data is to deploy ADS-B with MLATs. This option has the advantage of maximizing the use of ground infrastructure since multilateration receivers include the capability to receive and decode ADS-B messages. Such an option has the advantage of being completely passive.

8. ES PERFORMANCE

Information on ES performance is provided in RTCA/DO-260A. Appendix E of that document specifies the transmitter and receiver requirements for air-air range, and Appendix P provides the results of simulations that were conducted to estimate ES performance in high and low traffic and in interference environments.

Appendix L

MLAT

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Multilateration is a form of cooperative and independent surveillance system that makes use of signals transmitted by an aircraft (normally the 1 090 MHz SSR transponder replies or squitters) to calculate the aircraft's position. Since MLATs can make use of currently existing aircraft transmissions, they can be deployed without any changes to the airborne infrastructure.

1.2 For the processing of the signals on the ground, appropriate receiver stations and a central processing station are required.

1.3 Multilateration techniques have been successfully deployed for airport surveillance for quite some time. Presently, these same techniques are used for larger areas such as en-route or approach areas and are called WAM systems.

2. PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

2.1 An MLAT consists of a number of antennas receiving a signal from an aircraft and a central processing unit calculating the aircraft's position from the TDOA of the signal at the different antennas.

2.2 The TDOA between two antennas corresponds, mathematically speaking, with a hyperboloid (in 3-D) on which the aircraft is located. When four antennas detect the aircraft's signal, it is possible to estimate the 3-D position of the aircraft by calculating the intersection of the resulting hyperboloids.

2.3 When only three antennas are available, a 3-D position cannot be estimated directly, but if the target altitude is known from another source (e.g. from Mode C or when the aircraft is on surface) then the target position can be calculated. This is usually referred to as a 2-D solution. It should be noted that the use of barometric altitude (Mode C) can lead to a less accurate position estimate of the target, since barometric altitude can differ significantly from geometric height.

2.4 With more than four antennas, the extra information can be used to either verify the correctness of the other measurements or to calculate an average position from all measurements, which should have an overall smaller error. The example in Figure L-1 should clarify the principle. It shows a WAM system consisting of five receiver stations (numbered 0 to 4).

2.5 Assuming that the aircraft's signal is detected at all sites, the first three diagrams in Figure L-2 show the hyperboloids corresponding to the TDOA of the signal at sites 0 and 2, 0 and 3, and 0 and 4, respectively. The central processing station calculates the intersection of all the hyperboloids as shown in the last diagram.

2.6 There may be more than one solution to the multilateration calculation as the hyperboloids may intersect in two places. Typically, the correct solution is easily identified.

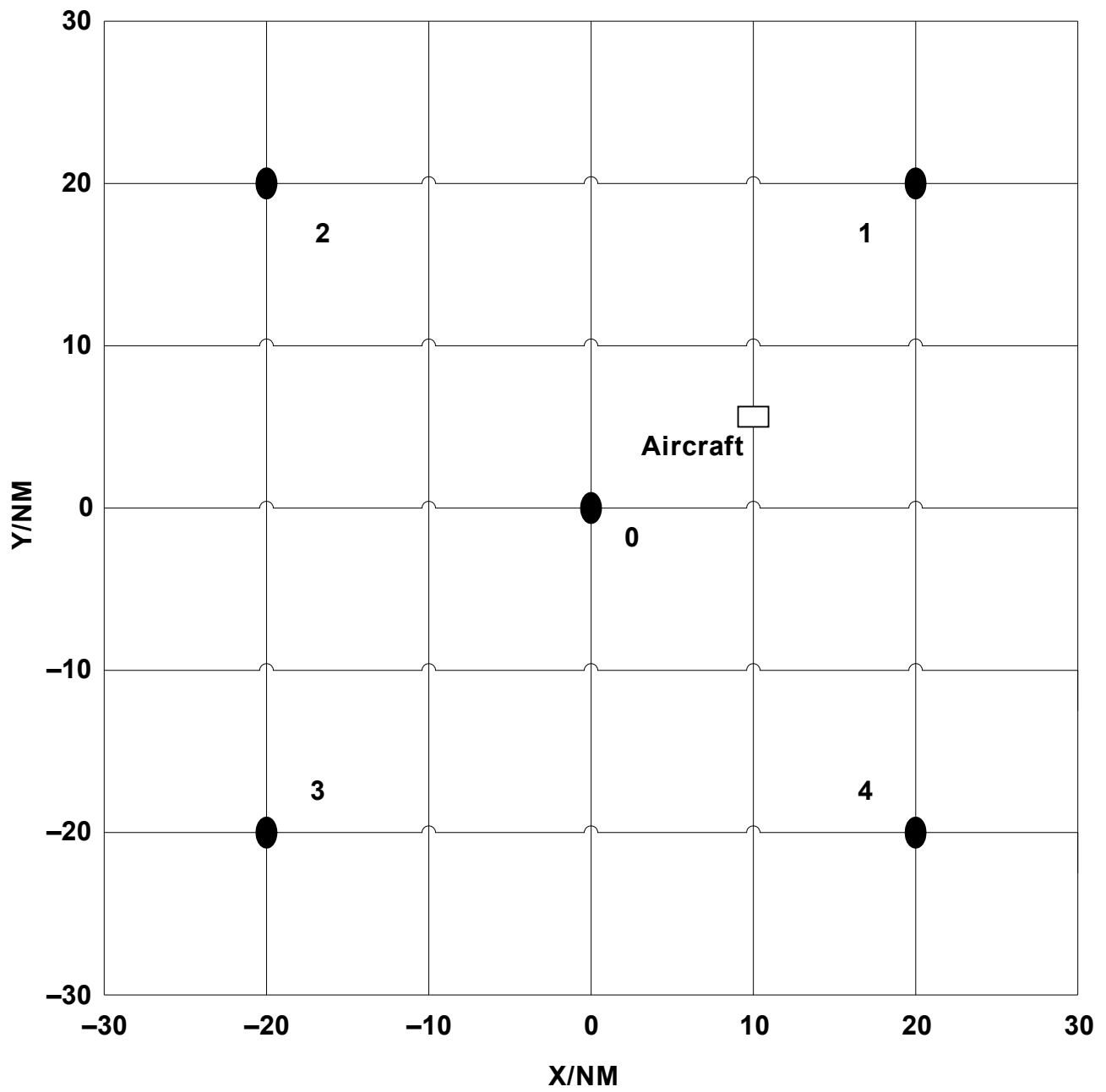


Figure L-1. Five-receiver stations layout

2.7 The geometry of the system has, in general, a large impact on the accuracy that can be obtained. As long as the aircraft is inside the enclosing 2-D area of the ground antennas, the calculated position will have the highest accuracy; outside this area, the accuracy will degrade quickly.

2.8 A distinction can be made between active and passive MLATs. A passive system consists only of receivers, whereas an active system has one or more transmitting antennas in order to interrogate the aircraft's SSR transponder. The main advantage of an active system lies in the fact that it is not dependent on other sources to trigger a transmission from an aircraft. The main disadvantage is that it generates additional interference on the 1 030 MHz and 1 090 MHz channels.

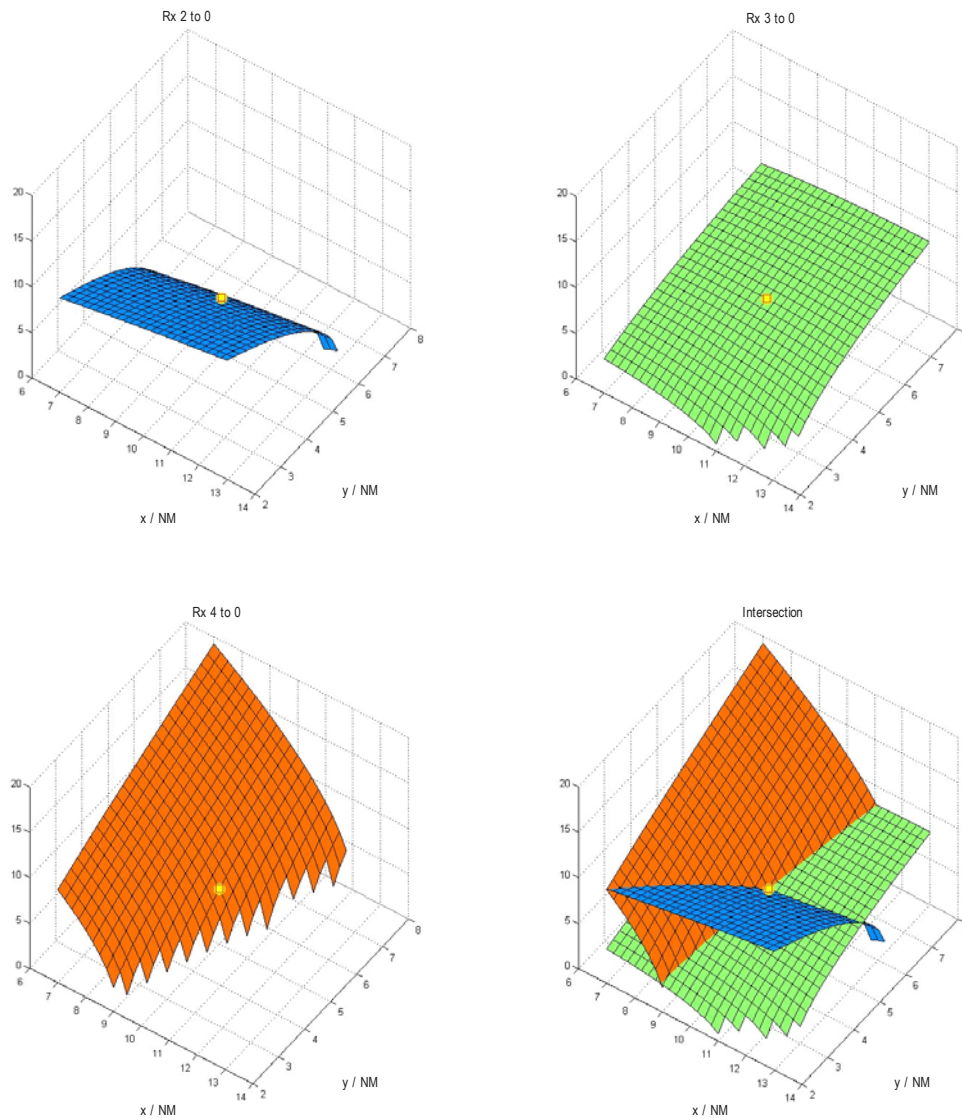


Figure L-2. Intersecting hyperboloids

3. SYSTEM ARCHITECTURES

3.1 Calculation of TDOA

3.1.1 WAM systems can be categorized by two different criteria. First, they can be divided by the method that is used to calculate the TDOA of the signal, and second, they can be categorized by the method, if any, used to synchronize the receivers.

3.1.2 The most common method used to calculate the TDOA of 1 090 MHz signals is to measure the TOA at each individual receiver and then to calculate the difference between them, as shown in Figure L-3. Other methods are not described in this document.

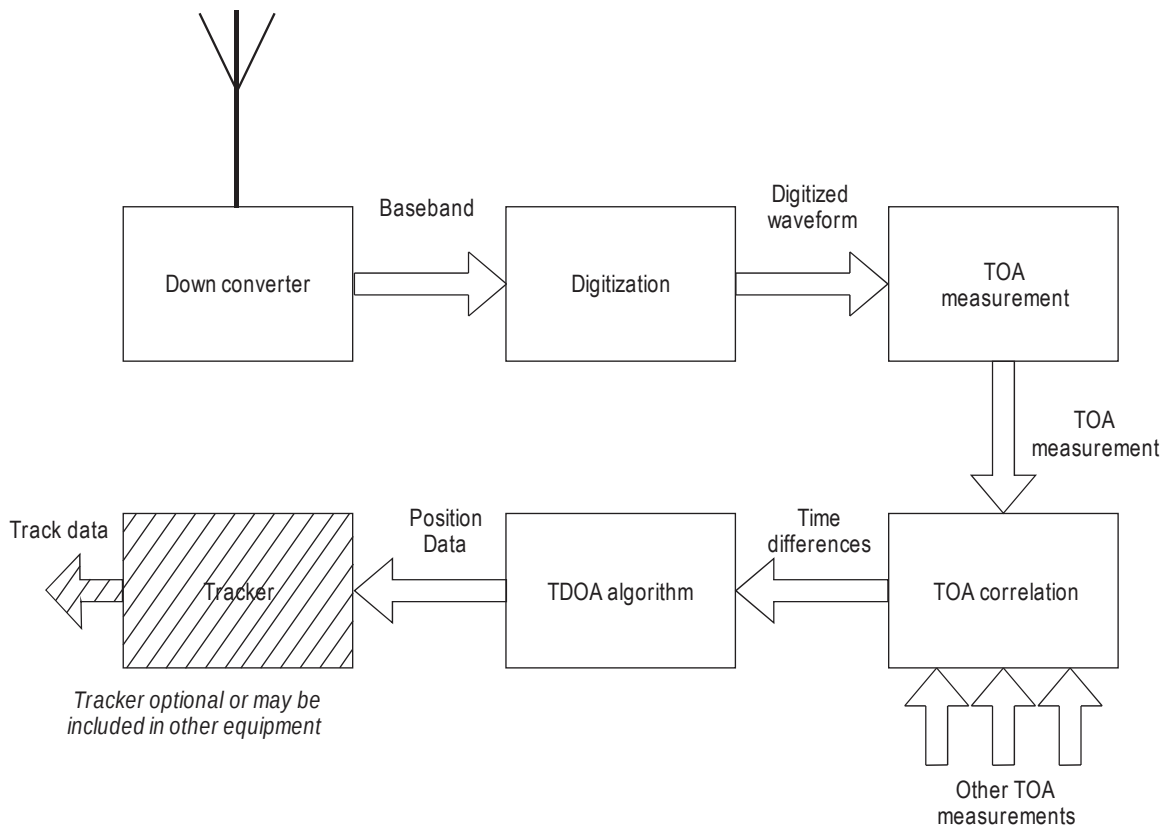


Figure L-3. TOA data flow

3.2 Synchronization methods

3.2.1 Synchronization of time is fundamental to MLATs. In order to calculate the position, it is necessary to know the time difference from a signal arriving at one antenna in the system to the arrival of the signal at another antenna in the system. This is commonly termed the TDOA. However, the signal is time-stamped during the digitization process, which is delayed in time relative to the TOA at the antenna by the group delay of the down-conversion process.

3.2.2 Therefore, to accurately calculate the TDOA, this delay must be exactly known and taken into account. Additionally, the digitization process for each receiver chain must be referenced to a common time base, otherwise the signals at the various sites will be referenced to differing clocks and not directly comparable. Figure L-4 shows the group delay and synchronization components. Synchronization is defined as the method by which the digitization processes of the signals to each site are tied together.

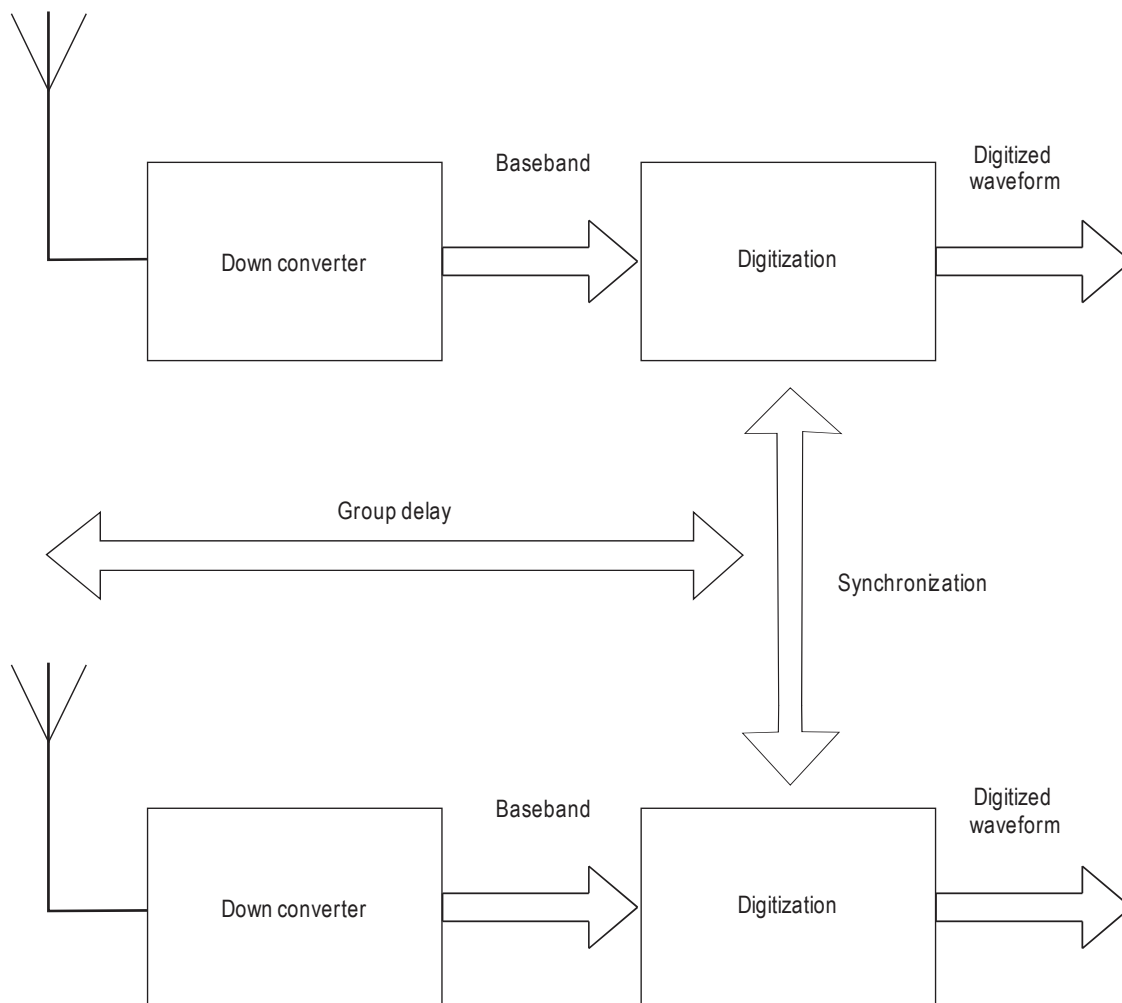


Figure L-4. Group delay and synchronization

3.2.3 Figure L-5 shows the topology of the various synchronization technologies in use on WAM systems. These technologies are described in more detail in sections 3.3 to 3.8 of this appendix.

3.3 Common clock systems

3.3.1 Common clock systems use simple receivers with most of the complexity at the central processing site. Common clock systems may transmit either RF or IF signals from each receiver to a central site over a custom analog link. Conversion to baseband or video and subsequent digitization is then carried out at the central site, with reference to a common clock for each receiver.

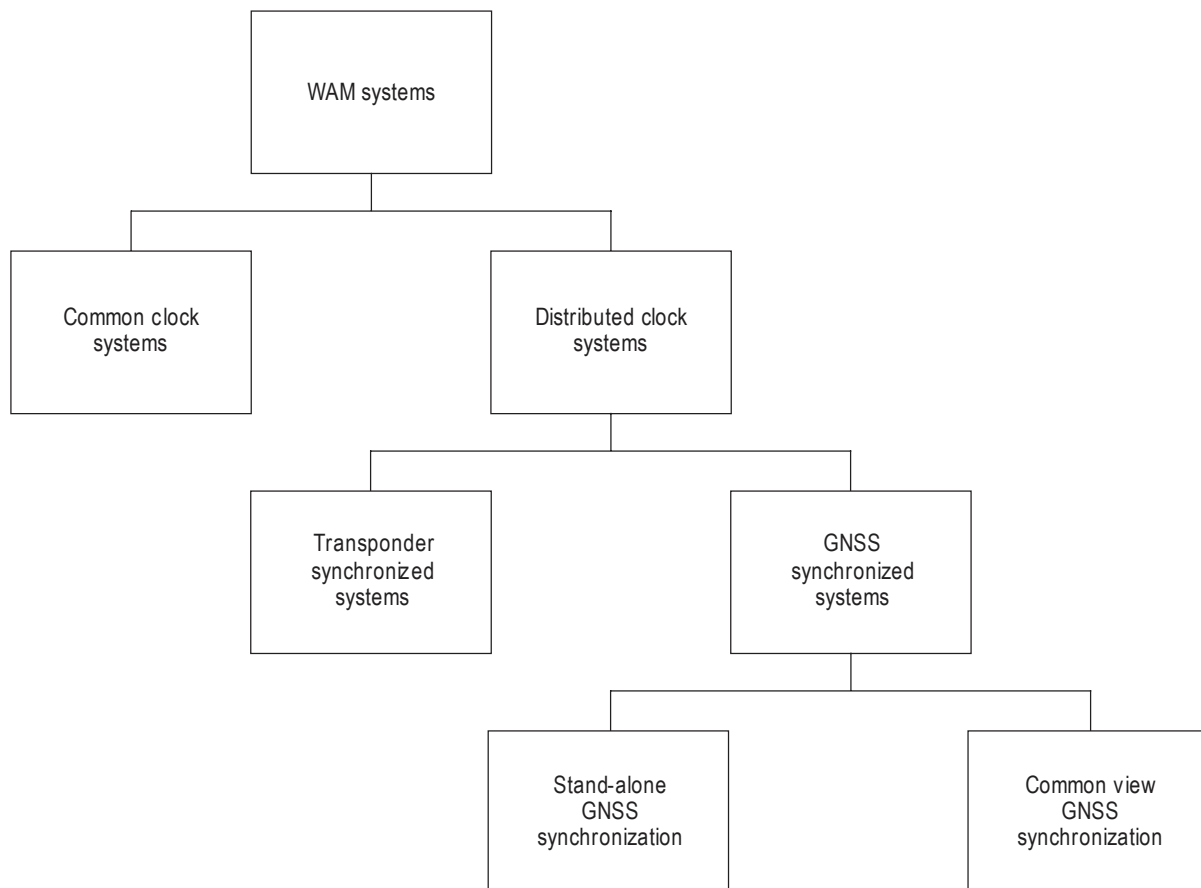


Figure L-5. WAM synchronization topology

3.3.2 With this architecture, there is no need to synchronize each of the outlying receivers with each other as digitization occurs at the central site. However, the group delay between signal reception at the antenna and digitization at the central site is large, as it includes the delays of the custom analog link which must be accurately known for each receiver. This means both the receive chain and the data link must be rigorously calibrated to measure group delay. As the delay in the link increases, often due to an increased link distance or system baseline, achieving a given accuracy will become more difficult as delays will vary as a fraction of the total path.

3.3.3 This architecture benefits from a simple receiver with low power consumption and most of the complexity in the central multilateration processor. However, the signal delay between the antenna and the multilateration processor puts stringent requirements on the type and range of the link. Typically, a single hop custom microwave link is used, or dedicated fibre is laid between the sites. Either an analog RF link or IF link is used for transmission between sites, as described in section 3.3.4 of this appendix. The location of the multilateration processor must typically be at the centre of the system to minimize communication link distances.

3.3.4 A common clock system based on the IF analog link is illustrated in Figure L-6(a). A signal received at each remote site is down converted and transmitted to the centre of this system. An RF analog link achieves more benefits than an IF analog link. A radio-over-fiber (RoF) system, which converts from electric signals to their optical equivalents (E/O) by amplitude modulation, is able to directly transmit RF signals from the remote receiver station to the central site over a long distance (up to 30Km) where it will be converted to an electrical signal (O/E), as illustrated in Figure L-6(b). This architecture improves the group delay calibration owing to its large bandwidth using the optical fiber. Moreover, each remote receiver station can be as small as possible because the down converter can be separated from the remote site.

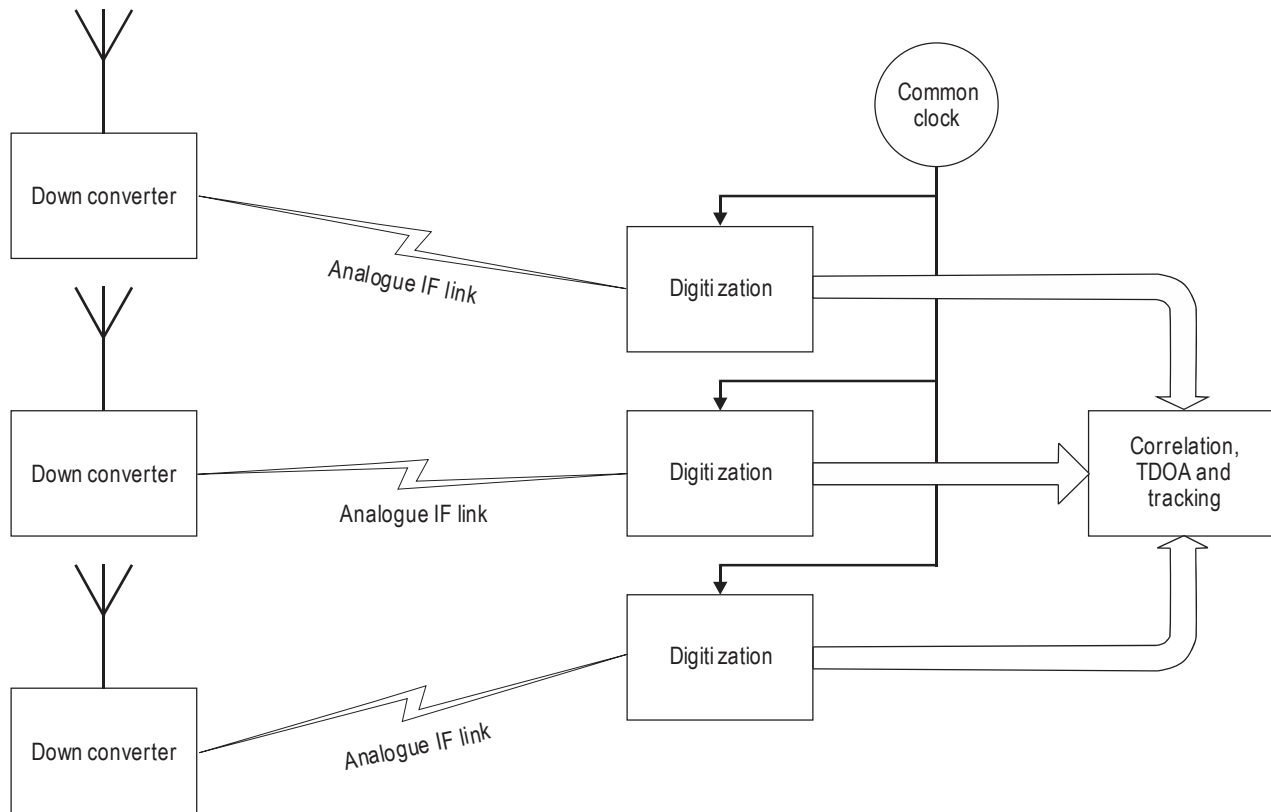


Figure L-6 (a). Common clock architecture (Analogue IF link)

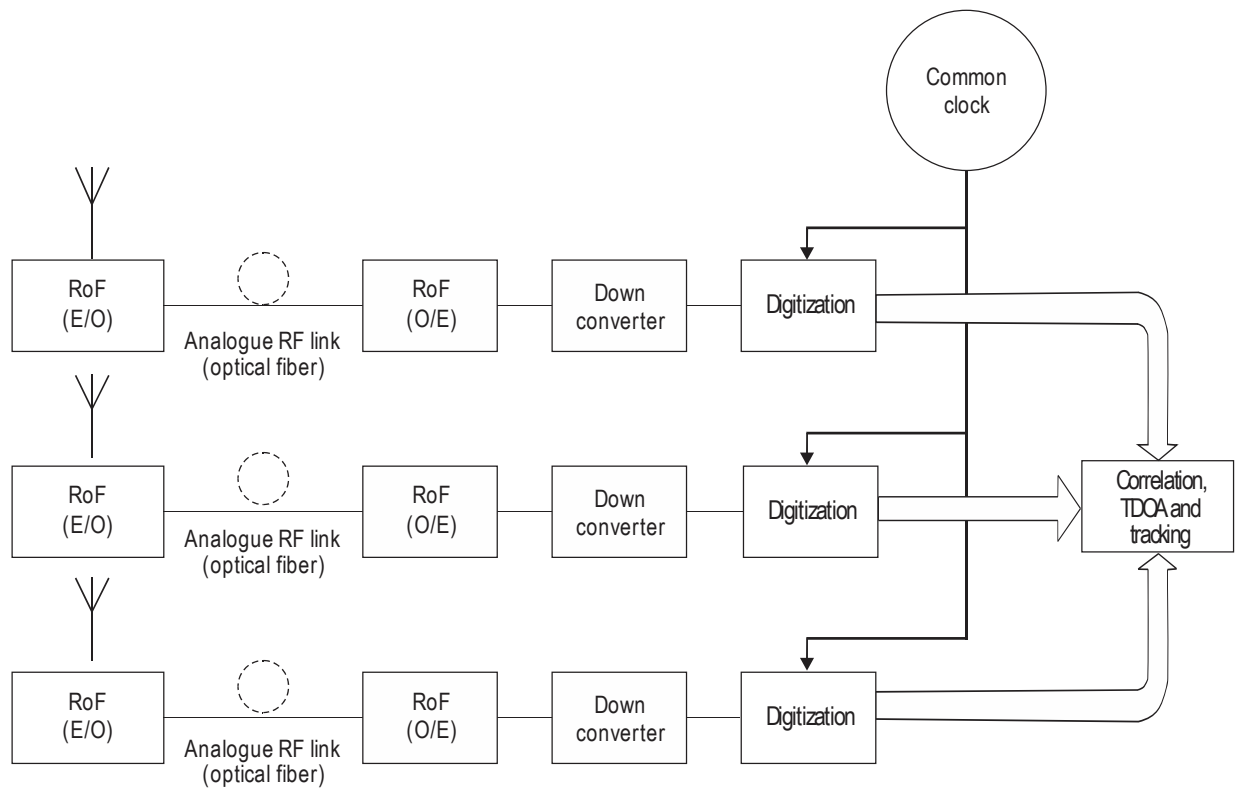


Figure L-6(b). Common clock architecture (Analogue RF Link)

3.4 Distributed clock systems

Distributed clock systems use more complex receivers to reduce the demands on the data link (see Figure L-7). The RF signal is down-converted to a baseband or video signal and then the digitization, code extraction and TOA measurement are all done at the receiver. This gives great flexibility in the data link as just the SSR code value and the TOA need to be transmitted to the processing site from each receiver. Any digital data link can be used, and the link latency is not critical. However, a mechanism must be used to synchronize the clocks at the local sites. This is the most common approach used in WAM systems.

3.5 Transponder synchronized systems

3.5.1 Transponder synchronized systems use transmissions from a reference transponder to tie up the clocks at each of the receiver sites (see Figure L-8). The reference timing signal and the aircraft's SSR transmission pass through the same analog receive chain, which means that common delays cancel out the delay bias caused by the analog components, allowing an accurate system to be produced for short baselines. At longer baselines, atmospheric delays have an impact that reduces accuracy. The synchronization transponder does not need to be collocated with the central multilateration processor, but it does need to have line of sight to each of the receivers. For a WAM system this means that tall masts or towers will typically be needed even in flat regions.

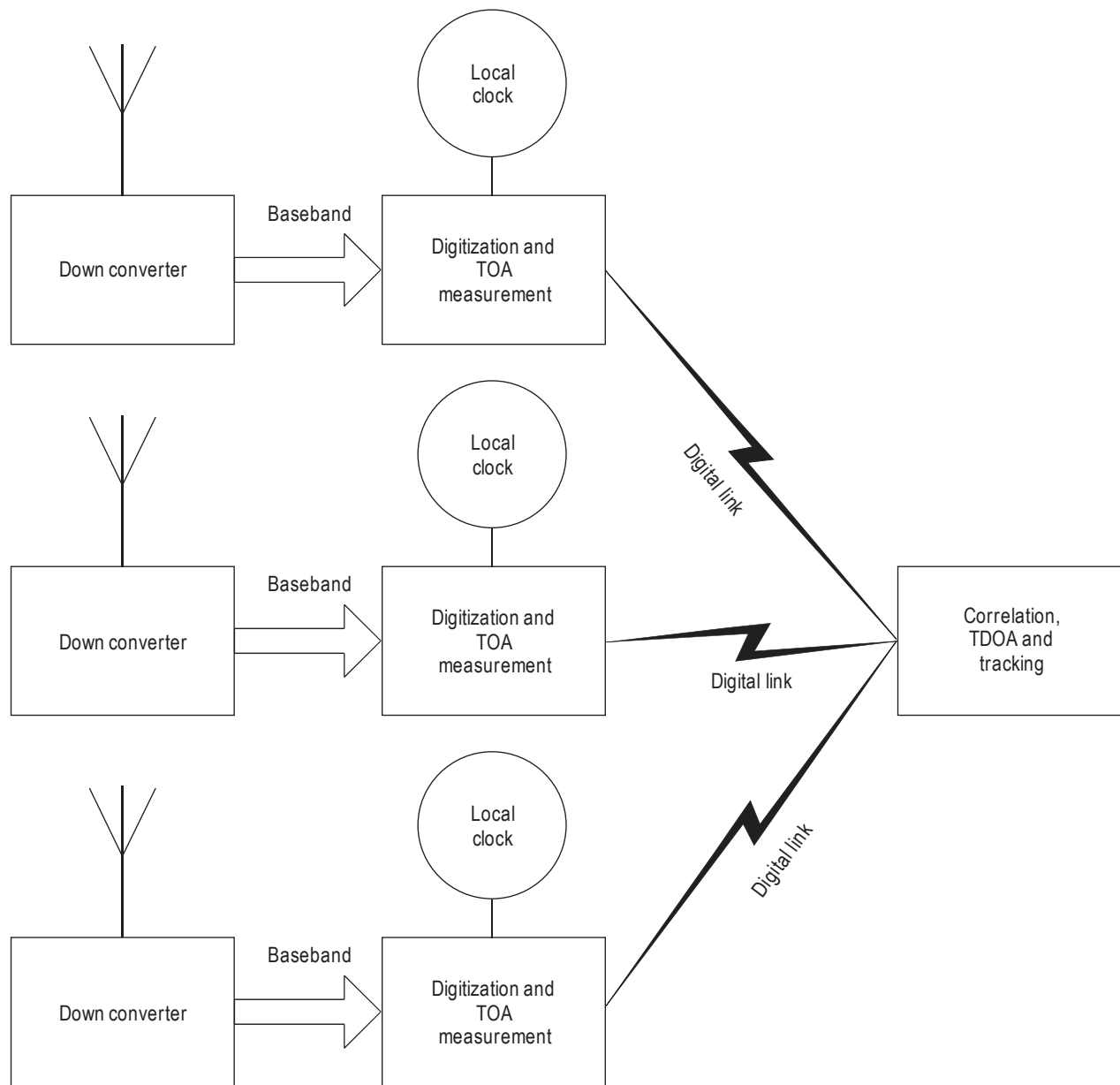


Figure L-7. Distributed clock architecture

3.5.2 It is possible to use multiple synchronization transponders on an extended system, provided every pair of receivers can be linked to every other pair by means of common references.

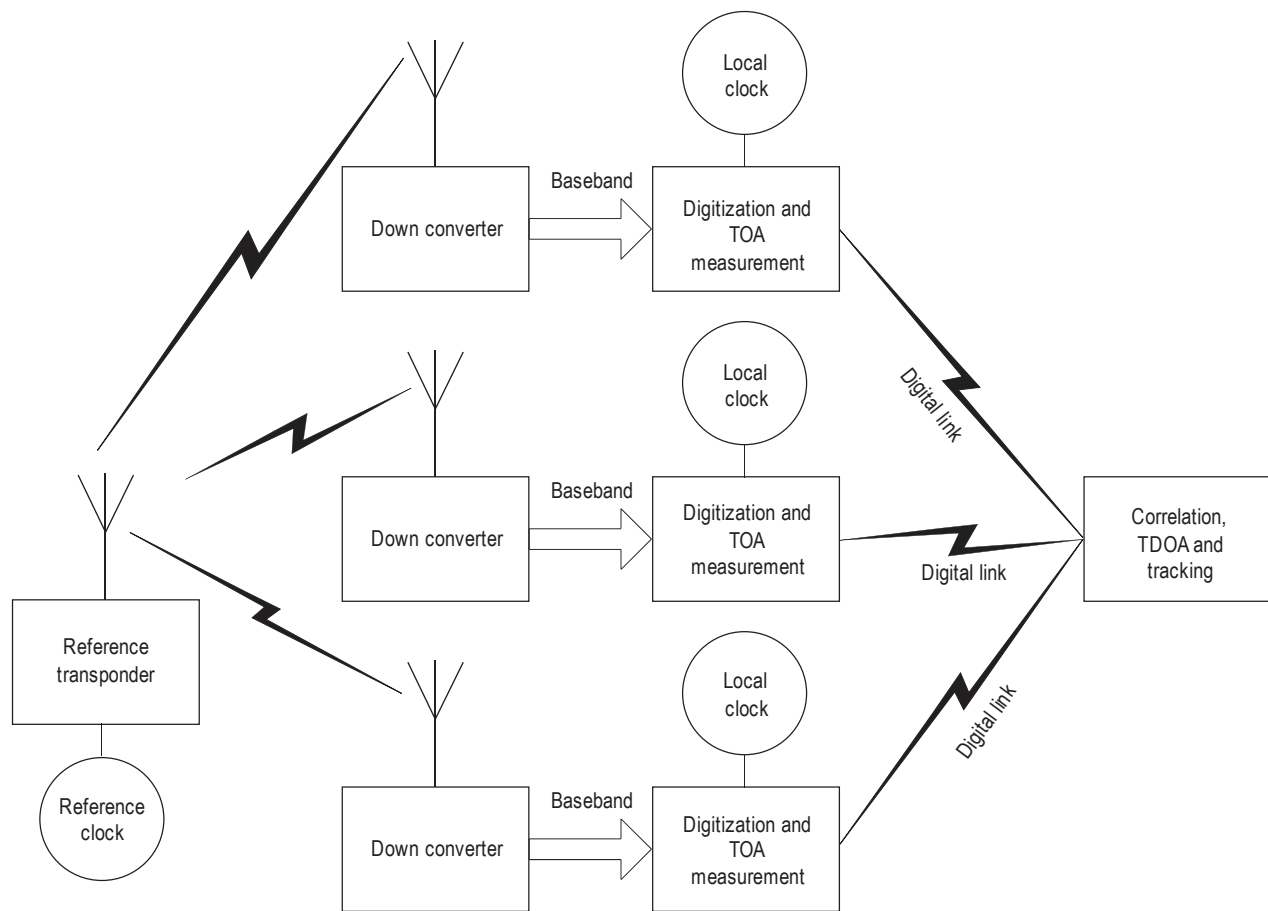


Figure L-8. Transponder synchronized architecture

3.6 Stand-alone GNSS synchronized system

An external common timing reference such as GNSS can be used to provide a common timing reference for each of the receivers. The timing of the GNSS system is maintained very accurately so it can be used as a common reference for the receivers. For MLATs it is only the time difference between receiver sites that is of interest, not the absolute time. It is therefore possible to synchronize the receivers of an MLAT to within 10–20 nanoseconds by using a GPS disciplined oscillator at each site. GNSS synchronized systems are much easier to site than common clock and transponder systems as they do not need tall towers for synchronization and any digital data link can be used. Integrity checking of the GNSS timing relies on the integrity of the GNSS receiver, so selection of a suitable receiver with receiver autonomous integrity monitoring capabilities is essential. The architecture is illustrated in Figure L-9.

3.7 Common-view GNSS synchronized system

For situations where the stand-alone GNSS synchronization between receivers is not accurate enough, a common view synchronization method can be used. Common-view systems use GNSS satellites that are in view of all the receivers (see Figure L-10). This allows a large number of the error source to be removed as they are common between signals, and thus provides a significantly more accurate synchronization solution. Subnanosecond accuracies can also be achieved using this technique.

3.8 Synchronization summary

The characteristics of the various synchronization schemes with respect to their application to WAM are summarized in Table L-1. It should be emphasized that this is an attempt to summarize the fundamentals of each architecture over long baselines and not to comment on specific deployments.

3.9 Passive and active systems

MLATs can be either passive or active. Passive systems rely on the transmissions from an aircraft's transponder that are solicited by other equipment and on unsolicited squitter responses. Active systems can solicit their own response from aircraft in addition to any detected passively. The systems are described in 3.9.1 to 3.9.3 of this appendix.

Table L-1. WAM synchronization methods

	<i>Accuracy</i>	<i>Baseline</i>	<i>Link choice</i>	<i>Mast</i>	<i>Line of Sight</i>
Common clock	Medium	Medium	Microwave Fibre	High Low	Yes No
Transponder synchronization	Medium	Medium	Any	High	Yes
Standard GNSS	Low	Any	Any	Low	No
Common-view GNSS	High	Large	Any	Low	No

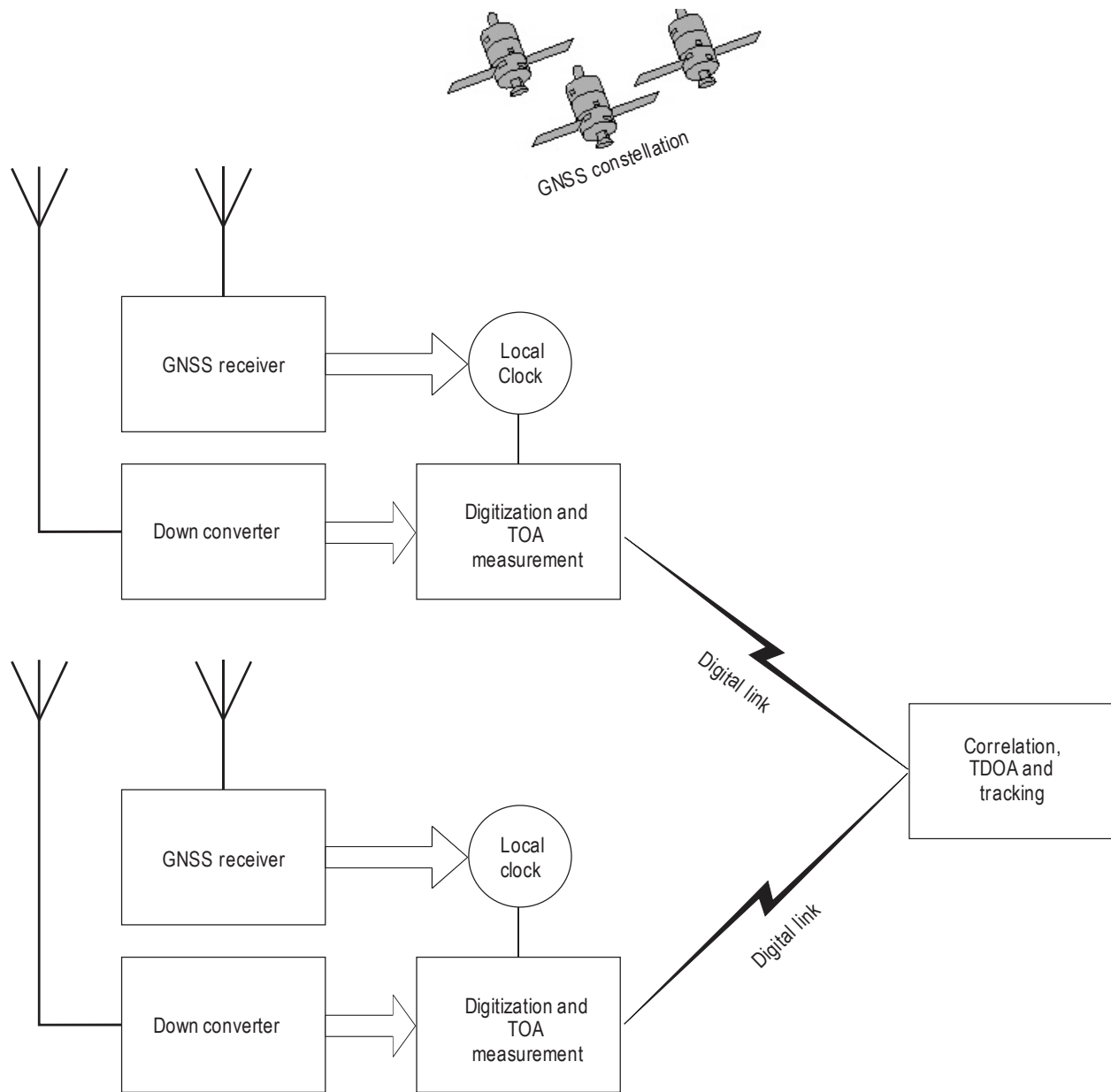
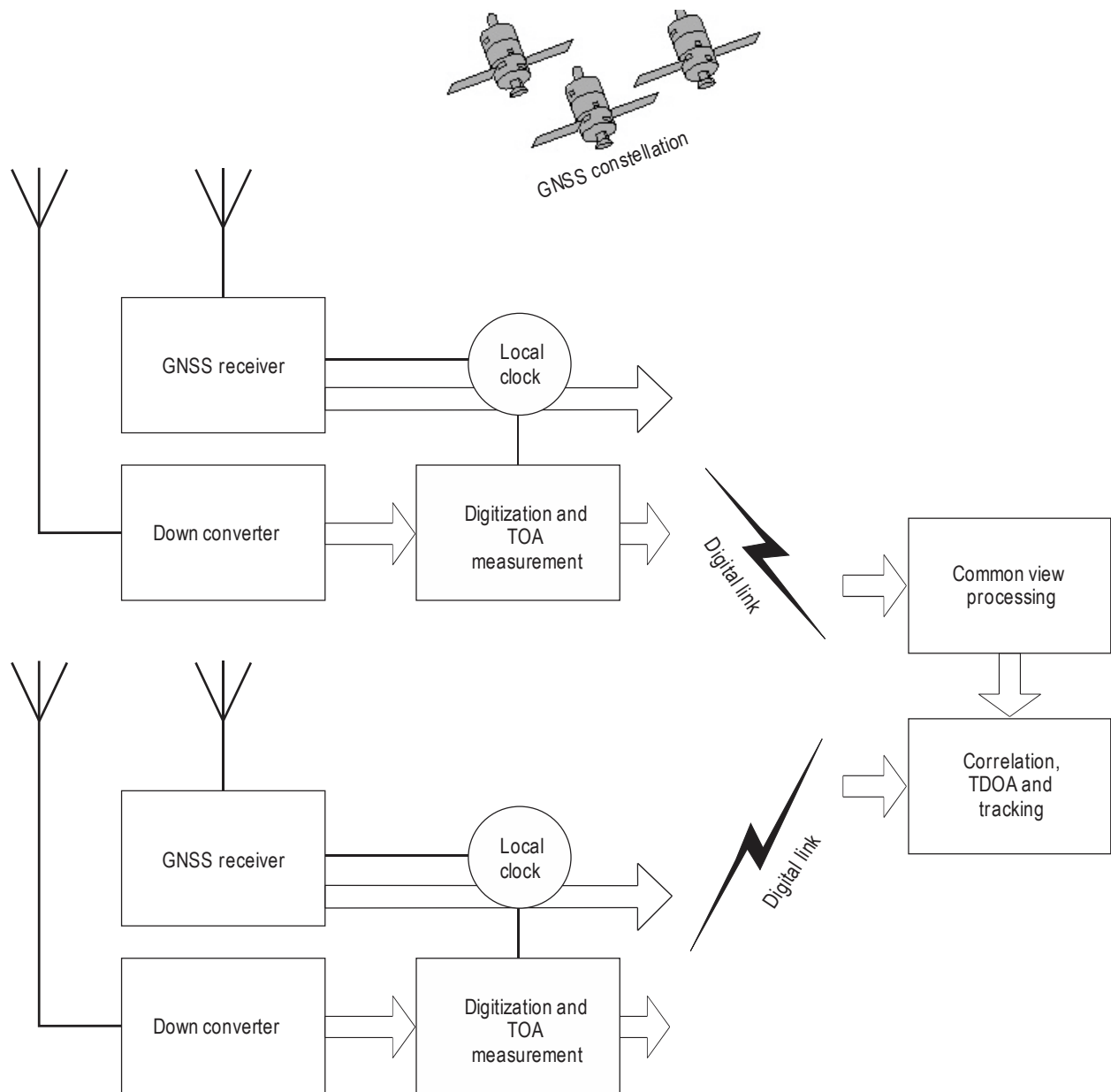


Figure L-9. GNSS synchronized architecture

**Figure L-10. Common-view GNSS synchronized architecture**

3.9.1 Passive MLATs

3.9.1.1 Passive MLATs do not interrogate the aircraft transponder; this offers two advantages in terms of spectrum usage. First, no transmission licence is required for the installation and use of the system. Second, there is no increase in the number of 1 030 MHz interrogations or 1 090 MHz replies caused by the system.

3.9.1.2 In general, passive MLATs will acquire aircraft within range of the system if one or more of the following is true:

- a) the aircraft is equipped with a Mode S transponder;
- b) the aircraft is equipped with a Mode A/C transponder and within range of one or more ground interrogators; and
- c) the aircraft is equipped with a Mode A/C transponder and within range of one or more ACAS-equipped aircraft.

3.9.1.3 This means that, in general, passive MLATs are best suited to:

- a) busy areas with a high volume of ACAS-equipped traffic;
- b) areas with existing MSSR surveillance infrastructure;
- c) areas where Mode S use is mandatory; and
- d) areas where ES ADS-B is mandatory.

3.9.1.4 In general, passive MLATs may not perform as well with Mode A/C only aircraft at low altitude as there will be fewer Mode A/C interrogators to illuminate the aircraft since they may be below coverage of ground interrogators.

3.9.1.5 It should also be noted that while it is technically feasible to track aircraft based on Mode S acquisition squitters only, this does not provide enough information for current operational requirements. Currently, both the aircraft ID and pressure altitude are required by controllers. This information is not available in the Mode S acquisition squitter but is provided in the Mode S ES.

3.9.2 Active WAM systems

3.9.2.1 Active MLATs perform all the same functions as passive systems, and in addition, they can solicit their own replies from aircraft. The antenna for an active MLAT is much simpler than for an MSSR interrogator. A rotating antenna needed for the SSR is not required; instead, either an omnidirectional or sectorized antenna may be used.

3.9.2.2 One scenario that may require the use of an active MLAT is for terminal area surveillance. Passive techniques can be used to acquire surrounding aircraft that are within the range of existing MSSR systems. A short-range interrogator can be used to acquire low-level aircraft on approach that fall below the coverage of existing MSSR systems.

3.9.2.3 In a Mode S environment, aircraft can be acquired by the MLAT from squitter transmissions. For the terminal area application, aircraft on approach could benefit from a higher update rate as this improves accuracy and probability of detection. Therefore, individual aircraft can be selectively interrogated more frequently.

3.9.2.4 Active MLATs can also be used to acquire specific data from properly equipped aircraft just like Mode S

radars. The Mode S acquisition squitter can be used to acquire the aircraft passively by Mode S address, and surveillance interrogations can be used to obtain additional data such as the Mode A code, aircraft ID (e.g. call sign) and pressure altitude.

3.9.2.5 In the terminal area, consideration must be given to aircraft on the ground potentially responding to all-call interrogations. It may be possible to site the active antenna so that it does not illuminate the taxiways or apron. Directional antennas are another method of excluding certain areas.

3.9.2.6 The use of selectively addressed surveillance interrogations will reduce unwanted replies. If this is used in conjunction with a sectorized antenna, it will be possible to limit uplink requests to a particular sector.

3.9.2.7 Active MLATs can also be used to calculate the range to the target in the same way that MSSR and ACAS systems do. This information may supplement the position calculated using TDOA. In addition, it is used to improve the position accuracy outside the multilateration footprint.

3.9.3 Passive/active WAM systems

3.9.3.1 Active WAM systems provide benefits but at the expense of potentially significant interference when multiple WAM systems are deployed in high density environments. The use of omnidirectional antennas to solicit Mode S replies causes significant interference because all Mode S aircraft in signal range are occupied for 35 microseconds for each interrogation, since they must decode the interrogation to determine whether the interrogation contains their address.

3.9.3.2 All WAM systems with active capability must be designed to use active transmissions only when there is no passive data available. For example, the Mode S ES ADS-B technique will passively provide sufficient transmissions for multilateration and all of the normally required operational information (e.g. aircraft ID and pressure altitude). Except for accuracy improvement, there should never be a need to actively interrogate a Mode S aircraft equipped with a normally functioning 1 090 MHz ES capability (see 3.9.2.7 of this appendix).

4. IDENTIFICATION AND ALTITUDE DETERMINATION OF AIRCRAFT

4.1 There is a difference between the requirements for technical identification and the current requirements for operational identification. Technically, the Mode S address is adequate information to accurately associate new plots with a track. This means that the Mode S acquisition squitter provides the basis for an MLAT to detect and track an aircraft, including measuring its geometric height.

4.2 On the other hand, operationally the controller needs to know the aircraft ID (e.g. call sign) and pressure altitude of the aircraft. This means that an active capability may be required for operational rather than technical reasons. Active transmissions will not be needed for Mode S aircraft equipped with 1 090 MHz ES, since aircraft ID is provided passively.

5. TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS

5.1 Receiver characteristics

5.1.1 Sensitivity

Sensitivity is commonly defined as the minimum power signal that the system can detect. As the power of any signal drops with the square of the distance (one-way), the sensitivity will dictate the range of the MLAT. Additionally, as TOA accuracy is a function of SNR, which is affected by sensitivity, the accuracy of the system will also be affected.

5.1.2 Dynamic range

The dynamic range dictates what range of power levels may be detected simultaneously by a receiver. Ideally a receiver must have sufficient dynamic range to detect aircraft at the minimum and maximum required range simultaneously. If this is not possible, lower signals may be lost (even when the power is above the sensitivity level) or a receiver may be sent into compression, distorting the output signal. Therefore, dynamic range and sensitivity must be considered jointly when predicting a receiver's coverage.

5.1.3 Clock rate

Fundamentally, the faster the clock rate, the higher the accuracy of the TOA or TDOA measurement.

5.1.4 Delay

The delay of the signal between antenna and digitization must be known. This delay is far greater for common clock systems than for distributed clock systems as the digitization occurs after the signal has been transmitted to the central site. It may be assumed that group delay will be measured and calibrated during system commissioning activities for any MLAT. Therefore, the main area of concern is how accurate this calibration is and how the delay will vary in use. To this end, the system should be designed to ensure that delay changes are either calibrated or known, with variation of received power level and frequency, and environmental effects such as aging or temperature related variations.

5.1.5 Antennas

5.1.5.1 *Antenna choice.* The choice of antenna, both for SSR 1 090 MHz signals and GNSS, if required, is critical and is briefly discussed in 5.1.5.2 and 5.1.5.3 of this appendix.

5.1.5.2 *Antenna for SSR signals.* The antenna used for SSR signals has three critical parameters:

- a) Peak gain, which together with the receiver sensitivity, dictates the system coverage;
- b) Gain/beam pattern, which should be suitable for limiting multipath while ensuring uniform coverage against elevation angle. If required, non-omnidirectional antennas may be used to increase range in a given direction; and
- c) Bandwidth, which is important for limiting out of band noise and improving system performance.

5.1.5.3 *Antenna for GNSS signals.* If a system utilizes GNSS synchronization, it is important that an appropriate antenna be chosen to minimize the effect of multipath and interference. Various other RF components are also required to reduce internal reflection and thus improve the voltage standing wave ratio (VSWR).

5.2 Signal corruption

5.2.1 The transponder signal received by the system may be subject to corruption, which can be caused by a combination of multipath, garble and interference.

5.2.2 Multipath can cause multiple copies of the same signal to be received due to reflections from objects such as the ground, water, buildings or other aircraft. Antenna choice can help to reduce multipath.

5.2.3 Short path differences cause the same reply to arrive at multiple times with the pulses overlapping. Typically, the direct and earliest path will be at a higher level than at the reflected paths. These overlapping but attenuated pulses cause the pulse shape of the direct received signal to deform and can have a serious impact on TOA accuracy.

5.2.4 Long path differences result in multiple copies of the same reply to be received. If this is undetected, it can cause ghost tracks.

5.2.5 Garble occurs when two or more different signals are received that overlap in time. The probability of garble occurring on any given signal increases with the density of the SSR signal environment.

5.2.6 Both multipath and garble have an impact on the accuracy of multilateration receivers and affecting probability of detection as well. In many cases, especially with multipath, the signal itself can be recovered sufficiently for identification purposes. However, the deformation of the signal affects the accuracy of any TOA measurement or cross-correlation. Accuracy can be maintained by rejecting these signals, but at the expense of probability of detection.

5.2.7 If higher than expected levels of interference occur at a receiver, this will also degrade accuracy. This is because the SNR of the received signal has a direct influence upon accuracy. If the SNR is particularly poor, the probability of detection and decoding ability may also be affected. In general, multilateration receivers are relatively narrowband, being restricted to the 1 090 MHz signals, and thus interference is either directly in-band (e.g. other systems operating in the 1 090 MHz band) or unintentional sidebands of other systems (e.g. DME).

5.3 System baseline

5.3.1 The baseline is defined as the distance between adjacent sites. The minimum height that an MLAT can see down to is governed by the baseline of receivers. With an MSSR system, the minimum coverage height is governed by the radar horizon. With an MLAT, the radar horizon of multiple receivers must be taken into account.

5.3.2 The minimum detection height is determined by the horizon of the multiple receivers. A full 3-D position solution requires four or more receivers to see the target. If only three receivers see the target, a position can be determined if height information is available from another source (e.g. Mode C).

5.3.3 Figure L-11 shows the impact of the earth's curvature on the visibility of an aircraft assuming flat terrain with receivers at ground level. In this case, the target is visible to $R \times 0$ and $R \times 2$, but not to $R \times 1$. From this, it can be seen that the wider the receiver baseline of an MLAT, the worse the low-level coverage of the system will be.

5.3.4 The most basic multilateration layout is a four-receiver system, as shown in Figure L-12. In general, baselines

of 10–20 NM are used to achieve low level coverage. However, the impact of terrain and antenna heights must be considered in any specific system installation.

5.3.5 The basic layout can be extended by adding receivers to increase the coverage area while maintaining low-level coverage. Figure L-13 shows a five-receiver layout that offers a very even coverage area, and a six-receiver system that offers an elongated coverage area. The system can be extended to any number of receivers to cover any area, although some architecture may limit this.

5.3.6 For covering large areas with multiple receivers, it should be noted that the shape of the GDOP dictates that certain layouts are more suitable than others (see Figure L-14). It is not simply a case of identifying the geometry with the lowest receiver density.

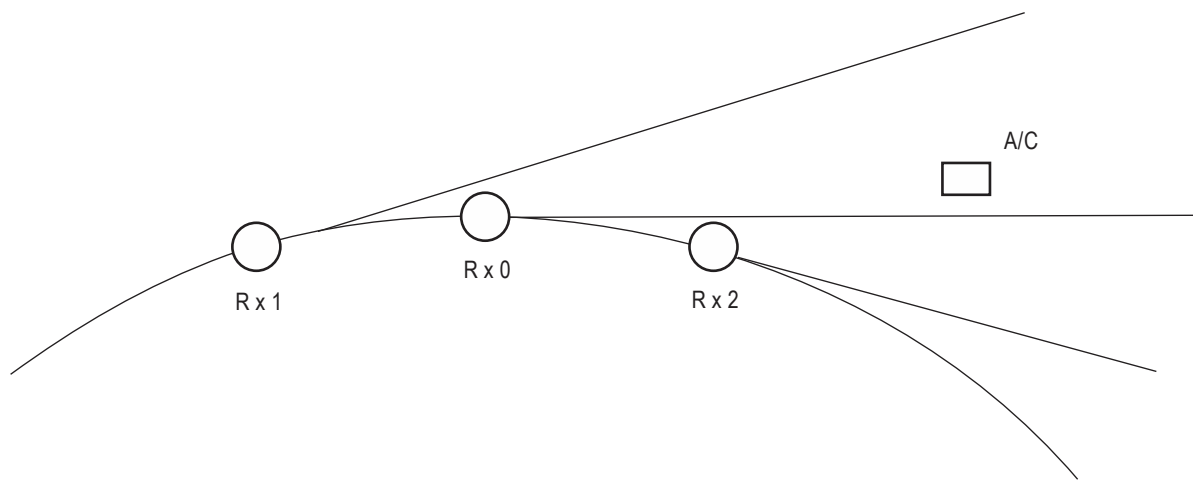


Figure L-11. Line-of-sight variation with baseline

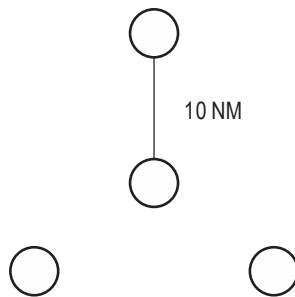


Figure L-12. Basic 4 receiver layout

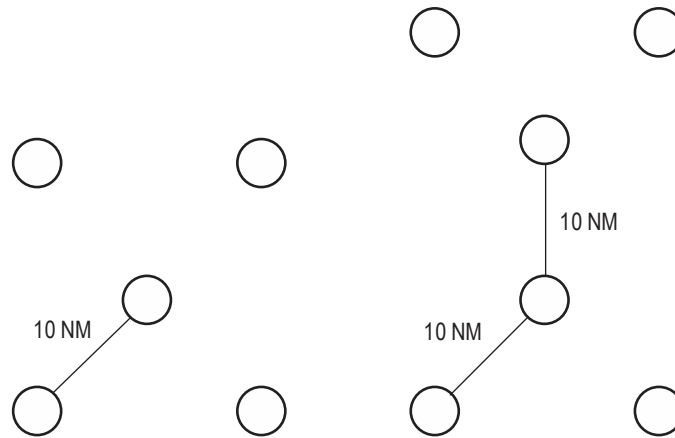


Figure L-13. Extended 5 and 6 receiver layouts

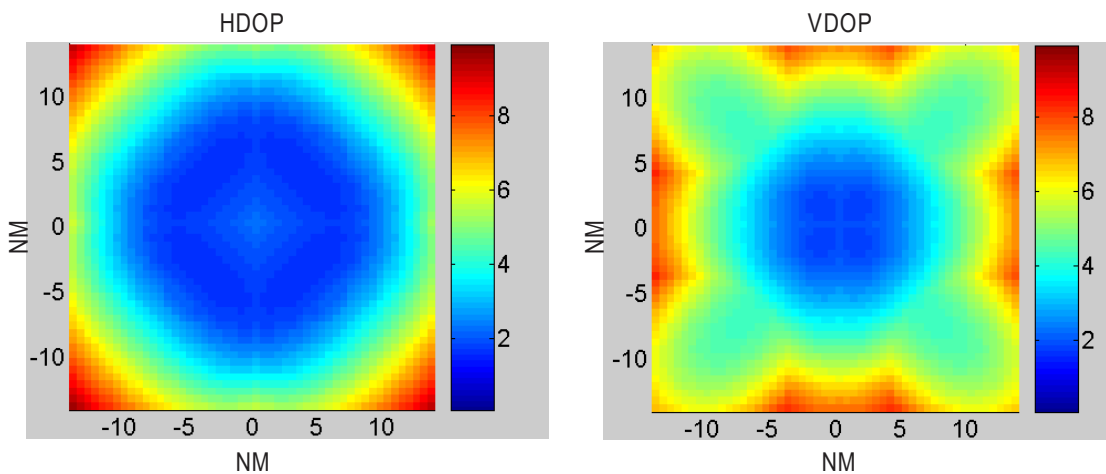


Figure L-14. GDOP for receiver layout as in Figure L-1

5.4 GDOP

5.4.1 GDOP is a feature that affects multilateration position accuracy, linking the TDOA accuracy with position accuracy. This is encompassed in the following equation, linking the RMS 3-D position accuracy and RMS TDOA accuracy:

$$\sigma_{xyz} = GDOP \times \sigma_{TDOA}$$

5.4.2 GDOP varies with target position with respect to the receivers; therefore, the same accuracy may not be achieved with differing target positions or receiver layouts, even with the same TDOA accuracy.

5.4.3 GDOP can be split into a number of constituent parts:

- a) Time dilution of precision (TDOP) — time DOP; may not be present for TDOA systems as the time of transmission is not required;
- b) Horizontal dilution of precision (HDOP) — horizontal DOP; the root-sum-square of x and y (lateral) geometry errors. This is typically lower than for VDOP (see c) below); and
- c) Vertical dilution of precision (VDOP) — vertical DOP; the vertical component of DOP governing height accuracy. VDOP increases as aircraft height decreases (i.e. lower altitudes are less accurate).

5.4.4 For RVSM applications, VDOP plots are generally given. VDOP and HDOP are illustrated in Figure L-14 for the topology described in Figure L-1 for an aircraft with a height of 35 000 ft.

5.5 Operation with Mode A/C only

A number of issues should be considered when an MLAT is used to detect aircraft equipped only with Mode A/C transponders. These issues are discussed below.

5.5.1 Probability of detection

5.5.1.1 The probability of detection in an MSSR system is dependent on the probability of reply from the aircraft's transponder when it is stimulated by an interrogation from the MSSR. With a passive MLAT there is no control of the interrogation, consequently, with Mode A/C only aircraft this makes the probability of detection dependent on interrogations from existing MSSR installations or other ACAS-equipped aircraft. The probability of detection will therefore be dependent on existing installations and other traffic.

5.5.1.2 This means that en-route aircraft in areas with existing MSSR infrastructure will have a high reply rate and hence a high probability of detection. For low flying aircraft, the reply rate will be less reliable. For a terminal area application with no existing MSSR installation, an active system may be required to achieve an acceptable probability of detection for low flying aircraft.

5.5.2 Code swaps

5.5.2.1 It is not always possible to distinguish Mode 1, 2, 3/A or C transmissions from an aircraft's transponder unambiguously without reference to additional information.

5.5.2.2 For civil aircraft, the system has to determine the difference between Modes A and C. Mode C uses only 2 048 codes compared to the 4 096 used by Mode A. It is therefore possible to positively identify 50 per cent of Mode A codes by the presence of the D1 pulse as that pulse is not used in Mode C replies. The decoding of the remaining Mode A and C codes can be done in the tracking algorithms with reference to the measured height of the aircraft. This leaves some ambiguity in the result when the allocated Mode A code represents a Mode C altitude close to the measured height of the aircraft. The geometric height of a pressure altitude can vary by more than 1 000 ft. This means that there are more than twenty overlapping codes for any given flight level. The frequency of Mode A/C code swaps can be significantly reduced if the local barometric pressure is available. This will significantly reduce the number of overlapping codes.

5.5.2.3 Military aircraft introduce another level of ambiguity as they use Mode 1/2 as well as 3/A and C. Mode 1/2 can use all 4 096 codes and are therefore indistinguishable from Mode A without knowledge of the interrogation or current

allocations. In high traffic areas, there are many more A/C interrogations than Mode 1/2. This means that an assumption can be made based on the frequency of codes received from the target.

5.5.2.4 In summary, it is straightforward for an MLAT to associate a series of codes with an aircraft track. For civil aircraft it is possible to distinguish between the Mode A and C codes, although an ambiguity exists for a small number of codes. With military aircraft, the ambiguity increases, especially between Mode A and Mode 1/2.

6. EXAMPLES OF WAM APPLICATIONS

6.1 En-route surveillance

6.1.1 This application involves long-range surveillance at typical altitudes of 29 000–41 000 ft. A typical WAM system with a square-5 layout and a large baseline of 60 NM and the following technical characteristics is generally considered suitable for en-route applications (see Table L-2):

Table L-2. Assumed WAM characteristics

<i>Parameter</i>	<i>Value</i>
Sensitivity	–85 dBm
Reply rate factor	2.5
Antenna	DME antenna with 3° squint
Bandwidth	22 MHz
Transmit power	24 dBW (typical SSR transmit power level)
Synchronization accuracy	1 ns

6.1.2 Figure L-15 shows accuracy versus range for both the aforementioned WAM and a typical MSSR calculated at the altitude of 35 000 ft. Only horizontal accuracy is shown as the MSSR cannot calculate height. If required, more outlying receivers could be added at the 60 NM baseline to form a pentagon, hexagon, etc. However, this would generally be done for availability or coverage reasons as it will not have a significant impact upon accuracy and thus is not shown in Figure L-15.

6.1.3 The plots in Figure L-15 assume 1 nanosecond synchronization accuracy, which can be achieved using a common-view GNSS synchronization method. For lower accuracy techniques, there will be some degradation in horizontal accuracy and a more significant degradation in vertical accuracy.

6.1.4 The white area around the edge of the WAM plots indicates the maximum range the aircraft can be seen; with shorter baselines this area of no coverage will shrink, but the accuracy will rapidly decrease. Using a 60-NM range is considered to be a good compromise between these two opposing requirements, although it must be noted that not all synchronization architectures could support baselines of this size. However, this reduces overall coverage as not only the closest site is required to see the aircraft. For example, considering the left-hand graph in Figure L-15, in the north-east corner, not only the most north-eastern receiver must receive the SSR pulse but also the central site, and north-west and south-east receivers. This effect, common to all MLATs, implies the coverage will be limited by line-of-sight issues at shorter ranges than a single-site system.

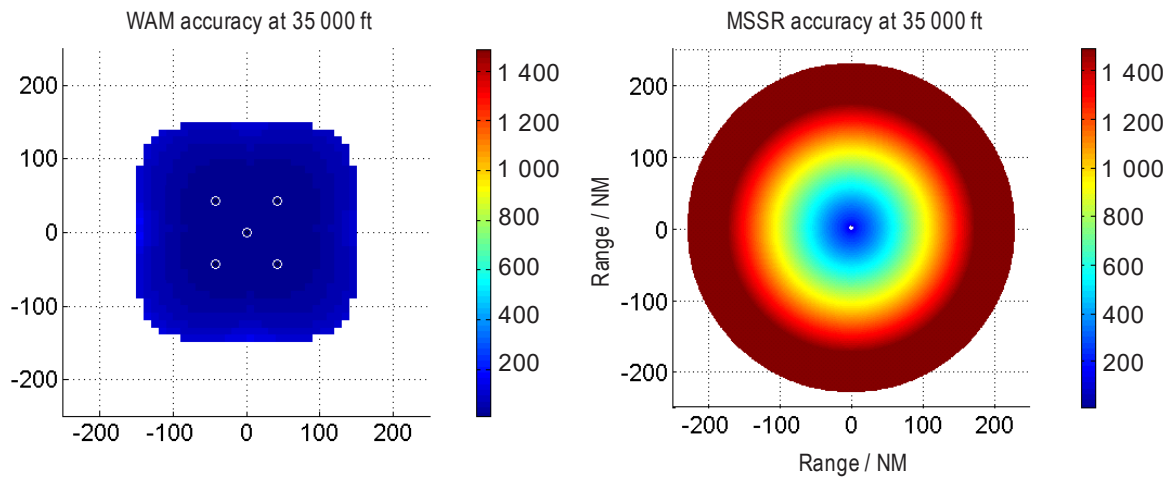


Figure L-15. WAM versus MSSR accuracy (ft) for en-route surveillance

6.1.5 In order to extend the WAM coverage above approximately 180 NM, three options exist:

- a) form a contiguous single system comprised of many receivers, as shown in Figure L-16;
- b) utilize multiple sets of receivers similar to that shown in Figure L-17; and
- c) raise site heights — this is likely also to be required for MSSR to ensure that coverage is available to the full 250 N.

6.1.6 Where coverage extends a large distance beyond the baseline, it is probable that the second option will be more cost-effective with discrete subsets of sites forming the overall system. A single processing site can still be used if the synchronization architecture will support the large baselines required.

6.1.7 It is evident that within the coverage area, the WAM system offers far better accuracy than MSSR except at very short ranges (<10 NM) where similar results can be achieved (see Figure L-15).

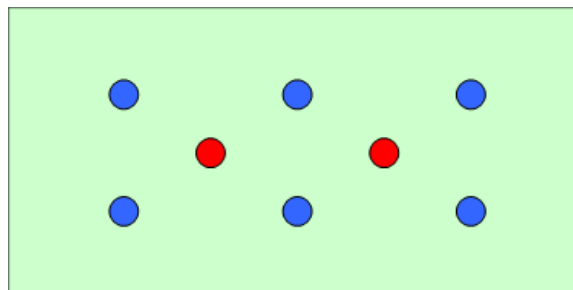


Figure L-16. Extended multiple-receiver layout

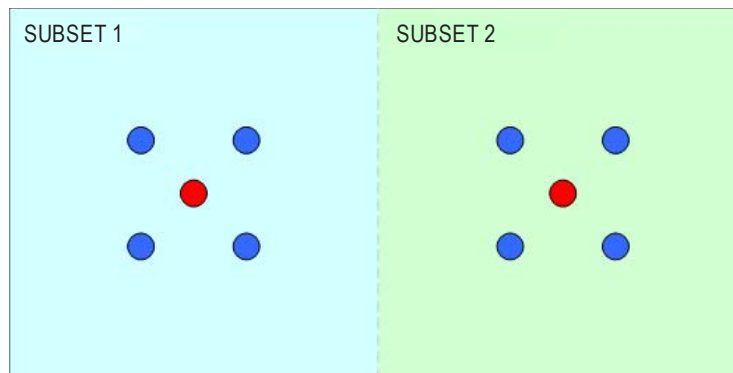


Figure L-17. Extended multiple-system layout

6.2 Terminal area surveillance

6.2.1 Terminal area surveillance is typically needed at a lower altitude and shorter range as compared to en-route surveillance. Figure L-18 shows accuracies of a typical MSSR, and Figure L-19 shows a number of WAM systems with different baselines for ranges up to 60 NM at both 1 000 and 3 000 feet.

6.2.2 As shown in Figure L-19, where sufficient coverage exists, a WAM system will generally outperform MSSR for accuracy. At these low heights, line-of-sight visibility dominates over sensitivity and antenna requirements.

6.2.3 The graph in Figure L-20 illustrates the drop in coverage with increasing baseline, assuming the maximum distance a receiver can see is 38.9 NM (1 000 ft based on the equivalent earth radius factor of 4/3). It can be seen that, for an aircraft at 1 000 ft, a zero-length baseline provides the maximum range of 38.9 NM. As the baseline is increased, the range of the system at 1 000 ft will reduce. When the baseline reaches 38.9 NM, it is no longer possible to see any aircraft at 1 000 ft because an insufficient number of receivers will see the aircraft.

6.3 Height monitoring equipment (HME)

6.3.1 RVSM is used to describe the standard vertical separation reduction from 2 000 ft to 1 000 ft for aircraft flying between FL 290 and FL 410. Aircraft that operate in RVSM airspace require certification and operational approval to operate in RVSM airspace.

6.3.2 To validate the capability of the aircraft to maintain altitude to the RVSM requirement, height monitoring units are used with an accurate height measuring capability. This is ideally achieved using a multilateration system.

6.3.3 The barometric altitude information reported by an aircraft is compared to the geometric height measurement whenever that aircraft is within the vicinity of the HME. This ensures that RVSM requirements are maintained across aircraft types, which are subject to an ongoing monitoring process.

6.4 Precision runway monitoring (PRM)

6.4.1 Independent parallel operations by current radar surveillance during IMC are typically limited to airports with parallel runways spaced more than 4 300 feet apart. The PRM system provides ATC with high precision surveillance data on a high-resolution display for aircraft of arrivals along an extended centreline. In the event that an aircraft flies towards the adjacent runway's extended centreline, a PRM system automatically provides alerts to ATC.

Note. — For more details of PRM system, refer to Chapter 3, 3.1.4.16 to 3.1.4.19.

6.4.2 The position estimate with high accuracy and high update rate provided by a multilateration system is ideally suited to PRM applications.

6.5 Validation of ADS-B performance

WAM may be used to monitor the performance of ADS-B systems. There are a number of roles that multilateration could play, as follows:

- a) *Verification of navigation accuracy.* The ADS-B data can be checked against the multilateration data to verify the track-keeping performance of the avionics;
- b) *ADS-B integrity monitoring.* WAM can be used to monitor the integrity of ADS-B as a surveillance technique. This could be done to gather data for a safety case and to monitor the integrity of in-service systems. For example, a bias in one aircraft's position is a serious safety issue for ADS-B only surveillance, but a WAM system could identify this immediately;
- c) *Anti-spoofing.* ADS-B is vulnerable to spoofing. WAM systems can be used to identify genuine aircraft and the source of spoof transmissions; and
- d) *Migration path to ADS-B.* WAM can provide ground-based surveillance similar to existing MSSR type surveillance. In addition, each receiver can operate as a 1 090 ADS-B receiver, providing surveillance for both ADS-B and non-ADS-B traffic.

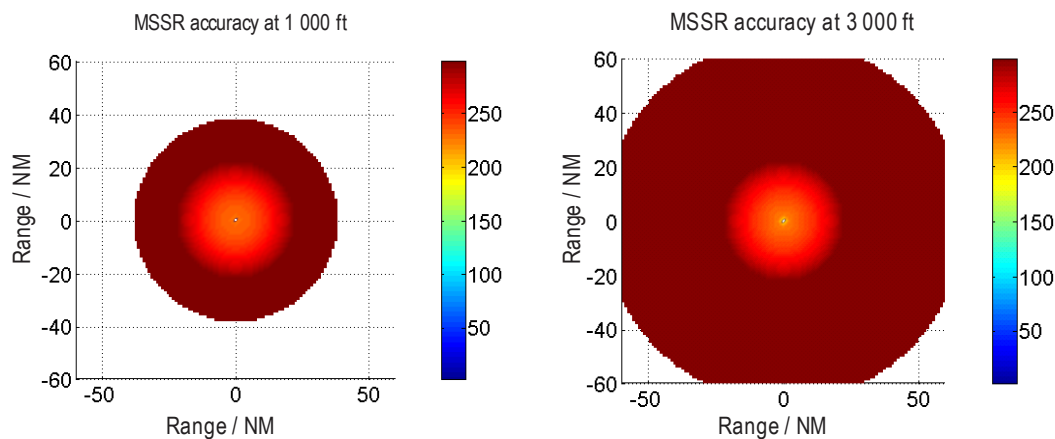


Figure L-18. MSSR accuracy (ft) in terminal area

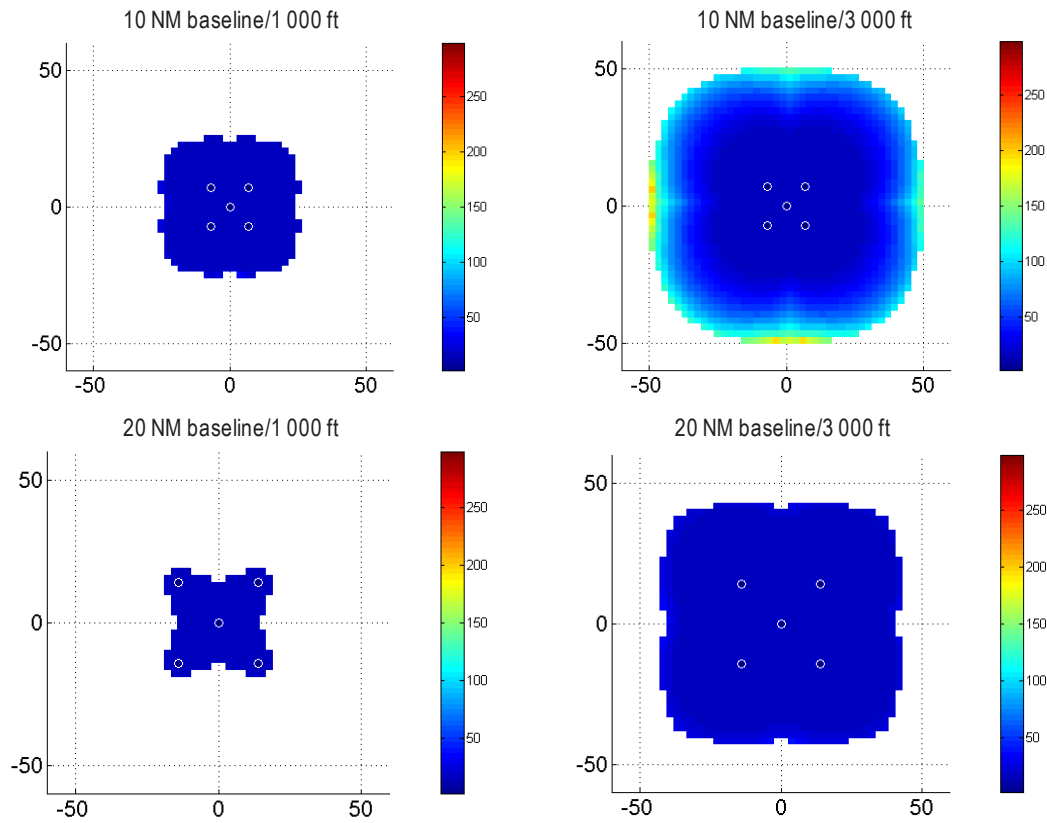


Figure L-19. WAM accuracy (ft) in terminal area

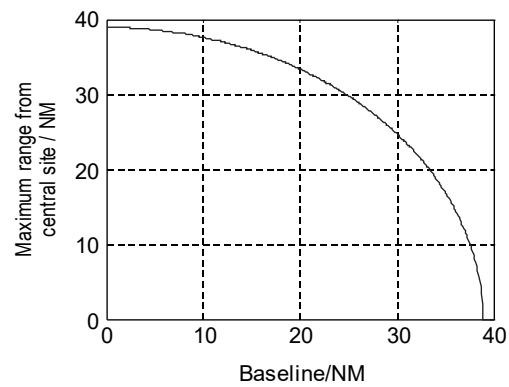


Figure L-20. Maximum coverage at 1 000 ft with increasing baseline

Appendix M

Interference considerations

1. OVERVIEW

1.1 SSR, ADS-B, ACAS, MLAT and military SSR (also known as IFF) systems use the same frequencies (1 030 MHz and 1 090 MHz) (see Figure M-1). Technical or operational changes in one of the aforementioned systems may have impact on the system itself, within the system concerned, on the other systems operated on the same frequencies, and even on systems operated on neighbouring frequencies (e.g. DME). Table M-2 gives an overview of 1 030/1 090 MHz operating systems.

1.2 The availability of spectrum on both 1 030 MHz and 1 090 MHz frequencies in any given airspace depends on the number and distribution of aircraft, ground/airborne/maritime interrogators and their interrogation rates. Since in most cases each interrogator operates independently of the others, it suffers from interference by replies generated in response to interrogations from other ground or airborne sensors and also from the possible absence of replies from transponders that are being occupied by other interrogators at the time access is being attempted.

1.3 Interference can result in a degradation of system performance causing lost or wrong information. The reasons for this degradation are mainly transponder occupancy and RF signal distortion. Transponder occupancy prevents valid signals arriving at the transponder from triggering the desired reply. RF signals on either uplink or downlink can be distorted by other overlapping RF signals which can make correct decoding of wanted signals difficult or impossible. The extent of degradation is a function of the channel loading. Transponder occupancy is discussed in detail in section 8 of this appendix.

1.4 For example, a Mode A/C transponder can give false information if a Mode C interrogation is converted to an apparent Mode A interrogation. This can happen by an interference pulse from another interrogation falling in a position 8 microseconds after the genuine P₁ pulse. Also, if an interference pulse falls into a Mode A or C spacing before P₁, a reply will be generated at the wrong range and possibly in the wrong mode. Lost information occurs when the transponder is interrogated when it is either in suppression or in the process of replying to an interrogation from another interrogator.

1.5 When a Mode S transponder is operating in an environment where interrogators are using exclusively Mode A/C interrogations, the interference considerations are identical to those for Mode A/C transponders. The introduction of a Mode S interrogator into such an environment will, however, result in different interference mechanisms, the effect of which will depend on many factors including the number of Mode S and Mode A/C transponders and the particular Mode S protocol in use. The effects of ACAS in such an environment can result in other interference mechanisms due to the higher interrogator density.

1.6 The interference phenomena are different for uplink and downlink. In an environment where Mode A/C and Mode S equipment are used in the same airspace, the effect of interference is different for each system. For example, a Mode A/C transponder is suppressed by a Mode S interrogation while a Mode S transponder will process the interrogations and reply if it is correctly addressed.

1.7 SSR system-generated interference can be minimized by:

- a) using the lowest transmitter power level possible, consistent with desired performance; and
 - b) ensuring that interrogation rates are as low as possible and are not synchronous with any interrogator having overlapping cover.
- 1.7.1 PRF stagger can also be used, thus ensuring that synchronous interference does not take place.
- 1.8 The transponder cannot process incoming RF signals for interrogation acceptance under the following conditions:
- a) if it is suppressed on its internal aircraft suppression bus due to RF transmission from other avionics equipment (e.g. ACAS, UAT, DME);
 - b) if it is in a transaction cycle; or
 - c) if it cannot decode Mode A/C signals when a P₁-P₂ suppression pair has been received (until the suppression period is over).
- 1.9 An important consideration in reducing channel activity is having the minimum number of interrogators in any given airspace consistent with operational requirements. The combination of II and SI codes makes it possible to uniquely identify 78 different interrogators or clusters. This unique identification capacity has been provided to facilitate the assignment of ICs.
- 1.10 Where possible, Mode S ground interrogators should be operated in a cluster. This eases the IC requirements and reduces interference on the downlink channel since subsequent acquisition will be undertaken by the ground coordination network within the cluster.

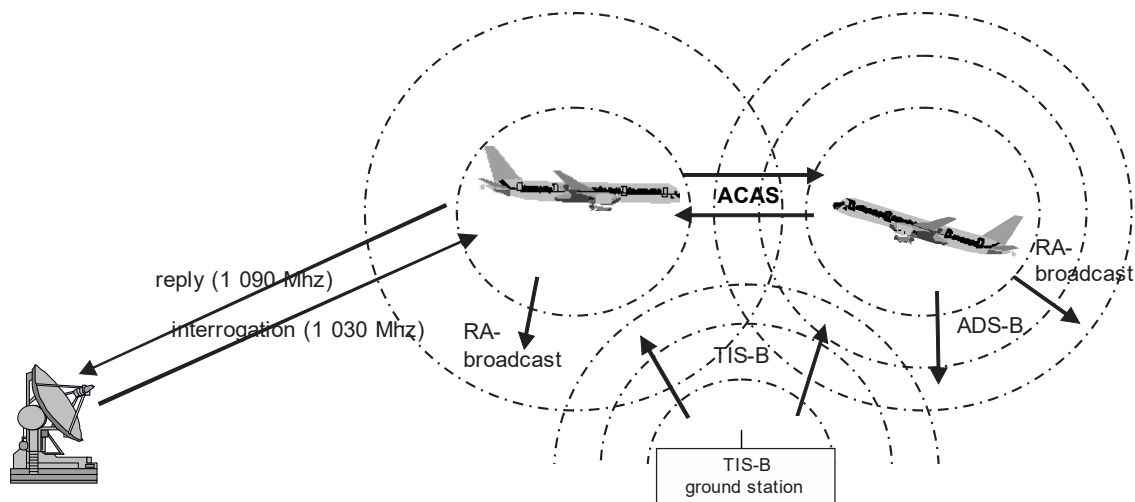


Figure M-1. 1 030/1 090 MHz environment

Table M-1. Systems operating on 1 030 MHz and/or 1 090 MHz

System	1 030 MHz	1 090 MHz
SSR Interrogator	Transmit	Receive
ACAS	Transmit	Receive
ADS-B		• Transmit (ADS-B OUT) • Receive (ADS-B IN)
TIS-B		Transmit
MLAT	Transmit	• Receive • Transmit (reference)
ADS-R		• Receive • Transmit
IFF Systems	• Transmit • Receive	• Transmit • Receive
Transponders	Receive	Transmit

2. THE USE OF STOCHASTIC LOCKOUT OVERRIDE

The Mode S-only all-call can provide the basis for acquisition of Mode S aircraft for interrogators that need the identity information available via Mode S but are not able to have an II code assigned for full Mode S operation. See Appendix H for details of this technique of acquisition.

3. MILITARY OPERATIONS

3.1 General

3.1.1 In some States, IFF systems also operate on a national basis on 1 030 MHz and 1 090 MHz, thus IFF must be considered the same as other systems using 1 030 MHz and 1 090 MHz frequencies. Performance studies should take into account all users of these frequencies.

3.1.2 The density, transmission characteristics and interrogation modes used by all interrogators may have a negative impact on the safe operation of ATS in certain areas. In order to ensure the integrity of all air navigation systems operating on 1 030 MHz and 1 090 MHz, operational limitations may be needed during IFF peace time activities. Examples of operational limitations for peace time activities could be restrictions with respect to location, time-of-day, transmit power, interrogation rates or use of interrogation modes.

3.1.3 It should be possible to immediately terminate any operation that causes safety hazards through the nomination of authorized points of contact on both civil and military sides. Interrogators using Mode S lockout protocols cannot use an interrogator code without local coordination in order to avoid loss of surveillance caused by lockout conflict. Interrogators using Mode S multisite communication protocols (multisite air-initiated Comm-B, or multisite ELM) cannot use an interrogator code without local coordination in order to avoid unintentional replies to interrogators with the same interrogator code. Appendix J, 4.2.4 and 4.5.2 provides additional information on local coordination of interrogator codes.

3.2 Mobile interrogators

3.2.1 In addition to fixed ground stations, military authorities use mobile airborne and shipborne interrogators. Agreements between civil and military authorities should be in place to allow such uses while ensuring safe operation for all users at all times.

3.2.2 Airborne interrogators operate at an altitude that provides a greater radio line of sight as compared to ground-based interrogators, therefore a larger volume of airspace may be affected. It is recommended that special care be taken to understand and coordinate the potential impact of airborne interrogators and operate only as required to satisfy mission requirements.

3.2.3 Mobile interrogators using Mode S lockout protocols cannot use an interrogator code without local coordination in order to avoid loss of surveillance caused by lockout conflict. Mobile interrogators using Mode S multisite communication protocols (multisite air-initiated Comm-B, or multisite ELM) cannot use an interrogator code without local coordination in order to avoid unintentional replies to interrogators with the same interrogator code.

3.2.4 Mode S mobile interrogators should use II Code ZERO (0) in order to avoid conflicts with fixed Mode S interrogators. Appendix H contains more details on this subject.

Note.— Some States do not allow mobile interrogator use of II Code ZERO (0), therefore a discrete interrogator code is locally coordinated and assigned.

4. MLAT

4.1 Multilateration is basically a passive system but it may use interrogations to achieve a certain level of performance. Active WAM systems can be used in approach and en-route environments. However, care must be exercised to limit the interrogation. In such cases, selective interrogations have the dominant effect on the transponder availability because of the use of omnidirectional antennas.

4.2 Significant levels of ACAS interrogations may reduce the transponder availability to a point that roll-call retries start to become a significant factor. However, this will be mitigated by a dynamic active WAM, which could abate roll-call in the presence of ACAS altitude reports.

5. ACQUISITION SQUITTER AND ES

5.1 General

5.1.1 There is an option to suppress the acquisition squitter in the future. The rapid implementation of ADS-B OUT can help overcome detrimental FRUIT effects in high traffic densities. In addition, the specified maximum rate of 6.2 ES's per second is near the limits in high traffic density areas. In this respect, the RF environment should be monitored to ensure that appropriate measures can be taken when necessary.

5.1.2 Acquisition squitter can be disabled when all ACAS are able to operate with ES. In that case, acquisition squitters will only be transmitted when no data are available to populate ES messages. Disabling the periodic acquisition squitter transmissions when ES's are available will reduce DF = 11 FRUIT significantly. However, the additional FRUIT (due to all aircraft emitting ES) is higher than the DF = 11 FRUIT reduction.

5.1.3 In general, it has to be recognized that a high-performance receiver may suffer in a high-density environment from high FRUIT rates, hence not providing a better performance than a “normal” receiver. On the other hand, a high-performance receiver will increase the coverage substantially in low density airspace.

5.2 Continuous use of ES's at maximum rate

The 1 090 MHz downlink channel is being affected by the transmission of ES's because of an increasing number of suitably equipped aircraft. In areas with high aircraft densities, even the 1 030 MHz uplink channel is affected by a continuous squitter rate of 6.2 Hz due to additional Mode S re-interrogations. Although the number of re-interrogations is increased, the loss of performance owing to the additional channel load cannot be completely compensated.

5.3 Ground-based broadcast

5.3.1 Traffic information or flight information could be of interest for general aviation and may be offered via point-to-point or broadcast transmissions.

5.3.2 Within an area of low aircraft density, the performance of an SSR is only marginally affected by the operation of a nearby 1 090 MHz transmitting ground station. On the other hand, in areas of higher air traffic density, Mode A/C and ACAS performances can be reduced significantly.

5.3.3 The impact on the performance of a Mode A/C SSR will be higher, if omni-antenna-equipped ADS-B/TIS-B stations are widely deployed (i.e. not just as gap fillers). The effect on Mode S detection should be negligible because of the fact that a re-interrogation can be initiated in the case of failure.

5.3.4 If a 1 090 MHz ground-based broadcast is used area-wide, more critical situations will occur, since an SSR site may be affected by more than one station. In this case, the total 1 090 MHz signal load at the SSR is at least the sum of the individual broadcast contributors. Precautions should be taken to ensure that the transmissions from broadcast ground stations will be below appropriate signal levels to minimize the impact on surveillance infrastructure and ACAS.

6. ACAS INTERFERENCE LIMITING

ACAS is capable of operating in all traffic densities without unacceptably degrading the RF environment. Each ACAS knows the number of other ACAS units operating in the local airspace. This knowledge is used in an attempt to ensure that no transponder is suppressed by ACAS activity for more than two per cent of the time and that ACAS does not contribute to an unacceptably high FRUIT rate that would degrade ground systems surveillance performance. Multiple ACAS units in the vicinity cooperatively limit their own transmissions. As the number of such ACAS units increases, the interrogation allocation for each of them decreases. Thus, every ACAS unit monitors the number of other ACAS units within detection range. This information is then used to limit its own interrogation rate and power as necessary. More details can be found in the Doc 9863.

7. NEW SYSTEMS AND APPLICATIONS

7.1 Systems using Mode S capabilities are generally used for ATC surveillance. In addition, certain ATC applications may use Mode S emitters for surface vehicle surveillance or for fixed target detection. Under such conditions, the term “aircraft” can be understood as “aircraft or vehicle (A/V)”. While those applications may use a limited set of data, any deviation from standard physical characteristics must be considered very carefully by the appropriate authorities, taking into account not only their own surveillance environment but also possible effects on other systems like ACAS.

7.2 In general, new systems or applications should not unduly affect the existing ATM environment. Therefore, thorough investigations by civil aviation authorities are necessary prior to any new system deployment to ensure

compatibility with existing services.

8. TRANSPONDER OCCUPANCY

8.1 General

8.1.1 The round reliability of an interrogator transaction with a transponder is dependent on uplink reliability and downlink reliability as follows:

$$\text{Round reliability} = (\text{uplink reliability}) \times (\text{downlink reliability})$$

where: uplink reliability = (1 – probability of uplink failure) and downlink reliability = (1 – probability of downlink failure)

Transponder occupancy will directly affect the probability of uplink failure for ACAS, SSR and active MLAT system transactions.

8.1.2 Relevant definitions

Transponder. A transponder is an electronic device carried by many aircraft which receives 1 030 MHz interrogations and transmits replies, and in some cases self-initiated transmissions, on 1 090 MHz. Basic responses from transponders allow aircraft to be detected by surveillance systems as well as by other aircraft's collision avoidance systems.

Note.— Mode A/C transponders are those which conform to the characteristics prescribed in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.1. Mode S transponders are those which conform to the characteristics prescribed in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2. The functional capabilities of Mode A/C transponders are an integral part of those of Mode S transponders.

Transponder occupancy. State of unavailability of the transponder from the time it detects an incoming signal that appears to cause some action (e.g. a valid interrogation or suppression pair) or from the time of a self-initiated transmission (e.g. acquisition or extended squitter), to the time that it is capable of replying to another interrogation (including mutual suppression, turnaround delay, reply time and dead time).

Note.— Surveillance and collision avoidance systems that depend on accessing an aircraft's transponder require adequate availability to meet performance objectives. Signals from various systems that contribute to transponder occupancy are described in this appendix.

Typical transponder. A typical transponder has occupancy time values that are representative of the majority of transponders operating in the ICAO regions. The values are not intended to be used as standards that an actual transponder is required to meet and should only be used as input parameters for modelling and simulation of the interactions between surveillance and collision avoidance systems.

8.2 Being in the main beam of a Mode S ground station

8.2.1 A Mode A/C transponder will be occupied in the normal way to Mode A/C interrogations, but in addition, it will be suppressed for every Mode S interrogation made.

Note.— Mode A/C transponders treat intermode interrogations as conventional Mode A/C interrogations.

8.2.2 A Mode S transponder will be occupied by all Mode S interrogations specifically addressed to it. Mode S-only all-call and broadcast interrogations will also occupy the transponder. The transponder will also be occupied by

intermode interrogations with a long P₄. Transponder occupancy by both types of all-call interrogations can be minimized by using the lockout protocol.

8.2.3 A Mode S transponder will also be occupied by the receipt of any Mode S interrogation addressed to another aircraft. The transponder must fully decode the interrogation to determine the 24-bit address contained in the message block. Once the transponder determines that the interrogation is intended for another transponder, it will resume normal operation. This activity will nominally require 45 microseconds.

8.3 Being in the side lobes of a Mode S ground station

8.3.1 A Mode S transponder will be occupied by a Mode S interrogation specifically addressed to it. This should not normally happen in the side lobes. The transponder will however be occupied to Mode A/C for the suppression period after the receipt of every P₁-P₂ pair. However, during and after the receipt of a Mode S side lobe interrogation, the Mode S transponder will not be able to detect valid interrogations which are below the current threshold up to the time of recovery to full sensitivity.

8.3.2 A Mode A/C transponder will be occupied by the normal suppression for Mode A/C and intermode interrogations.

8.3.3 It is important to note that a Mode A/C transponder will be suppressed by every Mode S interrogation, including broadcast and Mode S-only all-call interrogations, made by that ground station.

8.3.4 If selectively addressed Mode S interrogations are transmitted without an accompanying P₅ suppression pulse, all transponders receiving the interrogation will be occupied until the interrogation has been fully decoded. If the interrogation is accompanied by a P₅ pulse, the transponder is only prevented from decoding other interrogations until the sync phase reversal recognition fails, followed by the receiver recovery time.

8.4 Selective Mode S transponder occupancy

The Mode S protocols provide the facility to lock out the transponder to all types of all-call interrogations requiring a Mode S reply. This can be regarded as permanent occupation of the transponder to that type of interrogation and great care must be exercised to ensure that the use of these protocols does not prevent other ground stations with a need to acquire the transponder through all-call interrogations from doing so. See Appendix H for additional information on lockout management.

8.5 Interaction with other on-board equipment using the same frequency band

A mutual suppression system may be used to connect on-board equipment operating in the same frequency band as the on-board transponder, ACAS or a DME in order to prevent interference and receiver damage. When connected to the mutual suppression system, the receivers of the devices are suppressed during the time mutual suppression is active. As a result, the availability of the transponder is reduced.

8.6 Table of transponder occupancy for different interrogations

8.6.1 The total occupancy is made up of several standardized or typical transponder occupancy times, as listed in Tables M-2 and M-3. The term "transponder transaction cycle", defined in Annex 10, Volume IV, Chapter 3, 3.1.2.4, is used for Mode A/C transponders in the same manner as for Mode S transponders. (The time for an additional SPI in a Mode A/C reply is not included).

Note 1.— Examples of total transponder occupancy times for all interrogation types are listed in Table M-4. The items in parentheses are references to the rows of Tables M-2 and M-3 for Mode A/C and Mode A/C/S transponders, respectively.

Note 2.— The calculation of total transponder occupancy times should be performed for both the standardized and typical transponder to yield worst-case and typical case predictions.

Note 3.— The typical transponder occupancy times listed in Tables M-2 and M-3 will change as the transponder population in particular airspaces change, thus these values should be periodically reviewed.

8.6.2 If IFF systems are in use in an airspace, they should be included when calculating transponder occupancy. IFF systems have various modes that impact transponder occupancy differently. For example, IFF Modes 1 and 2 do not elicit replies from civil transponders and are slightly shorter in duration than a Mode A interrogation. Estimates of occupancy times from mainbeam Mode 1 and 2 interrogations can be calculated using the Mode A signal duration (item a1 in Tables M-2 and M-3) plus the recovery time (item e in Table M-2 and e1 in Table M-3). When IFF interrogators use sidelobe suppression, the impact on occupancy from Mode 1 and 2 sidelobes is equivalent to that of Mode A/C sidelobes. Therefore, the suppression reference (item d2 in Tables M-2 and M-3) plus the suppression interval (item d3 in Tables M-2 and M-3) can be used for estimating occupancy times from sidelobe Mode 1 and 2 interrogations.

8.6.3 In the absence of any other civil interrogation near or coincident in time with a Mode 5 signal, IFF Mode 5 does not directly cause replies or suppressions in civil transponders. Therefore, in these cases, the effect on transponder reply probability is simply time occupancy. IFF Mode 5 can interfere with the decoding of a civil interrogation if the Mode 5 interrogation overlaps the civil interrogation in the transponder receiver and the Mode 5 interrogation is received with sufficient power relative to the civil interrogation. A conservative Mode 5 occupancy effect can be estimated using the value of 157.55 μ s for the standardized Mode A timing in Table M-4. For this purpose, the occupancy effect, due to a Mode 5 mainbeam interrogation, is assumed to be the same as that of a Mode A mainbeam interrogation that causes a reply from the transponder. Because a Mode 5 sidelobe interrogation will generally be received at a much lower power level than a mainbeam civil interrogation, it will typically have a significantly lower transponder occupancy impact as compared to a mainbeam Mode 5 interrogation. Civil authorities that require a more precise calculation of IFF Mode 5 occupancy should request assistance from their national defense authorities.

9. CHANNEL LOADING

9.1 General

9.1.1 Channel loadings are different on uplink and downlink. For conventional SSR systems (Mode A/C), one interrogation is replied to by all transponders receiving that interrogation. Thus, the downlink loading is considerably higher than that of the uplink.

9.1.2 When the selective interrogations of a Mode S ground station are used, each selective interrogation normally triggers only one reply. This leads to a more balanced channel loading in terms of the number of transmissions. Since the uplink transmission bit rate of 4 MHz is four times greater than that of the downlink, the total channel occupancy time on the uplink is also only 1/4 of the downlink loading for equivalent transactions.

Table M-2. Relevant times for Mode A/C only transponder occupancy (μ s)

a)	Interrogation type	Mode A/C		Intermode (A/C only), (A/C/S)		Mode S short		Mode S long	
		Standard	Typical	Standard	Typical	Standard	Typical	Standard	Typical
a1)	signal duration	Mode A: 8.8 μ s Mode C: 21.8 μ s		Mode A: 8.8 μ s Mode C: 21.8 μ s		—		—	
a2)	reference ^a	Mode A: 8 μ s Mode C: 21 μ s		Mode A: 8 μ s Mode C: 21 μ s		—		—	
b)	Transaction events ^b								
b1)	reply delay	3.5 μ s	3 μ s	3.5 μ s	3 μ s	—		—	
b2)	reply duration	20.75 μ s		20.75 μ s		—		—	
b3)	transaction cycle	23.75 μ s		23.75 μ s		—		—	
c)	Dead time	up to 125 μ s	57 μ s	up to 125 μ s	57 μ s	—		—	
d)	Suppression ^d								
d1)	signal duration	2.8 μ s		—		2.8 μ s		2.8 μ s	
d2)	reference ^a	2 μ s		—		2 μ s		2 μ s	
d3)	suppression interval	45 μ s	39 μ s	—		45 μ s	39 μ s	45 μ s	39 μ s
e)	Single pulse interference recovery	up to 15 μ s ^c	11 μ s	up to 15 μ s ^c	11 μ s	up to 15 μ s ^c	11 μ s	up to 15 μ s ^c	11 μ s
Notes: a) Timespan from the beginning of the signal excluding allowed tolerance. b) Starting at reference. c) Depending on the signal amplitude beginning at the trailing edge of the signal (last pulse). d) Additional suppression can be caused by other on-board transmitters via the suppression bus, e.g. ACAS and DME. A typical suppression duration is 70 μ s.									

Table M-3. Relevant times for Mode A/C/S transponder occupancy (μ s)

a)	Interrogation type	Mode A/C		Intermode (Short P4), (Long P4)		Mode S short		Mode S long	
	Transponder	Standard	Typical	Standard	Typical	Standard	Typical	Standard	Typical
a1)	signal duration	Mode A: 8.8 μ s Mode C: 21.8 μ s		Mode A: 12.4, 13.2 μ s Mode C: 25.4, 26.2 μ s		19.75 μ s		33.75 μ s	
a2)	reference ^a	Mode A: 8 μ s Mode C: 21 μ s		Mode A: 10.8, 11.6 μ s Mode C: 23.8, 24.6 μ s		4.75 μ s		4.75 μ s	
b)	Transaction events ^b								
b1)	reply delay	3.5 μ s	3 μ s	128 μ s		128 μ s		128 μ s	
b2)	reply duration	20.75 μ s		64 μ s		64 μ s		120 μ s	
b3)	transaction cycle: reply	23.75 μ s		192 μ s		192 μ s		248 μ s	
b4)	transaction cycle: no reply	—		—		15 μ s		29 μ s	
c)	Dead time	up to 125 μ s	16 μ s	up to 125 μ s	16 μ s	up to 125 μ s	16 μ s	up to 125 μ s	16 μ s
d)	Suppression ^d								
d1)	signal duration	2.8 μ s		—		19.75 μ s		33.75 μ s	
d2)	reference ^a	2 μ s		—		4.75 μ s		4.75 μ s	
d3)	suppression interval	45 μ s	33 μ s	—		—		—	
e)	Recovery								
e 1)	single pulse interference	up to 15 μ s ^c	13 μ s	up to 15 μ s ^c	13 μ s	up to 15 μ s ^c	13 μ s	up to 15 μ s ^c	13 μ s
e 2)	interrogation not eliciting a reply	—		—		45 μ s	34 μ s	45 μ s	34 μ s

Notes:

a) Timespan from the beginning of the signal excluding allowed tolerance.

b) Starting at reference.

c) Depending on the signal amplitude beginning at the trailing edge of the signal (last pulse).

d) Additional suppression can be caused by other on-board transmitters via the suppression bus, e.g. ACAS and DME. A typical suppression duration is 70 μ s.Table M-4. Examples of total transponder occupancy times (μ s)

Note.— The items in parentheses are references to the rows in Table M-2 for Mode A/C-only and Table M-3 for Mode A/C/S transponders.

Received pulses		Total transponder processing time ^{a,b}			
		Mode A/C only transponder (Table M-2)		Mode A/C/S transponder (Table M-3)	
		Standardized	Typical	Standardized	Typical
P ₁ P ₃ ,	Mode A	157.55 (a1+b3+c)	89.55 (a1+b3+c)	157.55 (a1+b3+c)	48.55 (a1+b3+c)
	Mode C	170.55 μ s (a1+b3+c)	102.55 μ s (a1+b3+c)	170.55 μ s (a1+b3+c)	61.55 μ s (a1+b3+c)
P ₁ P ₃ P ₄ short,	Mode A	157.55 (a1+b3+c)	89.55 (a1+b3+c)	27.4 (a1+e1)	25.3 (a1+e1)
	Mode C	170.55 (a1+b3+c)	102.55 (a1+b3+c)	40.4 (a1+e1)	38.4 (a1+e1)
P ₁ P ₃ P ₄ long,	Mode A	157.55 (a1+b3+c)	89.55 (a1+b3+c)	330.2 (a1+b3+c)	221.2 (a1+b3+c)
	Mode C	170.55 (a1+b3+c)	102.55 (a1+b3+c)	343.2 (a1+b3+c)	234.2 (a1+b3+c)
P ₁ P ₂	Mode A/C	47 μ s (d2+d3)	39 μ s (d3) ^d	47 μ s (d2+d3) 19.75 μ s (d2+e1) ^c	39 (d3) ^d
	Mode S				17.75 (d2+e1) ^c
P ₁ P ₂ P ₅ P ₆	—	47 μ s (d2+d3)	39 (d3) ^d	19.75 (d2+e1) ^c	17.75 (d2+e1) ^c
P ₁ P ₂ P ₆ correctly addressed,	short reply	47 μ s (d2+d3)	39 (d3) ^d	321.75 μ s (a2+b3+c)	212.75 (a2+b3+c)
	long reply			377.75 μ s (a2+b3+c)	268.75 (a2+b3+c)
P ₁ P ₂ P ₆ not addressed	—	47 μ s (d2+d3)	39 (d3) ^d	49.75 μ s (a2+e2)	38.75 (a2+e2)
Squitter,	short	—	—	189 μ s (b2+c)	80 (b2+c)
	long	—	—	245 μ s (b2+c)	136 (b2+c)

Notes:

- Additional effects may occur due to reply rate limiting.
- Military transponders may accept a second interrogation during the turnaround time of the first interrogation. The interleaving of interrogations can produce a lower occupancy for military transponders in comparison to civil transponders.
- In this case, the incoming RF signal extends beyond this time and other incoming signals will only be decoded if they are sufficiently above the receiver threshold set by the original signal.
- Typical values were measured, thus adding a reference is not necessary.

9.2 Uplink loading

9.2.1 The uplink channel loading should be measured or defined at the antenna of any aircraft in terms of interrogations per time unit or time occupancy. The loading is dependent on the location of an aircraft (i.e. the distance to a ground station and the flight level), which determines how many ground stations are illuminating it.

9.2.2 Inside the side lobes of a ground station antenna, an aircraft receives continuously all interrogations from the ground station. Since this area is normally controlled by an omni-suppression technique, suppression pulses will also be received.

9.2.3 Outside the side lobes, the loading is due to the limited effective beamwidth of a rotating antenna and on the time when the beam sweeps through an aircraft.

9.2.4 Considering an aircraft being in the main beam of a Mode S ground station antenna, the channel loading originating from that ground station is a function of the number of aircraft being selectively interrogated and of the degree of activity for surveillance and/or data link purposes. The channel loading is a function of the azimuth but can also vary with time.

9.2.5 The overall loading is also dependent on the total number of ground stations interrogating the aircraft, measured during an interval of the order of 1 minute. This loading represents a mean value, whereas during such an interval, considerably higher peak values can be measured.

9.2.6 Since the channel loading is heavily dependent on the scenario, i.e. the number of ground stations, type and number of interrogations, number of aircraft and their type of equipment, only some examples for typical scenarios can be given.

9.2.7 The replacement of a conventional ground station, using sliding window techniques, with a Mode S ground station reduces the Mode A/C interrogation rate due to the use of the monopulse technique. In this case, the all-call interrogation rate is typically between 100 and 150 per second. Assuming an effective beamwidth of 3.6 degrees and an antenna rotation time of 5 seconds, an aircraft located in the main lobe would receive between five and eight all-call interrogations during each scan. Inside the side lobes, the aircraft would receive all interrogations, i.e. 100 to 150 per second. When intermode interrogations can be used to acquire Mode S transponders, the same interrogation rate applies.

9.2.8 A Mode S-equipped aircraft may be selectively interrogated during a beam dwell time of 50 milliseconds, with up to 15 surveillance or Comm-A interrogations. A 16-segment uplink ELM may be transferred during this time, whereby replies required for ELM delivery reduce the number of such interrogations. These figures are derived from the minimum reply rates for Mode S transponders.

9.2.9 From highly loaded scenarios it is known that up to 15 aircraft can be simultaneously within the beam, while typical values are about five to eight aircraft. Assuming all aircraft are equipped with Mode S transponders and have high data link activity, the number of Mode S interrogations can be in the order of 100 during a beam dwell, which would produce (in the given example) a peak interrogation rate of 2 000 per second. The maximum repetition rate for selective interrogations is limited to 2 400 per second averaged over a 40-millisecond interval.

9.2.10 For the delivery of an uplink ELM, the interrogation segments are normally closely spaced. Therefore, they represent a higher potential for interference compared with surveillance or Comm-A interrogations.

9.3 Downlink loading

9.3.1 The downlink loading should be measured or defined at the antenna of a ground station. This loading is a function of the number of aircraft within coverage (contributing with surveillance replies, replies to ACAS interrogations, plus acquisition and ES), the number of interrogations from other ground stations interrogating the same aircraft in the same time period and broadcast transmitters (TIS-B and ADS-R).

9.3.2 In the case of surveillance and SLM transactions, the downlink loading corresponds to the uplink loading since a reply can only be triggered by an interrogation. It should be noted, however, that each Mode S transponder also transmits an acquisition squitter reply once each second. In addition, an ADS-B capable Mode S transponder transmits up to 6.2 ES's per second.

9.3.3 All replies triggered by other ground stations are named FRUIT, so that the Mode A/C and Mode S FRUIT rate corresponds to the degree of uplink loading in the environment of the ground station where the FRUIT rate is determined.

10. SSR GARBLING

10.1 SSR replies from transponders can be corrupted by other signals arriving at the same time at the interrogator receivers. Interference that leads to the corruption of the reply is referred to as garble. There are two types of garble:

- a) asynchronous garble — where the SSR reply is corrupted by a random signal that is not synchronized with the SSR interrogations; and
- b) synchronous garble — where the SSR reply is corrupted by other replies to the same interrogator.

10.2 Asynchronous garbling rarely causes the corruption of the complete radar plot data for an aircraft. This is because the SSR system transmits several interrogations to each aircraft as the beam sweeps past. It is unlikely that random interference will corrupt all of the replies in the beam. The radar performs an averaging function of the replies that correlate across the beam, reducing the impact of any random errors. Also, the radar typically performs scan-to-scan or track correlation, which may have further error correcting functions that depend on the history of the aircraft track in the system. The most common source of signals leading to asynchronous garble are the replies of aircraft responding to other interrogators and ACAS. This is why it is important to operate neighbouring interrogators with different PRF and to operate random PRF stagger functions (in order to ensure that the interrogators remain unsynchronized).

10.3 Synchronous garbling occurs when aircraft close to each other in slant range respond to the same interrogation. Depending on the range difference between the aircraft, the reply pulses may overlap or interleave with each other. A standard SSR Mode A or C reply is approximately 1.7 NM long, therefore aircraft within this distance of each other and at close azimuths (i.e. within the antenna beamwidth) have a chance of the reply pulses overlapping each other. Because the replies from all aircraft are synchronized to the interrogator, multiple replies across the beam may be corrupted, which may cause the reply averaging function of the radar to produce an erroneous result. If the garble situation persists from scan to scan, then the radar track history error correcting functions may also be corrupted, and the following may result:

- a) incorrect Mode A code for the aircraft;
- b) incorrect Mode C (flight level) for the aircraft;
- c) code swaps, where the wrong Mode A and/or Mode C data are associated with the aircraft; or
- d) phantom aircraft, where the overlapping reply pulses form a reply that appears to be coming from two

real aircraft.

10.4 Synchronous garbling can occur when aircraft are at close azimuths and slant ranges, even where there may be large altitude separation. Such garbling can persist for several scans. Situations where synchronous garbling can occur include:

- a) aircraft in a stack are moving around directly above and below each other;
- b) groups of gliders riding the same thermal flying small circuits above and below each other;
- c) aircraft flying in the same airway at similar range and speed;
- d) aircraft tracks crossing at a coincident range and azimuth;
- e) helicopters converging (e.g. to provide television coverage of some events); and
- f) recreational flying events where multiple aircraft converge.

10.5 Persisting synchronous garble situations should be avoided by carefully directing traffic to avoid loss of range and azimuth separation, even where altitude separation is being maintained.

10.6 Mode S radars employ certain techniques to avoid synchronous garble. During all-call acquisition, stochastic reply functions are employed to de-garble all-call replies where aircraft are in close proximity of each other. During roll-call surveillance, each aircraft is individually interrogated, thus avoiding synchronous garble.

11. RF INTERFERENCE FROM OTHER SYSTEMS

11.1 The SSR system requires a 3 dB receiver bandwidth of approximately 8 MHz centred on 1 030 and 1 090 MHz for both the airborne transponder and ground receiver. This bandwidth is sufficient to receive interference from transmitters operating on near-by frequencies. This interference can be minimized by ensuring adequate frequency or spatial separation between the interfering transmitters and the subject SSR receivers. In particular, DME and primary radar can be the cause of interference. DME channels adjacent to the SSR frequencies can cause interference to SSR. States often develop a DME Channel Plan to minimize this risk of interference by reserving nearby channels for national allotment. Some primary radar transmitters make use of two frequencies which, if separated by 60 MHz, can cause intermodulation products causing interference to collocated SSR systems.

11.2 Any incoming signal may cause the transponder to miss a valid interrogation. The impact of the interference depends on the signal source, the signal duration on the 1 030 MHz channel and the signal amplitude at the transponder antenna.

11.3 There have been various approaches to using the SSR frequencies for other purposes (e.g. for obstacle warning at wind farms using active interrogations). These applications are not acceptable, at least in medium- to high-density airspace, as the performance of existing systems can be degraded significantly. An appropriate approach, in particular for obstacle warning, would be the use of the standardized ADS-B message BDS 0,8 code set C (for details see the *Technical Provisions for Mode S Services and Extended Squitter* (Doc 9871).

11.4 In addition to SSRs, techniques should be used to protect the primary radar component of aeronautical surveillance systems from interference. Terrestrial communications systems have been proposed for authorization for use worldwide, which may utilize the same frequency or a frequency band adjacent to aeronautical surveillance systems (mainly in primary radar bands). Analyses should be performed before installation and operation of terrestrial

communication systems to ensure compatibility and prevent radio frequency interference (RFI) to aeronautical surveillance systems.

11.5 Co-frequency interferer

11.5.1 The most difficult type of interference to mitigate is receiver co-frequency interference, where the undesired fundamental emission signals fall within the receiver's passband and compete with desired signals. A receiver is very susceptible to these emissions even at low power levels. This is because, by design, many primary radars are noise limiting systems and raising the noise floor, even slightly, can cause loss of desired performance. This type of interference could result in receiver desensitization, signal masking and distortion. Since both systems are operating on the same frequency, additional filtering of the source and/or victim receivers is typically not an option to mitigate this type of interference.

11.6 Adjacent-frequency interferer

11.6.1 Another type of interference involves receiver adjacent-frequency or adjacent-band interferers. The two subtypes of this interference include:

- a) receiver front-end overload, where a signal outside of the victim receiver passband causes an unacceptable noise level or drives the receiver into non-linearity; and
- b) unacceptable unwanted emissions, where undesired signals of the interfering transmitter couple into the receiver's RF passband.

11.6.2 Interference of these subtypes can occur due to poor receiver selectivity, which subjects the receiver front-end to too much adjacent-band energy. RFI can also occur if there is poor spectral roll-off of the interference source, which allows too much adjacent-frequency energy to couple into the victim receiver passband.

11.7 Mitigation techniques

Mitigation techniques to prevent interference to aeronautical surveillance system receivers are derived from effective spectrum planning. This may require a combination of the following techniques:

- modification of the new communications equipment;
- modification of the aeronautical surveillance systems;
- frequency band segmentation;
- frequency offset between the communication system channels and the aeronautical surveillance system channels; and/or
- geographic separations between the communications systems and the aeronautical surveillance system equipment.

Furthermore, any proposed introduction of new communications systems in one ICAO Member State will require spectrum coordination with other ICAO Member States within very large distances of its borders, such as 800 km for some system combinations.

11.7.1 Planning to avoid RFI

11.7.1.1 Before a new terrestrial communication system becomes operational in a band used by, or adjacent to, an aeronautical surveillance system, there are studies that need to be performed to evaluate compatibility. The results of those studies are used to determine the feasibility of, and conditions required to authorize, the new system. Characterizing the new system's impact requires technical knowledge of the new transmitter, the receiver being evaluated and the antennas of both systems.

11.7.1.2 Some specific system characteristics, propagation parameters and protection criteria required for analysis include:

- a) transmitter power;
- b) transmitted spectral shape;
- c) antenna gains/coupling modes;
- d) propagation factors (including environmental and terrain, when applicable);
- e) receiver selectivity;
- f) receiver 1 dB compression level;
- g) receiver sensitivity or noise level;
- h) receiver interference power to system noise power (I/N) protection level in dB; and
- i) aggregate number of new and existing sources of interference to the receiver.

11.7.1.3 The outputs of the evaluation may include:

- a) the distance separation between systems needed to establish compatibility;
- b) recommended modifications or other limitations placed on the operation of the new communications system to make sharing practical; and
- c) any recommended modifications to the aeronautical surveillance system to make sharing practical.

11.7.2 Identification of RFI

If an aeronautical surveillance system is believed to be experiencing RFI, the source of interference needs to be identified and documented. A site survey of systems operating co-frequency and in adjacent-frequency bands should be performed. This can be done internal or external to the aeronautical surveillance system. The interference source should be characterized in the RF and IF stages of the receiver (using a spectrum analyser). This information could reveal key facts about the interference source, such as a signature of a communications, navigation, or surveillance system waveform; temporal aspects, such as rotating or fixed directional; or if the source is intermittent. The suspected source waveform can be used to compare with known waveform signatures to aide in locating the operator of the source.

11.7.3 Response to RFI

After the source of the interference has been identified, a request is typically made to the operator to shut down the suspected source to confirm the interference is no longer present. During this time, investigate what (if any) mitigations can be implemented to reduce or eliminate the interference.

11.7.3.1 Response to co-frequency interferer

Assuming that the interfering source is allowed to operate on the same frequency as the aeronautical surveillance system, consider the following mitigations specifically related to addressing co-frequency RFI:

- a) reduce the interfering system's transmitter power to ensure compliance with the required I/N protection level;
- b) relocate the lower priority system to a distance sufficient to satisfy the required I/N protection level;
- c) off-tune the interfering transmitter or victim receiver by a sufficient amount to reduce the interference power to satisfy the required I/N protection level (after off-tuning the frequency, refer to 11.7.3.2 of this appendix to ensure this did not cause an issue with an adjacent band); and
- d) implement sector blanking conditions in the direction of the higher priority system.

11.7.3.2 Response to adjacent-band interferer

If the interfering mechanism is from the fundamental frequency of the interfering transmitter operating in an adjacent-frequency band (LNA-driven into compression), consider utilizing the following responses specific to addressing adjacent-band RFI:

- a) reduce interfering system's transmitter power to ensure compliance with the receiver 1 dB compression point;
- b) relocate the lower priority system to a distance sufficient to lower the interference power below the 1 dB compression point;
- c) off-tune the interfering transmitter or victim receiver by a sufficient amount to reduce interference power below the 1 dB compression point (requires sufficient receiver RF selectivity before the LNA);
- d) install a notch filter in the receiver on the interfering source's fundamental frequency;
- e) install or improve the bandpass filter before the LNA in the receiver front-end sufficiently enough to reduce the interference source fundamental power below the 1 dB compression point; and
- f) decouple antennas (applies to directional antenna systems).

If the interfering mechanism is from the unwanted emissions of an interfering transmitter located in an adjacent-frequency band (I/N criteria exceed), consider utilizing the following responses to address this interference:

- a) reduce the interfering system's transmitter power to ensure compliance with the required I/N protection level;
- b) relocate the lower priority system to a distance sufficient to satisfy the required I/N protection level;
- c) off-tune the interfering transmitter or victim receiver by a sufficient amount to reduce the interference power to satisfy the required I/N protection level;
- d) install or improve the transmitter filter to reduce unwanted emissions below the required I/N protection criteria; and
- e) decouple antennas (applies to directional antenna systems).

12. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR 1 030/1 090 MHZ CHANNEL MANAGEMENT

12.1 General

In general, the efficient use of the 1 030/1 090 MHz environment through transmission management, interrogation rate management and the appropriate antenna design for each system is a prerequisite to ensure proper operation of all systems using those and the neighbouring frequencies.

12.2 Radar environment

12.2.1 The dominant form of FRUIT by 2015 is likely to be Mode S. Radar infrastructure rationalizations, interrogator power and interrogation rate management, and antenna design could lead to significant FRUIT level reductions. Moreover, FRUIT can be significantly reduced by:

- a) reducing the all-call PRF or probability of reply in order to trigger 3 or less Mode S all-call replies per beamwidth;
- b) increasing lockout range to reduce the unlocked gap between two radars using the same interrogator code, while keeping a minimum gap between coverage areas, as described in section 8 of Appendix J;
- c) locking out to $II=0$ in addition to the radar's interrogator code (Appendix H, 1.1.4);
- d) clustering of Mode S radar (Appendix J, 4.2.2);
- e) use of passive acquisition on new short/medium range Mode S radars implemented in high-density areas (Appendix H, 2.2);
- f) reducing the frequency of extraction of transponder registers and sharing transponder registers through ground exchanges;
- g) avoiding periodic extraction of registers for which a change is announced by Mode S Comm-B protocol;
- h) regional ground system coordination;
- i) improved cooperation between civil and military authorities; and
- j) use of correctly tested and maintained equipment.

12.2.2 The modes of operation of civil and military radars have a large effect on the amount of interference produced by them. Decoding 1 090 ES messages in the presence of Mode S FRUIT (either from other 1 090 ES messages, acquisition squitters, ACAS or replies to Mode S radars) is significantly more challenging than decoding those in the presence of Mode A/C FRUIT. Therefore, a coordinated and agreed transition to Mode S by all parties is beneficial.

12.3 Airborne surveillance

12.3.1 Even if the ground equipment is not changed, equipping more aircraft with Mode S transponders will reduce the 1 090 MHz channel load. Moreover, ACAS performance will be improved, and its interrogation/reply rates will be reduced if hybrid surveillance is widely implemented. Aircraft equipped with the new ACAS hybrid surveillance equipment will be able to acquire other aircraft on the basis of ES. In the near term, ACAS channel load can be reduced by having

aircraft operators switch off their ACAS equipment while aircraft are on the ground.

12.3.2 With the increasing carriage of ACAS and the increasing traffic densities, investigations are necessary to improve ACAS interference limiting for future aircraft densities, while ensuring acceptable levels of performance for all surveillance systems.

12.3.3 The use of airborne surveillance equipment not internationally standardized (e.g. TCAS I) may not be permitted in some States or regions. Such equipment is likely to generate additional channel load which may degrade the performance of ground-based and airborne surveillance systems. For TCAS I, there are currently two implementations that use either ACAS I or ACAS II interference limiting. The latter violates existing ICAO provisions in Annex 10, Volume IV, when it is expanding its surveillance range, thus potentially degrading the performance of other surveillance systems. An implementation with ACAS I interference limiting can generate excess FRUIT in high traffic densities without providing the expected benefit, as the probability of detecting other targets can degrade to unacceptable levels.

12.4 ADS-B ES

12.4.1 The increase in FRUIT through transmission of ES by a large number of aircraft cannot be adequately compensated by deploying hybrid surveillance. The specified maximum rate of 6.2 ES's per second is at the limits in high traffic density areas. Some compensation can be achieved by disabling the transmission of acquisition squitters to reduce the overall FRUIT load and to improve ACAS surveillance performance. This, however, requires new ACAS equipment.

12.4.2 There are ICAO provisions to suppress the acquisition squitter in the future. With the rapid implementation of ADS-B OUT, this option can help overcome detrimental FRUIT effects.

12.4.3 Due to the expected effect of the use of squitter transmission in high density areas above the 6.2 squitter per second rate, it is recommended that there be investigation of the possibilities of adapting squitter rates and transmission power to the actual environment and application needs. This will ensure the usage of ES as a long-term ADS-B medium for global interoperability.

12.4.4 After a transition period beyond 2015, 1 090 MHz FRUIT is likely to decrease. Some radars are likely to be decommissioned and replaced by ADS-B stations, leading to a reduction in interrogations and hence in FRUIT. In the following years, air traffic growth will eventually compensate for the reduction in interrogations, and furthermore, the level of 1 090 ES FRUIT will become more and more critical. Consequently, 1 090 ES system performance may initially improve for some period beyond 2015 but will gradually degrade later.

12.4.5 It will be important, however, to keep monitoring FRUIT levels and to perform follow-up studies on any changes in predictions for air traffic growth and the evolution of national plans for surveillance infrastructure.

12.4.6 Any implementation of TIS-B should be carried out very carefully. Specifically, the transmission rates should be as low as possible. Filling surveillance gaps could result in a safety benefit which justifies the additional channel load. However, adjacent or overlapping coverage should only be done in areas with low traffic densities.

12.5 Future developments

12.5.1 In general, the move towards passive acquisition (e.g. ADS-B and multilateration) should be encouraged. Active MLATs should be designed to employ minimum interrogation rates and power in order not to have a negative impact on the surveillance environment.

12.5.2 Equipage of new user groups with Mode S transponders (for light aviation) or ACAS (for very light jets) needs careful investigation and analysis, as it may influence the operation of existing equipment on the ground and in the air.

13. RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) MEASUREMENTS AND ANALYSIS

13.1 Overview

13.1.1 The 1 030 and 1 090 MHz frequency bands form the worldwide RF network, which enables the cooperative surveillance of mobile vehicles involved in ATM including airborne vehicles (aircraft) and ground vehicles (e.g. specific vehicles operating on airport surface in critical areas). It is utilized to support civil and military (IFF) air-ground surveillance applications, air-air surveillance applications and collision avoidance applications.

13.1.2 In general, the 1 030/1 090 MHz network is robust in its ability to support the systems that utilize it but as more systems are added, performance of one or more of these systems may degrade to unacceptable levels. Since many systems are safety critical in nature, protecting the 1 030/1 090 MHz spectrum from reaching unacceptable utilization is paramount. Capacity of the system is impacted by the number and types of users. Aircraft density and the number and type of interrogators directly influence the activity on these links. Information extraction from ground and aircraft to aircraft interrogators increases the activity of these RF links. High density airspace is a particular challenge as these locations tend to contain accompanying higher density of ground interrogators. The systems that utilize the 1 030/1 090 MHz bands have standards that limit their impact to protect the performance of all users and provide robust capacity to the system. However, available capacity can be limited in the highest density areas of the world.

13.1.3 Therefore, it is necessary to monitor the usage of the 1 030/1 090 RF network, as is required for any telecommunication network, in order to regulate its use. Such monitoring should support the determination of the remaining margin of the network. It should help identify the sources of the utilization and whether the limits are being reached by misuse of some systems operating in a non-conforming or inefficient manner to the detriment of the good operation of the other systems using the same network.

13.1.4 The monitoring of the 1 030/1 090 MHz frequency band is complex. There are many independent factors that influence the utilization. There are extreme variations of the environment in time and location. A measurement will be dependent on the geographic location as well as the altitude of the measurement. Ground-based measurements are easier to obtain but sometimes airborne measurements are the only means to obtain accurate utilization. Measurements are difficult in high density environments, especially the ability to accurately count different types of events when the received signal is close to the MTL of the measurement system. However, consideration of these factors can be used to make decisions on the conduct of 1 030/1 090 MHz measurements. The best policy is to make measurements so as to capture peak rates so that spectrum mitigations are based on providing protection during such peaks. 1 030/1 090 MHz measurements have been performed in the past and various measurement campaigns provide insight into the activity experienced in the areas of the measurements. Such measurements can be costly, especially when involving flight tests over a period of time. Opportunities for flight tests are limited so ground measurements are preferred and can provide useful information to assess the RF environment that victim aircraft may be experiencing in the vicinity.

13.1.5 It is useful if measurements from different sources can be compared. Such data enables compilation of statistics, supports local or regional regulation and eases investigation of issues and definition of mitigations. It is difficult to define one unique and universal measurement that captures all of the conditions that impact the RF environment. However, to support data comparison, it is necessary to define a common set of measurements to facilitate comparison and interpretation of results. A minimum number of conditions have to be defined to understand each measurement and to assure reasonable comparison.

Note. - The increasing density of ground-based and on-board surveillance systems using the 1 030/1 090 MHz frequencies is currently raising concerns on congestion of 1 090 MHz and shortage of 24-bit aircraft addresses. The rapid growth in the number of unmanned aircraft (UA) is making those concerns more severe. For more information on this issue related to UA, refer to Appendix S.

13.2 Radio frequency (RF) monitoring

13.2.1 RF measurements can be part of an overall monitoring capability that tracks the utilization of the 1 030/1 090 MHz RF environment. Monitoring can be incorporated into the ground infrastructure or performed periodically by specialized measurement equipment placed in key locations to assess the RF activity and track its trend. There are four requirements for monitoring the surveillance RF network:

- a) statistics to determine the usage of the RF network and to anticipate the possible RF network saturation;
- b) demonstration of compliance to national/regional regulation (e.g. SPI IR in Europe);
- c) tracking of systems expected to use 1 030/1 090 MHz frequencies but may be over transmitting on these frequencies; and
- d) tracking of systems that are not authorized to use these frequencies.

13.2.2 Statistics

The recording of measurements and compiling statistics on the RF utilization is fundamental to RF monitoring. This serves to understand the extent of activity on the RF network supporting the surveillance systems. It provides important trend information and the progression of the activity on the RF frequencies. This will help to determine if activity is approaching critical levels or if activity has changed in a sudden way indicating abnormal behaviour of one or more systems, or if the addition of a system has produced unexpected activity. These statistics can assist in defining policies to ensure the usability of the RF network by different users, and to understand the impact of deployment of new surveillance techniques or the impact of the increased number of systems connected to the network. These statistics can also be used to verify the assumptions and initial conditions used by RF models.

13.2.3 Regulatory support

Annex 10, Volume IV (and transponder MOPS (ED-73 and DO-181)) define minimum performance for surveillance transponders, maximum interrogation rates for interrogators or maximum transponder occupancy contribution. It is important to ensure that the interrogation environment does not cause any transponders to reach the minimum capabilities. This is reinforced by some regional regulations such as the EU regulation (EU1207/2011), also known as the SPI IR, which requires all systems not to generate more interrogations than transponders are capable of supporting. The States subject to this regulation have the obligation to verify that the activity in their airspace is compliant with these requirements.

13.2.4 Tracking of systems incorrectly operating

The investigation is more technical and aims to analyse the transmission on the two channels to track unexpected transmissions from ground or airborne systems that are authorized to use 1 030/1 090 MHz but are unduly over transmitting on these frequencies. For this purpose, known and expected signals are extracted. The problems generated by ground interrogators or transponders can be identified by comparing a system's activity on the RF link to its expected or predicted operating activity.

13.2.5 Detection of unauthorized systems

The need to detect unexpected transmissions made on 1 030/1 090 MHz is an important requirement as unauthorized users have the potential to degrade performance of the authorized systems operating on these frequencies to unacceptable levels. These systems may be using standard transmissions, difficult to detect and possibly operating at high rates causing significant utilization. However, others may be unauthorized users operating in a nearby spectrum, penetrating the 1 030/1 090 MHz bands, and signals do not conform to known formats. These signals may simply occupy the frequency or potentially produce false decodes by the systems listening on the frequency. Unauthorized users may also be transmitting directly on the frequency, e.g. the transmission of CW, to purposely disrupt service or unknowingly transmitting in the band.

13.3 Radio frequency (RF) measurements

13.3.1 Measurements are required to characterize the utilization of 1 030/1 090 MHz channels. The 1 030/1 090 RF network is used by both active and passive systems. Active systems send interrogations on 1 030 MHz (see red arrows in Figure M-2). A transponder installed on a mobile vehicle receives these interrogations and sends replies on 1 090 MHz. In addition to replies, some other messages known as squitters or reports are spontaneously and periodically transmitted on 1 090 MHz. All of these transmissions on 1 090 MHz can be used by passive systems.

13.3.2 A transponder's ability to reply to interrogations is dependent on the 1 030 MHz signal activity as seen at its receiver. A system that interrogates and listens for 1 090 MHz replies or passive systems that listen for squitters or unsolicited replies are impacted by the interference caused by competing signals on the 1 090 MHz frequency.

13.3.3 The 1 030/1 090 MHz systems represented in Figure M-2 include:

- a) interrogators transmitting on 1 030 MHz;
- b) transponders receiving interrogations and transmitting replies or solely transmitting squitters and reports on 1 090 MHz;
- c) 1 090 MHz receivers receiving replies and squitters/reports; and
- d) the 1 030/1 090 MHz RF network.

13.3.4 Measurements need to provide information to answer the following questions:

- a) what is the probability that a transponder correctly receives and decodes an interrogation sent on 1 030 MHz (the utilization of the 1 030 MHz frequency);
- b) what is the probability that a transponder is available to receive and decode interrogations and is able to reply (the availability of the transponder); and
- c) what is the probability that a 1 090 MHz message is correctly received by a 1 090 MHz receiver, which is impacted by overlaps of messages on 1 090 MHz (the utilization of the 1 090 MHz frequency).

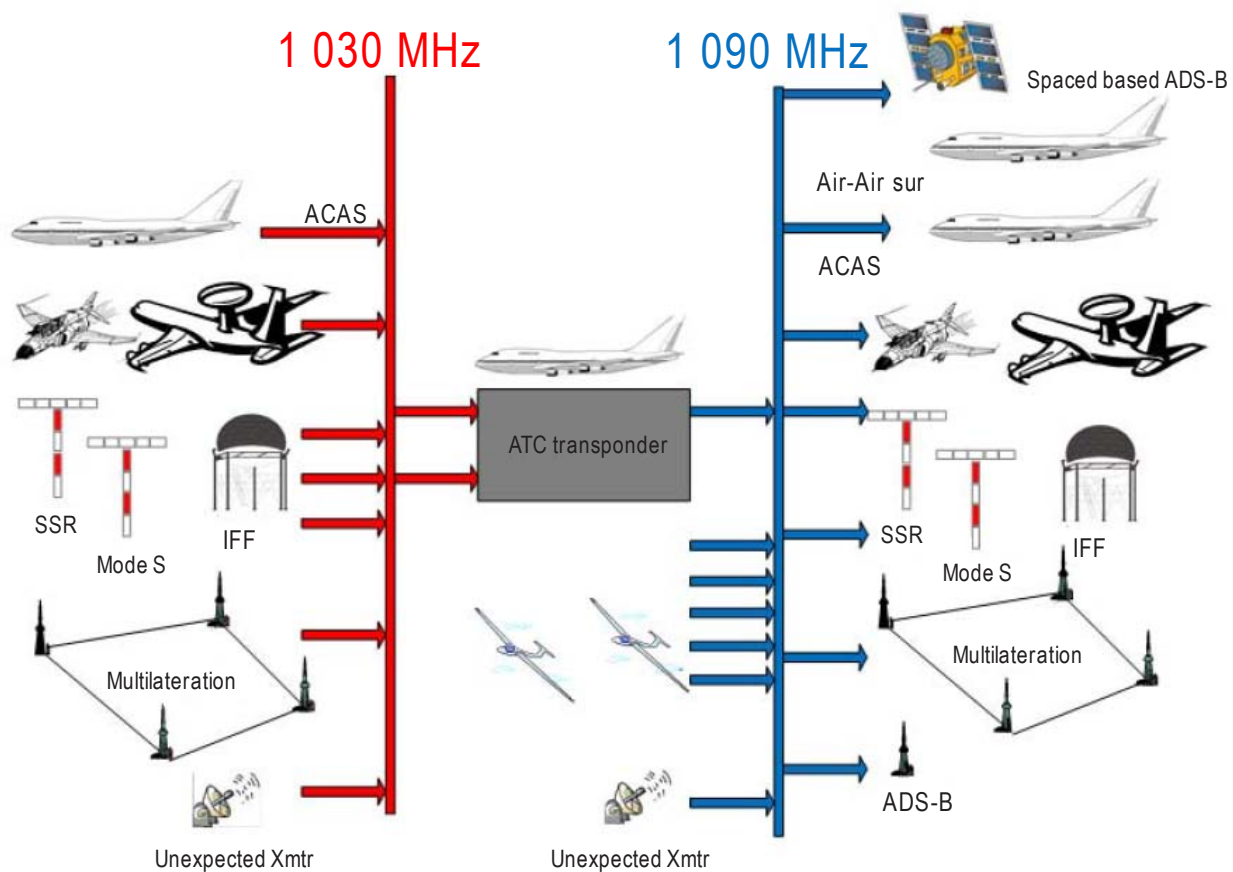


Figure M-2. 1 030 and 1 090 MHz Systems

13.3.5 Measurement methodologies

13.3.5.1 Data produced by RF measurement activities is recommended to include a minimum set of information that can adequately characterize the RF environment of the geographical area under assessment and support comparison to other measurements. In this way, the data can be used to compare against historical data from previous measurements of the same geographical area and serve as a trend assessment tool. Additionally, the data is intended to support comparison to other data collection measurements in other geographical areas which can provide insight to areas with high or unusual activity and help identify areas that warrant further investigation.

13.3.5.2 To allow comparison between different measurements performed in different locations around the world, it is very important to define the types and the conditions of measurements. Measurements can be made from the ground and/or from the air. Each of them provides critical insight into the 1 030/1 090 MHz utilization.

13.3.5.3 Airborne measurements provide a larger area of measurement but are more difficult to conduct and result in higher cost. The airborne measurements provide both the ability to characterize ground sensor operations (1 030 MHz) and transponder occupancy. Providing a 1 030 MHz measurement enables the detection of all types of interrogations to which a transponder is receiving, i.e. interrogations to which a transponder does or does not transmit a

reply. Therefore, it allows an estimation of transponder occupancy at the given points of measurement. It also allows the tracking of interrogations received but not generating replies (e.g. SLS interrogations, interrogations directed to other aircraft).

13.3.5.4 Ground measurements are more easily accomplished, less expensive but geographically limited. They allow the verification of transponder transmissions on 1 090 MHz but are limited in their ability of providing a complete understanding of the environment that airborne aircraft are experiencing. Estimates of 1 030 MHz activity can be somewhat estimated from measurement of 1 090 MHz replies. However, there is no way to completely account for interrogations that do not result in a reply that impact transponder occupancy.

13.3.6 Measurement system characteristics

13.3.6.1 The measurement system for 1 030 MHz and 1 090 MHz recordings can be accomplished in a number of ways based on several factors. Complexity of the system is a function of the level of analysis that is desired, whether the ability to re-process collected data with different operating assumptions is required, and the overall goals regarding the use of the measurements. The amount of data that each measurement capability requires varies greatly.

13.3.6.2 A system that directly records the 1 030/1 090 MHz frequency provides the most information but requires the highest sampling rate. This capability can provide the most detailed information regarding characteristics of an interference source, e.g. looking for an off-frequency interference source. Different portions of spectrum on or near 1 030/1 090 MHz can be concurrently recorded to examine and potentially identify interference source(s).

13.3.6.3 A second option is a system that converts the RF signal to an IF level and records the IF signal at a reduced sampling rate. This information provides the capability to examine frequency content, using in-phase and quadrature phase detection, and perform post demodulation and decoding. Alternatively, a system that processes and generates 1 030/1 090 MHz log video can be sampled at an acceptable rate to support post processing and decoding to detect 1 030 MHz interrogations and 1 090 MHz reply and broadcast signals. A sample rate of 10 MHz is an acceptable rate that can adequately detect pulses and maintain timing relationships for detecting events. In this implementation, to detect Mode S interrogation data, a differential phase-shift keying (DPSK) detector is necessary.

13.3.6.4 Another measurement system is to implement real time decoders and record these events with timing information. This technique results in reduced recorded data and simpler data processing, but provides limited ability to post examine anomalies, determine source(s) of measured activity or examine sensitivity to decoder tolerances. Each of these techniques has advantages and disadvantages and each vary in cost and complexity. The appropriate recording methodology depends on the objectives of the measurement and the availability of resources.

13.3.6.5 Signals should be recorded with signal levels defined at the antenna, i.e. the loss between the antenna and the receiver must be taken into account and signals calibrated to the RF level at the antenna input, i.e. signal in space. In order to compare measurements conducted at different locations, and to understand the impact of interrogations that a transponder is subjected to at its nominal receiver sensitivity, an 1 030 MHz recording should be done at comparable MTLs. It is recommended that the recording system provide an MTL at the antenna end of the cable connecting the receiver of -74 dBm. Although the standards specify a +/- 3 dB range for the transponder sensitivity, -74 dBm is the nominal transponder MTL defined in Annex 10, Volume IV. The definition of MTL is based on the capability of the transponder to decode and reply to 90% of interrogations. A measurement system based on a typical transponder provides a receiver threshold consistent with transponders operating on the frequency, i.e. detection of 90% of interrogations is achieved at -74 dBm. The appropriate receiver sensitivity level for 1 090 MHz is based on the most sensitive victim receiver impacted by interference on the frequency. Based on current standards, a 1 090 MHz extended squitter class A3 equipage class that operates on an aircraft requires the most sensitivity; -84 dBm at the antenna end of the cable connecting to the receiver. It may not be possible to achieve this desired MTL but an MTL of at least -79 dBm should be provided.

13.3.6.6 In order to accurately measure 1 030/1 090 MHz signal rates and compare data collected across different environments and data collection systems, accurate calibration of signal levels is required. At very low signal levels, measurements between signals that are 1 dB different in level are significant. Accurate calibration is fundamental to enabling comparison of data results. The calibration procedure must be robust and executed correctly and include all of the equipment and cabling that impacts the path to the receiver.

13.3.6.7 The path loss from the receiver to the antenna connector port should reflect all contributing components including cables and connectors. The direct measurement of the path loss is the preferred method, but this may not always be possible on an aircraft where physical access to measurement points is not always possible. Alternatively, path loss can be calculated based on cable lengths and cable type, along with connectors, splitters or any other RF components contributing to the loss.

13.3.6.8 Calibration of the receiver is required so that the digital representation of the log video voltage of the receiver can be converted to a power level at the antenna. A calibration procedure is required that injects signals at known power levels into the receiver, accounting for the path loss difference between the measurement system path loss and the calibration path loss. The signals used for calibration should be from a known calibrated source. Calibration measurements should be taken at each 1 dB level or optionally at intermediate levels as well. The calibration procedure should provide an accuracy within 1 dB of the actual signal level received at the antenna. It is expected that airborne data collection systems utilize antenna with equivalent performance to that used in compliant installations on the aircraft.

13.3.6.9 For 1 030 MHz measurements, performance equivalent to the transponder antenna is expected and for 1 090 MHz reception, performance equivalent to an omni-directional 1 090 MHz extended squitter compliant antenna. Any variation in antenna performance should be taken into account so that an estimated omni-directional antenna measurement can be produced. If the 1 030 MHz measurement system on an aircraft records data from both a top and bottom antenna, processing of each antenna channel separately is acceptable. However, the data can be merged in accordance with transponder diversity requirements in Annex 10, Volume IV.

13.3.6.10 The 1 090 MHz measurement system can also consist of top and bottom antenna channels. If only one antenna channel is available for 1 030 and/or 1 090 MHz data collection, bottom antenna placement is suggested. It is also beneficial for measurement systems, installed and operated on an aircraft, to have the ability to receive signals from onboard transmissions. This includes 1 090 MHz replies and broadcasts from the transponder and 1 030 MHz interrogations and broadcasts from ACAS, if so equipped. If the receiving system is capable of a high signal and does not require connection use of a mutual suppression bus, recording ownship activity provides useful information to understanding the RF environment.

13.3.6.11 The 1 030 MHz measurement system detects interrogation signals used by ground and airborne interrogator systems. Detection of military interrogations is also beneficial if it is desired to account for the impact of these systems to civil transponders. There are various implementations that can be used to detect interrogations but whatever method is used, it is expected that interrogations conforming to the signal characteristics contained in Annex 10, Volume IV are properly decoded. This includes Mode A, Mode C and Mode S interrogations. Mode S interrogation data from detection of the DPSK modulation in the P_6 pulse is recommended so that the type of system(s) transmitting the Mode S interrogations can be identified. The amplitude of the various decode types are determined at the peak of the pulses that comprise the interrogation. The amplitude indicates the power of the interrogation at the aircraft receiving antenna. Table M-5 contains the recommended interrogation types that the RF measurement system should detect:

Table M-5. 1 030 MHz RF measurement interrogation types

<i>Pulse Pattern</i>	<i>Interrogation</i>
P ₁ , P ₃	Mode A
P ₁ , P ₃	Mode C
P ₁ , P ₂ , P ₃	Mode A Suppressed
P ₁ , P ₂ , P ₃	Mode C Suppressed
P ₁ , P ₃ , short P ₄	Mode A Only All-Call
P ₁ , P ₃ , short P ₄	Mode C Only All-Call
P ₁ , P ₂ , P ₃ , short P ₄	Mode A Only All-Call Suppressed
P ₁ , P ₂ , P ₃ , short P ₄	Mode C Only All-Call Suppressed
P ₁ , P ₃ , wide P ₄	Mode A/Mode S All-Call
P ₁ , P ₃ , wide P ₄	Mode C/Mode S All-Call
S ₁ , P ₁ , P ₃ , short P ₄	Mode A Whisper-Shout
S ₁ , P ₁ , P ₃ , short P ₄	Mode C Whisper-Shout
P ₁ , P ₂	Suppression
P ₁ , P ₂ , short P ₆	Mode S Short
P ₁ , P ₂ , long P ₆	Mode S Long
P ₁ , P ₂ , P ₅ , P ₆	Mode S Suppressed

13.3.6.12 It is also useful to detect Mode S interrogations that occur at low signal levels, typically below the receiver MTL. Due to the challenge to detect interrogations so close to the edge of receiver performance, these interrogations are not always detectable as a Mode S interrogation by a Mode S transponder and for both Mode A/C and Mode S transponders, suppression from the P₁ and P₂ pulses may not occur. In these cases, a transponder may in many instances decode false interrogations or suppressions from within the P₆ pulse. Detection of these low-level Mode S interrogations by the measurement system is recommended in order to determine when transponders falsely decode other interrogation formats during the signal duration. Additionally, if military interrogations occur in a region, detection of military Modes 1, 2, 4 and/or 5 is also desirable.

13.3.6.13 Data results can be represented as interrogation rates as a function of time. Data samples can be collected over one or more seconds and represented as average rates per second for each interrogation type. Data results for Mode S interrogation rates can be grouped by UF codes. UF codes can be associated by system type to facilitate determining each system's contribution to the utilization of 1 030 MHz.

13.3.6.14 One of the metrics that is useful in understanding system utilization is transponder occupancy. Using the information from Tables M-2, M-3 and M-4, transponder occupancy can be estimated using the data from the 1 030 MHz measurement system. Data from the measurements can be used to estimate transponder occupancy using Typical values and/or Standard values. Transponder occupancy can be determined assuming either an onboard Mode A/C or Mode S transponder. For a Mode S transponder, both Mode A/C and Mode S occupancy can be estimated. As a rough order of magnitude, the number of interrogations of each interrogation type and the corresponding occupancy intervals from Table M-4 can be used. If Mode S interrogation data is decoded and the 24-bit aircraft address of the onboard transponder is known, the number of Mode S interrogations that would result in a reply can be directly determined. For UF 11 interrogations, decoding Ground SSR lockout interrogations to the onboard 24-bit aircraft address can be used to determine Mode S reply rates to UF 11 All-Call interrogations.

13.3.6.15 A more precise estimate of transponder occupancy can be determined if the measurement system records each interrogation type and the time of arrival. Transponder occupancy calculation can be performed as a serial process so as each interrogation is received with its time stamp, the occupancy period can be assigned. If another interrogation arrives during the occupied interval, the occupancy calculation would not reflect the occupancy due to the arriving interrogation since the transponder would not be available to process it. Figure M-3 shows data of Mode S transponder occupancy as a function of time presented in hours, minutes and seconds. As can be seen by the data, there is a significant increase in transponder occupancy with a peak occurring around 20:02:24. This is due to the flight test aircraft flying at or near a busy airport area in high density airspace. This underlines the need for flight tests to include areas of peak activity so that comparison of measurement data from different flight test measurements includes peak or near peak activity.

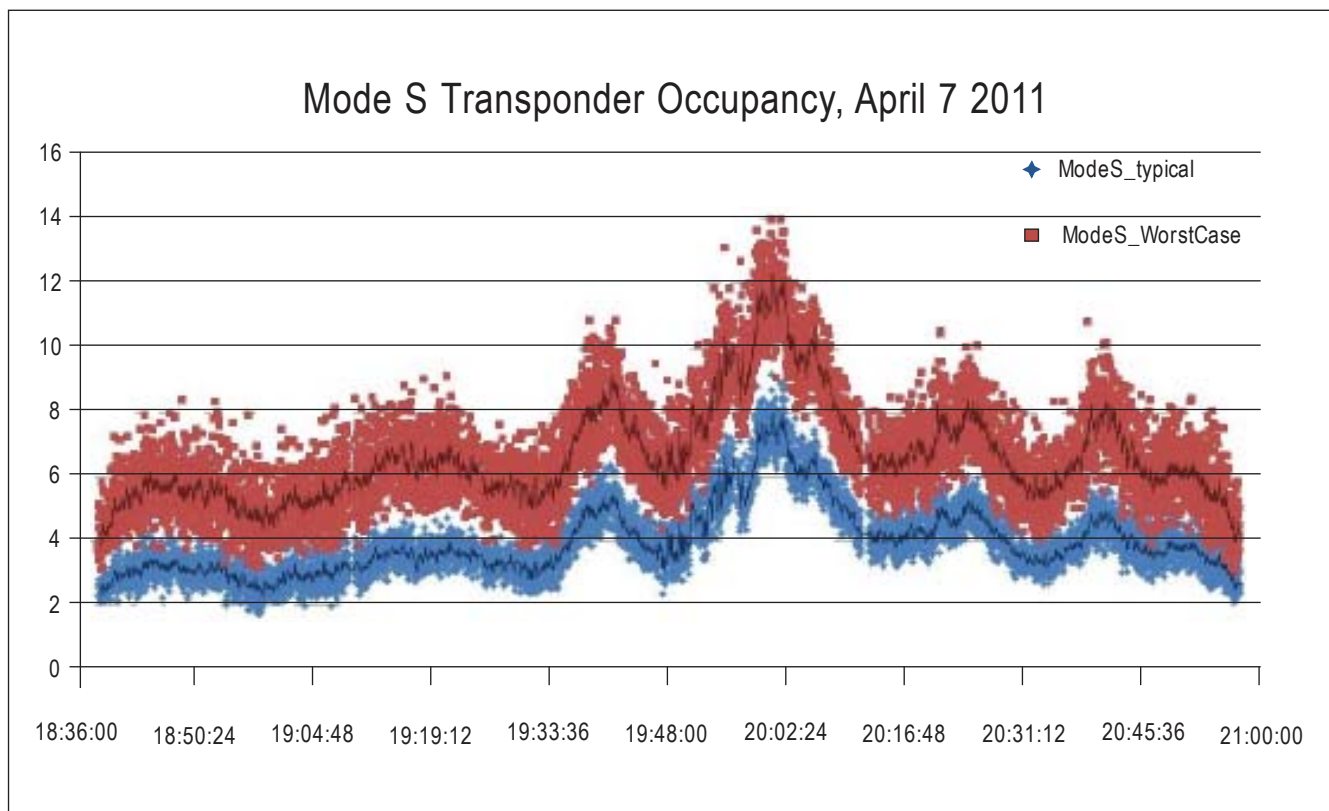


Figure M-3. Sample flight test Mode S transponder occupancy

13.3.6.16 The 1 090 MHz measurement system detects replies and broadcasts from 1 090 MHz transmitters. Mode A/C replies are transmitted by transponders in response to 1 030 MHz interrogations. Mode S replies are transmitted by Mode S transponders and consist of long and short replies depending on the reply length requested within the data content of the Mode S interrogation. Mode S transponders also transmit the acquisition squitter and those so equipped transmit long squitters. There are other signals that may occur on the frequency, but the RF measurement system described herein is not intended to capture these signals but can be optionally provided.

13.3.6.17 There are various implementations that can be used to detect Mode A/C and Mode S signals and proper decoding can be a challenge in high 1 090 MHz activity areas which can contain overlapping signals. To the extent possible, signals conforming to the 1 090 MHz Mode A/C and Mode S signal characteristics, contained in Annex 10, Volume IV, must be properly decoded. Mode S reply data from detection of the PPM data is recommended so that the type of system(s) responsible for causing the transmission of the Mode S interrogations can be identified as well as the 24-bit aircraft address of the transmitting aircraft/vehicle.

13.3.6.18 The decoding needs to recognize if the Mode S signal is a long or short message so that the signal is processed to the proper end time. The amplitude of the signal is determined at the peak of the pulses that comprise the signal. The amplitude indicates the power of the signal at the aircraft receiving antenna. There is care required to properly decode Mode S signals. Mode A/C detection must be disabled for the duration of a Mode S signal to prevent false decodes as there are normally numerous pulse spacings within the Mode S PPM data that potentially align to result in Mode A/C reply decodes. Distortion of the Mode S preamble due to overlapping signals over the preamble pulses can contribute to missed Mode S decodes. Additional processing can be provided to enhance Mode S detection. Such techniques include searching for pulse patterns that resemble the Mode S PPM waveform. It is recommended that Mode A/C reply detection occur only in the time intervals between Mode S signals. The amplitude of Mode A/C framing and code pulses can be used to improve valid reply detection and prevent false decodes. The use of pseudo leading edges to separate overlapping pulses in garbling situations can also improve detection by reducing missed detections and false detections due to garbling in high FRUIT environments. 1 090 MHz FRUIT can be quantified and reported from the RF measurement system recordings.

13.3.6.19 Similar to the 1 030 MHz data output, 1 090 MHz data results are represented as rates as a function of time. Data samples can be collected over one or more seconds and represented as average rates per second for both Mode A/C and Mode S FRUIT. Data results for Mode S signals can be additionally grouped by DF codes. The amplitudes of detected replies can be used to generate cumulative amplitude distributions of Mode S and air traffic control radar beacon system (ATCRBS) FRUIT.

13.3.7 Metrics and measurement methods

13.3.7.1 Frequency occupancy

13.3.7.1.1 Method 1 which shows accurate decoding of replies on 1 090 MHz is not always easy. The performance of this decoding could vary significantly from one system to another system. In order to allow simple comparison of signal activity received on either 1 030 MHz or 1 090 MHz frequency, one method is to calculate a simple time occupancy that corresponds to the amount of time that there is a signal present above a given threshold without trying to extract or even decode the content of the messages. The process can be based on the following criteria:

- 1 090 MHz frequency occupancy (Metric 1 090_1) is defined by the proportion of time that there is a signal above the MTL (-84 dBm) for pulses greater than 0.3 microseconds in duration; and
- 1 030 MHz frequency occupancy (Metric 1 030_1) is defined by the proportion of time that there is a signal above the MTL (-74 dBm) for pulses greater than 0.3 microseconds in duration.

13.3.7.1.2 Figures M-4 and M-5 represent examples of occupancy results for 1 090 MHz and 1 030 MHz, respectively, from airborne measurements in Japanese airspace. A measurement system was installed on an experimental aircraft and data was recorded during the flight. As can be seen by the data, there was a significant increase in the occupancy around 11:20. This corresponded to the time the experimental aircraft was flying in the vicinity of Tokyo which is an area of high-density air traffic. It can also be observed that there was a sharp decrease at around 11:22 which corresponded to the time the aircraft was turning at a fix point (the bottom antenna is shielded by the airframe). The occupancy decreases as the experimental aircraft flies away from the high-density airspace.

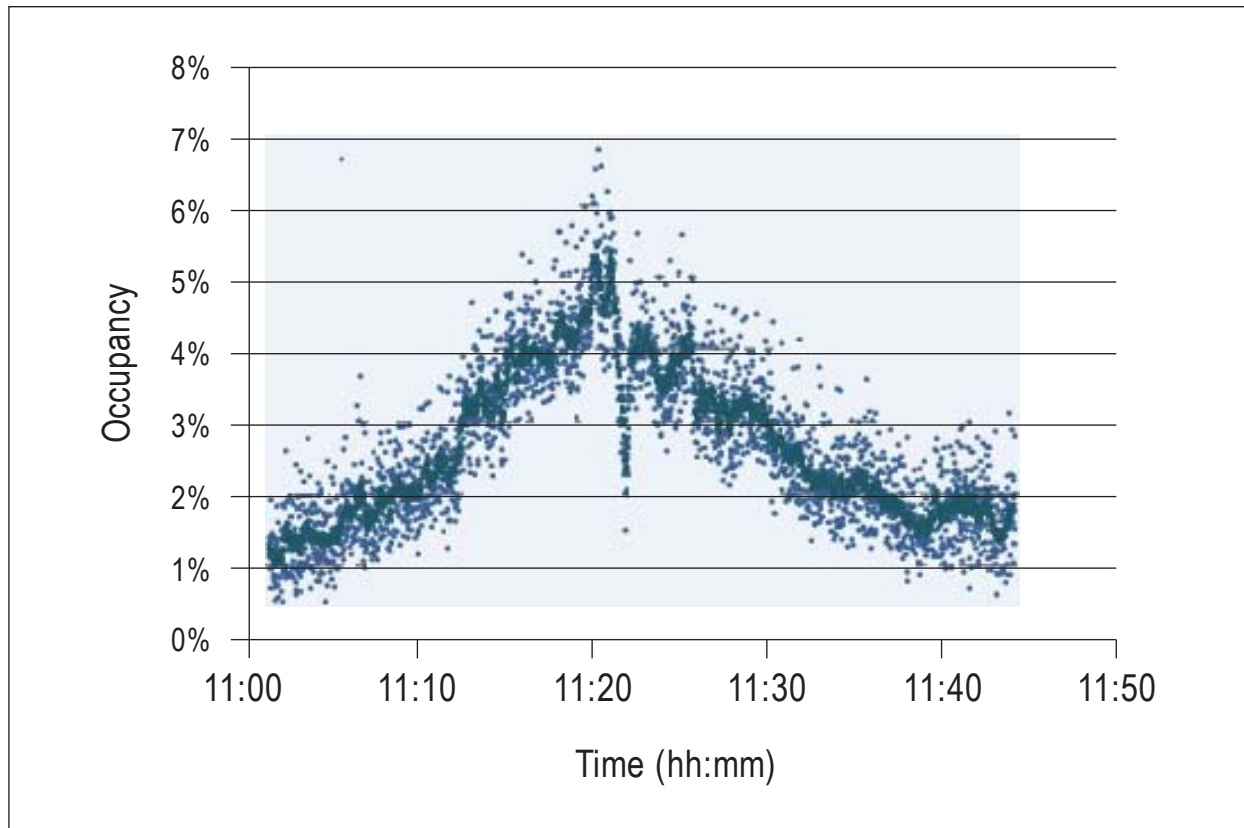


Figure M-4. Sample flight test 1 090 MHz occupancy measurement

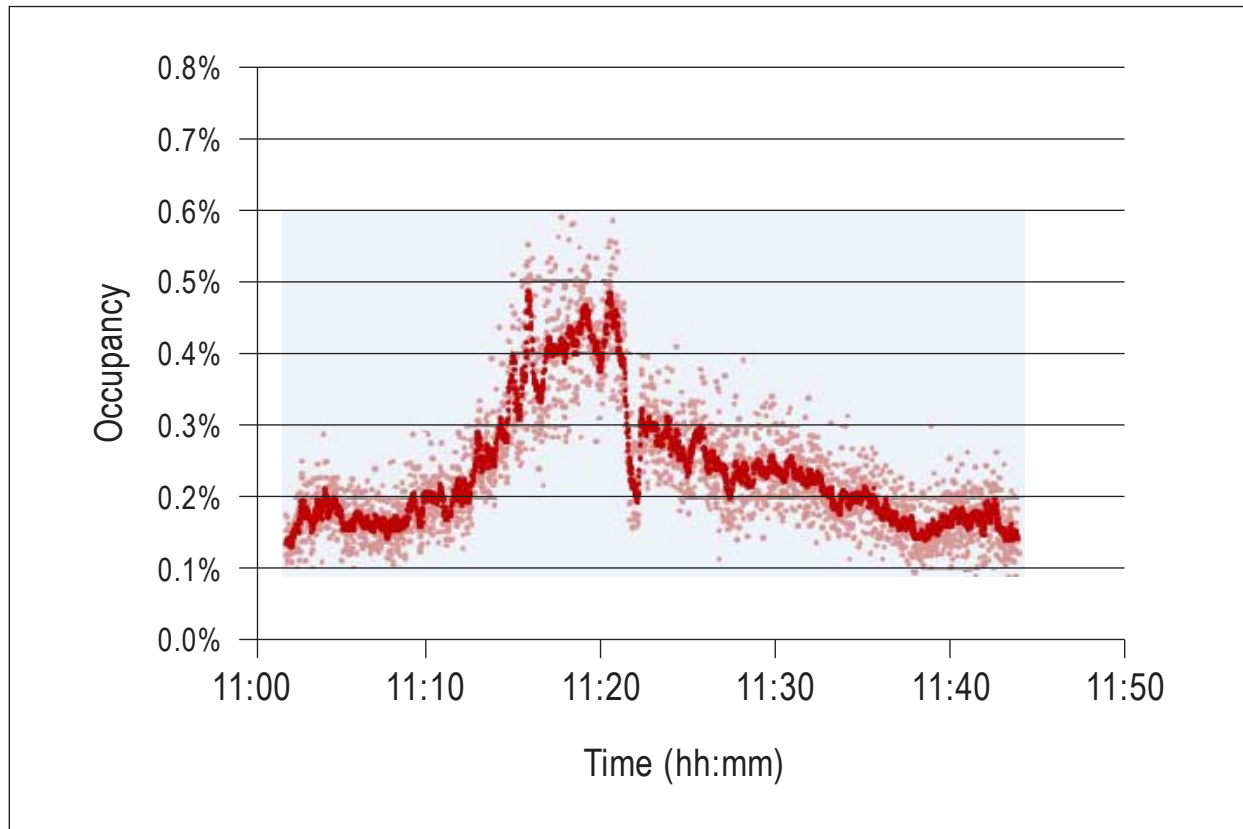


Figure M-5. Sample flight test 1 030 MHz occupancy measurement

13.3.7.1.3 Method 2, which analyses the signal received on 1 090 MHz, would be determined by decoding of, and counting the number of signals for, different types of messages. The 1 090 MHz frequency band occupancy can also be estimated using a predefined occupancy time for each type of message. This message occupancy time is defined as the time there is a signal transmitted on the frequency, i.e. a pulse is transmitted. It signifies how long the transmission is occupying the frequency and therefore possibly interfering with another signal.

13.3.7.1.4 Table M-6 provides the values to be used to estimate the effective occupancy time and allow comparison between different measurements/estimations made by different authorities.

Table M-6. 1 090 MHz message types effective occupancy

<i>Type of message</i>	<i>Time occupancy in μs</i>
Mode A/C reply	4.05 (9*0.45)
Short Mode S reply or squitter	30 (60*0.5)
Long Mode S reply or Extended Squitter	58 (116 *0.5)

13.3.7.1.5 Note that the occupancy of a Mode A/C reply depends on the number of pulses transmitted in each reply.

For this calculation, an average value of 9 pulses (2 framing + 7 code pulses) has been used. This is sufficient to provide a first order estimation for comparison with the occupancy of other signal types.

13.3.7.1.6 The calculation of the number of replies of a given type multiplied by their corresponding time occupancy enables characterizing the impact of different message types on the frequency. Since this uses a fixed defined time occupancy for each type of message, the occupancy determined using this method, in general, will be lower than the occupancy computed using method 1 above, since it can be expected that interfering pulses that may occur during a detected message are not accounted for using method 2.

13.3.7.1.7 An example of measurement data using this method of calculating occupancy is provided in Figures M-6 and M-7. The RF waveform was recorded from a flight conducted in Japanese airspace and subsequently played into a Ground SSR 1 090 MHz receiver. The numbers of each message were calculated and Figure M-6 shows results for the 1 090 MHz occupancy for this flight test. Figure M-7 represents occupancy rates by each type of message based on the time occupancy contained in Table M-6. As can be seen by the data, the major contributor to the 1 090 MHz occupancy is Mode A/C replies.

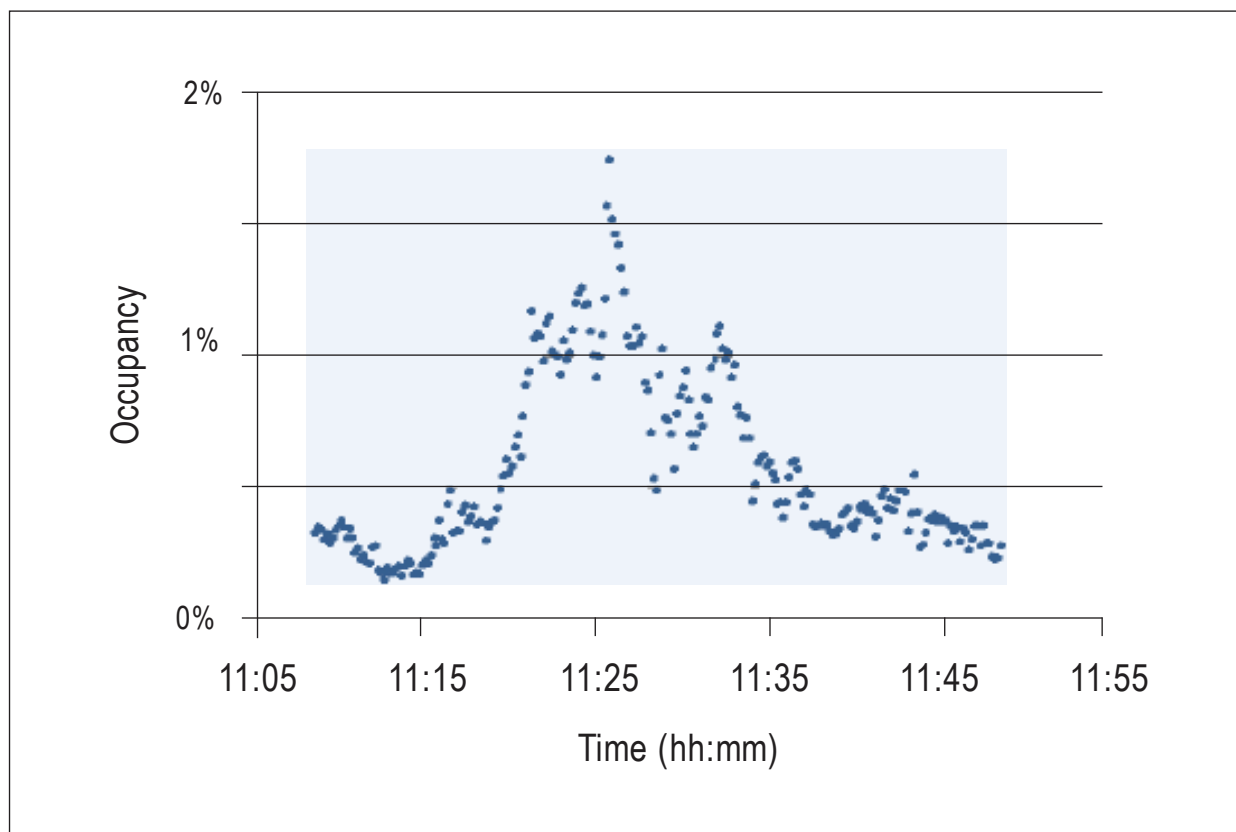


Figure M-6. Data example of 1 090 MHz occupancy

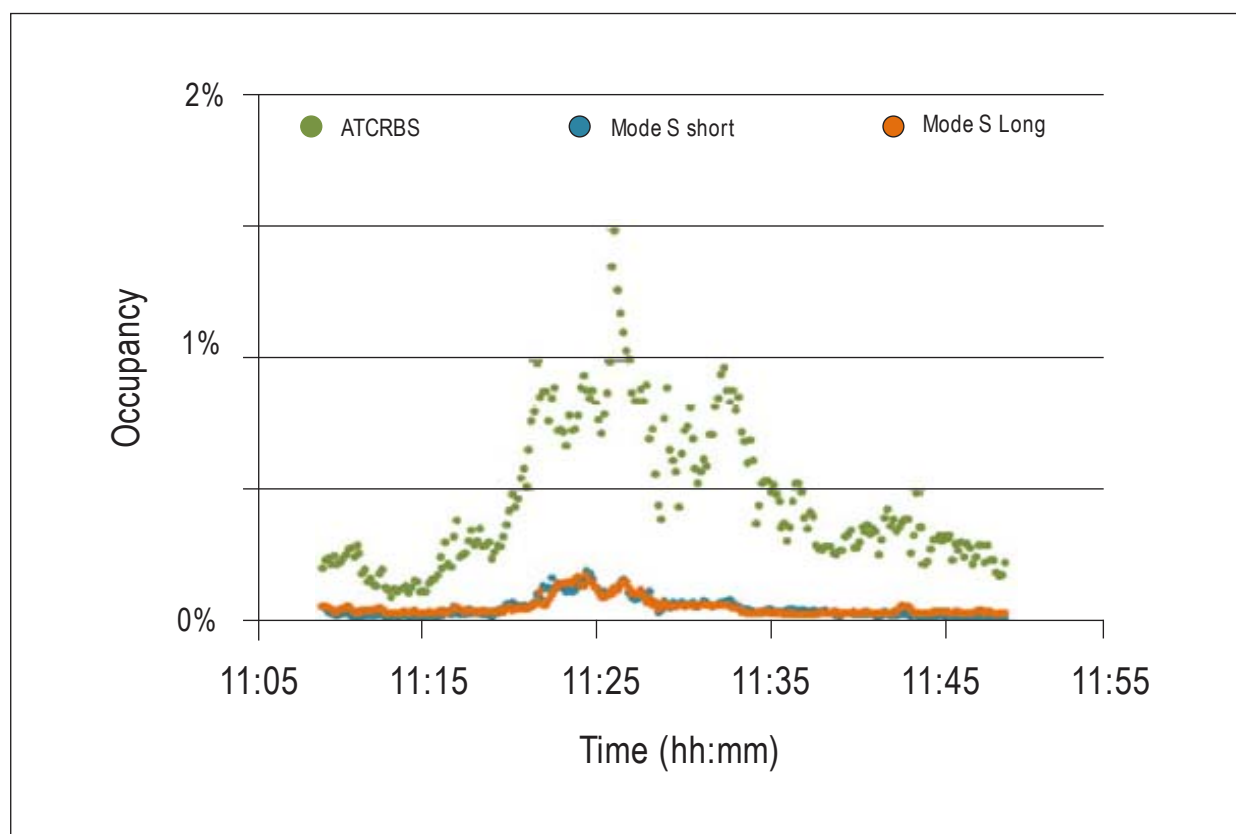


Figure M-7. Example 1 090 MHz occupancy by type

13.3.7.1.8 Method 3 is similar to the previous methods. An alternate occupancy calculation is based on the number of signals received on 1 030 and 1 090 MHz, which are decoded and from which signal rates are determined. However, the occupancy considers the entire signal length from the leading edge of the first pulse until the trailing edge of the last pulse as the time duration regardless of whether and how many intermediate pulses are transmitted. The rationale behind this method is that in RF high-density areas, multiple signal garbling is likely to occur and therefore pulse gaps are unpredictably filled. The determination of the band occupancy is based on the signal durations, as shown in Table M-7.

Table M-7. 1 030/1 090 MHz signal time durations

<i>Type of message</i>	<i>1 030 MHz signal duration</i>	<i>1 090 MHz signal duration</i>
Mode 1	3.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Mode 2	5.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Mode 3/A	8.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Mode C	21.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Mode C (Whisper/Shout)	23.8 μ s	20.75 μ s

Type of message	1 030 MHz signal duration	1 090 MHz signal duration
Mode A only All Call	10.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Mode C only All-Call	23.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Mode A/Mode S All-Call	11.6 μ s	20.75 μ s or 64 μ s
Mode C/Mode S All-Call	24.6 μ s	20.75 μ s or 64 μ s
Mode C only All-Call (W/S)	25.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Mode A only All-Call (W/S)	12.8 μ s	20.75 μ s
Short Mode S	19.75 μ s	64 μ s
Long Mode S	33.75 μ s	120 μ s

13.3.7.1.9 The first step is to measure signal rates for each of the signal types identified in Table M-7. Examples of measured 1 030/1 090 MHz activity are shown in Figures M-8 and M-9. Figure M-8 depicts 1 030/1 090 MHz signal rates measured over a period of 2 months. In the second step, with this information, the occupancy on the channel at a specific location at a defined receiver sensitivity can be calculated using Table M-7. This enables the user to detect and further analyse infrequent and unexpected activities on the channels.

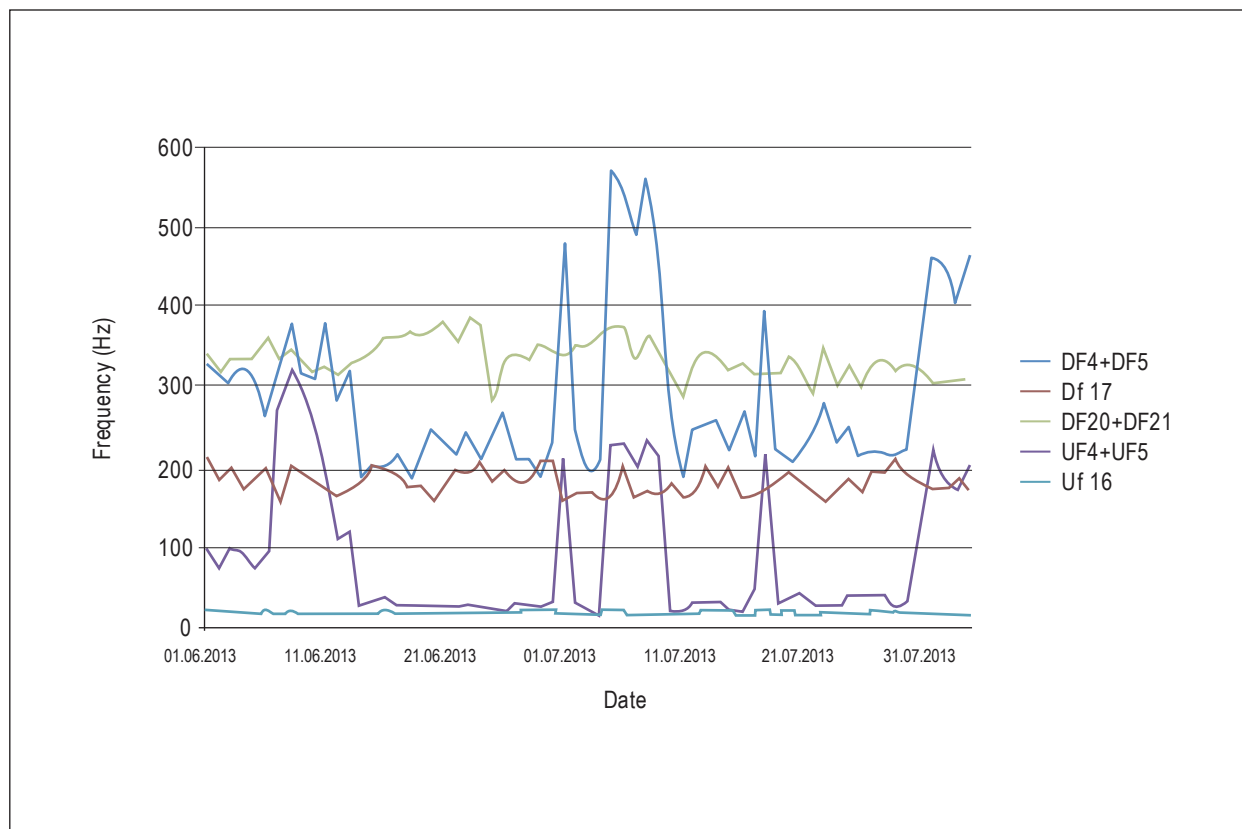


Figure M-8. Example 1 030/1 090 MHz Mode S message rate

13.3.7.1.10 Figure M-9 provides a closer examination of occupancy depicting individual 1 090 MHz Mode S DF code message rates over a shorter time interval. A period of 24 hours is taken from the long-term measurements shown in Figure M-10.

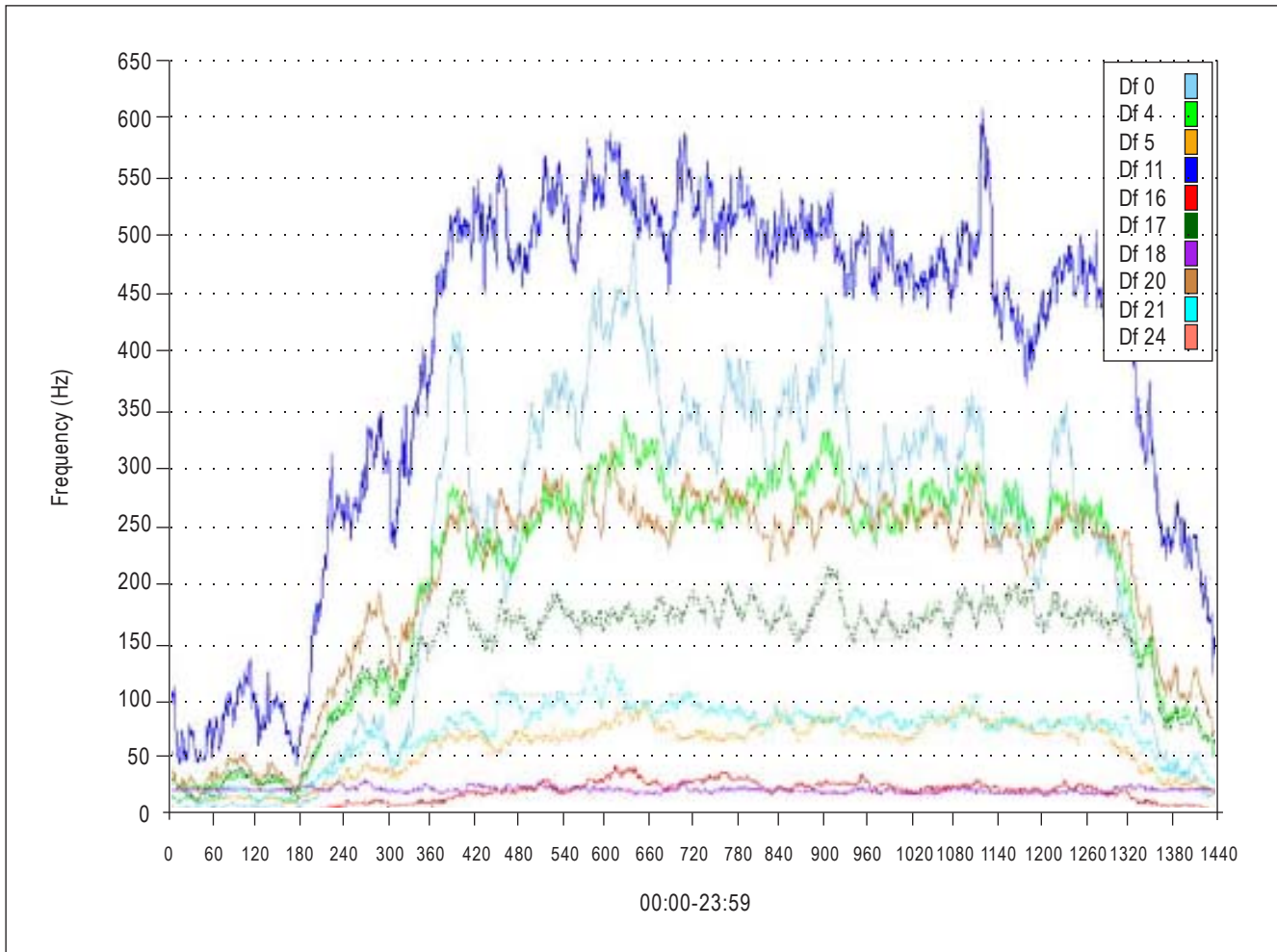


Figure M-9. 1 090 MHz Mode S message rates over 24 hours

13.3.7.1.11 Figure M-10 provides results of 1 090 MHz occupancy as a function of time from measured rates and calculated by applying the corresponding signal durations in Table M-7.

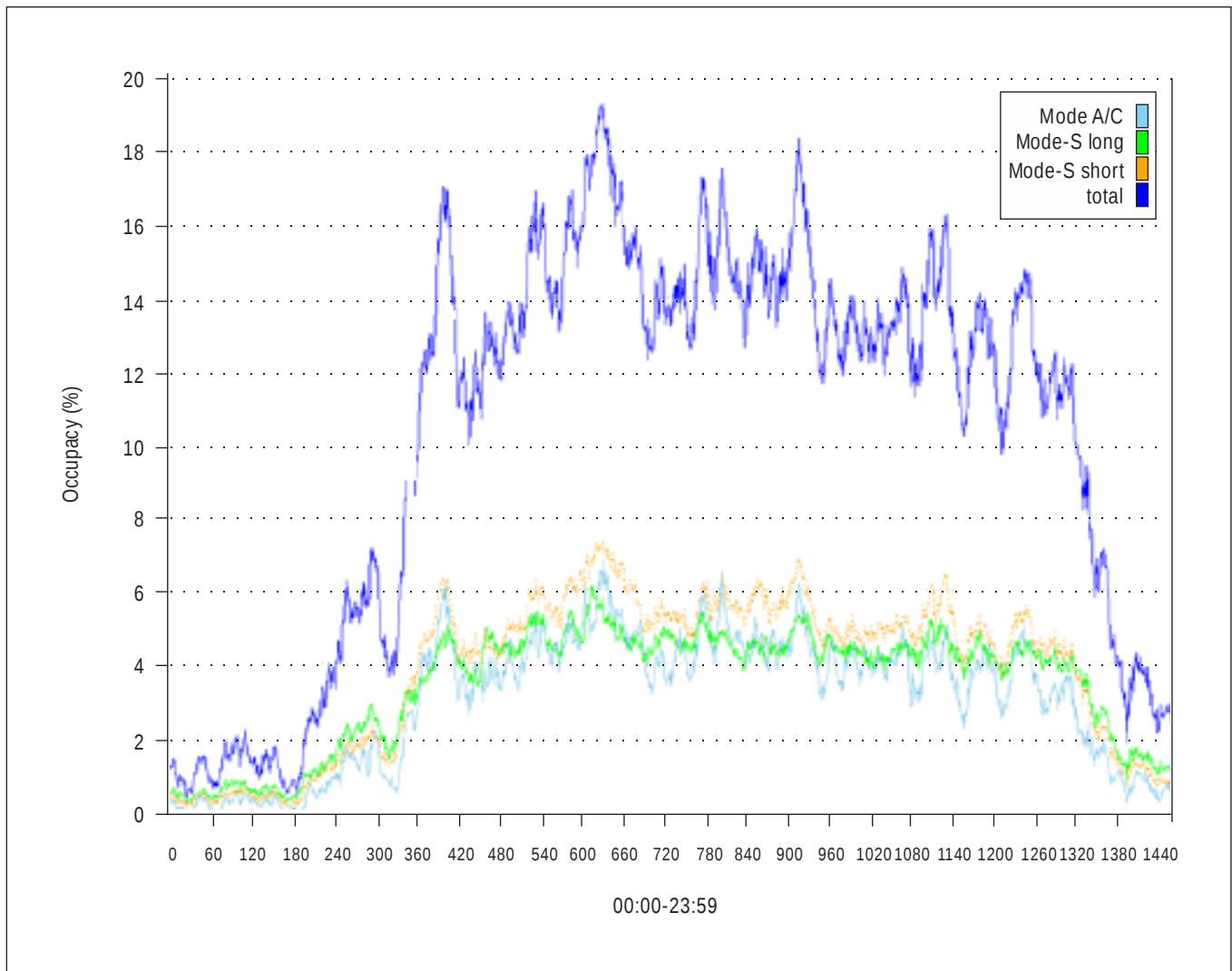


Figure M-10. 1 090 MHz percentage occupancy contribution by signal formats over 24 hours

13.3.7.1.12 Figure M-11 contains 1 090 MHz occupancy results from a data sample collected over a 24-hour period. The occupancy is shown according to the type of activity responsible for the occupancy. This type of information provides a means to compare the relative contribution of each activity to the measured occupancy. This information is useful in understanding the systems that are contributing to the measured channel utilization.

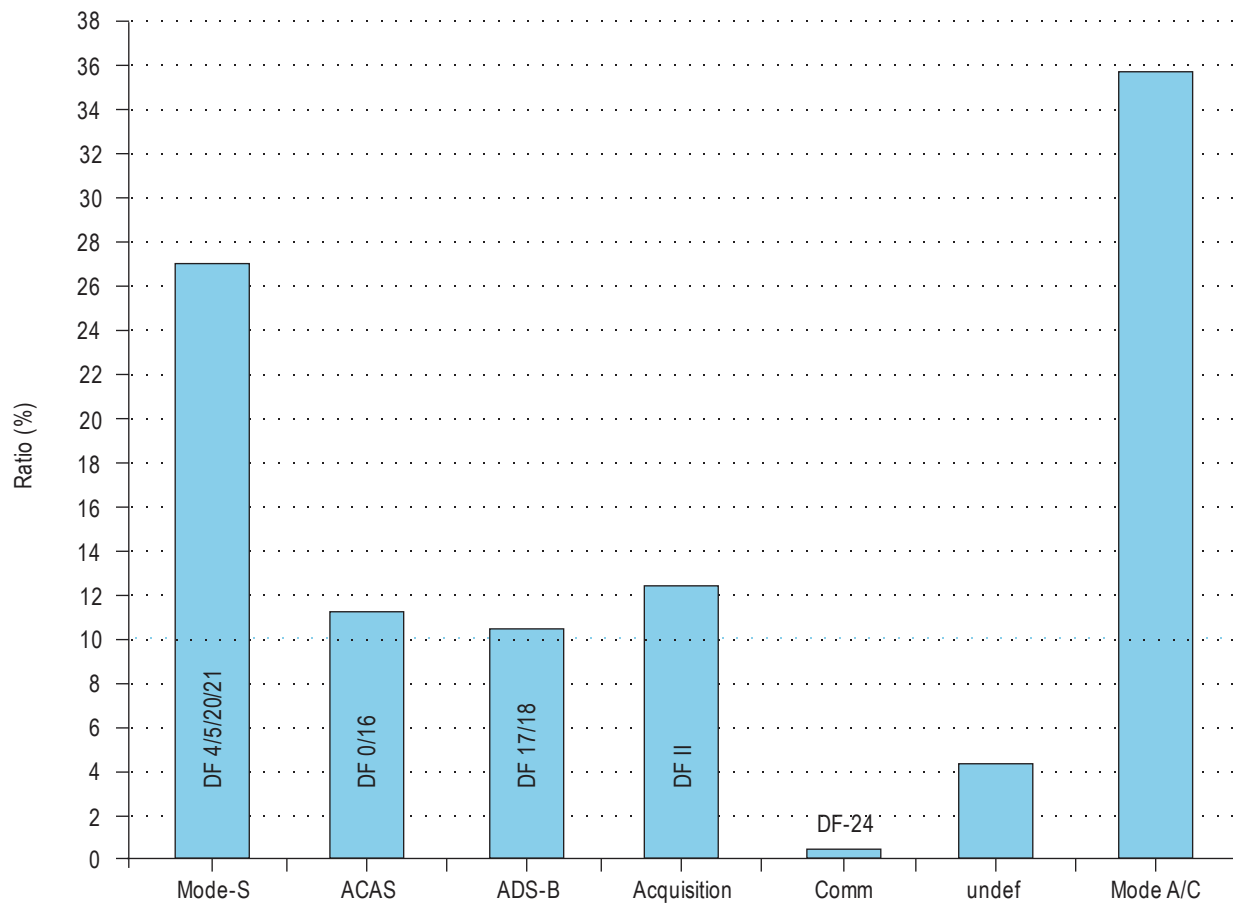


Figure M-11. 1 090 MHz percentage occupancy contribution by activity type over 24 hours

13.3.7.2 Determination of transponder reply and broadcast activity

13.3.7.2.1 By analysing the transmissions made by a transponder, it is possible to verify if a transponder is transmitting above the minimum capabilities specified in Annex 10, Volume IV. The number of messages can be counted over 1 second and 100 msec sliding windows. The peak rates (i.e. the interval with the highest number of messages) detected over a given interval (e.g. 1 minute) can be compared to the values defined in Annex 10, Volume IV. Figure M-12 illustrates the reply rates received by a monitoring ground station on 1 090 MHz for the intervals as specified in Annex 10, Volume IV. The figure also indicates the transponder minimum reply rates as thresholds in the diagram. Such information provides a good overall estimate of transponder activity caused by interrogators and makes possible the detection and further analysis of unexpected activity on the channel.

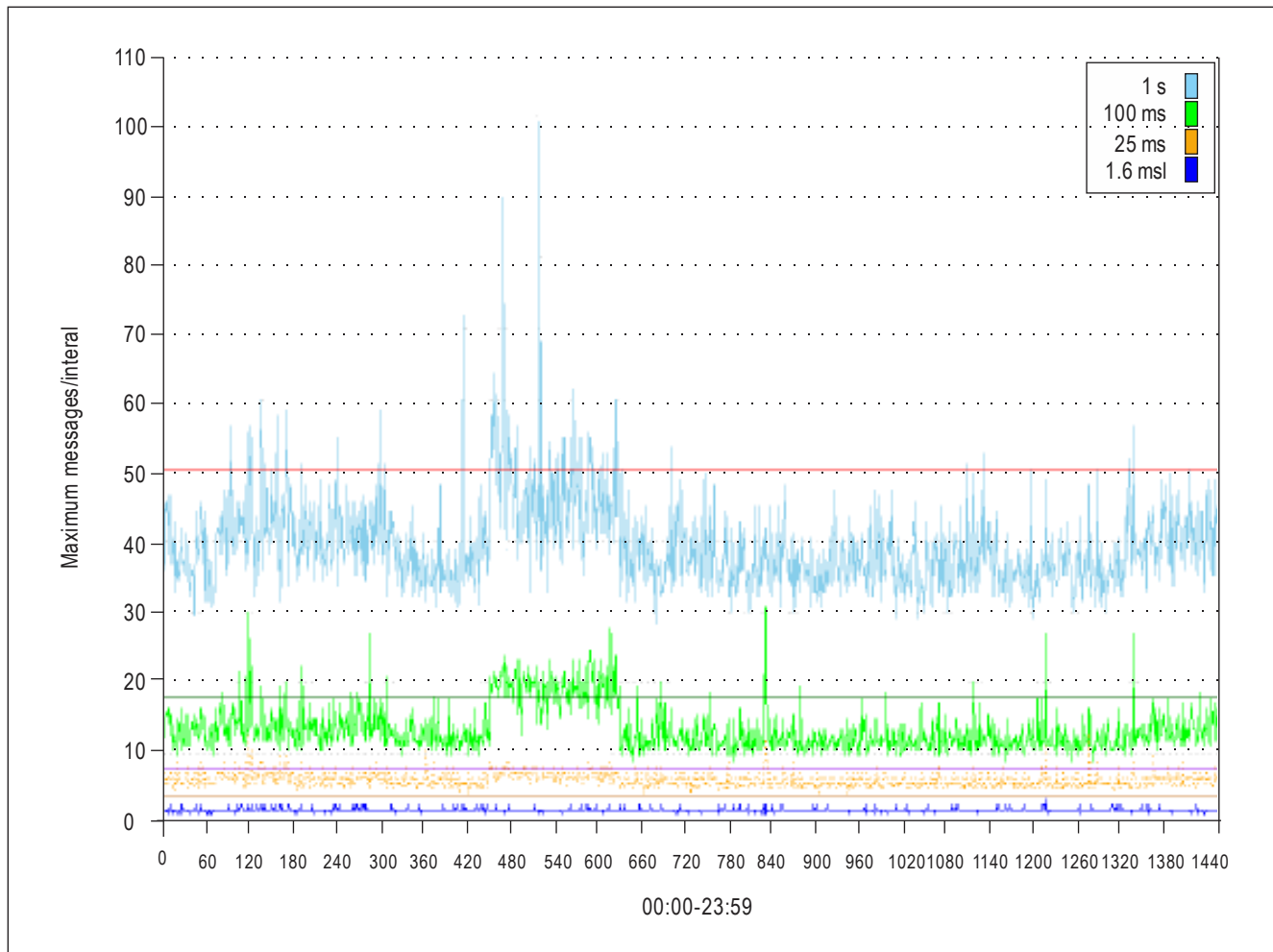


Figure M-12. Transponder reply rates and thresholds defined by ICAO

13.3.7.2.2 One method to estimate the number of messages transmitted by individual aircraft is by counting the number of messages received by a 1 090 MHz receiver for aircraft in the vicinity of the receiver with a good link budget. However, achieving sufficient decoding performance is difficult but this method lends itself to a long-term ground-based monitoring system.

13.3.7.2.3 Another method is to conduct flight tests and detect and record the transmissions made by the operational transponder installed on the test aircraft. This is a good way to determine with high confidence the activity of an individual transponder in the environment. Decoding ownship replies is more accurate than attempting to analyse all the replies transmitted by all the other aircraft because the transmissions are received at high power, thereby reducing the problem of degarbling with other transmissions.

13.4 Additional data

13.4.1 Considering additional data such as aircraft environment and traffic density is desirable to assist in understanding the RF measurements that are obtained by the various methods previously identified. RF activity is a function of the number of systems operating, which includes the number and types of interrogators operating on the 1 030 MHz frequency as well as the number and equipment of aircraft operating in the geographical area surrounding the measurement location.

13.4.2 Data to describe the aircraft environment during a measurement activity is helpful to understand the relationship between the RF measurements and the aircraft traffic in the surrounding area. Traffic density and traffic patterns influence the RF activity in any given area or region. RF spectrum contribution from ACAS is very sensitive to the number of aircraft equipped as well as the aircraft distribution. ACAS activity is highest near airports due to the higher density of aircraft around the airport and the possible impact of aircraft operating on the airport surface. Determining the aircraft environment may require collecting and recording data from one or more ground SSRs. For example, data collection in the Northeast corridor of the United States required data recordings from more than thirty radars. Useful data is the count of all aircraft in the area with respect to the flight test aircraft or the ground system collecting the RF measurements. Table M-8 provides recommended ranges to characterize the aircraft distribution. Data in time intervals of 10 to 15 minutes is suggested. It is not always possible to determine the number of aircraft as this information requires access to ground interrogator data usually from multiple systems and providing coverage of range out to 300 NM is especially difficult. It can also be difficult to determine the transponder and ACAS equipment status of aircraft. However, to some extent, aircraft information can be determined by the RF measurement system itself. Mode S equipped aircraft can be detected by 1 090 MHz reply data via the 24-bit aircraft address and additionally the position of many aircraft can be determined by extended squitter data. ACAS equipment can be determined from 1 030 MHz TCAS broadcast data, extended squitter as well as DF 0/16 reply content. These methods are limited to the receiver range of the measurement system but enable determining the nearby aircraft environment.

Table M-8. Aircraft distribution vs range data template

<i>Range (NM)</i>	<i>Aircraft Counts</i>		
	<i>Total Aircraft</i>	<i>Mode S Aircraft</i>	<i>ACAS Aircraft</i>
6	X	X	X
10	X	X	X
20	X	X	X

	<i>Aircraft Counts</i>		
<i>Range (NM)</i>	<i>Total Aircraft</i>	<i>Mode S Aircraft</i>	<i>ACAS Aircraft</i>
30	X	X	X
50	X	X	X
70	X	X	X
100	X	X	X
150	X	X	X
200	X	X	X
300	X	X	X

13.4.3 Information to describe the ground interrogator environment during a measurement activity is helpful to understand the relationship between the RF measurements and the number of interrogators in the surrounding area. Ground interrogators vary in characteristics that influence the impact to the RF environment. The expected RF contribution from ground interrogators can be predicted based on their characteristics such as PRF, scan rate, mode interlace pattern, beamwidth, power, etc. Although there is no way to associate measured 1 030 MHz Mode A/C or Whisper-Shout interrogations to a given ground interrogator without detailed analysis of interrogation timing, particularly in the mainbeam, Mode S interrogator All-Call activity can be associated via the II/SI codes. There are many factors that influence overall RF activity with Mode S since ground interrogators may be extracting many GICB registers that increase the contribution of Mode S FRUIT caused by ground interrogators. It is possible to associate All-Call interrogations with UF 4, 5, 20 and 21 interrogations by examining mainbeam activity of detected Mode S ground interrogators.

13.4.4 Additional data that can be helpful in assessing the RF activity in a given region is the use of interrogation and reply data that is broadcast on extended squitter by so equipped aircraft. The capability to broadcast interrogation and reply data is incorporated into the future version of 1 090 MHz extended squitter as a means of collecting useful 1 030 and 1 090 MHz activity data. The interrogation data is useful in conjunction with flight test measurements as it provides insight to the interrogation activity at different locations in addition to own aircraft. The reply data counts from the broadcasting aircraft enable comparison to the own aircraft rates as a function of time. For the purpose of ground monitoring of RF activity over time, decoding of the interrogation and reply monitoring extended squitter messages can be used for long term assessment of RF activity and enable capture of unusual or excessive RF activity events.

Appendix N

ASTERIX INTERFACE SPECIFICATIONS

1. INTRODUCTION

The ASTERIX specifications were developed in Europe in order to harmonize the transmission of surveillance information. ASTERIX specifications describe formats for the exchange of data between the surveillance sensors and data processing systems, and also for the generalized exchange of surveillance data between systems.

2. ASTERIX DOCUMENTATION

The ASTERIX standard documentation is subdivided into parts:

- Part 1: ASTERIX general description; and
- Part 2 and other parts describe the individual categories, for example:
- Part 4: Monoradar target reports (CAT048)
- Part 12: ADS-B messages (CAT021)
- Part 14: MLT messages (CAT020)
- Part 17: Safety nets messages (CAT004)

3. ORGANIZATION OF DATA

(see Figure N-1)

3.1 Categories

Some examples of ASTERIX categories are:

- CAT 001, 002 and 008: Used for radar data
- CAT 004: Safety net data
- CAT 007: Military use
- CAT 017 and 018: Used for Mode S sensor coordination and data link function
- CAT 019 and 020: Used for multilateration data

- CAT 021, 023 and 033: Used for ADS-B data
- CAT 034 and 048: Used for Mode S radar data and other radar data
- CAT 062: Used for multi-sensor data.

3.2 Data items

A data item is the smallest unit of information defined and standardized. A catalogue of data items is defined for each category. Each data item has a unique reference: Innn/AAp, where:

- a) “I” indicates the data item;
- b) “nnn” is a three-digit decimal number indicating the category to which the item belongs;
- c) “AA” is a two-digit decimal number identifying the item; and
- d) “p” is a one-digit decimal number that may indicate up to ten different representations.

3.3 Data fields

For communication purposes, data items are assigned to data fields. Each data field has a number and a certain length.

3.3.1 Standard data field formats

These formats can be:

- a) fixed length;
- b) extended or variable length by using a field extension (FX) indicator;
- c) repetitive data fields by using a one octet field repetition (REP) indicator; or
- d) compound data fields using a primary subfield, followed by data subfields.

3.3.2 Non-standard data fields

3.3.2.1 In special purpose fields, the format is as follows:

- a) the first octet contains length, including length indicator;
- b) the data field may contain information such as test data, text for operator communication; and
- c) contents are agreed among some users, others may skip it.

3.3.2.2 In reserved expansion data fields, the format is as follows:

- a) the first octet contains length, including length indicator;

- b) the data field is intended to introduce intermediate changes; and
- c) contents are agreed by the committee managing ASTERIX and are described in a separate document.

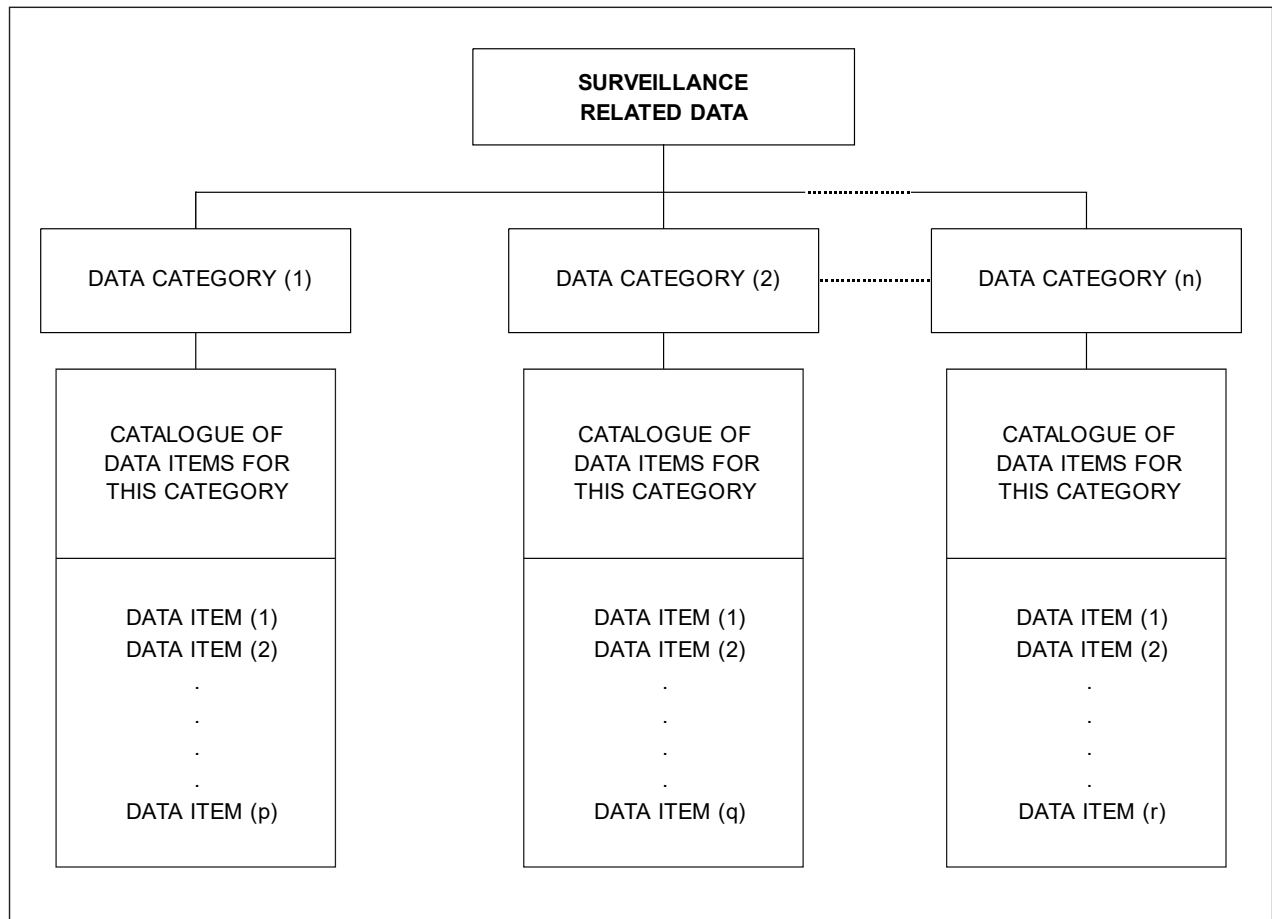


Figure N-1. Organization of the data and categories

3.4 User application profile

The user application profile (UAP) defines the sequence of the catalogued data items of a specific category within the ASTERIX message. The field reference number (FRN), allocated to each data item, defines the location of the item within the ASTERIX datastream. The UAP can be considered as a control table attached to the message assembly/disassembly programme resident in the relevant processing system. ASTERIX is based on an ordered field organization. The field specification (FSPEC) indicates which item (identified by its FRN) is present in a message, and which is not. The FSPEC is an extendable length data field with a minimum length of one octet. The relationship between FSPEC and data fields is described in the UAP.

3.5 General message record structure

An ASTERIX “record” is described as follows:

- a) it contains information of the same data category;
- b) it has an FSPEC of variable length, indicating the presence of data fields in the sequence defined by the UAP;
- c) it has a variable number of data fields with implicit or explicit length. Each data field is associated with one and only one data item, as defined in the UAP; and
- d) it is always a multiple of an octet long.

4. ASTERIX ADDRESSING SCHEME

4.1 ASTERIX contains an addressing scheme to identify the source providing the data. It is based on indicating the SAC and the SIC. SAC/SIC codes are always the first item in UAP.

4.2 SAC is an 8-bit number assigned to an area or country. It is subject to a central allocation currently managed by EUROCONTROL. SAC contains six tables: African, Asia and Pacific region, European, Middle East, North American (Canada and the United States), and South American and the Caribbean. The most current versions are published at: www.eurocontrol.int/asterix/public/standard_page/sac_list.html.

4.3 SIC is an 8-bit number assigned to every system within an area or country defined by SAC and is subject to local allocation.

Appendix O

AIRBORNE SURVEILLANCE EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION AND TEST CONSIDERATIONS

1. OVERVIEW

1.1 Mode S transponders are complex multi-tasking systems with numerous aircraft interfaces. Any technical problems in transponders or in systems that interface with them have impacts on the overall surveillance performance. Therefore, it is important that transponders and other related airborne equipment be designed, tested and installed in accordance with Standards and Recommended Practices, other relevant industry standards and applicable regulations.

1.2 Installations may change during the life of the aircraft and transponder software upgrades are becoming more frequent. It is therefore necessary to monitor transponder performance during the life of the system. This can be achieved during periodic maintenance of the aircraft as well as by using ground-based monitoring systems during flights.

2. GENERAL INSTALLATION CONSIDERATIONS

2.1 24-bit aircraft address

2.1.1 The allocation and the correct configuration of the aircraft address in the aircraft are key elements for aircraft operation and associated communication protocols used to support CNS systems. Most cooperative surveillance systems depend on the use of a unique 24-bit aircraft address.

2.1.2 A block of 24-bit aircraft addresses is allocated by ICAO to each State of Registry or common mark registering authority to uniquely assign, from that block, an address to each individual aircraft. This unique address must be used by all installed avionics that are required to use the 24-bit aircraft address. Therefore, it is important that this address be correctly configured and verified during initial installation and testing.

Note.— Annex 10, Volume III, Part I, Chapter 9, Appendix, contains information on the 24-bit aircraft-addressing scheme.

2.1.3 The 24-bit aircraft address can change during the life of an aircraft (e.g. when changing registration). When an aircraft changes its State of Registry, the previously assigned address is no longer valid and a new aircraft address, assigned by the new registering authority, is required. Therefore, the previous owner of the aircraft needs to ensure the de-registration of the aircraft (including removing the old aircraft address) and the new owner is required to contact the appropriate registering authority to obtain a new registration and a new 24-bit aircraft address.

2.1.4 The process of assigning an aircraft address to an aircraft is automatically triggered by an aircraft registration request.

Note 1.— The objective is to avoid an aircraft owner from omitting to initiate a separate request to obtain an aircraft address when registering its aircraft in a country.

Note 2.— The aircraft registration and the aircraft address assignment may be separate processes. However, in this case, a procedure will ensure that the allocation of an aircraft address is not inadvertently omitted after a registration.

2.1.5 The allocation of an aircraft address is necessary with a new registration, except if information provided indicates that the aircraft will not need an aircraft address.

2.1.6 An aircraft may not need to be allocated with an aircraft address if the aircraft is:

- not equipped with SSR Mode S, ADS B, ATN or ELT equipment; and
- managed within a block of addresses reserved for specific operations (e.g. State aircraft address block).

2.1.7 To ensure that aircraft are flying with a correct aircraft address, States can use one or more of the following mechanisms:

- positive acknowledgement confirming the configuration of a new aircraft address after a new allocation/registration;
- aircraft address to be indicated in the documents that must be on board the aircraft;
- ramp inspection;
- verification of aircraft address during periodic aircraft inspection;
- monitoring correct implementation using the aircraft address received from Mode S radar or ADS B messages and comparing them with information coming from the flight plan or visual reading of the tail number; and
- request correction of any detected wrongly configured aircraft address before any subsequent flight.

Note.— One effective way to communicate the aircraft address and to have it documented on board the aircraft is to include the aircraft address in binary and/or hexadecimal in the bottom part of the certificate of registration reserved for use by the State of Registry or common mark registering (see Annex 7).

2.1.8 Maintenance operations can result in connector pins being broken. It is therefore important that the operator regularly check that the 24-bit aircraft address is correct for the airframe. This should be checked at least after each maintenance operation on the transponder.

2.2 Inhibition of replies

Annex 10, Volume IV, 3.1.2.10.3.10, requires the Mode S transponder to be inhibited from replying to Mode A/C/S all-call and Mode S-only all-call interrogations when the aircraft is on the ground. For aircraft with retractable landing gear, this is usually accomplished via an appropriate transponder pin connection to the weight-on-wheels switch. It can also be accomplished through some other automatic means (e.g. velocity/altitude algorithm). The inhibit means must be verified during initial installation and testing as well as after any maintenance action (e.g. wiring change or software update).

Note.— The aforementioned Annex 10 provision also requires the transponder to continue to output acquisition squitters, ES's (e.g. ADS-B), and to reply to any discretely addressed interrogations while on the ground. These functions should also be verified during installation and testing of the inhibit function.

2.3 Mutual suppression

Mutual suppression is used on aircraft that are equipped with other L-band transmitting devices to protect receivers from high-power transmissions while any device is transmitting. These devices or systems are normally connected together using a mutual suppression interface bus or line. The transmitting device sends a pulse to notify other L-band systems residing on the suppression bus or line when a transmission is active. It is necessary to protect the integrity of the interface in case of a failure caused by any single device or system. Care should be exercised before installation to ensure compatibility of the mutual suppression interface between or among the systems to be interconnected. Installation tests should include verification that the mutual suppression interface is operating properly.

2.4 Flight identification (flight ID)

2.4.1 Both ELS and ES (1 090 ES) functions of the Mode S transponder utilize the same information as contained in item 7 of the ICAO flight plan to identify aircraft. This information is named aircraft ID within the message formats.

2.4.2 For privately operated aircraft, the flight ID should reflect the aircraft's registration mark (e.g. N123GA). Consideration should be given to hard-coding the flight ID with this registration number at the time of initial installation so as to preclude the need for a cockpit input interface and to ensure the integrity of the information. The flight ID coding should be verified during initial installation and testing.

2.4.3 Where the flight ID changes (e.g. airline flight operations) a flight deck flight ID input interface will be required. In this case, the flight ID should be the appropriate ICAO 3-letter airline designator followed by the flight number. The input interface should be evaluated for proper flight ID encoding during initial installation and testing.

Note.— Approved three-letter airline designators can be found in Designators for Aircraft Operating Agencies, Aeronautical Authorities and Services (Doc 8585).

2.5 Controls

The operation of controls that are intended for use during flight should be designed and evaluated to ensure that they are logical and tolerant to human error. In particular, where transponder functions are integrated with other system controls, the manufacturer should evaluate the design layout of the control panel to ensure that the possibility of unintentional transponder mode switching (i.e. from an operational state to "STANDBY" or "OFF") is minimized. In addition, with the trend toward increasing reliance on "line select" keys, "touch screens" or "cursor controlled/track-ball" methods of changing avionics operating modes, equipment installers need to evaluate the intended location of controls in the cockpit that will prevent inadvertent and incorrect flight crew activation. In locations where controls are still vulnerable to inadvertent activation, consideration should be given to requiring some form of flight crew confirmation.

3. TRANSPONDER TESTING

3.1 Ground testing

3.1.1 When conducting any ground testing of the transponder or ACAS, it is most important to follow proper procedures to prevent interference to ATC operations or other ACAS aircraft operating in the area. Ground maintenance checks or ramp testing (such as altimetry or bearing accuracy testing) can cause data to be transmitted by the transponder that could produce false targets for the ground ATC surveillance systems or for airborne ACAS aircraft. These false indications of “intruder aircraft” could result in unnecessary ATC communications and possibly in ACAS-induced aircraft manoeuvres. The problem of false ACAS warnings is more noticeable when ground testing of transponders takes place at airfields located beneath terminal control areas or in the vicinity of control areas and zones where aircraft movements are numerous.

3.1.2 Ground testing should be conducted in coordination with ATC and by the use of antenna shielding (i.e. transmission absorption covers or caps) to adequately attenuate transmitted signals. Using high-powered, hangar-mounted transponders is NOT an acceptable means for conducting either ACAS or transponder ramp testing. The following guidelines should be followed to minimize the aforementioned risks:

- a) when not required, ensure all transponders are set to “off” or “standby”;
- b) before starting any test, the local ATC authority shall be notified of the intended transponder testing. Information such as start time, test duration, aircraft ID (flight ID) and, if appropriate, the Mode A code to be used (subject to due coordination) should be provided to the ATC authority;
- c) prior to switch-on, or with the transponder in “standby” mode, set the Mode A code to the agreed/coordinated value;

Note.— The Mode A code 7 776 is assigned as a test code in Europe, specifically for the testing of transponders. In Australia, Mode A code of 2 100 is used for transponder testing.

- d) set the aircraft ID (flight ID) to the first eight characters of the name of the company that is conducting the tests;
- e) set the on-the-ground status for all Mode S replies, except when an airborne reply is required (e.g. for altitude testing);
- f) where possible, perform the testing inside a hanger to take advantage of any shielding properties it may provide;
- g) as a precaution, use antenna transmission covers, regardless of whether the testing is performed inside or outside;
- h) when testing the altitude (Mode C or S) parameter, radiate directly into the ramp test set via the prescribed attenuator;
- i) manually set the altitude to an unrealistically high value (i.e. over 60 000 ft);
- j) in-between testings (e.g. during transition from one altitude to another or changing the Mode A code), set the transponder to “standby” mode before changing the input;
- k) when testing is complete, immediately set the transponder to “OFF” or “standby”; and

- l) simulation of ACAS operation must not be carried out by the radiating from an antenna located on the ground (e.g. in a workshop).

3.1.2.1 Certification authorities should consider whether the current practices of testing transponders with different altitudes is still required for aircraft using serial inputs (as opposed to a “Gilham” encoder).

3.2 In-flight testing

3.2.1 A transponder in-flight tester may be provided to indicate normal or faulty operation.

3.2.2 When a tester is used, it should not radiate a signal level outside the aircraft that is stronger than –70 dBm. Moreover, the test interrogation signal should not exceed the rate of 450 per second.

3.2.3 The test should be limited to a short period that is just enough to determine the status of the transponder.

Note.— As with ground testing of the transponder or ACAS, it is important to follow proper procedures to prevent being an airborne source of interference to ATC or other ACAS aircraft operating in the area.

4. ANSWERS TO FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

(Q = question; A = answer)

Q1. Does Annex 10 require the installation of a second transponder?

A1. No. However, most civil operators install a second transponder to improve dispatch ability to airspace wherein a transponder is required.

Q2. If I have not yet received my assigned 24-bit aircraft address from my State of Registry, or common mark registering authority, is it permissible to use ALL ZEROS (0's) or ALL ONES (1's) until it is received?

A2. No. At no time should you use ALL ZEROS (0's) or ALL ONES (1's) as the 24-bit aircraft address. These are illegal addresses. Temporary addresses may be assigned to aircraft in exceptional circumstances, such as when operators have been unable to obtain an address from their individual States of Registry or Common Mark Registering Authority in a timely manner. ICAO will assign temporary addresses as described in Annex 10, Volume III, Chapter 9, Appendix. If a permanent address is not obtained within one year, the aircraft operator should reapply for a new temporary aircraft address. Under no circumstances will a temporary aircraft address be used by the aircraft operator for more than a year.

Q3. Can I keep the 24-bit aircraft address currently configured in the aircraft when I have purchased the aircraft in another State and a change of registration is required?

A3. No. According to SARPs, when an aircraft changes its State of Registry, the previously assigned address shall be relinquished, and a new address shall be assigned by the new registering authority.

Q4. For delivery of a new aircraft, is it acceptable to use a 24-bit aircraft address composed of my country code followed by ALL ZEROS?

A4. No. A country code followed by ALL ZEROS is a legal address, but it can only be assigned by the State of Registry to a single aircraft. For an aircraft delivery, the aircraft operator must inform the airframe manufacturer of a complete 24-bit aircraft address assignment. The airframe manufacturer or other organization responsible for the delivery must ensure the installation of a correctly assigned address supplied by the State of Registry or common mark registering

authority. Exceptionally, a temporary address may be supplied (see A2 above).

Q5. When other aircraft systems (particularly communications) need access to the 24-bit aircraft address, is it appropriate to connect them to the transponder or to the ACAS (XT) high-speed bus?

A5. No. Connection to the XT bus increases the possibility of corrupting the bus data due to interference. This can result in intermittent communication between ACAS and the transponder and ACAS system failures. It is preferred that other systems obtain the address from the transponder maintenance output bus or from separate interfaces.

Appendix P

GUIDANCE FOR AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE — BROADCAST (ADS-B) FLIGHT TESTING

1. GUIDANCE MATERIALS FOR ADS-B FLIGHT TESTING

1.1 Introduction

Live traffics of opportunity and flight tests are both important elements used in the testing of automatic dependent surveillance — broadcast (ADS-B) systems and multilateration (MLAT) systems.

- 1) Flight tests are conducted using profiles along predetermined flight paths, ensuring test conditions are controlled. System performance data can be collected in both the volume of airspace included in the airborne portion of the surveillance service area as well as the surface volumes surrounding airports. This data is then analysed, and performance can be assessed.
- 2) (Live) traffics of opportunity can also be used to verify requirements. Testing of new surveillance ground systems using ADS-B and MLAT technologies can utilize traffic of opportunity to exercise the system. This enhances the testing since economic and logistical factors limit the number of aircraft that can be employed to support flight testing of such systems. The system can be monitored for correct operation with these real-world opportunities. Flight paths of traffic of opportunity are normally not under direct control of the test environment but use of this traffic can provide a way to verify that the system can function in the field.

2. FLIGHT TESTING OVERVIEW

2.1 ADS-B flight testing

Flight testing is an integral part of testing ADS-B ground systems. Aircraft need to be appropriately equipped with 1 090 MHz extended squitter (1 090 ES) transponders and recording equipment. Flight routes need to be generated to test uplink and downlink services within the airspace volume defined. Some of the tests required may also include aircraft taxiing or parking in the movement area.

Elements of the system that are sometimes included in flight test configurations are ground-based radar surveillance data (provided from air traffic control (ATC) radar sources), ground-based transceiver radio frequency (RF) facilities, flight test aircraft (1 090 ES equipped), and the ATC end-user facilities. Since many systems share and utilize the 1 030/1 090 MHz frequencies for aircraft surveillance, the introduction of ADS-B puts additional reliance on 1 090 MHz. ADS-B will provide pilots with an additional airspace awareness capability, which is provided by other ADS-B-equipped aircraft that independently broadcast their positions via their 1 090 MHz (1 090 ES) transponders without interrogation. One of the aspects of ADS-B testing is the interoperability of ADS-B in the current surveillance environment to ensure that it does not degrade the operation of the legacy 1 090 MHz systems. This aspect of interoperability with other systems on the RF frequency needs to be considered in the testing objectives.

Various ADS-B services may be provided and require testing. ADS-B, ADS-R and TIS-B services may also be included. The capabilities of the aircraft avionics used in the flight tests must match the level of services to be tested. The test measurement systems must support the data and performance measurement requirements to be collected during flight tests. As a minimum, the basic ADS-B service, receiving and distributing 1 090 ES ADS-B information transmitted by aircraft/vehicles, should be verified.

The ground system consists of one or more radio stations that receives and processes ADS-B 1 090 ES Messages from participating aircraft/vehicles and provides position and state data at the output of the system for ATC use. ADS-B performance data that is assessed by means of flight testing verifies key performance parameters including minimum update interval of ADS-B data, service coverage over the geographic area for which service is intended, accuracy of the data and maximum data latency.

To ensure compatibility with airborne aircraft traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS/ACAS), elements of testing, using flight testing, should include validation and interoperability of ADS-B with TCAS/ACAS. Since TCAS/ACAS-equipped aircraft can interrogate all other aircraft in their proximity via 1 030 MHz interrogations and receive/process replies on 1 090 MHz, operation of TCAS/ACAS should be included in the flight tests.

Since there are interference sources on the 1 090 MHz frequency that 1 090 ES receivers need to tolerate, including SSR Mode S and SSR Mode A/C signals, the interference environment should be provided by both SSR Mode A/C interference and Mode S interference. The tests outlined in this section are to determine that the radio station 1 090 MHz transmitters will not exceed the protection limits established for other 1 090 MHz users, e.g. multilateration systems and SSR, since the transmissions from the radio stations are a source of interference (FRUIT) in the local area environment.

Additionally, flight tests can provide evidence that the ADS-B system is interoperable with other systems with which it operates and with those by which it is monitored. It is not practical to expect that flight testing would test the capacity of the system, as this shall be covered by testing of individual ground stations and components of the system that process targets to be forwarded to air traffic control as well as analysed based on expected deployment.

2.2 TIS-B flight testing

TIS-B is provided in some surveillance areas to give aircraft and other users surveillance and status information for targets that may not be equipped with ADS-B capability. TIS-B data is normally provided by other surveillance sources, such as primary SSR and MLAT systems. The TIS-B information is formatted similar to the ADS-B messages transmitted directly by aircraft in the airspace and receiving aircraft can utilize TIS-B information to produce full surveillance coverage. If TIS-B is a provided service, it needs to be included in the test requirements and flight testing is a key component of these requirements. Performance, such as update intervals for the TIS-B service, needs to be tested and any limitations imposed on the ground system in terms of 1 090 MHz transmit rates and duty cycle need to be considered. Any requirements on the management of the 1 090 ES spectrum should be tested to ensure compliance to these requirements (e.g. maximum power and number of transmissions limits).

2.3 ADS-R flight testing

Some airspace may consider other ADS-B data links for ADS-B service in addition to 1 090 ES. If ADS-R (the relay of ADS-B data from the 1 090 ES link to another link and vice versa) is supported, the performance of the ADS-R service needs to be included in the flight test validation objectives. The performance parameters, such as the update interval of ADS-R messages at the aircraft, data accuracy, latency and service coverage, need to be included in measurements from the flight test. As is the case with TIS-B, any limitations imposed on the ground system in terms of 1 090 MHz transmit rates and duty cycle need to be considered in the overall test programme. The requirements on the management of the 1 090 ES spectrum should be tested to ensure compliance.

If both TIS-B and ADS-R services are provided, there are additional performance aspects to consider in the testing. Management of TIS-B and ADS-R services must not simultaneously provide both services to receiving aircraft as targets equipped with other ADS-B data links, and which the ground system provides ADS-R service. Spectrum management, when both TIS-B and ADS-R services are provided, requires testing services collectively and independently.

3 ADS-B FLIGHT TEST PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENTS

There are key performance parameters that should be measured as part of any flight test activity for ADS-B deployment. Since primary objective of most ground-based surveillance systems is to provide air traffic control, for a defined service region, the update interval of ADS-B reports sent to the ATC system is an important performance measure. Service is expected over a defined service volume which is a geographical region with minimum and maximum altitude limits. Among performance measures to be examined, the elements in the following subparagraphs are suggested.

3.1 Latency

Data latency of the 1 090ES ADS-B data at the ATC system is a recommended measurement. This includes latency of the horizontal and vertical positions and velocity data as well as position integrity and accuracy metrics. Additional data elements to be considered are identification, alerts and other status information used by air traffic control and other users. The latency measurement needs to consider total ADS-B end-to-end latency including airborne avionics contribution, ground station and the air traffic control automation system.

3.2 Update interval

Update interval of 1 090 ES ADS-B data provided to the ATC system and other users, if supported, is a recommended measurement. Requirements for update intervals may vary depending on the type of airspace that ADS-B is supporting. If a volume of airspace to be tested includes more than one class of airspace, update interval testing must account for the different classes supported if update interval requirements vary among these classes. Update interval measurements in flight testing should include the horizontal and vertical positions data along with required horizontal and vertical velocity information. Additionally, integrity and accuracy parameters for ADS-B data should also be included. Additional data elements to be considered are identification, alerts and other status information used by air traffic control and other users.

3.3 ADS-B data accuracy

ADS-B data accuracy is a key element that needs to be examined as part of flight testing of the ADS-B function. The primary elements of data accuracy, important in validating surveillance coverage, are to meet the minimum accuracy requirements of properly equipped aircraft in order to support the needs of air traffic control and other users. It should be verified that the flight test aircraft position accuracy reported is consistent with independent aircraft position determination. It should also be verified that the ATC system receives ADS-B positions at the required accuracy and properly reflects the data transmitted by the participating flight test aircraft. Horizontal and vertical positions and velocity accuracy should be assessed as well as other data elements contained in the transmitted ADS-B message set that support air traffic control.

3.4 Coverage volume

Flight testing should include verification that the ADS-B coverage volume is achieved by the number of ground stations and the coverage provided by the individual ground stations. The approach to locating and deploying ground stations to achieve the required area of coverage normally relies on predictive tools that need to be validated prior to the system being certified to support air traffic control and the intended service. Flight testing needs to include flight profiles that traverse the geographic area to verify coverage. This includes the outer regions of the coverage volume as well as the altitude limits that define the service volume.

3.5 ADS-B identification data

Since there are various types of aircraft identification, there should be testing of these various types of aircraft identifications, that are appropriate for the intended airspace. In airspace where Mode A code is still in use and necessary for ATC, testing of proper Mode A code reporting is required. The proper reporting of the 24-bit ICAO address should be verified as well as anonymous address mode, if supported. The flight identification data assigned by ATC should also be validated.

3.6 ADS-B data validation functions

Since ADS-B data is potentially vulnerable to spoofers, equipment failures and other sources of errors, a method of validating ADS-B data may be desirable. There are many means of validation that could be considered depending on the airspace in which the ADS-B system is intended to operate. For example, in regions where SSR coverage is also available, ADS-B data could be validated using radar data. Depending on the number and location of ADS-B ground stations, a coarse multilateration measurement could be achieved to support validation.

4. OPTIONAL TIS-B AND ADS-R FLIGHT TEST PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENTS

TIS-B and ADS-R services, if provided, place additional requirements on flight testing. In addition to all of the ADS-B performance measures in section 3, additional system elements and functions are required as part of the overall system to support these services. TIS-B performance in terms of latency and update intervals are further dependent on the surveillance sources that support the service, the transmission of 1 090 ES from the ground stations to the aircraft/vehicle, and the performance of 1 090 ES receiving systems on the aircraft/vehicle. The update intervals and latency of TIS-B messages is measured at the interface of the receiving flight test aircraft instead of on the ground. Transmission of TIS-B data is dependent on the required coverage volume surrounding the aircraft receiving service, thereby dependent on aircraft proximity to the receiving aircraft. ADS-R performance is dependent on the alternate ADS-B data link system elements to receive and transmit on the alternate link, as well as ground transmission on 1 090 ES for ADS-R message reception on 1 090 ES at the flight test aircraft. Performance is assessed to verify the performance of ADS-R is sufficient to support the intended airborne/surface ADS-B applications.

5. TEST RESOURCES

The following test resources should be considered as necessary elements to support ADS-B testing utilizing flight test aircraft. As determined by the service volume and other factors, one or more aircraft are required, each with the ability to transmit and record 1 090 ES ADS-B data. The aircraft must also be equipped with a GPS recorder or other method to capture the true position of the aircraft. Also, recording equipment at the output interface of the ground ADS-B service provider is required. The number and type of equipment is based on the ground architecture.

5.1 Flight test aircraft test systems

Airborne 1 030/1 090 MHz message recording equipment must be provided. This equipment should have the ability to record all messages on the 1 030/1 090 MHz RF data links being received or sent by the flight test aircraft. The 1 090 ES receiving equipment must be able to decode all 1 090 ES ADS-B messages. These messages are recorded as well as all data sent from the 1 090 ES ADS-B receiver to the avionics display. A GPS recorder or equivalent device is required on the flight test aircraft so that position truth is provided for each flight test aircraft. This provides an independent recording of the GPS location of the test aircraft. The data should be recorded at a minimum of once per second, preferably more often with adequate time-tagging resolution to time-correlate the position data, with the ADS-B reported position from the ADS-B ground system. Also, an avionics display recorder is recommended to visually record the avionics display on the test aircraft.

5.2 Ground test systems

Ground 1 030/1 090 MHz message recording equipment must be provided. This equipment should have the ability to record all messages on the 1 030/1 090 MHz RF data links being received or sent by the ground station(s). This equipment records all messages on the 1 030/1 090 MHz RF data links that are received at a ground location during flight testing. Also, the ADS-B data output from the ground system to ATC end-users must be recorded with a GPS time stamp for timing calculations. As the types and number of interfaces that need to be monitored vary depending on ground system architecture, equipment needs for this recording function will vary. If alternate surveillance sources, such as primary radar, SSR, MLAT, etc., are used in support of ADS-B services, equipment to record and monitor data provided by these systems must also be included. Recording within the ATC end-user system must also be provided, as appropriate, to support the timing measurements and other key performance parameters identified.

6. TEST METHODOLOGY

The flight test methods must support measurements required to collect and analyse the necessary data to determine the performance for the parameters identified in section 3. Position accuracy is validated to verify that the vertical and horizontal positions and velocity data broadcast by the aircraft, received by the radio stations and ground infrastructure presented to ATC, are unaltered by the service and within the accuracy bounds set in the listed requirements. ADS-B end-to-end latency determination requires airborne ADS-B recording, GPS truth data, ground system ADS-B report recording and ATC recording to determine the latency throughout the system. The data analysis consists of a statistical measure of the latency performance, including the cumulative and probability density functions.

If TIS-B service is provided, flight test aircraft are configured to enable determination of update intervals of TIS-B messages at the interface of the ADS-B service and the aircraft. Additionally, latency of the 1 090 ES TIS-B data at the aircraft is verified to be within the required limits. Since the latency calculation is relative from the TIS-B surveillance source, e.g. SSRs, MLAT, primary means of measurement of the surveillance sources from the time of measurement is necessary. Verification of position accuracy is required to ensure that the aircraft receives TIS-B positions at the required accuracy.

If ADS-R service is provided, flight test aircraft are exercised to verify that aircraft receiving ADS-R position data are receiving ADS-R at the required accuracy. Update intervals are calculated to verify the update intervals of ADS-R messages at the aircraft. Latency of the 1 090 ES ADS-R data at the aircraft is verified to be within the required limits. Two or more aircraft are required to be equipped with alternate ADS-B data links between the two aircraft to exercise the ADS-R function.

6.1 Basic flight test profile

Effective flight profiles can be utilized to support the flight-testing objectives that are critical to validating ADS-B services in a defined area. One or more 1 090 ES-equipped aircraft can be used to fly oval racetrack and figure-eight patterns at distances near, but not over, the radar (when appropriate) or ADS-B coverage volumes. The broadcast data should be compared to GPS truth for the analysis of horizontal and positional accuracy. The same data pairs should be compared to those received at the output of the ADS-B ground system to ensure that position and velocity information broadcast by the aircraft were delivered unaltered at this interface. Aircraft should fly a designated path through the ADS-B airspace volume. The update rate for ADS-B should be calculated. If the update rate percentile falls below ninety-five per cent of the required rate, then the test should be considered as failed. The flight paths should be selected to include locations of interest within the airspace volume that provide appropriate level of testing of ADS-B coverage. This should include placing the aircraft/vehicle at a specific range from the ground stations in the defined volume.

Flight test profiles should include locating the aircraft at maximum and minimum ranges within the service volume and fly within zenith cones over ground stations. It is recommended that flight tests include aircraft executing a two-minute standard rate circle at locations of interest. Vehicles on the surface should execute a slow circle at locations of interest. To test altitude variations, aircraft altitude should include areas of maximum and minimum altitude boundaries within the required airspace volume. Where appropriate, flight test profiles should be above, at and below the floor of existing radar coverage. Potential obstructions should be examined to test areas where obstructions may block acceptable coverage, including determining radar line-of-sight problem areas, such as terrain, and man-made structures for vehicles and aircraft. High-density airspace should be determined and high traffic areas identified to be included in the flight profile. For aircraft, this includes air routes and intersections, en-route and terminal airways and other areas of interest including where instrument approach procedures and departure procedures are instituted. For vehicles on the airport surface, identify movement area hot spots at airports.

6.2 Summary of requirements covered in flight testing ADS-B

6.2.1 ADS-B

- a) ADS-B latency
- b) ADS-B positional/velocity accuracy
- c) ADS-B coverage
 - ADS-B border coverage
- d) ADS-B update rate
- e) ADS-B validation
- f) ADS-B identification
 - Mode 3/A code
 - Aircraft ID
 - 24-bit ICAO address
 - Anonymous mode (if supported)
- g) ADS-B emergency codes
- h) ADS-B duplicate address detection (if supported)

6.2.2 TIS-B (If provided)

- a) TIS-B latency
- b) TIS-B accuracy
- c) TIS-B coverage
 - TIS-B border coverage
- d) TIS-B update rate
- e) Radar report recorder — records all radar data provided to the ADS-B ground system providing TIS-B service

6.2.3 ADS-R (If provided)

- a) ADS-R latency
 - b) ADS-R positional accuracy
 - c) ADS-R-encoded value accuracy
 - d) ADS-R coverage (reception and validation)
 - ADS-R border coverage
 - e) ADS-R update rate
-

Appendix Q

GUIDANCE FOR MULTILATERATION (MLAT) FLIGHT TESTING

1. GUIDANCE MATERIALS FOR MLAT FLIGHT TESTING

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Flight testing is an essential part of the process to implement a multilateration (MLAT, also called wide area multilateration — WAM) system into the ATC surveillance infrastructure. With flight tests, the performance of the MLAT system will be verified against international standards and specifications to ensure the proper function under live operation conditions and the interoperability with other aeronautical surveillance systems. Due to the MLAT system's antennas' characteristics and interrogation patterns, special attention should be paid to the impact of the MLAT system on the surrounding 1 030/1 090 MHz environment.

A special equipped flight test aircraft as well as traffic of opportunity can be used to test the system characteristics while flying within the designated airspace or moving on the airport surface. The use of a suitably equipped vehicle rather than an aircraft is commonly accepted for testing the MLAT system on the airport surface. It could be beneficial to conduct the flight test as a part of the site acceptance test of the MLAT system, in particular for the necessary accuracy measurements.

2. MLAT PERFORMANCE PARAMETERS

Performance parameters, system requirements and test procedures for MLAT systems are specified in EUROCAE ED-142A "Technical Specification for Wide Area Multilateration (WAM) Surveillance System". Among others, important parameters to test are as follows:

- a) operational coverage volume;
- b) update intervals;
- c) update of changed aircraft information (identification);
- d) probability of position detection;
- e) probability of false detection;
- f) horizontal position accuracy;
- g) probability of code detection;
- h) processing delay; and
- i) interrogation rate.

3. FLIGHT TEST AIRCRAFT

In addition to the recording equipment on board the flight test aircraft, the transponder used for MLAT testing should perform not better than the required minimum, as specified in ICAO Annex 10, i.e. 125W output power, a matched receiver threshold, only bottom antenna connected. This ensures that aircraft having a transponder operated at the lower end of the standard can be received and processed properly by the MLAT system. The flight test transponder should have the capability to switch off ADS-B transmissions. Since some MLAT systems use ADS-B to support target identification and tracking, this can test the MLAT system behaviour and performance without ADS-B information. Flight tests with Mode A/C transponder complete the set-up. Such tests represent a mixed traffic environment with different avionics equipage.

The flight test aircraft position is to be determined by use of GPS, or better differential GPS, and recorded for the subsequent analysis together with other recorded data. It should also have the capability to record 1 030 and 1 090 MHz signals for the analysis of the MLAT system interrogations and the corresponding transponder activity.

4. TRAFFIC OF OPPORTUNITY

MLAT testing is also possible with traffic of opportunity. Important is the selection of "well known" aircraft, which provide a position, being more accurate than the required WAM accuracy (e.g. ADS-B), and a sufficient number of flights through the MLAT system coverage with on-board aeronautical surveillance equipment performing according to ICAO Annex 10. Analysis should be concentrated on flights within the system coverage representing a major part of the local airspace structure and traffic patterns, e.g. arrival and departure, parallel approaches, en-route flight paths and the specified operational coverage boundaries.

MLAT testing based on traffic of opportunity should be done during high traffic peaks as the MLAT performance in high density traffic areas is potentially decreasing in peak traffic situations. Furthermore, this could be a reason for necessary periodic measurements.

5. MLAT GROUND TEST SYSTEMS

Ground test systems are used to record all MLAT system data and to analyse specified system parameters. Recordings from the MLAT system, other surveillance sources (like radar and ADS-B) and the position of the flight test aircraft are essential for a comprehensive analysis. Recordings on the 1 030/1 090 MHz can support special investigation of the MLAT system behaviour or can determine the influence of the surrounding RF environment onto the MLAT system. A data replay function will help to repeat situations of interest for detailed investigations.

Standardized tools and data formats are advantageous for the analysis of the MLAT system performance. The tools should be manufacturer-independent and proven for analyses of MLAT or other comparable surveillance systems.

6. MLAT TEST METHODOLOGY

Simulation is an appropriate method to determine the number, optimal position and distribution of sensors during the deployment design phase of an MLAT system. This is of particular interest to the positioning of sensors with respect to the system performance while one sensor is offline, also called n-1 criteria. Calculations of the expected dilution of precision throughout the system's coverage can provide a good indication of where the system's performance is near the required minimum. If there is not enough traffic of opportunity available to test this, these regions are places where specific flight tests should be conducted.

Flight tests provide objective evidence that the MLAT system has the specified functionality, the opportunity to analyse the system behaviour specifically and where other test methods are not sufficient or applicable. Due to the spatial

distribution of a number of MLAT sensors with receiving and/or interrogation capability, flight testing under use of a flight test aircraft should concentrate on regions with special interest. They should be carefully chosen to include the main traffic and airspace volumes of the MLAT system under test as well as the areas near the performance limits provided by simulation and/or modelling (e.g. coverage model). Flight testing of a country-wide MLAT system could be otherwise very extensive and will consume a high amount of resources. A combination of simulation and/or modelling, use of traffic of opportunity and designated flight testing by use of a special equipped flight test aircraft is recommended for the performance analysis and/or acceptance testing of a MLAT system.

Since each MLAT system has its unique configuration, the proportion of simulation/modelling, use of traffic of opportunity and designated flight testing has to be chosen individually by the system operator.

Flight tests conducted during periods with typical and most demanding traffic on main traffic routes should be the main principle and provide the best data base. The flight test aircraft, if not tolerable to fly within the regular traffic, e.g. approach of an airport with high traffic density, could instead be flown in parallel.

For the performance determination of a MLAT system, ground measurements are necessary, and it is recommended to complement these with airborne measurements. Data recorded on several processing levels of the system provide the basis for analyses and comparison against standards and system specifications. The data have to include all information for a detailed analysis of each system parameter.

An important part of the flight tests is the inspection of the system behaviour under the n-1 condition. This will reveal the system's performance while one of the sensors is offline. Under this condition, the MLAT system must still fulfill the specified performance requirements. Position of offline sensors and the corresponding flight paths should be chosen to test a "worst-case" scenario, e.g. depicted by simulations in preparation of the flight testing. It must be pointed out that the n-1 tests have to be performed separately for receive-only sensors and sensors with receive and transmit capabilities. The offline sensor with transmit function must always be in the vicinity of the test flight aircraft. Otherwise, it is not possible to determine the contribution of the missing transmitter to the system's performance in the inspected part of the MLAT coverage.

Another test of major importance is the interrogation rate and pattern of the MLAT system. The system should be operated with a minimum number of interrogations to reach its required performance. Due to the wide sector or omnidirectional MLAT antennas, excessive interrogations could cause a significant impact on the 1 030/1 090 MHz environment and result in target losses not only to the MLAT system, but also to the entire surveillance infrastructure in range. Therefore, flight tests should include recordings on board the flight test aircraft and by the MLAT system and a later detailed analysis with the objective to adjust the MLAT system to a minimum interference level.

The first MLAT flight test should be conducted as part of the site acceptance test. Identified deficiencies can then be corrected prior to the system's final acceptance. After bringing the MLAT system into operation, and depending on local regulations, the flight test can be repeated on a regular basis. In case performance monitoring reveals deficiencies and a major repair or parameter change has been done, an additional flight test is recommended.

7. MLAT FLIGHT PROFILES

The flight profiles depend on the size of the airspace covered by the MLAT system and its utilization. It is not always possible to test the whole MLAT system coverage including all traffic patterns at all altitudes.

Flight profiles should be designed to verify at least the low-level coverage. Intermediate steps may be reduced at higher levels, but the performance at the highest specified level needs to be tested as well. This is of particular importance for systems which are using antennas with no real omnidirectional coverage, i.e. a cone of silence within their aperture. Additional criteria could be boundaries between airspace classes or main traffic routes with high vertical movements, like approach and departure corridors of an airport. Test flight profiles should be chosen under consideration of traffic density, day and night operations and at a minimum, with no interference to others.

The following figures show examples of flight profiles to test a wide area MLAT system. They illustrate how the test at lower altitudes oriented on the airport runways and coverage tests at medium altitudes adapted to the MLAT system boundaries could be performed.

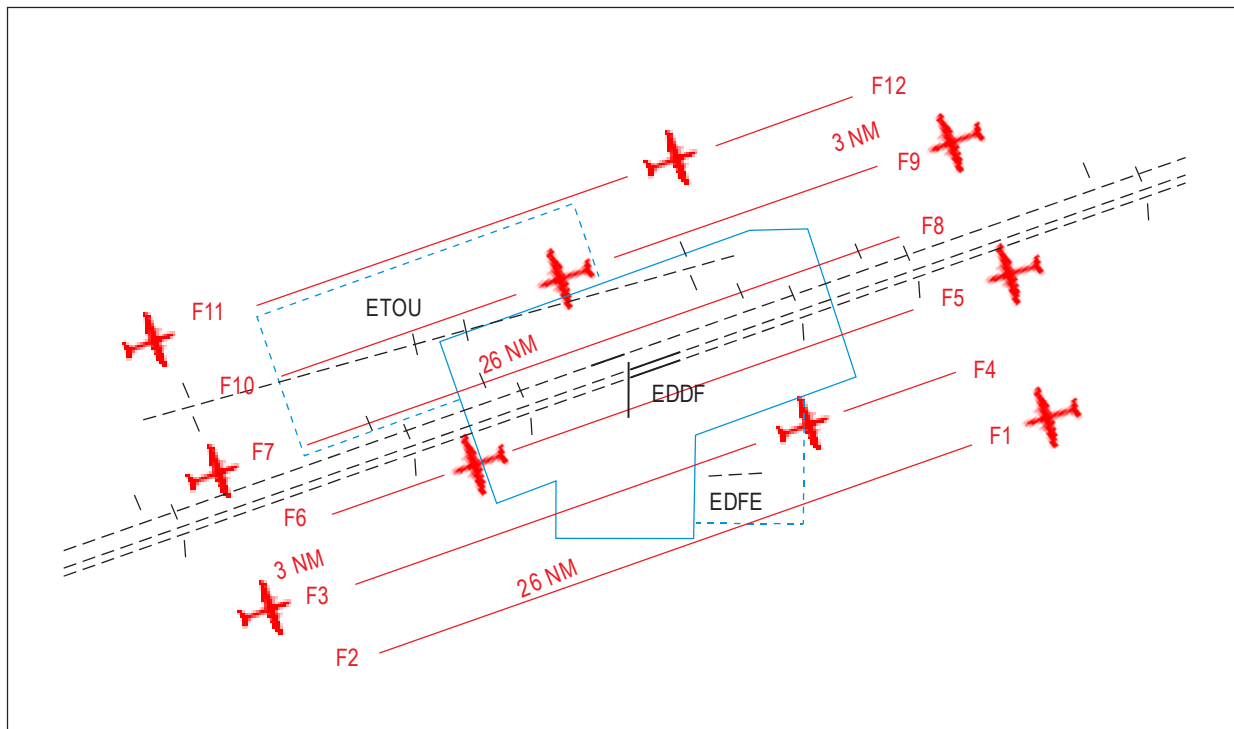


Figure Q-1. Flight profile for the MLAT/WAM test in 500 ft

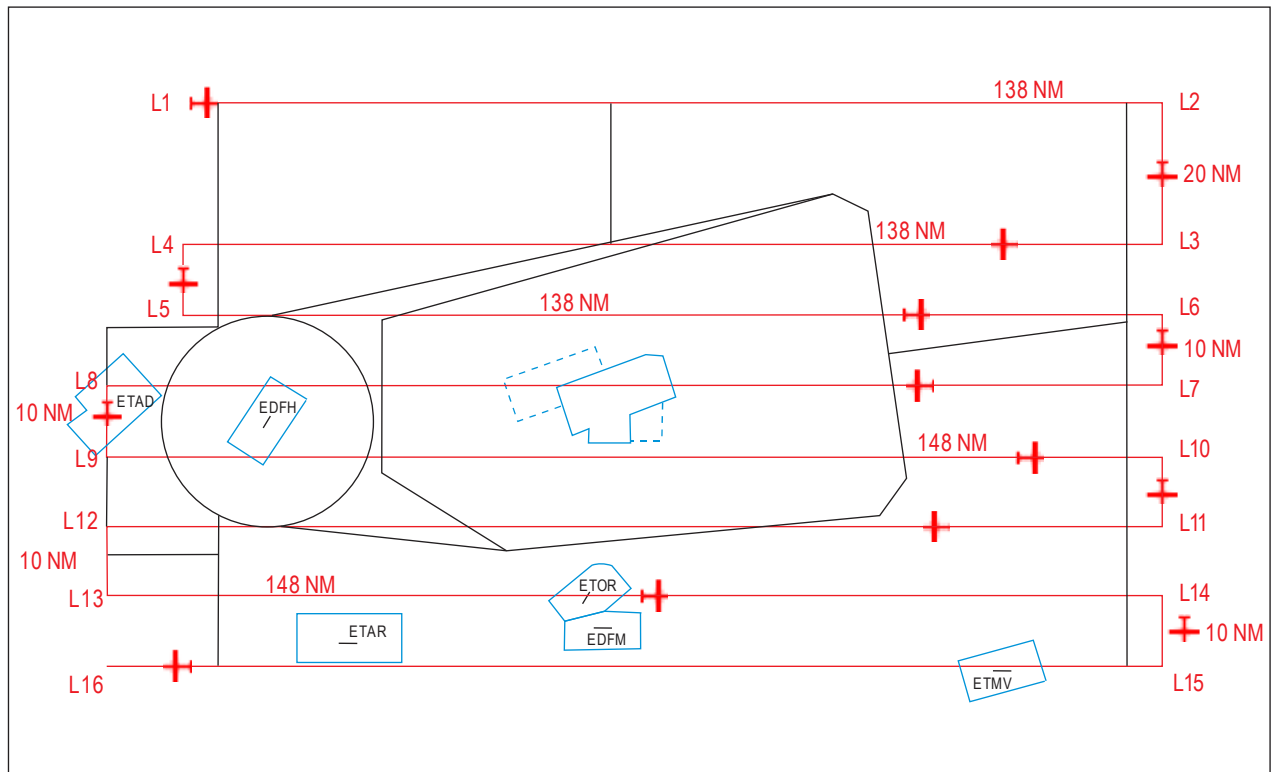


Figure Q-2. Flight profile for the MLAT/WAM test in 5 000 to 10 000 ft

Appendix R

GUIDANCE ON GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS IMPLEMENTATION

1. BACKGROUND

1.1 The aviation system block upgrade (ASBU) framework, elements and guidance material

The aviation system block upgrade (ASBU) framework is an essential part of the Global Air Navigation Plan (GANP) (Doc 9750), which comprises of a group of specific operational improvements to assist the modernization of air navigation systems, while ensuring global system interoperability and the harmonization of procedures. Specific operational improvements are referred to as ASBU elements.

1.2 Purpose of this Appendix

This section belongs to a suite of documents and tools that support the following ASBU elements:

Table R-X. ASBU elements of Safety Nets

<i>ASBU</i>		<i>Elements</i>
Block 0	B0-SNET	Short term conflict alert (STCA) Minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) Area proximity warning (APW)
Block 1	B1-SNET	Approach path monitor (APM)

Air navigation services providers (ANSPs) must consider these elements prior to implementation as they are all varying functions of ground-based safety nets (GBSNs).

This Appendix provides:

- guidance on technical and operational issues applicable to GBSNs;
- a high-level overview of the current options and issues that require attention before and during the planning, implementation and operation of GBSNs;
- a high-level description of GBSNs including best practices to plan, implement and operate these functions; and

Note.— “Operate these functions”, in this context, includes monitoring and optimization as well as its execution.

- d) cross references to more detailed information for further guidance (i.e. fine tuning and optimization) during the advanced stages of planning, implementation and operation of GBSNs.

Specifically, this Appendix aims to:

- a) assist ANSPs in determining whether they should implement GBSNs and provide guidance on planning, implementation, operation (including training), monitoring and optimization issues of GBSNs; and
- b) assist regulators in establishing appropriate provisions associated with the implementation of GBSNs and the related processes for oversight.

Note.— Modified or alternative implementation methods should be tailored to local conditions.

Target audience

This Appendix aims to describe the important aspects of GBSNs for ANSPs, States, air traffic controllers, engineers, safety management and manufacturers.

Note 1.— As this appendix is applicable to a wide range of interested parties worldwide, with varying technical backgrounds and expertise in surveillance and data processing, the contents of this appendix are deliberately limited for brevity.

Note 2.— Although this appendix is structured to be read from beginning to end, the information in every section is self-contained with information on a specific aspect of GBSN implementation and support for its operations.

2. OVERVIEW OF GROUND-BASED SAFETY NETS

2.1 Introduction

2.1.1 Safety nets monitor aspects of the operational environment and generate an alert if a safety risk exists or remedial action is necessary to assure flight safety. They comprise of:

- a) those installed in the aircraft for use by flight crew and/or the aircraft itself, for example an ACAS; and
- b) those deployed in ground-based systems for use by air traffic controllers, for example STCA and MSAW.

2.1.2 Although GBSNs and airborne safety nets often operate within the same airspace, they are operated independently. The focus of this appendix is specific to GBSNs. GBSNs alert air traffic controllers of increased risks to flight safety that are likely to occur in the next two minutes for the appropriate actions to be taken.

2.2 What are GBSNs?

GBSNs are designed, configured and used to make a significant positive impact on safety. This includes:

- a) preventing collisions;
- b) avoiding controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) accidents;

- c) avoiding CFIT accidents during final approach; and
- d) preventing incidents and accidents arising from the unauthorized penetration of an airspace volume.

2.3 What are the functions of GBSNs?

This guidance material includes the following four safety net functions:

- a) *STCA* assists the air traffic controller to prevent collisions between aircraft by generating, in a timely manner, an alert of a potential or actual infringement of separation minima;
- b) *MSAW* warns the air traffic controller about the increased risk of controlled flight into terrain accidents by generating, in a timely manner, an alert of aircraft proximity to terrain or obstacles;
- c) *APM* warns the air traffic controller about the increased risk of controlled flight into terrain accidents by generating, in a timely manner, an alert of unsafe aircraft altitude during final approach; and
- d) *APW* warns the air traffic controller about the unauthorized penetration of an airspace volume by generating, in a timely manner, an alert of a potential or actual infringement of the required distance to that airspace volume.

2.4 GBSNs typical behaviour - Sequence of events

Figure R-1 illustrates the usual interplay of actions following a GBSN alert undertaken by the air traffic controller (reflected in the ground loop) and the flight crew (reflected in the air loop).

2.5 Differences between GBSNs and controller tools

2.5.1 GBSNs and controller tools operate alongside one another within the ATM system. They often use the same data sets and the alerts or warnings of both functions are often displayed in a similar manner.

2.5.2 However, as explained in Table R-1, there are differences between GBSNs and controller tools. For example, while controller tools are used to increase the overall performance of the ATM system, GBSNs are used to increase its safety. Where safety management is concerned, there must be an understanding as to whether a function is acting as a GBSN or as a controller tool. It is therefore of utmost importance that a clear distinction is made between the two.

2.6 Why are GBSNs important?

Implementing GBSNs can address safety risks associated with both existing and future traffic flows, thereby offering a significant contribution to a State's safety initiative. GBSN functions are also "elements" in the ASBU framework that can be selected by a State to achieve part of its safety performance objectives.

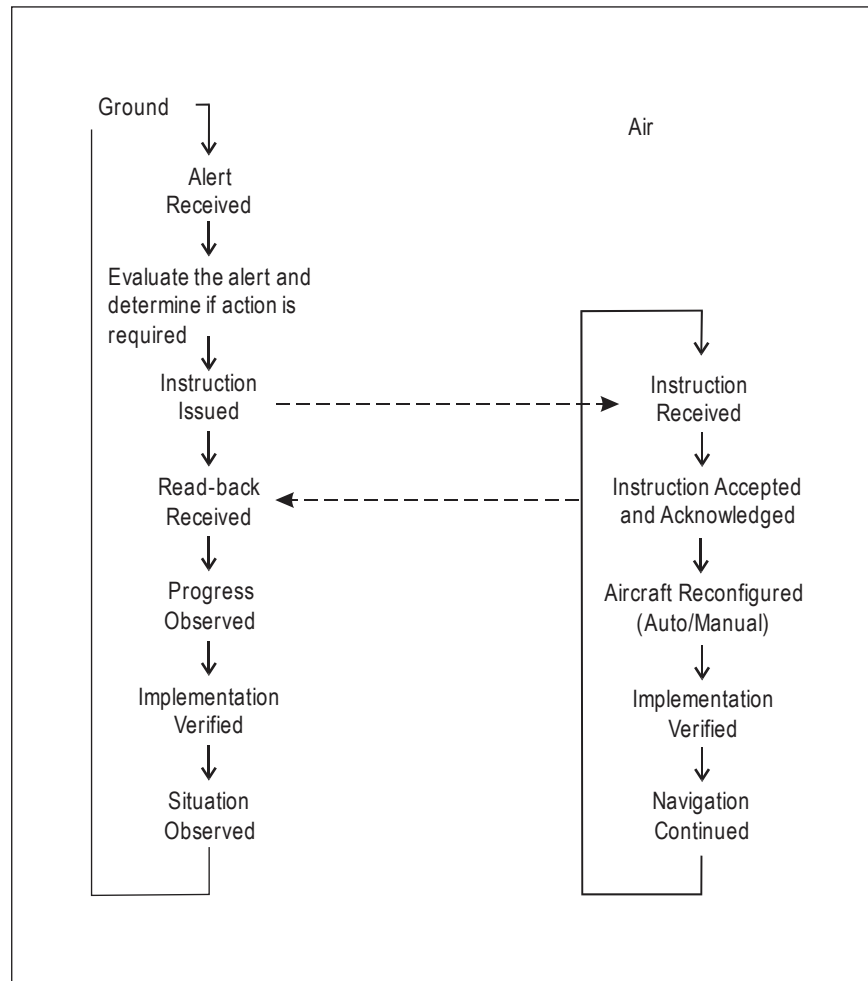


Figure R.1. Sequence of events

2.7 What are the GBSN enablers?

2.7.1 Implementing the different GBSN functions identified above requires that specific aviation system components be in place in the ASBU framework. These components are referred to as “enablers” in the ASBU framework.

2.7.2 Table R-2 describes the enablers for:

- a) STCA;
- b) MSAW;
- c) APW; and
- d) APM.

Table R-1. Differences between GBSNs and controller tools

GBSNs	Controller Tools
Used to increase safety by providing timely alerts.	Used to increase the overall ATM performance by providing a combination of capacity, efficiency and safety benefits.
Designed not to impact the operational conduct of air traffic controllers.	Designed to impact the operational conduct of air traffic controllers by providing information assisting in the planning and execution of their duties.
Highlights safety concerns.	Highlights when performance improvements (e.g. safety and efficiency) are possible.
Not used in the determination of sector capacity.	Used in the determination of sector capacity.
Short warning times (typically less than 2 minutes) drawing awareness to conditions requiring immediate attention.	Longer advisory times allowing to implement performance improvements.
An integral part of the ATM system but operates independently from the other functions of said system. May use common data sources.	An integral part of the ATM system. A failure or unavailability of these tools has a direct influence on the ability and capability of the ATM system.

Table R-2. Enablers for GBSNs

<i>Enablers</i>	<i>Description</i>
Procedures	Provisions for ANSPs are described in the <i>Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management</i> (PANS-ATM, Doc 4444) for STCA and MSAW.
Ground Systems	A cooperative surveillance system using existing technology such as a Mode C/S transponder or ADS-B OUT is required in order for ATS units providing surveillance services to be equipped with GBSN functions that are appropriate and optimized for their environment. - Availability of surveillance data with an ATS surveillance data processing system Since GBSNs provide warnings less than 2 minutes before the potential hazard, they need to be supported by a sufficiently accurate real-time aircraft track. Only an ATS surveillance data processing system computing trajectories using surveillance sensors inputs (e.g. secondary radar or ADS-B) can provide such information. - Availability of an ATM system One of the tasks of the ATM system is to ensure that GBSN alerts are distributed for display to the relevant controller working positions as specified in the data set.

<i>Enablers</i>	<i>Description</i>
	• Availability of environment data The ATM system must be able to handle all the environment data required (e.g. to draw the required alert altitudes for MSAW) to ensure that GBSNs behave as expected. • Direct air-ground voice communication In order to transmit instructions to the aircraft resulting from warnings generated by GBSNs, it is required to have direct air-ground voice communication. ANSPs should implement monitoring tools, coupled with appropriate offline tools, to support the analysis of all safety nets alerts, in order to allow continuous adaptation and improved operational acceptability.
Avionics	A cooperative surveillance system using existing technology such as a Mode C/S transponder or ADS-B OUT is required in order for an aircraft to be eligible for safety nets alerting. Consideration should include all air vehicles (manned and unmanned) operating within or in proximity of the confines of controlled airspace. • In order for ATC to receive the required instructions resulting from alerts generated by the GBSNs, direct air-ground voice communication is required.
Approval / Certification	An approval/certification process is not required to enable GBSN implementation, however, a regulator may choose to establish one to appropriately ensure its implementation.
Human Resources	The use of GBSNs does not require additional operational staffing but may require additional support staff.
Training and qualification requirements	Each GBSN operation requires specific training, including knowledge of the related ANSP policies and procedures. Air traffic controllers must be assessed as competent for the use of the relevant GBSNs and recovery techniques. Initial and recurrent GBSNs training must be included within the ANSP's existing training programme. For each safety net, it is essential that the air traffic controller understand the interactions which can occur with control practices.

2.8 Human factor considerations

2.8.1 Since today's ATM system is human-centric, GBSNs highlight a potential safety risk to the attention of air traffic controllers. GBSN alerts should therefore be:

- a) appropriate and timely:
 - 1) in setting parameters for alerts, a balance must be achieved between nuisance alerts and sufficient warning time to resolve hazardous situations; and
 - 2) while enhanced technology brings aircraft closer together and closer to obstacles, the reaction time of the air traffic controller is decreased. Future adaptations of GBSNs will require tuning to issue alerts in a timely manner, while keeping the nuisance alerts at an acceptable level.
- b) effective:
 - 1) GBSN alerts are visual. Visual alerts could be made more obvious through the use of flashing labels and/or colour changes;
 - 2) the addition of an aural element can improve the system's ability to capture the air traffic controller's attention; and
 - 3) to enable prioritization of work and avoid distraction, alerts should be acknowledgeable by air traffic controllers. Once an alert is acknowledged, the aural element is silenced and the visual alert should stop.
- c) integrated into operations:
 - 1) comprehensive GBSN procedures should be developed, integrated into operations and reviewed periodically;
 - 2) air traffic controllers should receive specific training to attain an appropriate level of understanding of the GBSN alert parameters and the environment in which they operate; and
 - 3) lessons from particular situations or incidents in which GBSNs were involved should be shared through the appropriate mechanisms.

2.9 GBSNS operational context, policy and oversight

2.9.1 Operational context

2.9.1 GBSNs are an additional independent safety layer to the ATM system: they do not change the way air traffic controllers perform their work. However, since the environment in which GBSNs operate is constantly changing, a range of external factors can have an effect on GBSNs operation.

2.9.2 For example, tools are gradually being introduced to provide air traffic controllers with the ability to handle more traffic in a safe and efficient manner in order to cope with the ever-increasing demand. Concurrently, automated support systems have become more robust and trustworthy but also more complex and interdependent. These changes imply a different operational context for GBSNs.

2.9.2 Policy

It is essential that individual ANSPs establish a GBSN policy to avoid ambiguity about their role and use. Refer to section 4.2.14 of this appendix for more details.

2.9.3 Oversight

A State may choose to establish regulations supporting the implementation of a GBSN. As described in Chapter 4, once GBSNs are implemented, monitoring their effectiveness becomes part of an ANSPs SMS process.

2.10 Future considerations

2.10.1 When GBSNs are implemented, they are required to meet the current needs of the ANSPs, accommodate future traffic demands and be adaptable to changing traffic patterns.

2.10.2 Table R-3 contains examples of such considerations.

Table R-3. Future considerations for GBSNs

Reduced separation minima	Aircraft will operate in the same airspace volume, but in much closer proximity. Advancements in technology will reduce the current separation minima and the GBSNs must therefore be adapted to operate safely in this new traffic environment. GBSNs must continue to function with an acceptable level of nuisance alerts.
New separation modes	STCA, in particular, must be adapted to the currently developed new separation modes (i.e. for separations delegated to the cockpit using traffic displays).
Dynamic and flexible way to fly	For approach and landing, the improvements in aircraft navigation accuracy will permit aircraft to operate safely at closer distances from obstacles or terrain. Technology will also permit a more dynamic and flexible way to fly, based on any defined approach and departure to and from the various runways of airports.
New or enhanced GBSNs	Technological advantages will also yield new opportunities, including the development of new or enhanced GBSNs. These advantages, however, must not compromise the robustness and the safety performance of the GBSN. It is also very important to maintain STCA compatibility with airborne safety nets while also conserving their independence.

Note.— Enhanced technology will bring aircraft in closer proximity to obstacles and other aircraft, therefore reaction time will decrease. Future adaptations of GBSNs (as well as adaptations to airborne safety nets) will require very detailed tuning to issue alerts in a timely manner while keeping nuisance alerts at an acceptable level.

3. OVERVIEW OF GBSN PROGRAMME

The implementation of a GBSN by an ANSP requires time and careful planning. This section provides a quick overview of the four phases of a GBSN programme. More details of a GBSN programme are described in section 4 of this appendix.

3.1 GBSN programme workflow

3.1.1 When an ANSP starts thinking of introducing GBSNs into its environment, there are several activities that need to be conducted to plan for its implementation.

3.1.2 The execution of a GBSN programme by an ANSP can be separated into four phases and further detailed in subsequent steps, described in Table R-4 and Figure R-2, respectively.

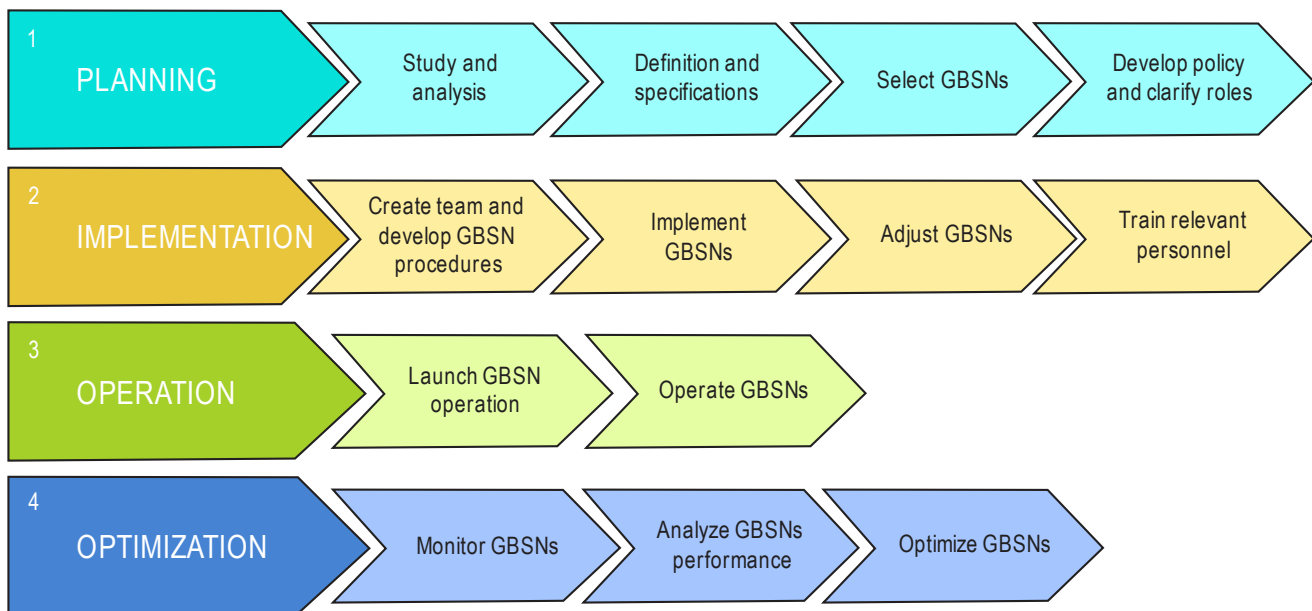


Figure R-2. Subsequent steps in each GBSN planning phase

Table R-4. Four phases of the GBSN programme

1. Planning	An ANSP must consider and decide if their current and future needs can be achieved by the implementation of GBSN functions.
2. Implementation	The ANSP must prepare the support mechanisms (people, policies and procedures) and develop a “fit-for-purpose” GBSN.
3. Operation	The ANSP must incorporate the GBSN programme within their operations.
4. Optimization	In order to maintain/improve the effectiveness of a GBSN operation, the ANSP continues to monitor and analyse GBSN system performance. Based on the outcome of the analysis, the ANSP is required to optimize the system.

3.2 Phase 1 — Planning

3.2.1 Study and analysis

As described in section 4.2 of this appendix, the planning phase consists of all the studies and analysis conducted, including the development of an operational concept based on local conditions.

3.2.2 Definition and specifications

Once a decision is made to introduce GBSNs, the ANSP must then define and specify its functions. This is further explained in sections 4.2.4 to 4.2.12 of this appendix.

3.2.3 Selection of GBSNs

After several activities are conducted by the ANSP, they must then select the appropriate GBSN. As described in section 4.2.13 of this appendix, there are two solutions: purchase or develop their own GBSNs.

3.2.4 Develop policy and clarify roles

At the end of this phase, the ANSP needs to develop a local policy and clarify the role and responsibility for all GBSN aspects.

3.3 Phase 2 — Implementation

3.3.1 Creating a team and developing GBSN procedures

Before implementing GBSNs, ANSPs must create a team to implement GBSNs and develop its procedures.

3.3.2 Implement

Once the ANSP finalizes the activities described above, the ANSP can implement GBSNs and prepare its operation.

3.3.3 Adjust GBSNs

Systems should be adjusted prior to the initial GBSN launch for optimal operation. In some cases, it may be required to review the plan and modify the systems.

3.3.4 Train relevant personnel

Relevant personnel should be trained in this step.

3.4 Phase 3 — Operation

3.4.1 Launch GBSNs operation

After successfully achieving optimal GBSN performance and cooperation from relevant personnel, the ANSP starts the GBSN operation.

3.4.2 Operate GBSNs

Once the ANSP starts the GBSNs operation, it is required not only to continue operation but also monitor GBSNs systems and performance, as written in Phase 4.

3.5 Phase 4 — Optimization

3.5.1 Monitor GBSNs

Once the ANSP starts the GBSNs operation, they are required to monitor the GBSNs systems and performances in order to achieve the effectiveness of GBSNs.

3.5.2 Analyse GBSNs performance

GBSN performance should be reviewed and regularly analysed to identify possible improvements and shortcomings.

3.5.3 Optimize GBSNs

Based on the outcome of monitoring and regular data analysis, the ANSP may be required to optimize their GBSNs. An optimization analysis should also be carried out based on change of airspace or future trend analysis.

4. PHASES OF A GBSN PROGRAMME

4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 This section explains the importance of following a process for building, operating and maintaining effective GBSN functions.

4.1.2 As listed below, there are four phases to develop effective GBSN functions:

- a) planning;
- b) implementation;
- c) operation; and
- d) optimization.

4.1.3 Figure R-3 illustrates the relationship between the different phases.

Note.— All phases discussed in this section must take full account of the human factor considerations given in Section 2 of this Appendix.

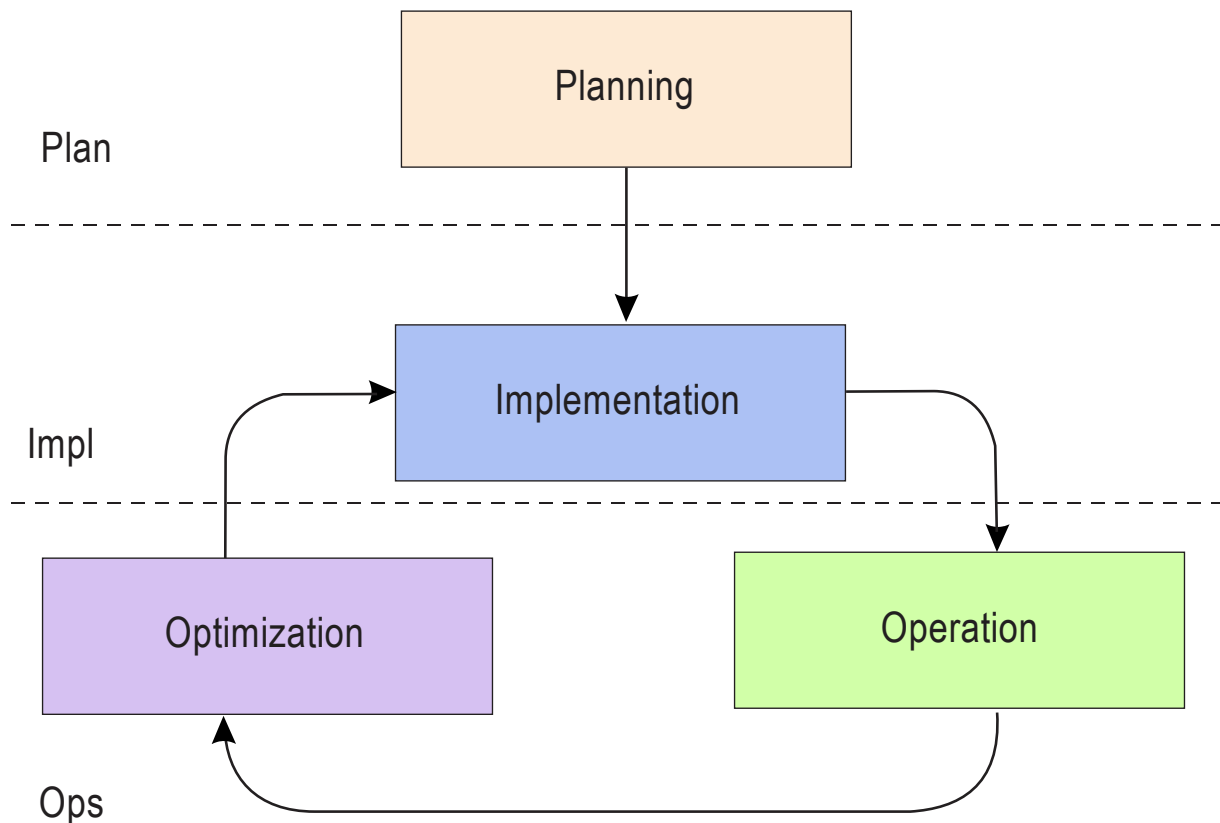


Figure R-3. Relationship between the different phases of GBSN Programme

4.2 Planning phase

4.2.1 Scope of the planning phase

4.2.1.1 As described in section 3.2 of this appendix, the planning phase consists of all studies, analysis and other activities, including developing an operational concept based on local conditions.

4.2.1.2 Consideration should be given to the nature and quality of the surveillance infrastructure, traffic density, airspace characteristics and any additional local conditions, taking into account the entire ATM system. Those are required to make a decision to implement GBSNs functions.

4.2.1.3 Once a decision is made, it leads to further work on the definition and specification on the GBSNs functions to be implemented.

4.2.1.4 For each safety net to be implemented, local policies and procedures should be developed for its successful implementation and effective operation.

Note.— It is important to spend sufficient time and ample resources to the planning phase. The complexity of the current and future operational environment in which the safety nets are intended to be operated must be fully grasped.

4.2.2 Studies and analysis

4.2.2.1 Before the implementation of any GBSN function, certain studies and analysis are required. This includes the analysis of:

- a) traffic patterns, (e.g. high amount of crossing or climbing/descending traffic);
- b) traffic density;
- c) approach procedures used;
- d) environment where the implementation is planned (e.g. terrain, obstacles);
- e) types of approaches flown;
- f) the airspaces that need to be protected; and
- g) surveillance infrastructure.

4.2.2.2 Furthermore, safety management and safety activities must be planned from the start of the project, as they continue to be important throughout the process.

4.2.3 Decision to proceed

4.2.3.1 Subject to positive conclusions from the above studies and analysis, a decision should be taken to proceed with GBSN implementation.

4.2.3.2 This decision leads to the next step of the planning phase: definition and specification.

4.2.4 Definition and specification

Since this step is an integral part of GBSN implementation, it is quite important that operational requirements and performance expectations are clearly formulated and organized in a comprehensive document. The better this process is defined, the more likely the implementation will be a success and the operational goals met.

4.2.4.1 Key categories and requirements.

4.2.4.1.1 The following key categories and requirements should be included in a GBSN specification:

- a) operational requirements should include (at minimum):
 - 1) type of airspace to which GBSNs be applied;
 - 2) number of aerodromes over which MSAW and/or APM are provided;
 - 3) complexity of terrain model;
 - 4) complexity of airspace structure (such as geometry and special use of airspace); and
 - 5) procedural complexity;
- b) system configurability/flexibility should include (at minimum):
 - 1) configurability of alerts (aural/visual, duration, brightness/volume, distribution of alert, prioritization of display);
 - 2) volume of operation/coverage of alert; and
 - 3) inhibition/suppression zones;
- c) capacity requirements should include (at minimum):
 - 1) number of aircraft handled simultaneously (based on current and future traffic projections);
 - 2) number of volumes handled (STCA and APW); and
 - 3) number of obstacles handled (MSAW);
- d) performance requirements:
 - 1) percentage of undesired encounters alerted;
 - 2) percentage of desired encounters alerted; and
 - 3) mean warning time achieved (e.g. 90 seconds for en-route);
- e) life-cycle support requirements should include (at minimum):
 - 1) detailed user documentation;
 - 2) support for deployment; and

- 3) cost-effective maintenance and optimization of the system.

4.2.4.1.2 Subject to positive conclusions from the above studies and analysis, a decision should be made to proceed with GBSN implementation.

4.2.4.1.3 Sections 4.2.5 to 4.2.15 of this appendix describe additional requirements to be considered by ANSPs during the planning phase.

4.2.5 ICAO provisions

4.2.5.1 The final GBSNs design and specification must comply with the procedures defined in the following ICAO document:

<i>Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management (PANS-ATM, Doc 4444)</i>	
Section 15.7.2	STCA procedures
Section 15.7.4	MSAW procedures

4.2.6 Alert inhibition

GBSNs must inhibit alerts for predefined volumes of airspace (e.g. exercise area) and for individual flights (e.g. formation flights), if needed, in order to suppress unnecessary alerts. Alert inhibitions on individual flights should be communicated to all affected air traffic controllers.

4.2.7 Adaptability

4.2.7.1 Each GBSN should be adaptable (without constraining the performance of other safety nets or the ATM system functions) to the procedures in use. As such, and aside from the safety net functions, flexibility in parameter settings is of great importance. An example of a parameter setting is indicated in the frame below.

The need to define X number of distinct airspace volumes with individual parameter settings.

Note.— Parameter settings are usually defined in detail at the system design review, but such requirements should be defined in the procurement process to avoid costs resulting from contract variations.

4.2.7.2 GBSNs must consider the specific volume of airspace in which the aircraft is flying, in order to apply appropriate parameters or trajectory estimations. Different parameters may be applied in the case of system degradation (e.g. the unavailability of one or more surveillance sensors). An example of a parameter setting is indicated in the frame below.

In RVSM airspace, STCA should be able to apply alerting parameters according to the applicable vertical separation minimum of either 300m (1 000ft) or 600m (2 000ft), as determined by the current RVSM status of the flight concerned.

4.2.7.3 Where appropriate, the APW should be adaptable and raise an alert in situations such as:

- a) uncontrolled flights penetrating controlled airspace without ATC clearance;
- b) controlled flights predicted to enter restricted airspace; and
- c) military flights leaving exercise areas.

4.2.8 Data recording

During the procurement and development process, the ability to record, store and use all pertinent data related to GBSNs for off-line analysis should be made available.

Note.— The recorded data should be retained for a period of minimum thirty days.

4.2.9 Further design considerations

4.2.9.1 GBSNs should perform in concert with airspace design and classification, a variety of airspace users, flexible use of airspace (FUA) and the applicable procedures for air navigation services. All GBSNs and controller tools should, as much as practicable, perform in concert.

4.2.9.2 Depending on the diversity of these aspects, GBSNs should be capable of using different parameters for the generation of alerts in different volumes of airspace at different moments in time.

a) Specifically applied to STCA:

- 1) for STCA, a large number of airspace volumes may need to be defined so that parameters can be tuned according to the use of individual volumes of airspace, including which flights are eligible for the generation of alerts; and
- 2) depending on the operational environment, STCA may be best optimized by handling IFR and VFR flights differently. For instance, it may be appropriate to set different alerting thresholds or eligibility criteria for IFR vs IFR, IFR vs VFR and VFR vs VFR encounter pairs in individual airspace volumes.

b) Specifically applied to APM:

- 1) APM should support published instrument approaches, however, it should not be expected to operate in circling areas.

4.2.10 Data to be used for GBSN functions

4.2.10.1 GBSNs require data from the ATM system in order to generate alerts.

4.2.10.2 The subsequent figure details the information to be used, if available.

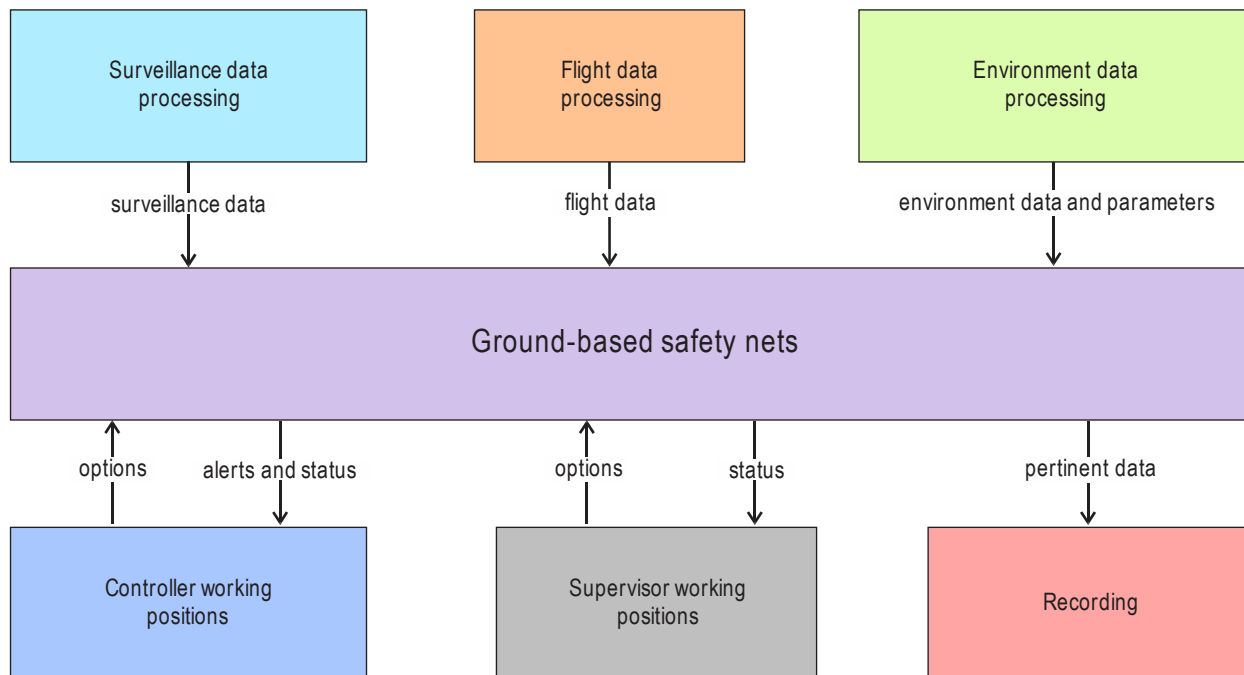


Figure R-4. GBSNs context diagram

4.2.11 Varying data used in GBSN functions

Each GBSNs function requires different types of data from the ATM system. Typical data required by GBSNs are summarized in Table R-5.

4.2.12 Working position considerations

4.2.12.1 Alerts should be generated at least to the controller working position(s) of the control sector(s) in contact with the aircraft.

4.2.12.2 Selectable options of GBSNs related to eligibility and suppression of alerts should be available at all controller working positions and at supervisor positions.

4.2.12.3 The configuration of GBSNs should only be available at supervisor positions.

4.2.12.4 Status information regarding availability of GBSNs should be presented to the supervisor and affected air traffic controller working positions for each specific GBSN.

Table R-5 Typical data required by GBSNs

	<i>Information</i>	<i>STCA</i>	<i>MSAW</i>	<i>APM</i>	<i>APW</i>
Surveillance data	3D position and speed (to predict or detect conflicts)	√	√	√	√
	Tracked pressure altitude (to predict or detect conflicts)	√	√	√	√
	Selected Vertical Intent (to increase relevance of conflict prediction)	√	√		√
Flight data processing	Type/category of flight (to determine eligibility for alert generation)	√	√	√	√
	RVSM status (to apply appropriate parameters in RVSM airspace)	√			√
	PBN status (to apply appropriate parameters in PBN airspace)	√		√	
	Sector(s) of concern (to address alerts)	√	√	√	√
	Cleared Flight Level (to increase relevance of conflict prediction)	√	√		√
	Block Flight Level (to increase relevance of conflict prediction for formation flights)	√			√
	Type of aircraft/wake turbulence category	√			
	Number of aircraft (to apply appropriate parameters for formation flights)	√			
	Manually entered Flight Levels (to compensate for missing pressure altitude information)	√	√		√
Environment data	Alerting parameters for distinct airspace volumes	√	√	√	√
	Terrain and obstacle data		√		
	Altimeter sub-scale setting to obtain elevation when on the ground (QNH)	√	√	√	√
	Temperature		√	√	√
	Airspace booking data (airspace volumes and booking times, possibly updated in real-time by airspace booking tools)				√

Note 1.— Selected vertical intent downlinked from the aircraft sometimes is QNH corrected.

Note2.— Additional parameters, e.g. performance-based communication and surveillance data may be required in the future.

4.2.13 Selection of GBSNs (decision to buy or develop GBSNs)

4.2.13.1 There are two options possible when selecting a GBSN solution:

- a) buy such a function as a module from an international vendor (manufacturer); or
- b) build an in-house safety net based on the technology present (within the ATM-system in place).

4.2.13.2 GBSNs may be procured either within a complete ATM system or as a stand-alone component to complement an ATM system.

Note.— If a new ATM system is installed, the GBSN function can be included into this procurement process.

1) In-house solution

In-house solutions should only be considered by those States possessing the operational and technical expertise and supporting resources to develop, implement and maintain GBSNs.

Note.— Past experience dictates that in-house development of GBSNs is a complex and time-consuming process.

2) Buy the functions

In the definition phase, operational and technical expertise is required to ensure that the safety net specifications reflect the operational needs and the technical environment (e.g. integration with existing systems and their interfaces). Prior to selecting a vendor, an exchange of information could be arranged to ensure adequate understanding of the customer's needs and expectations by the prospective vendors.

4.2.13.3 Once a vendor has been selected, a strong cooperation with them is necessary to ensure that the GBSNs delivered respond to the operational needs (usability fitness for purpose). This is explained further in the implementation phase.

4.2.14 Development of policy

4.2.14.1 Explicit local policies are needed for the successful implementation and effective operation of safety nets within each ATM system. In addition to stating the intent of the safety net, its legal basis and being consistent with the local operational context, the policies should also be understood and adhered to by all relevant staff in order to ensure the consistency of all GBSN planning, implementation, operation and optimization activities.

4.2.14.2 Table R-6 should be considered when establishing such policies.

Table R-6. Considerations for the development of GBSNs policies

STCA	— Designed, configured and used to make a positive contribution in maintaining separation and preventing collisions. — The STCA safety net shall not be relied upon in order to meet the target level of safety acceptable to the ANSP.
APM	— Designed, configured and used to make a positive contribution in avoiding controlled flight into terrain accidents by generating, in a timely manner, an alert of aircraft proximity to terrain or obstacles during final approach. — The APM safety net shall not be relied upon in order to meet the target level of safety acceptable to the ANSP.
APW	— Designed, configured and used to make a positive contribution in preventing accidents arising from unauthorised penetration of an airspace volume. — The APW safety net shall not be relied upon in order to meet the target level of safety acceptable to the ANSP.
MSAW	— Designed, configured and used to make a positive contribution in avoiding controlled flight into terrain accidents by generating, in a timely manner, an alert of aircraft proximity to terrain or obstacles. — The MSAW safety net shall not be relied upon in order to meet the target level of safety acceptable to the ANSP.

Note.— STCA, APM, APW and MSAW are all GBSNs. Their sole purpose is to enhance safety and all functions (except APW) can be ignored when calculating sector capacity.

4.2.15 Clarification of roles and responsibility

4.2.15.1 In the planning phase, the roles and responsibilities for all safety net aspects should be clarified, including the responsibility of its overall management.

4.2.15.2 Introducing and improving GBSNs is a team effort, which involves balancing safety considerations with operational needs and engineering constraints. As such, clear allocation of roles and responsibilities will create the right environment for implementing successful teamwork.

4.3 Implementation phase

4.3.1 Implementing GBSNs functions

4.3.1.1 The detailed activities in the implementation phase depend very much on the outcome of a make-or-buy decision (as described in 4.2.13 of this appendix) and the related standard practices of the organizations concerned.

4.3.1.2 Irrespective of the implementation model, it is imperative that fit-for-purpose is ensured through appropriate verification activities (e.g. system design reviews, prototyping, factory acceptance tests, etc.) throughout this phase.

4.3.2 Creating teams to implement GBSNs appropriately

4.3.2.1 To be able to accomplish proper parameters settings, a joint team consisting of adequate technical and operational expertise from vendor/developer and ANSPs should be formed. This team can identify with detail the background of all relevant parameters and how they should be tuned to match the required operational environment.

4.3.2.2 When GBSNs are bought following a call for tender, the ANSP should, as soon as the supplier is selected, team up with the supplier. This yields two main benefits:

- a) allows the ANSP personnel to familiarize themselves with safety net(s) behaviour; and
- b) ensures that the initial setting is complete and fit for purpose. This enables the supplier to demonstrate its safety net design expertise, capability and setting options, while the ANSP brings the operational environment (airspace structure, aerodrome specificities, terrain data, exemption rules.) expertise required to perform the initial setting.

4.3.3 Developing procedures for each GBSN function

4.3.3.1 During the implementation phase, the ANSP should develop procedures to define the use of each GBSN function. This will ensure consistent usage with the intended operational concept and safety management system applied and avoid ambiguity and risk as a result of inappropriate application.

4.3.3.2 Local instructions concerning the use of each individual GBSN shall specify, inter alia:

- a) the types of flight (general air traffic/operational air traffic, IFR/VFR, RVSM/NON-RVSM, etc.) eligible for generation of alerts;
- b) the volumes of airspace within which STCA, MSAW and/or APW are implemented, as well as the runways for which APM is implemented;
- c) the method of displaying alerts to the air traffic controller;
- d) in general terms, the parameters defined for the alerts, as well as alert warning time;
- e) the volumes of airspace within or runways for which each individual GBSN can be selectively inhibited and the conditions under which this is permitted;
- f) conditions under which specific alerts may be inhibited for individual flights; and
- g) procedures applicable with respect to volumes of airspace, runways or flights for which the individual ground-based safety net or specific alerts have been inhibited.

4.3.4 Preparing for GBSNs operation

4.3.4.1 Adjust system to operational environment

4.3.4.1.1 The initial set of parameters is based on the default setting provided by the manufacturer with adjustments made, taking into consideration the local environment.

4.3.4.1.2 Following a period of offline testing and trials, these parameters are then adjusted to improve performance

and reduce unwanted alerts before it can be used in operations.

Note.— Refer to section 4.5 of this appendix for more details on optimization.

4.3.4.2 Check list for implementation

4.3.4.2.1 The following items are necessary elements of the implementation phase:

- a) provisions on the protection of safety information;
 - consideration of possible update to the SMS for the protection of data related to safety alerts;
- b) modification(s) of national regulations or ATC procedures;
 - assess whether changes to national regulations or ATC procedures are needed to accommodate GBSNs;
- c) development and execution of an operational cutover plan, including timelines;
 - 1) cutover plan to include all requirements needed to declare GBSN operational, e.g.:
 - i) training –as per 4.3.4.3 of this appendix;
 - ii) on-site validation including confirmation and validation of initial settings;
 - iii) system site acceptance and operational acceptance;
 - iv) introduction into routine operations; and
 - 2) confirm compliance with ICAO provisions.

4.3.4.3 Training and proficiency

4.3.4.3.1 It is essential that all air traffic controllers are trained on GBSNs before they can be declared operational.

4.3.4.3.2 The primary goal of the training is to develop and maintain an appropriate level of proficiency with GBSNs, i.e. to make air traffic controllers aware of the likelihood of:

- a) situations in which they are effective; and
- b) situations in which they are less effective (e.g. sudden, unexpected manoeuvres).

4.3.4.3.3 The ATS provider is required to:

- a) ensure that all air traffic controllers concerned are given specific GBSNs training;
- b) regularly train the air traffic controllers (refresher training) on the safe application of procedures following GBSN alerts in order to ensure their continuous proficiency; and

- c) retrain all affected air traffic controllers to the necessary level of proficiency in case of GBSNs enhancements or adaptations. Adaptions such as changes to alerting areas or the introduction of (alert) suppression or inhibition areas do not require re-training.

4.3.4.3.4 The training should emphasize:

- a) knowledge of the time-criticality of alerts, including the need for immediate attention and required actions following a GBSN alert; and
- b) refresher training and training on GBSN changes already in use, including their performance and limitations.

4.3.4.3.5 Air traffic controllers must:

- a) be aware of the situations in which GBSNs only provide very short warning times, or those where they are less effective; and
- b) report and provide feedback on unexpected and unwanted safety nets behaviour. This improves GBSN performances and results in a more effective tuning of their parameters.

4.4 Operation phase

In this phase, the ANSP starts its operation of each GBSN function. The following considerations are to be taken into account in order to enhance safety and make GBSN operations more effective.

4.4.1 Operational considerations

4.4.1.1 Procedures

Continuous assessment of the procedures should be performed to identify potential improvements.

4.4.1.2 Indications of alert and status information:

- a) alerts should be generated at least at a controller working position of the control sector(s) working the aircraft; and
- b) status information regarding the technical availability of GBSNs is to be provided to all working positions.

4.4.1.3 Regular data analysis and recording:

- a) feedback regarding anomalies reported by users should be recorded;
- b) pertinent data should be regularly analysed in order to monitor and optimize GBSNs performance; and
- c) all pertinent GBSN data should be recorded for offline analysis.

4.4.1.4 All relevant data, including alerts generated, should be retained for a period of at least thirty days in order to perform effective optimization, monitoring and performance analysis.

4.4.1.5 The recorded data can be used to monitor the frequency and effectiveness of the safety alerts over an

extended period of time.

4.4.1.6 Useful fields to be recorded (example is for STCA) include:

- a) date/time group;
- b) call sign(s)/SSR;
- c) alert start and end time;
- d) duration of alert;
- e) conflict status;
- f) controlling sector;
- g) calculated vertical distance, including the minimum between conflicting aircraft; and
- h) calculated horizontal distance, including the minimum between conflicting aircraft.

Note.— Reference should be made to Annex 11 — Air Traffic Services and Annex 13 — Aircraft Accident and Incident Investigation for guidance on recordings of data and communications as well as automatic recording of surveillance data.

4.5 Optimization phase

After starting GBSN operations, optimization is required due to factors such as:

- a) data analysis indicating the need to improve the function; and
- b) changes in airspace or procedures.

4.5.1 Objective of the optimization

4.5.1.1 GBSNs optimization aims to maximize the effectiveness of alerting.

4.5.1.2 GBSNs effectiveness requires that all alerts are promptly provided, while nuisance and false alerts are kept to an acceptable level. With nuisance and false alerts minimized, the time available to an air traffic controller to respond to an alert associated with a “real” hazard is maximized.

4.5.1.3 These objectives are, to some extent, incompatible with each other and need to be prioritized. An ANSP must therefore find this balance based on a risk assessment.

4.5.2 When is optimization needed?

Optimization is not a one-time activity. Recurring safety net optimization is required to account for changes in airspace, in ground system performance, airspace design or ATC procedures and to improve the safety net's performance.

4.5.2.1 Periodical performance review

4.5.2.1.1 GBSN performance should be reviewed periodically to identify possible areas of improvement and shortcomings.

4.5.2.1.2 Safety net performance must be monitored and regularly analysed, not only for the sake of improvement, but also to identify other safety improvement opportunities, e.g. related to airspace design or ATC procedures. For example, “hot spots” could be identified and removed by making changes to airspace structure or procedures.

4.5.2.1.3 Continuous monitoring, and technical and operational analysis of the safety net functions, can help improve GBSNs effectiveness.

4.5.2.2 Airspace or procedural changes

Any change in the airspace structure or in general procedures should be reviewed to assess the impacts on safety nets. If an impact is identified, an optimization process is needed to adapt the GBSNs to the new environment.

4.5.3 Optimization process

4.5.3.1 Essential elements of the optimization process are:

- a) the definition of GBSN areas and parameter settings; and
- b) GBSN validation and tuning.

4.5.3.2 The above activities are repeated iteratively several times in order to achieve the best optimization possible.

4.5.4 Performance analysis

- a) Nuisance alerts should be identified and steps should be taken to fine-tune the parameters accordingly.
- b) False alerts also should be identified and addressed.
- c) A statistical analysis of alerts should be made in order to identify possible shortcomings in the configuration and operation of the safety nets as well as to monitor overall safety levels.
- d) The data and circumstances pertaining to each alert should be analysed to determine whether an alert was justified or not. Refer to PANS-ATM.
- e) Non-justified alerts, e.g. under STCA, when visual separation was applied, should be disregarded for the analysis.
- f) Situations that can be disregarded based on local conditions should be defined by the ANSP.

4.5.5 Optimization team composition

4.5.5.1 The analysis and optimization of GBSNs performance should be undertaken by a team having the appropriate skills and experience.

4.5.5.2 Technical experts and data analysts must be accompanied by experienced ATC staff from the ATS unit for which the function is being optimized. Without ATC input, the scenarios may not be suitably categorized.

4.5.5.3 Moreover, it is recommended to regularly exchange experiences with adjacent ATS units that operate the same GBSNs.

4.5.5.4 GBSNs analysis requires specific expertise and resources that may not always be available within a State. While these analyses are important, it is not mandatory for each State to undertake the task. Regional arrangements could be made, allowing a State or organization (e.g. Eurocontrol in Europe) to perform the necessary GBSNs analysis for the benefit of many.

4.5.5.5 Such arrangements should address topics like:

- a) confidentiality;
- b) cost-sharing; and
- c) data format.

4.5.5.6 Such a regional analysis structure would reduce the cost for the ATM community in terms of safety nets experts training and analysis tool requirements, as fewer tools would be required.

5. OVERSIGHT OF GBSNS

5.1 GBSNs contribute significantly to safety. Although States are not required to establish GBSN-related regulations, they are required to provide oversight of an ANSP's SMS. When implemented, GBSNs would be included as part of the SMS processes.

5.2 A State may choose to establish an approval process for implementing different functions of GBSNs.

Note.— This section provides general guidance on oversight related to GBSNs. For more details on SMS and oversight, refer to Annex 19—Safety Management and the Safety Management Manual (SMM) (Doc 9859).

5.3 State responsibility

5.3.1 Through their oversight practices, States must ensure compliance to any related GBSN regulation as well as to the management of risks identified (when GBSN is used) through SMS processes and training obligations. The establishment of appropriate corrective action mechanisms and enforcement strategies that can be enacted if an ANSP (or individual) exhibits non-compliance, should also be included.

5.3.2 The following sections describe how compliance should be demonstrated by an ANSP with regards to requirements for:

- a) meeting SMS obligations; and
- b) training.

5.3.3 The appropriate ATS authority should retain electronic records of all alerts generated.

5.3.4 The data and circumstances pertaining to each alert should be analysed to determine whether an alert was justified or not. Non-justified alerts (e.g. when visual separation was applied or during visual approach) should be ignored.

5.3.5 A statistical analysis should be made of justified alerts in order to identify possible shortcomings in airspace design and ATC procedures, as well as to monitor overall safety levels.

5.4 Compliance with SMS requirements

Minimum expectations for managing GBSN risk using existing SMS processes are provided below:

- a) identifying the risks associated with GBSNs;
- b) mitigating the risks;
- c) providing training; and/or
- d) optimizing the GBSN system and its performance.

5.5 Compliance with training requirements

5.5.1 It is necessary for States to ensure that GBSN-related topics are included in a service provider's training programme as appropriate.

5.5.2 All individuals who are involved in the realm of GBSN operation, including the organization's management, personnel in the GBSN team who monitor and analyse performance, and the individuals at the front-line need training and information related to GBSN operation and management.

5.5.3 The GBSN-related content in training programmes for these individuals should be appropriate to their role in operating GBSN within the service provider's SMS activities.

5.5.4 These training programmes are described in section 4.3.4.3 of this appendix.

6. GBSN PROCEDURE AND RELATED INFORMATION

6.1 Procedures for air navigation services — air traffic management

Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management (PANS-ATM, Doc 4444) identifies specific procedure requirements for the following types of GBSNs:

- a) STCA; and
- b) MSAW

6.2 Further information and examples

6.2.1 Content in this Appendix explains basic principles of GBSNs.

6.2.2 For more detailed explanations and examples of successful implementation and operation, the EUROCONTROL manuals may be used.

Approach Path Monitor	https://www.eurocontrol.int/publication/eurocontrol-guidelines-approach-path-monitor
Minimum Safe Altitude Warning	https://www.eurocontrol.int/publication/eurocontrol-guidelines-minimum-safe-altitude-warning
Short-Term Conflict Alert	https://www.eurocontrol.int/publication/eurocontrol-guidelines-short-term-conflict-alert-stca https://www.eurocontrol.int/publication/eurocontrol-specifications-short-term-conflict-alert-stca
Area Proximity Warning	https://www.eurocontrol.int/publication/eurocontrol-guidelines-area-proximity-warning

Appendix S

GUIDANCE ON 1 090 MHZ SPECTRUM ISSUES AND PROPER MANAGEMENT OF 24-BIT AIRCRAFT ADDRESSES ASSOCIATED WITH UNMANNED AIRCRAFT (UA)

1. BACKGROUND

1.1 The frequencies 1 030 and 1 090 MHz, acting as a frequency pair, support several aeronautical surveillance systems including SSR, MLAT, ACAS and ADS-B. Aircraft are interrogated by ground SSR/MLAT (or other aircraft, in the case of ACAS) on 1 030 MHz and reply (or broadcast) on 1 090 MHz with information such as their position, altitude and velocity vector.

1.2 The increasing density of ground-based and on-board surveillance systems using the 1 030/1 090 MHz frequencies is currently raising concerns, especially in dense airspaces. Ultimately it may result in a reduction to the overall performance of ACAS as well as the SSR/MLAT and ADS-B systems. In addition, the increased usage of ADS-B OUT applications for safety of life services and potential future evolution of those applications, such as space-based ADS-B, have raised serious concerns of potential congestion at 1 090 MHz. To ensure continued safe operation for all aircraft, proper and efficient utilization of available bandwidth at 1 090 MHz is required. This may include, when necessary, limiting access to 1 090 MHz by certain users.

1.3 Furthermore, it is important to note that these aeronautical surveillance systems rely on a limited capacity 24-bit aircraft address scheme. The allocation of a 24-bit aircraft address and its correct configuration in an aircraft is a key element for the safe operation of an aircraft and associated protocols used to support communication and surveillance systems.

1.4 As defined in Annex 10 — *Aeronautical Telecommunications*, Volume III — *Communication Systems*, aircraft addresses are allocated in blocks by ICAO to the State of Registry or to the common mark registering authority. Using its allocated block of addresses, the State of Registry or the common mark registering authority assigns an individual aircraft address to each suitably equipped aircraft entered on a national or international register.

1.5 It is essential for States to recognize that their allocated block of 24-bit aircraft addresses is a finite and valuable asset. There are only 16 777 214 aircraft addresses in total and many of those have already been allocated to States of Registry or common mark registering authorities. Aircraft traffic growth has been forecast to double in the next 15 years and to manage these addresses in a sustainable manner, States need to validate whether new aircraft address allocation requests by aircraft operators fit the conditions defined in Annex 10, Volume III.

2. ISSUES IDENTIFIED IN RELATION TO OPERATION OF UNMANNED AIRCRAFT

2.1 As described in section 1 of this appendix, concerns are being raised about congestion of the 1 090 MHz frequency and shortage of 24-bit aircraft addresses. The rapid growth in the number of UA is making those concerns more severe.

2.2 Exponential increase of the safety risk due to 1 090 MHz congestion

2.2.1 A study indicates that large numbers of UA (one UA per 2 square kilometres) operating at a low level (less than 500 feet above ground level) in a typical high-density terminal airspace (760 ADS B-equipped aircraft operating within a 200 NM radius and from ground level to FL180) can interfere with ADS-B ground station reception of ADS-B reports when the transmit power of each UA is 1 watt or higher.

Note.— Some other studies indicate that even a low power (0.1W) transmission from large numbers of UA can reduce the coverage range of ADS-B.

2.2.2 All studies reviewed conclude that the operation of ADS-B OUT by a large number of UA raises a serious concern for the safety of other aircraft in the same airspace.

2.3 Future depletion of 24-bit aircraft addresses

2.3.1 The 24-bit aircraft address scheme was not designed for a very large number of aircraft. Some studies predict that based on the present growth of UA, there will be over a million such vehicles by 2025. Based on these current projections, it will be impossible to accommodate all UA in the current scheme.

2.3.2 In some situations UA may require a 24-bit aircraft address, for instance if the UA flies in controlled airspace or in proximity to traditional manned aircraft. States will need to evaluate such situations on a case-by-case basis when receiving a new aircraft address application from the UA community.

Note.— As described in the Manual on Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) (Doc 10019), an aircraft which is intended to be operated with no pilot on board is classified as unmanned and an unmanned aircraft which is piloted from a remote pilot station is a remotely piloted aircraft (RPA) (refer to Figure S-1).

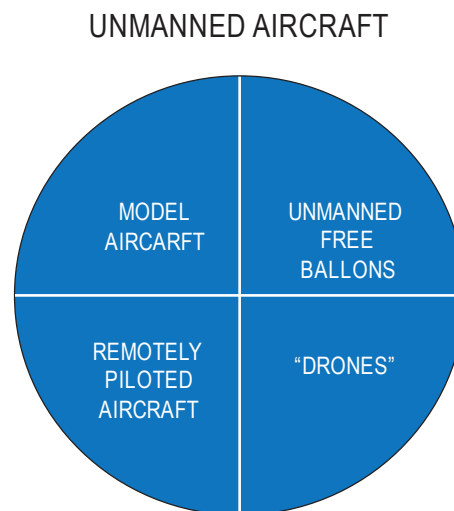


Figure S-1. Unmanned aircraft

3. PROCEDURE TO ENSURE PROPER UTILIZATION OF 1 090 MHZ AND FOR NON-ALLOCATION OF (24-BIT) AIRCRAFT ADDRESS FOR UA

3.1 There is increasing pressure to use 1 090 MHz Mode S or ADS-B OUT applications by UA. Given the large forecasted increase of UA and the fact that transmissions from their transponders or ADS-B OUT devices will impact the already congested use of 1 090 MHz by existing aeronautical surveillance and collision avoidance systems, States are urged to:

- a) perform radio frequency spectrum analysis to analyse the degree of congestion of 1 090 MHz and, based on the outcome of this analysis, consider how 1 090 MHz ADS-B UA operations might impact the performance of the ANSP-operated surveillance systems in the airspace of interest as well as the automatic collision avoidance systems on board aircraft operating in that airspace;

Note.— For more information on RF measurements and analysis, refer to Appendix M.

- b) formulate the circumstances and define procedures to determine the potential requirement for 1 090 MHz ADS-B OUT equipage on UA in order to allow or prohibit such equipage as appropriate. During this process, States shall consider:
 - 1) the degree to which individual UA may or may not require air traffic services. For example, a UA operating in uncontrolled airspace may not be required to use ICAO-compliant aeronautical surveillance systems; and
 - 2) the degree to which the operation of individual UA may or may not interoperate in the airspace with traditional manned aircraft. For example, if UA are not operating in proximity to traditional manned aircraft, then the use of ICAO-compliant aeronautical surveillance equipment by UA may not be justified.
- c) in cases where UA are not required to equip with ICAO-compliant aeronautical surveillance equipment, States shall not allocate 24-bit aircraft addresses.

Note.— 24-bit aircraft address allocation should be a part of the UA registration or operator approval process. For more information on reliable usage of 24-bit aircraft addresses, refer to Annex 10, Volume III.

— END —

ISBN 978-92-9265-367-5



9

789292

653675